Disorders of the Lung

1. Acute Exterior Disorders

**Excess patterns**
- Wind Cold
- Wind Heat
- Summer Dampness
- Autumn Dryness
- Wind Cold with Interior Heat

**With underlying deficiency**
- Qi deficiency
- Yang deficiency
- Yin deficiency
- Blood deficiency

Appendix 1 – Warm Diseases *(wen bing 温病)*

Appendix 1 – Febrile Disease caused by Cold *(shang han 伤寒)*
ACUTE EXTERIOR DISORDERS

gan mao 感冒

The term *gan mao* refers to a variety of disorders characterised by symptoms like headache, nasal congestion, sneezing, sore throat, fever, chills and a floating pulse. In some varieties acute nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea occur. In healthy individuals they are generally mild and self-limiting, and most people will experience *gan mao* once or twice every year. *Gan mao* disorders are usually diagnosed as the common cold, upper respiratory tract infections, viral gastroenteritis or influenza.

In Chinese medicine, *gan mao* disorders are due to invasion of the superficial layers of the body by pathogenic Wind, accompanied by Cold, Heat, Dampness or Dryness. In susceptible individuals the pathogen may penetrate to deeper levels of the body, affecting the internal organs. The potential for penetration of an external pathogen largely depends on the relative strength of the pathogen and the strength or weakness of the body’s resistance.

In old China a great deal of attention was given to these seemingly mild conditions, with an emphasis on prompt treatment. The reason for this was that in the early stages *gan mao* disorders resemble their more serious counterparts, the *wen bing* (温病) or Warm diseases. The theoretic description and understanding of Warm diseases reached its zenith in the 17th century with Ye Tian-shi and his *Wen Re Lan* (Discussion of Warmth and Heat, 1745). In contrast to the *gan mao* disorders the *wen bing* are generally not so easily resolved by the treatments applied to *gan mao* (like diaphoresis). Before the widespread availability of antibiotic therapy, *wen bing* disorders were a major cause of death. The *wen bing* category includes, for example pneumonia and bronchitis, infectious encephalitis and meningitis, and other acute febrile diseases that may progress rapidly to febrile rashes or convulsions. A summary of *wen bing* analysis is presented in appendix 1 at the end of this chapter.

*Gan mao* disorders are generally predictable in their outcome, and resolve quickly with correct treatment. The key to success is timing—the earlier the intervention the faster the resolution. However, if the incorrect treatment is applied or if the patient is frail or chooses to ignore the body’s signals and ‘soldier on’ through illness, the pathogen may progress further into the body and lodge in the *shao yang* or *yang ming* level, as classified by Zhang Zhong-jing in the Han dynasty. This penetration is very commonly seen in clinic, and often expressed as the ‘cold that never really went away’. A brief summary of Zhang’s analysis is presented in appendix 2 at the end of this chapter.

AETIOLOGY

All the disorders described in this chapter are due to invasion of Wind, accompanied by Cold, Heat, Dampness or Dryness. They usually occur during the corresponding season (Wind Cold invasion during winter, Dampness during humid weather), although they can appear all year round.

In TCM, external Wind is the carrier that enables access to the body by other pathogens. Access occurs when the *wei qi* is generally weak or temporarily dispersed, or because the invading pathogen is very strong. The term Wind also includes climatic wind and abrupt environmental changes, for example sudden weather changes or going from a climate-controlled building to the outside. This Wind can temporarily disperse *wei qi*, even if the *zheng qi* is intact, allowing penetration particularly through the nose, mouth or the ‘Wind gates’ of the upper back and neck. *Wei qi* retreats from the surface to the interior of the body during sleep, leaving the surface undefended. This is why sleeping uncovered or next to an open window enables Wind to penetrate causing Wind Cold or Wind in the channels of the neck (causing problems like torticollis).

The response to invasion by external pathogens may reflect the state of the *zheng qi* of the individual. If the *zheng qi* is strong the defense mounted will be vigorous and will produce marked symptoms, for example, strong fever or strong chills. But the battle will generally be short lived, as the *zheng qi* (with or without the aid of correct treatment) drives out the pathogen rapidly. Where the *zheng qi* is not so strong symptoms may be milder since the defence mounted is less vigorous. However, the danger of the pathogen penetrating more deeply is greater. These cases describe those lingering subacute infections or post infection syndromes so commonly seen nowadays.

A very strong pathogen can enter regardless of the strength of *wei qi*, and is seen in epidemics of influenza where people of all constitutions can fall ill.

TREATMENT

The location of *gan mao* disorders is at the surface of the body, thus the primary therapy employed is diaphoresis—the induction of a sweat, and secondarily, promotion of the Lungs descending function. Depending on the nature of the pathogen, the herbs used will be acid and dispersing, and warm (for Wind Cold), cool (for Wind Heat), moistening (for dryness) or...
aromatically drying (for Dampness). In general, once a sweat occurs, the pathogen is expelled and the patient recovers.

When patients with an obvious underlying deficiency catch a cold, the use of diaphoretic herbs has to be tempered with caution, as excessive sweating can disperse qi and damage fluids. This is particularly so in the case of the elderly and seriously debilitated (however do not make the mistake of assuming that all elderly patients are deficient and thus in need of tonification). In debilitated patients, diaphoretics are combined with herbs to supplement the underlying deficiency. Be aware that diagnosis can be difficult in patients with significant deficiency—if a patient’s qi or yang is deficient to the point where it is unable to mount an adequate defence against an invading pathogen, the characteristic signs and symptoms may be muted or absent. Often patients in this situation only experience exacerbation of pre-existing symptoms.
1.1 WIND COLD

Pathophysiology
- In this pattern, Wind Cold enters through the pores, tai yang channels and Lungs. Because the nature of Cold is to 'freeze and constrict', it will shut the pores behind it, locking the Wind and Cold beneath the surface.

Clinical features
- acute simultaneous fever and chills, with the chills more prominent than the fever
- no sweating
- occipital headache
- muscle aches, neck stiffness
- nasal obstruction, or runny nose with thin watery mucus
- sneezing
- cough or wheezing with thin watery mucus
T normal or with a thin white coat
P floating, or floating and tight

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and Cold
Redirect Lung qi downward

Prescription

JING FANG BAI DU SAN 荊防敗毒散
(Schizonepeta and Ledebouriea Powder to Overcome Pathogenic Influences)

jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 荆芥 .......... 10g
fang feng (Radix Ledebourieae Divaricatae) 防风 .......... 10g
jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 来参 ............... 10g
qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 .................. 10g
qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 羌活 ............ 10g
zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 柑壳 .................. 10g
du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescentis) 独活 ............. 6g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........... 6g
chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniaceae)
炒杏仁 ........................................... 6g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens)
生姜 .............................................. 3pc

Method: Decoction. The herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. Take hot or follow with hot porridge to induce sweating. (Source: 阎 Ilsan

Modifications
- With some mild internal Damp (fullness and distension in the chest and epigastrium, poor appetite and nausea), add zhi xiang fu (prepared Rhizoma Cyperi Roundi) 制香附 10g, zi su ye (Folium Perillae Frutescentis) 紫苏叶 12g and chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 10g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Wind Damp
- With Wind Dampness as well (headache or heavy headedness, aching and heaviness in the limbs, generalised muscle aches, thick white tongue coat), the correct treatment is to expel Wind and Damp with QIANG HUO SHENG SHI TANG (Notopterygium Decoction to Overcome Dampness 先活胜湿汤).

qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 羌活 ............... 9g
du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescentis) 独活 ............... 9g
gao ben (Rhizoma et Radix Ligustici) 女贞 .................. 6g
fang feng (Radix Ledebourieae Divaricatae) 防风 ............ 6g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........... 6g
man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 藿荆子 ................. 6g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
炙甘草 ........................................... 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Wind Cough
- With significant wheezing and tightness in the chest, add ma huang (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 10g and su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 苏叶 10g.
LUNGS

1. ACUTE EXTERIOR DISORDERS

Acutely exterior disorders are those that originate in the external environment, such as respiratory tract infections.

- Simple measures help to prevent colds, for example a scarf to cover the vulnerable neck area is particularly useful.
- Although mostly self-limiting, colds can become a problem if the patient is run down or continues to work during the illness.
- For effective treatment, timing is important. If treated in the first 24 hours, resolution is usually quick. A useful treatment method in the early stage of a Wind Cold with no sweating, is to soak for 15 minutes in a very hot bath (with epsom salts or a fist sized chunk of root ginger added). Get out of the bath without drying, wrap in a robe and sweat for another 5-10 minutes. Have a warm shower and dry off.
- Acupuncture treatment can be applied 2-3 times daily in severe cases.

Acupuncture

LI.4 (he gu -), GB.20 (fen chi -), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω), Bl.13 (fei shu -Ω), Du.14 (da zhui -)
- with cough, add Lu.7 (lie que -)
- with significant wheezing, use ding chuan (M-BW-1)
- if the nose is congested or runny, add Du.23 (shang xing)
- with a weak pulse, add St.36 (zu san li +)

Clinical notes

- The kinds of biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Cold type gan mao include the common cold, influenza, gastric flu or upper respiratory tract infections.
1.2 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Wind Heat enters through the nose or mouth, and as both Wind and Heat are yang pathogens, the symptoms tend to focus in the upper body. In contrast to the Wind Cold pattern, the herbs used here are cool in nature and are milder diaphoretics, as the pores are already open.

Clinical features
• acute fever with mild chills or no chills
• sore, dry or scratchy throat
• mild sweating
• headache (usually frontal)
• thirst
• cough with thick or sticky yellow mucus
• nasal obstruction, or a nasal discharge which is thick and yellow or green
• T normal or red tipped with a thin yellow coat
• P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Wind Heat
Clear Heat from the Lungs

Prescription
YIN QIAO SAN 银翘散
(Lonicera and Forsythia Formula)

- jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 10-15g
- lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 连翘 10-15g
- lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmitis Communis) 芦根 15g
- dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 9g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 9g
- dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum) 浮豆豉 9g
- niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子 9g
- jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 刺芥 9g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. The herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. Bo he is added at the end of cooking (hou xiao 后下). Take cool or at room temperature. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yao Xu)

Modifications
• For severe headaches, add sang ye (Folium Mori Albac) 桑叶 10g, ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Monfollii) 菊花 15g and man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 花椒子 10g.
• For severe cough, add qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 10g, chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 10g and quan gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 全栝楼 15g.
• If the throat is red, very sore and swollen, add shan dou gen 山豆根 18g and da qing ye (Folium Daqingyng) 大青叶 30g. See also Sore Throat, p.285.
• With high fever and severe thirst, add sheng shi gao (Gypsum) 生石膏 30g, ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根 30g, zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 10g and tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kurlowi) 天花粉 30g.
• With epistaxis, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricalae) 白茅根 30g, ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 萄节 10g. See also Epistaxis, p.168.

Patent medicines
Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)
Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
Ban Lan Gen Chong Ji 板蓝根冲剂 (Ban Lan Gen Chong Ji)

Acupuncture
Du.14 (da zhiu -Ω), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω), LI.11 (qu chi -), I.14 (be gu -), SJ.5 (wai guan -)
• if the throat is very sore and swollen, add LI.11 (shao shang ↓) and SI.17 (tian rong -)
• with cough add Lu.5 (chi ze -)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Heat type gan mao include the common cold, tonsillitis, upper respiratory tract infection, acute bronchitis, and the early stage of measles, encephalitis or meningitis.
• In cases of severe Wind Heat see also fui yong (Lung Abscess), p.109.
• Responds well to correct and timely treatment. Acupuncture can be applied 2-3 times daily in severe cases. The treatment may need modification after 2-3 days if the patient has not improved.
• The patient should be advised to stay warm and well covered even though there is fever.
1.3 SUMMERHEAT AND DAMPNESS

Pathophysiology
- Summer Heat (or Summer Damp) patterns mostly occur during hot humid weather, often at the end of Summer and early Autumn. A common pattern in tropical and subtropical climates, Summer Heat/Dampness has a particular affinity for the Spleen so acute digestive symptoms are prominent.

Clinical features
- acute, relatively high fever which is unrelieved by sweating
- heaviness in the body
- nausea and vomiting
- diarrhoea
- woolly-headedness, like 'being wrapped in a damp towel'
- fatigue and lethargy
- thirst
- irritability and restlessness
- concentrated urine
- maybe a sore throat
- in general all symptoms are worse around mid afternoon
T: greasy white or yellow coat
P: soft, soggy, and possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Summer Damp
Transform Dampness

Prescription
XIN JIA Xiang Ru Yin 新加香薷饮
(Not Augmented Elsholtzia Combination) modified

The focus of this prescription is on releasing the exterior, and is selected when the exterior and Heat signs (fever, thirst, urine) are prominent, and the digestive symptoms are relatively mild.

- xiang ru (Herba Elsholtzia Moslei) 香薷 .......................... 9g
- jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 .................. 15g
- bian dou (Semen Dolichos Lablab) 豆蔻 ...................... 15g
- hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ........................................ 12g
- lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘 .................. 9g
- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ..................... 9g
- huo xiang (Herba Agastachis Pogostemi) 香附 .................. 9g
- pei lan (Herba Eupatorii Fortunei) 佩兰 ...................... 9g

HUO XIAO ZHENG QI SAN 翠香正气散
(Agastache Formula)

This prescription is selected when internal Dampness (with little Heat) is prominent and the exterior symptoms are relatively mild. It is also suitable for Wind Cold with concurrent or pre-existing Damp stagnation in the digestive tract.

- huo xiang (Herba Agastachis Pogostemi) 香附 ................. 12g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)茯苓 ......................... 12g
- zi su ye (Folium Perillae Fruticetens) 紫苏叶 .................. 9g
- ban xia* (Rizhoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .................. 9g
- da fu pi (Pericarpium Arecae Catechu) 大腹皮 .............. 9g
- chao bai zhi (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 炒术 ......... 9g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 归皮 ................. 6g
- bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 .................... 6g
- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ..................... 6g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodis Grandiflori) 栀子 .................. 6g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ................. 6g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 ................ 3pce
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphii Jujubae) 大枣 ...................... 2pce

SAN REN TANG 三仁汤
(Three Nut Decoction)

This formula is selected when Dampness and Heat lodge at the surface and qi level. The main features are aching and heaviness in the body, afternoon fever, a pale sallow complexion and a greasy tongue coat. This formula does not release the exterior, instead it opens up Lung qi and leaches Damp Heat out through the urine.

- yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 杨仁 .................... 18-30g
- hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ....................................... 15g
- xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniaca) 杏仁 ...................... 12g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ................. 9g
**Lungs**

**Lian Po Yin 连朴饮**
*(Coptis and Magnolia Bark Decoction)*

This formula is selected for Damp Heat invasion with Heat predominant. The main features are vomiting and diarrhoea, fullness in the chest and epigastrium, fever unrelieved by sweating, irritability and restlessness, greasy yellow tongue coat and dark urine. There may also be small, itchy, fluid filled vesicular eruptions on the neck and trunk (miliaria crystallina).

- **Huang Lian** (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 ........................................... 3g
- **Hou Po** (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ........................................... 6g
- **Shan Zhi Zi** (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 .................................... 9g
- **Dan Dou Chi** (Semen Sojae Preparatum) 淡豆豉 ........................................... 6g
- **Shi Chang Pu** (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ........................................... 3g
- **Ban Xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ........................................... 3g
- **Lü Gen** (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 芦根 ........................................... 60g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xuè)

**Patent medicines**

- **Huo Xiang Zheng Qi Pian** 藿香正气片 (Huo Hsiang Cheng Chi Pien)
- **Xing Jun San** 行军散 (Marching Powder, Five Pagodas Brand)
- **Liu Shen Shui** 六神水 (Liu Shen Shui)
- **Bao Ji Wan** 保济丸 (Po Chai Pills)
- **Shen Qu Cha** 神曲茶 (Shen Qu Cha)

**Acupuncture**

- **Lu 6 (kong zui -)**, **LI 4 (he gu -)**, **SJ 6 (zhi gong -)**, **Sp 9 (yin ling guan -)**,
- **Ren 12 (zhong wan -)**, **St 36 (zhi san li -)**
  - with high fever add **Du 14 (da zhi shi -)**
  - with nausea add **PC 6 (nei guan)**
  - with diarrhoea add **Zhì Xiù (N.C.A.3)**, **Bl 25 (tian shi)**
  - with myalgia add **Sp 21 (da bāo)**

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Summerheat and Dampness type gan mao include acute gastroenteritis, food poisoning, gastric flu and the early stage of glandular fever (infectious mononucleosis).
1.4 WIND DRYNESS

Pathophysiology
- This pattern is usually due to an invasion of Wind and Dryness mostly during Autumn. It may also follow a Wind Heat attack which dries and damages body fluids. The Lung system is especially sensitive to dryness.

Clinical features
- dryness is the main feature, particularly in the nose, lips, mouth and throat
- cracked lips
- mild fever
- aversion to wind and cold
- headache
- slight sweating
- dry cough with little or no mucus
- Unremarkable or dry, with a slightly red body and a thin white coat
- floating and wiry, maybe rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and moisten Dryness
Nourish yin, soothe the Lungs

Prescription
SANG XING TANG 桑杏汤
(Morus and Apricot Seed Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniaca)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nan sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 笃根</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosa) 川贝母</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山枝子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum) 忍豆豉</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Bo he is added at the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). The herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications
- For severe thirst, add shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 15g and tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 12g.
- If there is blood streaked mucus, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根 30g and ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 藕节 15g.

Patent medicines
- Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)
- Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
- Sang Ju Yin Pian 桑菊饮片 (Sang Chu Yin Pian)
- African Sea Coconut Cough Syrup

Acupuncture
- Du.14 (da zhiu -), LI.11 (qu chi -), LI.4 (he gu -), Lu.5 (chi ze -),
- SJ.5 (wai guan -), Kid.6 (zhaohai), Sp.6 (jian ying jiao +), Ren.22 (tian tu)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Dryness type gan mao common cold, upper respiratory tract infection
- Quite a common pattern, even in relatively humid climates due to the prevalence of climate controlled buildings.
- Sipping pear juice is useful, especially for those individuals continually exposed to a dry climate.
- Responds well to correct herbal treatment, as herbs can directly moisturise dryness. Acupuncture is of only limited use in dry patterns.
1.5 WIND COLD WITH INTERIOR HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Wind Cold patterns with internal Heat occur in a constitutionally Hot individual or in someone with pre-existing internal Heat in the Lungs (often from a residual pathogen, or from smoking) who gets a Wind Cold attack. When a person with a hot constitution and strong zheng qi is invaded by strong Wind Cold the ensuing battle can be particularly vigorous, generating significant Heat to generate internal Heat while still having Cold on the exterior. The Heat may then affect the yang ming causing constipation and thirst (tai yang yang ming overlap syndrome).

Clinical features
- high fever with severe chills or rigors
- loud cough with sticky yellow mucus
- no sweating
- generalised muscle aches
- nasal obstruction
- occipital headache
- strong thirst with desire for cold liquids
- sore throat
- irritability and restlessness
- dry stools or constipation
- T red or with a red tip and edges, and a thin white or yellow coat
- P floating and tight and possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and Cold
Clear internal Heat

Prescription
MA XING SHI GAN TANG 麻杏石甘汤
(Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination) modified

- sheng shi gao (Gypsum) 生石膏 ........................................... 15g
- chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 炒杏仁 ........................................... 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........................................... 6g
- ma huang* (Herba Ephedrae) 麻黄 ........................................... 6g
- pi pa ye (Folium Eriobotryae) 桃杷叶 ........................................... 12g
- jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 菊芥 ........................................... 9g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 ........................................... 9g
- sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 ........................................... 9g

Variations and additional prescriptions
DA QING LONG TANG 大青龙汤
(Major Blue Dragon Combination) see p.52

Patent medicines

Fang Feng Tong Sheng Wan 防风通圣丸 (Fang Feng Tong Sheng Wan)
Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pian)
Zhi Sou Ding Chuan Wan 止嗽定喘丸 (Zhi Sou Ding Quan Wan)

Acupuncture
Du.14 (da zhu -Ω), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω), L1.11 (qu chi -), L1.4 (bei gu -),
Lu.5 (chi zhe -), SJ.5 (wei guan -)
- If the throat is very sore and swollen, add Lu.11 (shao shang ↓) and
  SJ.17 (tian rong -)
- with much internal Heat add SJ.2 (ye men -), Lu.10 (yu ji -)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Cold with interior heat type gan ma o include influenza, the common cold, upper respiratory tract infection, acute asthma, acute bronchitis, pneumonia, whooping cough, tonsillitis, pharyngitis, malaria and Dengue fever.
- Acupuncture can be applied 2-3 times daily in severe cases. Rapid result can usually be expected when treatment is timely.
1.6 ACUTE EXTERIOR DISORDER WITH DEFICIENCY

- In acute exterior disorders the general principle of treatment regardless of the condition of the patient is to first expel the pathogen using diaphoresis.
- There are some special cases, however, where simultaneous support of zheng qi and expulsion of pathogens is required. Patients in this category show obvious deficiency of qi, Blood, yin, or yang. The following patterns are seen more frequently in immunocompromised patients, the frail or the elderly and postpartum or pregnant women.

1.6.1 QI DEFICIENCY (AND EXTERNAL WIND)

**Pathophysiology**

- In this pattern the patient’s qi is weakened. Because zheng qi is reduced, the body’s defensive response to the pathogen is weak and thus the symptoms (which reflect the intensity of the struggle) are mild. Depending on the degree of deficiency the symptoms may range from mild to mild range. Even though the symptoms in this pattern frequently appear to be mild, this does not mean that the condition is not serious. In some patients, for example, the elderly a simple cold can easily and quickly lead to more severe and sometimes fatal complications.

**Clinical features**

- mild chills and fever
- headache
- sweating
- nasal obstruction
- cough with white or clear mucus
- recurrent mild sore throat and swollen cervical lymph nodes
- fatigue, lethargy and weakness
- low voice, reluctance to speak
- shortness of breath
- all symptoms are worse with exertion
- the cold tends to linger on, or is recurrent

T pale, with a thin white coat
P floating and weak

**Treatment principle**

Clear the exterior and support qi

---

**Prescription**

**SHEN SU YIN 参苏饮**

(Ginseng and Perilla Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zi su ye (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ge gen (Radix Puerariae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian hu (Radix Peucedani)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizaeuralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Plathydro G a n an forii)</td>
<td>30-120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae)</td>
<td>30-120g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. The herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. (Source: Zhang Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

- In patients who are frequently ill with colds and flu and those who find it difficult to throw off colds or who experience mild exterior symptoms when fatigued or with exertion, the correct treatment is to bolster wei qi and strengthen the Spleen with YU PING FENG SAN (Jade Screen Powder 玉屏风散). This formula is used between acute cold episodes or in the post acute phase if the cold is difficult to throw off. It should not be used for an acute exterior disorder as huang qi can lock a pathogen in the body, aggravating the condition. In acute cases the previous formula is appropriate. This is an excellent formula to strengthen immunity in patients subject to frequent colds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>30-120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae)</td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and take 6-9 grams twice daily with warm water. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

**Patent medicines**

- Shen Su Yin 参苏饮 (Ginseng and Perilla Combination)
- Yu Ping Feng Wan 玉屏风丸 (Yu Ping Feng Wan)
1.6.2 YANG DEFICIENCY (AND EXTERNAL WIND COLD)

**Pathophysiology**
- Yang deficiency with exterior Wind Cold occurs in patients with pre-existing yang deficiency, most often the elderly. Because yang qi is weak, wei qi will also be weak and Wind Cold can easily invade.
- In the clinic, the patient often presents not with the obvious Wind Cold symptoms, but with an otherwise unexplained aggravation of a pre-existing Kidney yang deficiency. In terms of Shang Han Lun analysis (p.46), this is a simultaneous tai yang and shao yin pattern facilitated by the Bladder (channel)—Kidney (channel) relationship.

**Clinical features**
- strong chills or shivering, possibly with mild feverishness
- chronic aversion to cold, with a desire to curl up
- exhaustion
- headache, general myalgia and aches in the bones
- either no sweating or spontaneous sweating; when there is sweating the aversion to cold is more pronounced
- low, soft voice with a reluctance to speak
- waxy pale complexion
- cold body and extremities
- there may be a history of exposure to wind or cold prior to the aggravation of symptoms

T pale and swollen, with a white coat
P deep and weak

**Treatment principle**
Support yang, clear the exterior

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHEN FU ZAI ZAO WAN 参附再造丸 (Ginseng and Aconite Pills for a New Lease on Life) modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) ... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 副子 ... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 ... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ... 20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ... 6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The asterisk (*) indicates the use of a modified Aconite.*
**Blood Deficiency (and External Wind)**

**Pathophysiology**
- Blood deficiency with external Wind (and Cold or Heat) occurs in patients with pre-existing Blood deficiency, or following blood loss (traumatic, postpartum, post-surgical haemorrhage). It can also occur during pregnancy.

**Clinical features**
- acute headache
- fever
- mild chills
- little or no sweating
- lustreless, sallow complexion
- pale nails and lips
- fatigue
- palpitations
- dizziness
- T pale
- P thready or floating, thready and weak

**Treatment principle**
Nourish Blood, clear the exterior

**Prescription**

**CONG BAI QI WEI YIN** (Shallot and Seven Herb Drink) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi)</td>
<td>3pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ge gen (Radix Puerariae)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. The herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. Cong bai is added towards the end of cooking (hun xiu & e jiao). E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua & jing jie). (Source: *Zhe Ji Yi Ke Lin Ching Shou Ce*)

**Modifications**
- With signs of Cold (aversion to cold and chills), add zi su ye (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 紫苏叶 9g and fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 9g.

---

**Lungs**

- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 10g
- qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygium) 川芎 8g
- xin xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 独活 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 3g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 3g
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 5g

Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zhi should be cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xian jian). The other herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. (Source: *Zhong Ji Yi Ke Lin Ching Shou Ce*)
• With signs of Heat (obvious fever, sore throat, rapid pulse), add jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 15g and lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 15g.
• With continual bleeding (post-partum or menstrual), add ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 6g, san qi (Radix Notoginseng) 3g and bai ji fen (powdered Rhizoma Bletillae Striatae) 3g.
• With poor digestion, loss of appetite and abdominal distension, add chen pi (pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 9g, mai ya (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinantus) 9g and ji nei jin (Endothelium Corneum Gigeriae Galli) 9g.

Patent medicines
Gan Mao LING 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
Shi San Tai Pao Wan 三仙培元丸 (Shih San Tai Pao Wan)
Xiao Chai Hu Wan 小柴胡丸 (Xiao Chai Hu Wan) + Si Wu Wan 四物丸 (Si Wu Wan) 50:50

Acupuncture
GB.20 (feng chi), Lu.12 (lie que), Bl.12 (feng men), LI.4 (be gu),
ST.36 (zu san li +), Ren.4 (qi bai +), Du.14 (da zhu +)
• LI.4 (be gu) and Ren.4 (qi bai +) are contraindicated during pregnancy.

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as gan mao with underlying Blood deficiency include pregnancy or post partum cold or flu and the early stage of puerperal fever.
• Only a very mild sweat is required and the herbs or acupuncture should be discontinued as soon as it occurs. If the treatment induces too much sweating there is the possibility of further damage to Blood and fluids.

1.6.4 YIN DEFICIENCY (AND EXTERNAL WIND)
Pathophysiology
• Yin deficiency with external Wind (and Cold or Heat) occurs in patients with pre-existing jin deficiency, most notably the elderly, and in those following a prolonged or debilitating illness.

Clinical features
• acute headache
• fever
• mild chills
• aversion to wind and cold
• little or no sweating or night sweats
• dizziness
• irritability and restlessness
• a sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
• thirst, dry mouth and throat
• dry cough with little or no mucus or blood streaked mucus
• T red and dry, with little or no coat
• P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish jin, clear the exterior

Prescription
JIA JIAN WEI RUI TANG 加减葳蕤汤
(Modified Yu Zhu Tang)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yu zhu (Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati) 玉竹</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 葱白</td>
<td>3pce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum) 淡豆豉</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycochi Grandiflori) 津柏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai wei (Radix Cynanchi Baiwei) 白薇</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Hai-localycis) 薄荷</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hong zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 红枣</td>
<td>4pce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. The herbs should be gently simmered for no longer than 20 minutes. Bo he is added towards the end of cooking. Wei rui is another name for yu zhu. (Source: Zhang Yi Nai Ke Lin Chuan Shou Ce)

Modifications
• If the fever, chills and headache are severe, add jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 9g.
• If Heat, with irritability and thirst are prominent, add dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 9g, tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 15g and huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.

• If the throat is dry, with a cough with sticky, hard to expectorate mucus, add gua lou pi (Pericarpium Trichosanthis) 瓜楼皮 12g, she gan (Rhizoma Belamacandae) 射干 9g and niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子 9g.

• If the cough causes chest pain and there are streaks of blood in the mucus, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindrica) 白茅根 9g, sheng pu huang (unprocessed Pollen Typhae) 生蒲黄 9g and ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 蒲黄 9g.

Patent medicines
Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
Shi San Tai Pao Wan 十三太保丸 (Shih San Tai Pao Wan)

Acupuncture
GB.20 (feng chi), Lu.7 (lie que -), Bl.12 (feng men Q), LI.4 (bei gu -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Lu.9 (tai yuan +)
• LI.4 (bei gu) is contraindicated during pregnancy

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as yin deficiency type gan mao include common colds in elderly, debilitated or otherwise yin deficient patients
• Only a very mild sweat is required and treatment should be discontinued as soon as it occurs. If the treatment induces too much sweating there is the possibility of further damage to yin and fluids.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR ACUTE EXTERIOR DISORDERS
Wind Cold - Jing Yang Bai Du San 刻防败毒散
• with Dampness - Qiang Hua Sheng Shi Tang 光泽胜湿汤
• with stiff neck - Ge Gen Tang 葛根汤
• with wheezing - Ma Huang Tang 麻黄汤

Wind Heat - Yin Qiao San 银翘散

Summer Heat and Dampness - Xin Jia Xiang Ru Yin 新加香薷饮
• with prominent Damp - Huo Xiang Zheng Qi San 荷香正气散
• Damp Heat - San Ren Tang 三仁汤 or Lian Po Po Yin 连朴饮

Wind Dryness - Sang Xing Tang 桑杏汤

Wind Cold with Internal Heat - Ma Xing Shi Gan Tang 麻杏石甘汤

Exterior disorder with internal deficiency
• qi deficiency - Shen Su Yin 参苏饮
• yang deficiency - Shen Fu Zai Zao Wan 参附再造丸
• Blood deficiency - Cong Bai Qi Wei Yin 藿白七味饮
• yin deficiency - Jia Jian Wei Bai Tang 加减葳蕤汤

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Appendix 1.1

WARM DISEASES (wen bing温州)

Wen bing are disorders that are due to pathogenic Wind and Heat. They are generally virulent and tend to be epidemic, affecting even robust individuals with intact wei qi. During the Ming 1368-1644 AD and Qing dynasties 1644-1911 AD, the theoretical (and practical) treatment protocols for wen bing reached their zenith. The main authors of wen bing theory, notably Ye Tianshi, Xue Sheng-bai and Wu Ju-tong, postulated four levels through which a pathogen could move, each one successively more serious than the previous. The four levels are the wei (corresponding to the surface, an external disorder), qi (involving the Lungs, chest, Stomach and Intestines), ying (or nutritive) and Blood. By the time a pathogen has penetrated these levels, the disorder is characterised by febrile rashes, disordered consciousness and convulsions.

1. WEI LEVEL

The wei level is the surface. This disorder is the same as Wind Heat and is dealt with as described in the section on Acute Exterior Disorders.

2. QI LEVEL

Once the Heat has penetrated beyond the wei level it can develop in several ways, depending on the patient’s constitution, predisposing lifestyle factors and the strength of the pathogen. Qi level disorders affect the chest and diaphragm, Lungs and digestive tract.

2.1 Heat in the Lungs

**Clinical features**

- Cough and/or dyspnoea with sticky or hard to expectorate yellow or green mucus - in severe cases blood streaked mucus or rusty coloured mucus
- Fever
- Dry mouth and thirst
- Sweating
- Tightness or pain in the chest
- T red tip with a yellow coat. If there is copious mucus the tongue coat is thick, yellow and greasy

**P rapid and possibly slippery**

**Treatment principle**

Clear Heat from the Lungs, redirect Lung qi downwards

---

**Prescription**

**MA XING SHI GAN TANG 麻杏石甘汤**

*(Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma huang* (Herba Ephedra)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>48g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Method:** Decoction.

**Modifications**

- Today generally, and especially in cases of severe Heat, other Heat clearing herbs are added, typically herbs like yu xing cao (Herba Houttuyniae) 鱼腥草 24g, huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 15g, jin yin hua (Flos Lonicera Japonicae) 20g, zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 12g, and sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radix) 桑白皮 15g.
- With significant chest pain, add tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g and yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g.
- With haemoptysis or blood streaked mucus, add qian cao tan (charred Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 茜草炭 12g, bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根 9g and ce bai ye tan (charred Camcumeniotis Biotae Orientalis) 倒柏叶炭 12g. See also Haemoptysis, p.193.
- If there is copious yellow mucus and dyspnoea with or without constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 谷楼仁 9g.

**Patent medicines**

*Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pien)*
*Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)*
*Niu Huang Jie Du Pian 牛黄解毒片 (Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien)*

**Acupuncture**

Lu.5 (chi ze -), Lu.6 (kong zui -), LI.1 (zhong fu -), BL.13 (fei shu -), LI.10 (yu ji -)

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat in the Lungs include bronchitis, pneumonia, lobar pneumonia, whooping cough and epiglottitis.
2.2 Heat accumulating in the Stomach and Intestines

- This syndrome may present in a variety of ways, depending on its location and intensity, and other pathogens involved.

2.2a Heat in the yang ming channels

- In this case the Heat is thought to primarily affect the yang ming channels, and is ‘formless’ (i.e. without constipation). This is the classical pattern defined by the four ‘bigs’, i.e. big sweat, big thirst, big fever and big pulse.
  - high fever with profuse sweating
  - great thirst
  - irritability
  - red complexion
  - frontal headache
  - toothache
  - bleeding gums

T dry yellow tongue coat

P flooding and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear and drain Heat from the yang ming channels

Prescription

BAI HU TANG 白虎汤
(Anemarrhena and Gypsum Combination)

The four ‘bigs’ have always been considered a prerequisite for the use of the formula, but they are not always all present in every patient. For example, in some cases fluids may be restrained by the Heat, so there is no sweating. As long as there is severe Heat in yang ming without constipation, this formula is applicable.

shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏..........................30g
zhi mu (Rhzima Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母......9g
geng mi (Semen Oryzae) 梗米..........................9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ..................3g

Method: Decoction

Modifications
- In cases with severe Heat, add jin yin hua (Flos Lonicer Japonicae) 金银花 15g, lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa) 连翘 12g, ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根 9g, and da qing ye (Folium Daqingye) 大青叶 12g.
- If fluids have been significantly damaged, add shi hu (Herba Dendrobii) 石斛 9g, tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii)

2.2b Heat and Phlegm in the chest and yang ming

- This condition is thought to be due to ‘knotting’ of Heat and Phlegm in the chest and epigastrium (jie xiong 结胸)
  - focal chest or epigastrial distension, fullness or pain which is worse for pressure
  - red complexion
  - heat in the body that may only be apparent with palpation
  - thirst
  - bitter taste in the mouth
  - nausea
  - constipation
  - maybe cough with sticky yellow mucus

T greasy or dirty yellow tongue coat

P slippery and possibly floating or rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat, transform Phlegm
Open the chest and dissipate knotting
Prescription

**XIAO XIAN XIONG TANG** 小陷胸汤
(Minor Sinking Into the Chest Decoction)

gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 槟榔 .................. 24g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 ................. 3g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ............ 9g

Method: Decoction.

**Patent medicines**

*Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan* 清气化痰丸 (Pinellia Expectorant Pills)
*Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian* 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)

**Acupuncture**

St.40 (feng long ), St.37 (shang ju xue ), St.44 (nei ting ), LI.4 (he gu ),
LI.11 (gu chi ), St.25 (tian shu ), BL.25 (da chang shu ), Lu.5 (chi ze )

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat and Phlegm in the
  chest and yang ming include pleurisy, bronchitis, gastritis and intercostal
  neuralgia.

2.2c Strong Heat in yang ming with constipation

- severe constipation or faecal impaction with watery diarrhoea
- painful and distended abdomen, which feels worse for pressure
- tense, firm abdomen
- tides and fever
- in severe cases confusion or disordered consciousness

T thick, yellow or brown and dry tongue coat
P deep and strong

**Treatment principle**

Purge Heat through the bowel

**Prescription**

**DA CHENG QI TANG** 大承气汤
(Major Rhabarbar Combination)

da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 .................. 9g
mang xiao (Mirabilis) 芒硝 ......................... 12g
zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 .......... 9g
hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 .............. 12g

Method: Decoction. For powerful purgation da huang is added a few minutes

towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). Mang xiao is dissolved in the strained
decoction (chung fu 冲服).

**Modifications**

- If body fluids have been significantly damaged, delete hou po and zhi shi, and add xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 18g, sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 12g and mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 12g. This makes ZENG YE CHENG QI TANG (Increase the Fluids and Order the Qi Decoction 增液承气汤).
- With Heat affecting the Small Intestine (dysuria and frequency), add chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 12g, sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 12g, huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 12g and huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.

**Patent medicines**

*Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan* 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
*Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian* 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)

**Acupuncture**

St.25 (tian shu ), BL.25 (da chang shu ), SJ.6 (zhi gou ),
St.37 (shang ju xue ), LI.11 (gu chi ), LI.4 (he gu ), St.44 (nei ting )

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat in yang ming with
  constipation include acute appendicitis, cholecystitis, pancreatitis and
  intestinal obstruction.

2.2d Damp Heat in yang ming

- This is external Damp Heat that settles in yang ming, thought originally to
  be due to an inappropriate purge in the exterior stage of a pathogenic
  disorder.
- urgent, foul smelling, hot diarrhoea with a burning anus
- fever or afternoon fever which is unrelied with sweating
- sweating that tends to come in waves and is worse in the afternoon
- restlessness and irritability
- thirst
T red with a yellow coat
P rapid

**Treatment principle**

Clear Damp Heat, stop diarrhoea
Prescription

GE GEN HUANG QIN HUANG LIAN TANG (Kudzu, Coptis and Scute Combination)

GE GEN (Radix Puerariae) 黄芩 .......................... 15g
HUANG QIN (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .............. 9g
HUANG LIAN (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 ..................... 6g
ZHI GAN CAO (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 炙甘草 ............... 6g

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines

Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
HUANG LIAN JIE DU WAN (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan)
YU DAI WAN (Yudai Wan [Leucorrhoea Pills])
HUANG LIAN SU PIAN (Tabellae Berberini)
JIA WEI XUANG LIAN PIAN 加味香连片 (Chiawei Hsianglianpian)

Acupuncture

LI 11 (qü chi -), LI 4 (he gu -), ST 44 (nei ting -), ST 37 (shang ju xu -),
ST 25 (tian shu -), ZHI XIE (N-CA-3)

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat in yang ming
  include acute gastroenteritis and bacillary or amoebic dysentery.

2.3 Heat lingering in the chest and diaphragm

Pathophysiology

- This condition corresponds to lingering Heat (in the chest and diaphragm)
  in the aftermath of a febrile disease or during a relapse.

Clinical features

- mild but lingering feverishness
- irritability and restlessness
- insomnia
- thirst, dry mouth and lips
- fullness and discomfort in the chest
- sore throat
- constipation

T slightly red with a thin yellow coat
P slightly rapid

Treatment principle

Vent and clear Heat, alleviate restlessness and irritability

Prescription

ZHI ZI DOU CHI TANG 梓子豆豉汤
(Gardenia and Soybean Combination)

SHAN ZHI ZI (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 ............. 9g
DAN DOU CHI (Semen Sojae Preparatum) 淡豆豉 .............. 9g

Method: Decoction. This formula is rarely used alone and is usually added to
other prescriptions to specifically treat post-febrile irritability, restlessness and
discomfort in the chest. It may also serve as the basis upon which to build a
broader formula, depending on the accompanying pattern.

Modifications

- For severe irritability and restlessness, add LIAN QIAO (Fructus Forsythia
  Suspensae) 連翘 12g, BO HE (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g, DAN
  ZHU YE (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 澤竹葉 9g and HUANG QIN (Radix
  Scutellariae Baicalensis) 12g.
- With constipation, add DA HUANG (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黃 3-6g
  and ZHI SHI (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 枸实 9g.

Acupuncture

PC 7 (da ling), PC 8 (lao gong), REN 17 (shan zhong), ST 37 (shang ju xu -),
ST 44 (nei ting -), LI 11 (qü chi -)
3. YING LEVEL

3.1 Heat entering the Pericardium

Clinical features
- high fever which is worse at night
- dry mouth but no great thirst
- irritability and restlessness
- insomnia
- disordered consciousness or delirium
- faint erythema and purpura

T deep red and dry
P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat from the ying level, support yin

Prescription
QING YING TANG 清营汤
(Clear the Ying Decoction)

xi jiao° (Cornu Rhinoceri 麒角) .......................... 3g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae 生地) ........... 30g
xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis 玄参) .... 12g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici 麦冬) ........ 12g
jin yin hua (Hos Loniceræ Japonicae 金银花) .......... 12g
lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensaæ 连翘) ....... 9g
dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizæ 丹参) ........... 9g
dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis 淡竹叶) ....... 6g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis 黄连) ...................... 3g

Method: Decoction. Shui niu jiao° (Cornu Bubali 水牛角) is usually substituted for xi jiao with a 5-10 fold increase in dose. It should be powdered and decocted for 30 minute before the other herbs are added (xian jian 先煎).

Patent medicines
Zi Xue Dan 紫雪丹 (Tzuhsueh Tan)
An Gong Niu Huang Wan 安宫牛黄丸 (An Gong Niu Huang Wan)
- these formulas are usually reserved for severe cases with mental confusion, delirium or convulsions

Acupuncture
PC.3 (qu ze 1), BL.40 (wei zhong 1), PC.9 (sheng zhong 1), LI.11 (qu chi 1),
Du.26 (ren zhong 1), PC.7 (da ling)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat entering the Pericardium include encephalitis, meningitis, septicemia and acute leukaemia.
- Patients with this pattern may require hospitalisation.

3.2 Heat obstructing the Pericardium

Clinical features
- This is a progression from the previous syndrome where the intense Heat in the Pericardium has scorcht fluids and formed Phlegm. The resulting Phlegm Heat gives rise to serious disturbances of consciousness and possibly unconsciousness.
- The symptoms are the same as previously, with an intensification in the delirium, cold extremities, convulsions and coma

T deep red, dry and retracted
P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat, restore consciousness

Prescription
QING YING TANG 清营汤 p.38
(Clear the Ying Decoction) plus either
AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN 安宫牛黄丸 p.914
(Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone) or
ZHI BAO DAN 至宝丹 p.660
(Greatest Treasure Special Pill)

Method: In situations where the patient is delirious or comatose, the medicine may be administered via a nasogastric tube or enema.

Modifications
- If there are convulsions, add gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae 钩藤) 15g,
  ling yang jiao° (Cornu Antelopi 羚羊角) 3g, or use ZI XUE DAN
  (Purple Snow Special Pill 紫雪丹, p.707).
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄) 6-9g
  and mang xiao (Mirabilis) 芒硝 9g.

Patent medicines
Zhi Bao Dan 至宝丹 (Zhi Bao Dan)
Zi Xue Dan 紫雪丹 (Tzuhsueh Tan)
An Gong Niu Huang Wan 安宫牛黄丸 (An Gong Niu Huang Wan)
Acupuncture
PC.3 (qu ze), BI.40 (wei zong), PC.9 (zong chong), LI.11 (qu chi), Du.26 (ren zong)
• with coma add shi xuan (M-UE-1)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat obstructing the Pericardium include encephalitis, meningitis, acute leukaemia and septicaemia.
• This condition should be managed in hospital.

4. BLOOD LEVEL
4.1 Heat causing the Blood to move recklessly
Clinical features
• The main differentiating feature here (compared to the jing level) is the appearance of febrile rashes and haemorrhaging.
• high fever with dense and obvious erythema or purpura covering a substantial portion of the body
• various types of bleeding (epistaxis, haemoptysis etc.)
• in severe cases there is delirium and/or convulsions
T deep red and dry with very raised papillae
P thready and rapid or minute and rapid

Treatment principle
Cool the Blood, dispel stagnant Blood

Prescription
XI JIAO DI HUANG TANG 犀角地黄汤
(Rhinoceros Horn and Rehmannia Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xi jiao° (Cornu Rhinoceri)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Shui niu jiao° (Cornu Bubali) 水牛角 is usually substituted for xi jiao with a 5-10 fold increase in dose. It should be powdered and decocted for 30 minute before the other herbs are added (jian jian 先煎).

Modifications
• In severe cases (and probably in most cases at this stage) herbs like da qing ye (Folium Daqingye) 大青叶, ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根 and zi cai (Radix Lithospermum) 紫草 are added to enhance the effect and relieve toxicity.
• With severe bleeding, add qian cai gen tan (charred Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 苦参根炭 12g, bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindrica) 白茅根 9g and xiao ji tan (charred Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟炭 9g.
• With Blood stasis (purplish rash), add tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g and dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 12g.
• With convulsions, add ling yang jiao° (Cornu Antelopis) 羚羊角 3g and gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae) 钩藤 15g.
• With delirium, combine with AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN (Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone 安宫牛黄丸, p.914).
Patent medicines
Zi Xue Dan 紫雪丹 (Tzuhsueh Tan)
An Gong Niu Huang Wan 安宫牛黄丸 (An Gong Niu Huang Wan)

Acupuncture
PC.3 (qu ze ¹), BL.40 (wei zhong ¹), PC.9 (zhong chong ¹),
LI.11 (qu chi ²), Du.26 (ren zhong ²)
• with coma add shi xue ¹ (M-UE-1)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat causing reckless
  movement of Blood include severe infection like meningococcal
  meningitis, encephalitis, leukaemic crisis and septicaemia.
• This condition should be managed in hospital.

4.2 Hot Blood and Blood stasis
Clinical features
• This condition occurs as Heat invades the lower jiao and ‘evaporates’ the
  Blood, causing stasis.
• acute lower abdominal pain which is worse for pressure
• fever which is worse at night
• constipation or black tarry stools
• in severe cases manic behaviour or delirium
T deep red or purple with purple spots
P deep and full

Treatment principle
Clear Heat and break up Blood stagnation

Prescription
TAO HE CHENG QI TANG 桃核承气汤
(Persica and Rhubarb Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semen Persicae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomii Cassiae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mang xiao (Mirabilitum)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Mang xiao is dissolved in the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服).
**Table A1.1a Overview of Wen Bing patterns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wei</td>
<td>superficial, affects the exterior</td>
<td>Wind Heat surface level syndrome</td>
<td>fever &amp; chills, sore throat, sweating, thirst, headache, floating pulse, red tipped tongue</td>
<td>YIN QIAO SAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qi</td>
<td>Internal, affecting the chest, Lungs and Intestines</td>
<td>Heat in the Lungs</td>
<td>cough or dyspnoea with sticky yellow sputum, fever, thirst, chest pain, rapid pulse, red tongue with a yellow coat</td>
<td>MA XING SHI GAN TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heat in the Stomach and Intestines</td>
<td>Heat in the yang ming channel</td>
<td>high fever, sweating, thirst, irritability, dry yellow tongue coat, flooding, rapid pulse</td>
<td>BAI HU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heat &amp; Phlegm in yang ming</td>
<td>focal chest or epigastric distension, thirst, nausea, bitter taste, constipation, slippery pulse, greasy yellow tongue coat</td>
<td>XIAO XIAN XIONG TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heat in yang ming organ</td>
<td>constipation, abdominal pain worse for pressure, tidal fever, thick dry yellow or brown tongue coat, deep strong pulse</td>
<td>DA CHENG QI TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Damp Heat in yang ming</td>
<td>urgent foul diarrhoea, afternoon fever unrelieved by sweating, restlessness &amp; irritability, red tongue with a yellow coat &amp; rapid slippery pulse</td>
<td>GE GEN HUANG QIN HUANG LIAN TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heat lingering in the chest and diaphragm</td>
<td>mild lingering fever, irritability, insomnia, thirst &amp; dryness following a febrile disease</td>
<td>ZHI ZI DOU CHI TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table A1.1b Overview of Wen Bing patterns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ying</td>
<td>Deepest (and most dangerous) levels</td>
<td>Heat entering the Pericardium</td>
<td>high fever, insomnia, irritability &amp; restlessness, delirium, faint erythema &amp; purpura, deep red dry tongue, thready rapid pulse</td>
<td>QING YING TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Same as the previous pattern with serious disturbance of consciousness and possibly loss of consciousness</td>
<td>Heat obstructing the Pericardium</td>
<td>QING YING TANG plus AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
<td>Heat causing Blood to move recklessly</td>
<td>Similar to the Heat in the ying level, with the addition of obvious rashes, bleeding and possibly convulsions</td>
<td>XI JIAO DI HUANG TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hot Blood &amp; Blood stasis</td>
<td>acute lower abdominal pain worse for pressure, fever, constipation with tarry stools, deep red or purple tongue</td>
<td>TAO HE CHENG QI TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 1.2

FEBRILE DISEASES CAUSED BY COLD

(The Shang Han Lun (Treatise on Febrile Diseases caused by Cold), written by one of the great geniuses of Chinese medicine, Zhang Zhong-jing of the Han dynasty (220BC-200AD), was a remarkable achievement and remains a milestone of clinical medicine. It discusses numerous disease states and 108 prescriptions, most of which are still in use today. Henan Province, where Zhang Zhong-jing lived was a very cold area. Diseases there were mainly caused by cold which turned to fever. Legend has it that of the 200 odd members of Zhang’s clan, 75% died from an epidemic disease, probably typhoid, which inspired him to study medicine.

The Shang Han Lun is an analysis of how Cold penetrates into the body and the disorders that result. It postulates that there are six levels that pathogenic influences can enter depending on the relative strength or weakness of the pathogen and the zheng qi. The six levels, in order of increasing depth, are:

- the tai yang-associated with Urinary Bladder and Small Intestine channels and organs
- the shao yang-associated with Gall Bladder and san jiao channels
- the yang ming-associated with Stomach and Large Intestine channels and organs
- the tai yin-associated with Lung and Spleen organs
- the shao yin-associated with Heart and Kidney organs
- the jue yin-associated with Liver and Pericardium organs

Manner of entry

Wind Cold first encounters the body at the tai yang level. If it is not expelled by the zheng qi or therapeutic intervention, it may then penetrate further into the body. Once Wind Cold has passed the first most superficial level, there are several ways that pathogenic Cold can enter the body and progress:

Sequential penetration
- Where a Wind Cold attack is not cleared at the tai yang level it may then progress through all six levels in order of depth - tai yang > shao yang > yang ming > tai yin > shao yin > jue yin.

Non sequential penetration
- Penetration from one level to another in a non-sequential fashion, and in a way not related to the connections between the various channels.

Internal external penetration
- If a patient has a pre-existing weakness in an organ system, a pathogen can pass from the external member of the yin yang pair to the internal partner. For example, if there is pre-existing Kidney weakness, then Wind Cold can penetrate straight from tai yang to shao yin as a result of the yin yang relationship between the Urinary Bladder and Kidney. For example, in a patient with Kidney yang deficiency who gets a Wind Cold attack, the Kidney deficiency symptoms may suddenly get worse rather than the typical Wind Cold symptoms appearing.

Direct penetration
- This occurs when there is deficiency in the more superficial levels. The pathogen goes straight into the yin levels, bypassing the yang levels altogether.

Overlapping
- Overlapping patterns occur when two (or more) levels (often tai yang and yang ming or shao yang) are involved at the same time.

The diagnostic system laid out in the Shang Han Lun is still widely used and remarkably relevant even after two millennia. Some adjustments were needed in the 16th and 17th centuries, probably in response to new forms of disease (the wen hing), but the efficacy of the prescriptions and the accuracy of Zhang's observation are astounding. The Shang Han model is particularly useful in the increasingly common post infection syndromes.

The summary described here is necessarily brief, and readers are encouraged to study the Shang Han Lun itself for more detail. Some good translations are available (see bibliography).
YANG LEVELS

1. TAI YANG SYNDROMES

1.1 Tai yang channel syndrome

Pathophysiology
- Wind Cold penetrates the tai yang channels (Urinary Bladder and Small Intestine) particularly where they traverse the neck and upper back. The symptoms and treatment principle are the same as for Wind Cold (p.6) but the prescription given here is the original one prescribed by Zhang Zhong-jing in the Shang Han Lun.

Clinical features
- acute simultaneous fever and chills, with the chills more prominent than the fever
- no sweating; the absence of sweating is a key feature here, indicating an excess condition of the surface (i.e. the Cold has contracted and ‘locked’ the pores behind it)
- occipital headache
- muscle aches, neck stiffness
- nasal obstruction, or runny nose with thin watery mucus
- sneezing
- cough or wheezing with thin watery mucus
- T normal or with a thin white coat
- P floating, or floating and tight

Treatment principle
- Disperse Wind Cold
- Redirect Lung qi downward

Prescription

MA HUANG TANG 麻黄汤
(Ma Huang Combination)

- ma huang (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 .................. 9g
- xing ren (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 .......... 9g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .......... 6g
- zhi gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......... 3g

Method: Decoction.

Variations and additional prescriptions

External deficiency pattern
- If there is mild sweating, floating pulse, mild fever and chills, mild nasal congestion, indicating a weak exterior, the correct treatment is to expel Wind Cold and regulate jing wei with GUI ZHI TANG (Cinnamon Combination)

- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 ............ 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .............. 9g
- zhi gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......... 6g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 .... 9g
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ............... 4pce

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines

- Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
- Xiao Qing Long Wan 小青龙丸 (Xiao Qing Long Wan)
- Chuan Xiong Cha Ti ao Wan 川芎茶调丸 (Chuan Xiong Cha Ti ao Wan)

- with prominent headache

Acupuncture

- GB.20 (feng chi -), Bl.12 (feng men -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Lu.7 (lie que -), LI.4 (he gu -)
  - with wheezing, add ding chuan (M-BW-1)
  - if the nose is congested or runny, add Du.23 (shang xing)
  - the patient should have a mild sweat after a few minutes, although it may only be noticeable on the palms

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as tai yang channel syndrome include the common cold and acute asthma.

1.2 Tai yang organ (Urinary Bladder) syndrome

Pathophysiology
- Wind Cold may penetrate into the Urinary Bladder itself in some cases via the tai yang channel—this is tai yang fu syndrome. The presence of Cold disrupts the ‘transformation of qi in the Urinary Bladder’, that is, it disrupts fluid metabolism.

Clinical features
- the symptoms are those of the tai yang channel syndrome with additional symptoms of urinary difficulty:
  * urinary retention
  * dribbling urine or broken urinary stream
  * scanty urine, oedema
  * nausea with epigastric splash on palpation
• strong thirst with vomiting immediately after drinking

Treatment principle
Expel Cold from both tai yang channel and organ

Prescription
WU LING SAN 五苓散
(Hoelen Five Formula)

ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 澤瀉 .............. 15g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .............. 12g
zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 猪苓 .............. 12g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 .............. 12g
gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .............. 6g

Method: Decoction.

Acupuncture
BL.64 (jing qn), KL.3 (tai xi), SJ.3 (zhong zhu), BL.39 (wei yang),
St.28 (shui dao), BL.28 (pang guang shu), Ren.9 (shui fen ▲)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as tai yang organ syndrome include acute nephritis and gastroenteritis.

1.3 Wind Cold with retention of Phlegm Dampness

Pathophysiology
• This variation is the product of pre-existing Phlegm Damp in the Lungs which is stirred up by a Wind Cold pathogen. It occurs in patients with chronic fluid metabolism problems as a result of prior Lung and Spleen weakness. The main difference between this condition and an uncomplicated Wind Cold invasion is the quantity of mucus.

Clinical features
• simultaneous fever and chills, with chills predominant
• copious clear, watery mucus from the nose and lungs
• dyspnoea or orthopnoea in severe cases
• rattling cough
• fullness in the chest
• sneezing
• no sweating
• stiff neck and muscle aches
• occipital headache
T normal, or with a moist or greasy white coat

P floating and tight, or slightly slippery

Treatment principle
Expel Wind Cold and dry Dampness

Prescription
XIAO QING LONG TANG 小青龙汤
(Minor Blue Dragon Combination)

ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 ..................... 9g
gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .............. 9g
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 .............. 3g
xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 .............. 3g
wu wei zi (Fruitus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .............. 9g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .............. 9g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .............. 9g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
炙甘草 .................................................. 9g

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines
Xiao Qing Long Wan 小青龙丸 (Xiao Qing Long Wan)

Acupuncture
BL.12 (feng men - Ω), BL.13 (fei shu - Ω), SP.3 (tai bai -), ST.40 (jing long -),
SJ.5 (wai guan)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as a Wind Cold with Phlegm Damp pattern include acute bronchitis, acute exacerbation of chronic bronchitis, common cold, influenza, asthma and hayfever.

1.4 Wind Cold with pre-existing internal Heat

Pathophysiology
• If there is pre-existing internal Heat, invasion by Wind Cold will result in a severe influenza like attack. The internal Heat is usually generated by a diet rich in heating foods, alcohol and coffee, or by smoking. It may also result from stress and emotional turmoil leading to chronic qi stagnation with stagnant Heat.
• In some cases the internal Heat can be the product of the intense struggle between the pathogen and the body's wei qi, especially when both are strong.
Clinical features
- high fever with severe chills or rigors
- loud cough with sticky yellow mucus
- no sweating
- severe occipital headache
- generalised muscle aches
- strong thirst with desire for cold drinks
- sore throat
- irritability and restlessness
- dry stools or constipation
- red or with a red tip and edges, and a thin white or yellow coat

Treatment principle
Expel Wind Cold
Clear internal Heat

Prescription
DA QING LONG TANG 大青龙汤
(Major Blue Dragon Combination)

- shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 .............................................. 15g
- ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 ............................. 9g
- xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniaceae) 杏仁 ................... 9g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens)
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .................. 6g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ....................... 3pce

Method: Decoction

Patent medicines
Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pian)
Zhi Sou Ding Chuan Wan 止嗽定喘丸 (Zhi Sou Ding Chuan Wan)

Acupuncture
Du.14 (da zhi - Ω), Bl.12 (jing men - Ω), LI.11 (que chi -), Liu.10 (yu jì -)
LI.4 (bei gu -), Liu.5 (chi ze -), SJ.5 (wai guan -), SJ.2 (ye men -)
- If the throat is very sore and swollen add Lu.11 (shao shang 1) and
  SJ.17 (tian rong -).
2. SHAO YANG SYNDROME

Pathophysiology
• The *shao yang* level is neither internal nor external, but represents a transitional zone between the surface and the interior of the body. Pathogens can hide here and get locked away, sometimes for prolonged periods. The principle of treatment described by the *Shang Han Lun* is to harmonise the *shao yang*. In this context harmonisation means closing the space available to the pathogen. It also refers to the fact that because the disorder is no longer external and not yet internal diaphoresis and purging are inappropriate.

Clinical features
• alternating fever and chills
• nausea
• poor appetite
• hypochondriac pain, distension or tenderness
• fullness in the chest
• dizziness
• irritability
• bitter taste in the mouth
T often unremarkable, or coated only on the left side, or slightly red on the edges
P wiry

Treatment principle
Harmonise *shao yang*

Prescription

XIAO CHAI HU TANG 小柴胡汤
(*Minor Bupleurum Combination*)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣</td>
<td>4pce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines

*Xiao Chai Hu Wan* 小柴胡丸 (Xiao Chai Hu Wan)

Acupuncture

SI.5 (wai guan), GB.39 (xuan zhong), GB.41 (zhi luo qi), Bl.19 (dan shu)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as *shao yang* syndrome include the post acute stage of upper respiratory tract infections, influenza, post viral syndrome, mastitis, malaria, chronic hepatitis, post partum fever and cholecystitis.
• *Shao yang* syndrome is a common presentation of post viral fatigue.

3. YANG MING SYNDROME

• This syndrome is characterised by being fully internal, affecting the Stomach and Intestines. The symptoms and treatments are identical to those described in 'Heat in *yang ming* syndrome of the *wen bing* analysis' (see Appendix 1.1, p.32).
At this stage the fight between the pathogen and the body's "zheng qi" has consumed considerable amounts of the body's resources. Typically the pathogen has 'burnt itself out' in the struggle, so these yin levels represent mostly deficient syndromes.

4. TAI YIN SYNDROME

Pathophysiology
- In tai yin syndrome, qi has been depleted and the qi producing organs are weakened. In Zhang's day, excessive purgation in the treatment of an exterior syndrome (which weakens the Spleen) was thought responsible for tai yin syndrome. This is still relevant today, as occasionally patients (particularly those with a hygienist tendency) attempt to treat colds and flu by purging or enemas.

Clinical features
- abdominal distension, especially after meals
- abdominal pain or discomfort which is relieved by warmth and pressure
- poor appetite
- vomiting of thin fluids
- diarrhoea or loose stools with undigested food
- no thirst
- fatigue and lethargy
- oedema (especially eyes and fingers)
- pale or sallow complexion
- a yellowish discolouration on the inner corner of eyelids
- cold extremities and abdomen
- weakness or heaviness in the limbs
T pale, wet and swollen
P deep and slow

Treatment principle
Warm and tonify Spleen qi and yang

Prescription

FU 7.1 LI ZHONG WAN 附子理中丸
(Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger Formula)

- **zhī fū zǐ** (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ..... 90g
- **gǎn jiāng** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 ......................... 90g
- **rén shēn** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ........................................ 90g
- **bái zhú** (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ................ 90g

**Patent medicines**

- **Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)**
- **Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)**

**Acupuncture**

- Bl.20 (pi shu +▲), Ren.12 (zhong wan +▲), St.36 (zu san li +▲), Du.4 (ming men +▲), Ren.6 (qi bai +▲), Ren.4 (guan yuan +▲), Lu.9 (tai yuan +), Sp.6 (yan jin jiao +)

**Clinical notes**
- Biomedical conditions that may present as tai yin syndrome include chronic gastritis, irritable bowel syndrome, chronic colitis, digestive weakness, leaky gut syndrome, chronic candidiasis, coeliac disease and food intolerances.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct and prolonged treatment.
5. SHAO YIN SYNDROMES

- This level involves the Heart and Kidneys. If there is pre-existing Heart or Kidney weakness, then external pathogens may penetrate to the shao yin level. If Wind Cold attacks the tai yang channels and there is pre-existing Kidney weakness, the main manifestation may simply be a worsening of the Kidney deficiency symptoms. The pattern can go towards either yin or yang deficiency, depending on the patient's constitution.

- The yin deficient pattern usually occurs in those of hot (or yang) constitution—tai yang deficient pattern in those of a cold (or yin) constitution. Historically, excess diaphoresis in the treatment of tai yang syndrome was thought to lead to the yin deficient pattern, due to damage to fluids and yin.

5.1 Heart and Kidney yin deficiency

Clinical features
- low grade fever that rises in the afternoon or evening
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- insomnia, excessive dreaming or nightmares
- lower back pain or weakness
- restlessness and agitation or panic attacks
- poor concentration and memory
- dry throat, mouth and skin
- scanty dark urine or mild dysuria
- tendency to constipation
- tinnitus
- palpitations
- night sweats
- facial flushing, malar flush
- mouth and tongue ulcers
- T red with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish Heart and Kidney yin
Calm the shen

Prescription

TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN 天王补心丹
(Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula)

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .............. 120g
tian dong (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchnensis) 天冬 .......... 30g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ............ 30g

5.2 Heart and Kidney yang deficiency

Clinical features
- cold extremities, aversion to cold
- generalised oedema, with aching and heaviness in the extremities
- copious clear urination, nocturia or oliguria
- fatigue and constant sleepiness; sleeping with knees drawn up to the chest
- cough with thin watery mucus
- palpitations
- dizziness
- abdominal pain which is relieved by warmth and pressure
• lower back ache

  T pale, swollen and wet, with a greasy white coat
  P slow, deep and weak

**Treatment principle**

WARM AND STRENGTHEN HEART AND KIDNEY \(\text{yang}\)

**Prescription**

**ZHEN WU TANG** 真武汤

(*True Warrior Decoction*)

This formula is particularly good for the oedema and fluid metabolism disorders associated with this pattern.

- \(\text{zhi fu zi}^*\) (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 .... 9g
- \(\text{bai zhu}\) (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephale) 白术 ....... 6g
- \(\text{fu ling}\) (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .............................. 9g
- \(\text{sheng jiang}\) (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 ... 9g
- \(\text{bai shao}\) (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .............................. 9g

Method: Decoction. \(\text{zhi fu zi}\) is cooked for 30 minutes before adding the other herbs (*xian jian 先煎*).

**JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN** 金匮肾气丸

(*Rehmannia Eight Formula*)

This is the representative Kidney \(\text{yang}\) strengthening formula, and is excellent as a general \(\text{yang}\) tonic. It is more tonifying to the Kidney than the previous formula, and is preferred for excessive urination and nocturia.

- \(\text{shu di}\) (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquatae) 熟地 ....... 240g
- \(\text{shan yao}\) (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药 ... 120g
- \(\text{shan zhu yu}\) (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 .... 120g
- \(\text{fu ling}\) (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .............................. 90g
- \(\text{ze xie}\) (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泻泻 .............................. 90g
- \(\text{mu dan pi}\) (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 .... 90g
- \(\text{zhi fu zi}^*\) (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 .... 60g
- \(\text{rou gui}\) (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .............................. 40g

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted \(\text{zhi fu zi}\) is cooked for 30 minutes before adding the other herbs (*xian jian 先煎*). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**Collapse of \(\text{yang}\)**

- If this condition progresses to the point where \(\text{yang}\) is on the point of collapse, with icy cold extremities, dulled sensorium, watery diarrhoea,
6. JUE YIN SYNDROMES

Pathophysiology

- A miscellaneous syndrome that includes signs of Heat and Cold and is often associated with internal parasites, historically roundworms. The classical presentation is the pattern that appears in the *Shang Han Lun*. It represents a complex and unusual pattern involving a mixture of Heat, Cold and *qi* deficiency.
- The second pattern, *jue yin* channel syndrome, is a common presentation of migraine type headaches.

6.1 Classical presentation

**Clinical features**

- intermittent abdominal pain
- intense thirst
- painful heat or burning sensation in chest
- a sensation of *qi* rising up and striking the heart
- hunger with no desire to eat
- icy cold extremities
- diarrhoea and vomiting (occasionally vomiting of roundworms)

*Light yellow coat
*P: wiry and rapid

**Treatment principle**

Warm the organs and expel roundworms

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>桃 TimeUnit</th>
<th>Wu Mei Wan 乌梅丸</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Mume Pill)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This interesting formula, with its mix of very hot and very cold herbs, treats a variety or complex patterns characterised by Heat, Cold and *qi* deficiency. It may be used for chronic gastrointestinal conditions with apparent contradictory presentations, for example chronic dysentery with abdominal pain that is relieved by warmth in a patient with a red tongue.

- **wu mei** (*Fructus Pruni Mume*) 乌梅 ............................. 480 (24)g
- **huang lian** (*Rhizoma Coptidis*) 黄连 .......................... 480 (9)g
- **huang bai** (*Cortex Phellodendri*) 黄柏 ........................ 180 (9)g
- **gan jiang** (*Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis*) 干姜 .......... 300 (9)g
- **dang gui** (*Radix Angelicae Sinensis*) 当归 ................... 120 (9)g
- **ren shen** (*Radix Ginseng*) 人参 .......................... 180 (9)g
- **zhi fu zi** (*Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata*) 制附子 180 (6)g
- **gui zhi** (*Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae*) 桂枝 .................. 180 (6)g

**Method:** Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with the doses in brackets, in which case *zhi fu zi* is cooked for 30 minutes before adding the other herbs.

**Modifications**

- With little evidence of Heat, delete or decrease the dose of *zhi fu zi* and *gui zhi*.
- With severe abdominal pain, add **chuan lian zi** (*Fructus Meliae Toosendan*) 川楝子 9g and **mu xiang** (*Radix Aucklandiae Lappae*) 木香 9g.
- With constipation, add **bing lang** (*Semen Arecae Catechu*) 槟榔 9g and **zhi shi** (*Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii*) 枳实 6g.

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as *jue yin* syndrome include ascariasis and other parasitic gut infections, chronic gastroenteritis, chronic colitis and chronic dysentery.

6.2 Jue yin channel syndrome

This pattern reflects rebellious *qi* in the Liver and Stomach channels.

**Clinical features**

- headache, especially at the crown of the head, or migraine
- nausea, vomiting, dry retching
- cold extremities, cold intolerance (especially during episodes)

*Greasy white coat
*P: thread, wiry and slow

**Treatment principle**

Warm the Liver and Stomach
Redirect *qi* downwards, stop vomiting

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>吴茱萸汤 WU ZHU YU TANG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Evdodia Combination)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **wu zhu yu** (*Fructus Evodiae Rutacearum*) 吴茱萸 .............. 6g
- **dang shen** (*Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae*) 党参 ..................... 15g
- **sheng jiang** (*Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens*) 生姜 ... 10 pce
- **da zao** (*Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae*) 大枣 ...................... 6 pce

**Method:** Decoction.
Acupuncture
Liv.3 (tai chong △), PC.6 (nei guan), Du.20 (bai hui △),
St.36 (zu san li + △), Ren.12 (zhong wan △)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as jue yin channel syndrome include: migraine headaches, chronic gastritis, hypertension, trigeminal neuralgia and acute gastroenteritis.
- The jue yin channel pattern generally responds well to correct treatment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tai yang (Urinary Bladder &amp; Small Intestine)</td>
<td>external</td>
<td>Tai yang channel syndrome</td>
<td>chills, fever, no sweating, occipital headache, stiff neck, myalgia, runny nose with thin watery mucus, cough, floating tight pulse</td>
<td>MA HUANG TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tai yang organ syndrome</td>
<td>Same as above with urinary dysfunction; retention of urine, oedema, oliguria, nausea with epigastric splash</td>
<td>WU LING SAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind Cold with Phlegm Damp</td>
<td></td>
<td>Wind Cold with internal Heat</td>
<td>high fever with severe chills or rigors, cough with yellow sputum, no sweating, myalgia, sore throat, constipation, irritability, floating, tight &amp; rapid pulse</td>
<td>XIAO QING LONG TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind Cold with internal Heat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shao yang (Gall Bladder &amp; San jiao)</td>
<td>between the exterior &amp; the interior</td>
<td>alternating fever &amp; chills, nausea, anorexia, fatigue, bitter taste, hypochondriac pain, fullness in the chest, dizziness, irritability, wiry pulse</td>
<td></td>
<td>XIAO CHAI HU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yang ming (Stomach &amp; Intestines)</td>
<td>internal</td>
<td>Heat in the yang ming channel</td>
<td>high fever, sweating, thirst, irritability, dry yellow tongue coat, flooding, rapid pulse</td>
<td>BAI HU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat in yang ming organ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>constipation, abdominal pain worse for pressure, tidal fever, thick dry yellow or brown tongue coat, deep strong pulse</td>
<td>DA CHENG QI TANG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table A1.2b Overview of Shang Han Lun patterns, yin levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Pathology</th>
<th>Features                                                                alon</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tai yin (Spleen &amp; Lung)</td>
<td></td>
<td>abdominal distension, abdominal pain betterfor warmth, anorexia, loose stools or diarrhoea, fatgue, oedema, pale complexion, cold extremities, weak limbs, pale swollen tongue, deep slow pulse</td>
<td>FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN</td>
<td>Fu Zilizhongwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shao yin (Heart &amp; Kidney)</td>
<td></td>
<td>'Hot transformation' - Heart &amp; Kidney yin deficiency</td>
<td>low grade afternoon fever, five hearts hot, insomnia, much dreaming, poor memory, dry mouth, palpitations, night sweats, anxiety, facial flushing, mouth ulcers, red dry tongue, thready, rapid pulse</td>
<td>TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>internal</td>
<td>'Cold transformation' - Heart &amp; Kidney yang deficiency</td>
<td>cold intolerance, cold extremities, generalised oedema, copious urination, nocturia, fatigue, sleepiness, palpitations, low back ache, pale swollen tongue, deep weak pulse</td>
<td>ZHEN WU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jue yin (Liver)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jue yin syndrome</td>
<td>intense thirst, heat in the chest, qi rising up to strike the heart, hunger with no desire to eat, icy extremities, diarrhoea &amp; vomiting, wiry, rapid pulse</td>
<td>WU MEI WAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jue yin channel syndrome</td>
<td>headache, nausea, vomiting, dry retching, cold extremities, wiry, thready pulse</td>
<td>WU ZHU YU TANG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disorders of the Lung

2. Cough

**Acute patterns**
- Wind Cold
- Wind Heat
- Warm Dryness
- Cool Dryness
- Lung Heat (Fire)

**Chronic patterns**
- Lung qi deficiency
- Lung yin deficiency
- Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
- Phlegm Damp
- Blood stagnation

**Acute or Chronic patterns**
- Phlegm Heat
- Liver Fire

Appendix - fei yong (Lung Abscess)
Coughing, in the language of TCM, is simply a failure of the natural descent of Lung *qi*, or a rebellion of Lung *qi* upwards. There are two general mechanisms: Lung *qi* which is too weak to descend, and simply 'floats' upwards; or blockage of Lung *qi*'s downward movement by a pathogen.

The first mechanism is one of deficiency, associated with weakness of Lung *qi* or *yin*. One aspect of healthy Lung function is the descent of Lung *qi* (and Fluids) to the Kidneys for reprocessing. When Lung *qi* is too weak to descend properly, it simply 'floats' upwards. *Yin* deficiency can cause cough by drying Lung Fluids and generating deficient Heat which rises, taking Lung *qi* with it.

The second mechanism is one of excess, and the result of obstruction to Lung *qi* by external pathogens like Wind, Cold or Heat, or by internally generated pathogens like Phlegm, Dampness, Heat, pathological fluids or stagnant *qi*. Excess cough may be acute or chronic. When associated with external pathogens the cough is usually acute, whereas Phlegm Damp coughs are often chronic. Excess type cough often has some deficiency at its root. For example the cough due to Spleen and Kidney *yang* deficiency occurs because of a failure of fluid metabolism—pathological fluids accumulate in the Lungs and obstruct Lung *qi*—a mixed excess and deficient pattern.

**AETIOLOGY**

**External pathogens**

Any of the external pathogens, but particularly Wind Cold, Heat and Dryness, can give rise to cough due to the relatively superficial and therefore vulnerable position of the Lungs. The Lungs are considered to be the 'delicate' organ, easily affected by environmental conditions. Entry to the Lungs may be through the nose and mouth, or through the skin (the Lungs and skin are closely related).

**Lung deficiency**

This refers to Lung *qi* or *yin* deficiency. The Lungs need a moist environment to function properly and are easily damaged by heat and dryness. Lung *qi* may be compromised by poor posture, shallow breathing and lack of exercise, or conversely by repeated or extreme physical overexertion. Prolonged or unexpressed grief or sadness can weaken Lung *qi*. If Spleen *qi* is deficient then Lung *qi* will not be supported via the generating (*sheng* 生) cycle.

Lung *yin* can be damaged by dry hot environments, inhalation of heating substances like tobacco, inhaled steroids and bronchodilators, and as a secondary result of Kidney *yin* deficiency.

**Spleen *qi* deficiency and Phlegm**

Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw, sweet or greasy foods or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen *qi*. Weakness of the Spleen can lead to the generation of Dampness which over time may congeal into Phlegm. Once Phlegm is present, it can accumulate in the Lungs. TCM classics describe the Spleen as "the creator of Phlegm, the Lungs are the storehouse of Phlegm". Similarly, a primary Spleen weakness can lead to Lung weakness (due to the five phase generating (*sheng* 生) cycle relationship). If the Lungs are chronically weak they may fail to send the appropriate fluid portion to the Kidneys. These congested fluids may become Phlegm over time.

**Liver invading the Lungs**

The Liver and the Lungs have a close relationship. According to the controlling (ke 前) cycle of five phase theory (Fig 2.1), the Lungs restrain the Liver and prevent it from getting too 'strong'. When the Lungs are weak or the Liver too 'strong' (that is Liver *qi* is stagnant or there is some other excess pattern involving the Liver), then the controlling cycle breaks down and the pent up Liver energy rebels backwards—a reverse controlling cycle. The distinguishing feature of a Liver invading Lung cough is its relationship to stress or emotional disturbance.

Prolonged Liver *qi* stagnation can also contribute to the generation of Phlegm. This it does firstly by invading and weakening the Spleen which...
then produces Dampness and Phlegm, and secondly by retarding movement and distribution of fluids which over time congeal into Phlegm.

**Kidney deficiency**

Kidney function can influence respiration in several ways. The Kidney plays a role in respiration—it aids in the 'grasping' of qi. As Lung qi descends with a breath, the Kidney is said to anchor it. If the Kidney is weak this anchoring function is poor and the inspired qi floats upwards. Lung and Kidney yin have a close relationship. If Kidney yin is weak, or there is deficient Heat generated by yin deficiency, this can affect Lung yin—the Heat can dry up Lung yin, or the yin simply fails to be supported by the weakened Kidney.

Kidney (and Spleen) yang deficiency can give rise to cough by failing to move and process fluids—these fluids accumulate in the Lung and block the descent of Lung qi. Although this type of cough is based on a profound deficiency, the manifestation (i.e. the cough) is excess, and in some cases can be severe and even life threatening.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Those coughs characterised by the presence of a pathogen are excess by definition, those characterised by an absence of some physiological substance (usually qi or yin) are deficient. Excess coughs tend to be acute, and are generally loud and paroxysmal. Deficient coughs tend to be chronic and weak, and worse with exertion, at night or when fatigued.

The first step in diagnosis is to determine whether the cough is acute or chronic. Acute cough is of no more than a couple of weeks duration, and is usually due to external pathogens, although it may also be of internal origin, for example Liver invading the Lungs. Acute cough is always excess. Chronic cough is either deficient or excess, or more commonly, a mixture of both and is defined by its recurrent and prolonged nature. In general a cough that persists longer than a few weeks is considered chronic.

**TREATMENT**

Most types of cough respond quite well to TCM treatment, especially those acute coughs due to invading exterior pathogens. Chronic and deficient types also generally respond well, however the possibility of a more sinister cause, like carcinoma should be kept in mind in those patients with persistent and unresponsive cough. A common type of cough, and one that needs no specific therapy other than avoidance of tobacco, is the smoker's cough. In the absence of any major damage to the Lung yin, simply stopping smoking will resolve the problem.

Acupuncture is the treatment of choice in the initial stages of an exterior attack—it is simple, quick and quite reliable, and the patient often leaves the clinic cured or feeling much better. For the chronic deficiencies (especially yin deficiency), herbs are generally better, although a combination of herbs and acupuncture may offer the best possible approach.
**BOX 2.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Acute and chronic**
- Acute cough is excess
- Chronic cough is deficient or excess or mixed

**Aggravation**
- worse with exertion or when tired - deficiency
- worse in the afternoon or evening - yin deficiency
- worse in the morning - Phlegm
- worse with emotional upset - rebellious Liver qi invading the Lungs

**Mucus**
- copious indicates the presence of Phlegm
  - and yellow or green - Phlegm Heat
  - and white - Phlegm Damp
  - thin and watery - Cold fluids
- no mucus - Heat, Dryness or yin deficiency
- blood streaked - Lung Heat, Fire or yin deficiency

**Sound**
- loud, hacking and barking - excess
- weak (and usually dry) - deficiency
- loose and rattling - Phlegm

---

**Fig 2.3 Acute and chronic cough**
2.1 WIND COLD

Pathophysiology
- Wind Cold enters through the pores, tai yang channels and Lungs, and obstructs the descent of Lung qi. Lung qi then accumulates and ascends, causing cough. Because the nature of Cold is to ‘freeze and constrict’, it will shut the pores behind it, trapping the pathogen in the superficial layers of the body.

Clinical features
- Acute cough, which is frequent and loud with a moderate amount of thin clear or white mucus. Initially the cough may be non productive.
- simultaneous fever and chills, chills more prominent than the fever
- no sweating
- occipital or frontal headache
- muscle aches, neck stiffness
- nasal obstruction, or runny nose with thin watery mucus
- dyspnoea and wheezing
- sneezing
- T normal or with a thin white coat
- P floating, or floating and tight

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and Cold
Redirect Lung qi downward, stop cough

Prescription
HUA GAI SAN (Canopy Powder)

- ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 ................................. 9g
- sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 .......................... 9g
- su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescens) 苏子 ................................ 9g
- xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 ................................... 9g
- chi fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Rubrae) 赤茯苓 ......................... 9g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ................................. 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .............................. 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Modifications
- If Wind Cold exterior signs are severe (muscle aches, chills greater than fever) add fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 9g and qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 羌活 9g.
- If the cough is severe and distressing, add zi wan (Radix Asteris Tatarici) 紫菀 9g and kuan dong hua (Flos Tussilagi Farfarae) 赭衣花 9g.
- With frontal headache or severe nasal congestion add bai zhi (Radix Angelicae) 白芷 9g.
- If the cough is productive, with thick white mucus, fullness in the chest and epigastrium, a greasy white tongue coat and a soggy pulse add zhang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 益气 9g and hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
With pre-existing thin Fluids in the Lungs
- When there are pre-existing thin fluids in the Lungs (usually due to underlying Spleen and Lung deficiency), they can be stirred up by a Wind Cold invasion. In addition to the Wind Cold pattern there is expectoration of copious thin watery mucus, copious thin watery nasal discharge and excessive lacrimation. The correct treatment is to disperse Wind Cold from the exterior, and warm and transform fluids with XIAO QING LONG TANG (Minor Blue Dragon Combination)

- ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 ........................................... 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .................................... 9g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 苍术 ................................. 9g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .................................. 6g
- gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 ............................. 3g
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 ......................................... 9g
- wu we zhi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .......................... 3g
- zhi g an c ao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ............ 3g

Method: Decoction to be taken hot. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xin)

With Heat in the Lungs
- If there is Heat in the Lungs combined with external Wind Cold (known as ‘Cold wrapping up Fire’), there will be symptoms of loud cough with sticky yellow mucus, laboured breathing, fever and chills, no sweating, myalgia, nasal congestion or clear nasal discharge. The correct treatment is to dispel Wind Cold, clear Lung Heat and redirect qi downwards with MA XING SHI GAN TANG (Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination 麻杏石甘汤 modified, see Lung Heat p.84).

With qi deficiency
- An alternative to the primary prescription, particularly useful in weak or rundown patients who contract a Wind Cold, and in those who are
unable to throw a cold off, is **SHEN SU YIN** (*Ginseng and Perilla Combination* 参苏饮 modified, p.21). Also useful for Wind Cold coughs in children.

**Patent medicines**

*Gan Mao Ling* 感冒灵 (*Gan Mao Ling*)
*Gan Mao Qing Ke Chong Ji* 感冒清热冲剂 (*Colds and Flu Tea*)
*Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji* 感冒止咳冲剂 (*Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji*)
*Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan* 川芎茶调丸 (*Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan*)
- with prominent headache

**Acupuncture**

LI.4 (he gu -), Lu.7 (lie que -), GB.20 (feng chi -), Bl.12 (feng men - Ω),
Bl.13 (fei shu - Ω), Lu.5 (chi ze -), Ren.17 (shang zhong -), Ren.22 (tian tu -)
- with wheezing add *ding chuan* (M-BW-1)
- if the nose is congested or runny add Du.23 (shang xing)

**Clinical notes**

- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as common cold, upper respiratory tract infection, influenza, acute asthma, croup or pharyngitis.
- This pattern responds well to correct and timely treatment.

---

### 2.2 WIND HEAT

**Pathophysiology**

- This pattern is due to Wind Heat which invades the Lungs through the nose and mouth, or Wind Cold which transforms into Heat, blocking the descent of Lung qi.

**Clinical features**

- acute hacking, dry cough, or cough with sticky, yellow, difficult to expectorate mucus
- mild fever with little or no chills
- nasal obstruction, or a nasal discharge which is thick and yellow or green
- sore, dry or scratchy throat
- thirst
- mild sweating
- headache (usually frontal)
- *T* normal or red tipped with a thin white or yellow coat
- *P* floating and rapid

**Treatment principle**

Expel Wind and clear Heat
Redirect Lung qi downward, stop cough
Transform Phlegm

**Prescription**

**SANG JU YIN 桑菊饮**
(*Morus and Chrysanthemum Formula*) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sang ye (Folium Mori Albae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmitis Communis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycladi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian hu (Radix Peucedani)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Do not cook for more than 20 minutes. *Bo he* is added near the end of cooking (*hao xia* 后下). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lia Chuang Shou Ce)
Modifications

- If the cough is severe, add **yu xing cao** (Herba Houttuyniae) 鱼腥草 15g and **zhi pi pa ye** (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae) 炙枇杷叶 9g.

- If the Heat is relatively severe, with high fever and strong thirst, add **huang qin** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g, **zhi mu** (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 9g and **gua lou** (Fructus Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌 12g to powerfully clear Lung Heat. See also Lung Heat, p.84 and **fei yong** (Lung Abscess), p.109.

- With sore throat add **she gan** (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 射干 9g. See also Sore Throat, p.285.

- If there is epistaxis or mild haemoptysis or blood streaked mucus, add **bai mao gen** (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 18g and **ou jie** (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 艾节 9g.

- Nausea, vomiting, fullness in the epigastrium, loose stools or explosive diarrhoea with tenesmus indicate that Summer Heat is also involved—add **huo xiang** (Herba Agastachis seu Pogostei) 厚香 12g, **pei lan** (Herba Lupatorti Fortunel) 佩兰 9g and **xiang ru** (Herba Elsholtzia Splendentis) 香薷 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Post Wind attack residual cough

- If Wind Cold and Wind Heat are indistinguishable, or if the cough lingers on after the exterior symptoms (either Hot or Cold) have been resolved, or if it relapses with itchy throat, hard to expectorate mucus and no exterior symptoms, use **ZHI SOU SAN** (Stop Coughing Powder 止咳散).
  - **jie geng** (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ......................... 9g
  - **zi wan** (Radix Asteris Tataricis) 紫菀 ......................... 9g
  - **bai bu** (Radix Stemonae) 百部 ............................ 9g
  - **bai qian** (Radix et Rhizoma Cynanchi Biaqian) 白前 ........... 9g
  - **jing jie** (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 条芥 ........ 6g
  - **chen pi** (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ................ 6g
  - **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ................ 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: **Zhi Yang Zhong Yao Xue**)

Post Wind attack residual cough with shaoyang symptoms

- Sometimes following resolution of acute symptoms a paroxysmal or dry cough develops. The cough is worse at night. This is the commonly encountered post infectious cough (less commonly whooping cough). It is often accompanied by loss of appetite, fatigue, dizziness and occasional mild alternating fever and chills. The treatment is to expel residual pathogens (from shaoyang) and stop the cough with **XIAO CHAI HU TANG** (Minor Bupleurum Combination 小柴胡汤) modified.

### Patent medicines

**Yin Qiao Je Du Pian** 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)

**Gan Mao Ling** 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)

**Ban Lan Gen Chong Ji** 板蓝根冲剂 (Ban Lan Gen Chong Ji)

**Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao** 栓贝枇杷膏 (Nin Jiom Pei Pa Kao)

- an excellent syrup for dry, irritating cough

**African Sea Coconut Cough Syrup**

**Xiao Chai Hu Wan** 小柴胡丸 (Xiao Chai Hu Wan)

### Acupuncture

**Du.14** (da zhu - Ω), **Bl.12** (feng men - Ω), **Bl.13** (fei shu - Ω), **LI.11** (que chi -), **LI.4** (be gu -), **Lu.5** (chi ze -), **SI.5** (wai guan -)

- If the throat is very sore and swollen, add **Lu.11** (shao shang -) and **SI.17** (tian rong -)

### Clinical notes

- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as common cold, tonsillitis, upper respiratory tract infection, tracheitis, laryngitis, whooping cough, croup, acute bronchitis or the early stage of measles.

- This pattern responds well to correct and timely treatment. In cases of severe croup, however, medical attention or hospitalisation may be required.

- Post acute or residual coughs may require longer treatment due to the deeper level of damage to jin and fluids that may ensue.
2.3 WIND AND DRYNESS

• Warm Dryness
• Cool Dryness

Pathophysiology
• Dryness patterns are due to pathogenic Wind and Dryness (with either Heat or Cold depending on the season) invading the Lungs. It usually occurs during dry seasons or periods of dry weather, which damage Lung fluid and obstruct the descent of Lung qi. Today, due to air conditioning and climate controlled buildings, this syndrome can occur at any time of the year.

2.3.1 Warm Dryness

Clinical features
• Dry hacking non-productive cough. The cough may cause chest pain. If there is any mucus present, it is usually scant, sticky, thick and hard to expectorate, and possibly blood streaked.
• dry throat, mouth, nose and lips
• headache
• mild fever or chills
• T normal or with a red tip and a thin yellow dry coat
• P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat from the Lungs, moisten Dryness
Redirect Lung qi downward, stop cough

Prescription
SANG XING TANG (桑杏汤) 
(Morus and Apricot Seed Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient (Source)</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sang ye (Folium Mori Albae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nan sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae)</td>
<td>24g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmitis Communis)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quan gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li pi (Fructus Pyri)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction.

Modifications
• With severe Heat, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 12g and shi gao (Gypsum) 18g.
• With severe headache and fever, add bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 18g, lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa) 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
• If Warm Dryness persists, or the Dryness is severe enough to damage Lung yin, this can give rise to a frequent hacking non-productive cough, fullness and pain in the chest and behind the sternum, headache, haemoptysis, parched throat, wheezing and a dry tongue without coat. The correct treatment is to moisten Dryness, clear Heat and nourish Lung yin with QING ZAO JIU FEI TANG (Eriobotrya and Ophiopogon Combination 清燥救肺汤).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient (Source)</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>18-30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang ye (Folium Mori Albae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heizi (Semen Sesami Indici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nan sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e jiao (Gelatinum Corii Asini)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction.

Patent medicines

Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)
Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
Sang Ju Yin Pian 桑菊饮片 (Sang Chu Yin Pian)
Zhi Sou Wan 止咳丸 (Zhi Sou Wan)
Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao 川贝枇杷膏 (Nin Jiom Pei Pa Kao)
2.3.2 Cool Dryness

Clinical features
- cough with little or no mucus
- ticklish or itchy dry throat
- dry nose and lips
- mild headache
- chills, mild fever
- no sweating
- thin white dry coat
- P floating and tight

Treatment principle
Clear the Lungs, moisten Dryness
Redirect Lung qi downward, stop cough

Prescription

XING SU SAN 杏苏散
(Apricot Kernel and Perilla Leaf Powder)

chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 9g
zi su ye (Fruktus Perillae Frutescens) 紫苏叶 6g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 6g
qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 6g
jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 6g
zhi ke (Fruktus Citrus Aurantii) 枳壳 6g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 6g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Feng Ji Xin)

Patent medicines
- Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
- Zhi Sou Wan 止嗽丸 (Zhi Sou Wan)
- Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao 川贝枇杷膏 (Nin Jiom Pei Pa Kao)

Acupuncture (applicable to both Dryness patterns)
Bl.12 (fei men - Ω), Bl.13 (fei shu - Ω), Lu.5 (chi ze -), Lu.7 (lie que -), Lu.9 (tai yuan +), Kid.7 (fu lin +), Kid.6 (zhao bai +)

- Acupuncture is excellent for expelling Wind and stopping cough, but is of limited value in moistening dryness.

Clinical notes (applicable to both patterns)
- The cough in these patterns may be associated with biomedical conditions such as common cold, upper respiratory tract infection, tonsillitis or bronchitis.
- This pattern responds well to correct treatment, however, herbs are better suited for moistening dryness than acupuncture. If the disorder is recurrent, the patient's environment (air conditioning, climate controlled buildings etc.) may need to be assessed and modified if possible. Sipping pear juice is useful.
2.4 LUNG HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Lung Heat results from the penetration of a pathogen into the Lungs, usually Wind Heat, although Wind Cold may generate Heat once in the Lungs. By this stage, however, the Heat is internal and there are generally no exterior symptoms remaining.

Clinical features
- dry, hacking, painful cough with little or no mucus; if there is a small amount of mucus, it is sticky and hard to expectorate and may be blood streaked
- fever with or without sweating
- chest tightness and pain
- sensation of heat in the chest
- red complexion and nose
- dry mouth and thirst
- shortness of breath, laboured breathing or wheezing
- T red or with a red tip and a yellow coat
- P flooding and rapid, or wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat from the Lungs
Redirect Lung qi downwards, stop cough

Prescription
MA XING SHI GAN TANG (Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi ma huang* (honey fried Herba Ephedra)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu xing cao (Herba Houttuyniae)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi sang bai pi (honey fried Cortex Mori Albae Radicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction.

Modifications
- If there are any signs of Wind Cold remaining, use unprocessed ma huang (Herba Ephedra).
- With chest pain, add tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g and yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g.
- If the cough is severe, add ma dou ling* (Fructus Aristolochiae) 乌泡 9g and zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae) 焙枇杷叶 9g.
- With mild haemoptysis or blood streaked mucus, add qian cao tan (charred Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 茜草炭 12g, bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根 9g and ce bai ye tan (charred Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 侧柏叶炭 12g. See also Haemoptysis, p.193.
- With severe thirst, add tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthis Kirilowii) 天花粉 9g.
- With sore throat, add 2 or 3 of the following herbs: she gan (Rhizoma Belamacandae) 射干 9g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 党参 15g, jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 松花 9g or ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaeraceae seu Calvatiae) 马勃 3g. See also Sore Throat, p.289.

Variations and additional prescriptions
Severe Heat ("Lung Fire")
- If the Heat is more severe and systemic (termed 'Lung Fire') with a loud, barking, painful cough, fever, concentrated urine, constipation, dry mouth and tongue with mouth ulcers, severe thirst, malaise and restlessness, the correct treatment is drain Fire downwards and unblock the bowels with LIANG GE SAN (Cool the Diaphragm Powder 冷隔散).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mang xiao (Mirabilimentum)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decocotion. Bo he is added near the end of cooking (bou xin 后下), mang xiao is dissolved in the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服). (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Niu Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
2.5 PHLEGM DAMP

Pathophysiology
- Phlegm Damp causes a chronic cough-the result of inappropriate diet or recurrent respiratory tract disease such as bronchitis, tonsillitis or sinusitis which has been treated with antibiotics (see p.131). It is especially common in children and those with a dairy rich diet. It is most often a mixed excess (Phlegm Damp) and deficiency (Spleen and Lung) condition. The correct treatment depends on ascertaining the mixture of deficiency and Phlegm. Because of its obstructing quality, Phlegm Damp may periodically become hot, causing acute Phlegm Heat cough or wheeze.

Clinical features
- chronic or recurrent cough with profuse thin or thick white or clear mucus; there is a noticeable rattle in the chest with coughing and it tends to be worse in the morning and after eating
- fullness and stuffiness in the chest and epigastrium
- poor appetite
- nausea or vomiting
- loose stools
- lethargy and weakness
- Pale and swollen with toothmarks and a moist, greasy white coat
- Soft and slippery

Treatment principle
Strengthen the Spleen, dry Damp
Transform Phlegm, stop cough

Prescription
ER CHEN TANG 二陈汤
(Citrus and Pinellia Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 清贝母</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枳壳</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zi wan (Radix Asteris Tatarici) 紫菀</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
kuan dong hua (Flos Tussilaginis Farfarae) 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 3g
Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

**Modifications**

- With very copious mucus, loss of appetite, epigastric fullness and a thick tongue coat, add **bai jie zi** (Semen Sinapis Albae) 白芥子 6g, su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 苏子 6g and **lai fu zi** (Semen Raphani Sativi) 拉芥子 6g.
- With Cold (aversion to cold, watery mucus, cold extremities, chilliness), add **xi xin** (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 3g and **gan jiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 6g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

- **Spleen and Lung qi deficiency with Phlegm accumulation**
  - If Spleen deficiency appears to be prominent the treatment should primarily strengthen the Spleen to resolve Phlegm. The guiding formula is **LIU JUN ZI TANG** 六君子汤.
    - **dang shen** (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 参参 12g
    - **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 12g
    - **chao bai zhu** (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 茅术 12g
    - **ban xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g
    - **chen pi** (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
    - **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6g
    - **sheng jiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 3pce
    - **da zao** (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 4pce
  - Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yan Xue)

**Chronic and recurrent Cold Phlegm in the Lungs**

- In older patients and children with chronic wheezing (see appendix, p.157), Phlegm Damp, Cold and Kidney deficiency combine to produce a pattern that recurs every Winter. In this pattern, there are repeated attacks of productive cough with thin watery mucus, usually triggered by a Cold invasion during the Winter months. Wheezing, breathlessness and tightness in the chest are common, particularly at night and early in the morning. The mucus may also be scanty and tenacious. In severe cases there is orthopnoea. There may also be weakness and pain of the lower back and legs, fatigue and oedema of the extremities. The treatment is to redirect qi downward, stop cough and wheezing and warm and transform Cold Phlegm. The guiding prescription is **SU ZI JIANG QI TANG** 苏子降气汤.

su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 苏子 9g
ban xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 3g
zhi g an cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 3g
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomum Cassiae) 肉桂 3g
Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and take 6-grains as a draught, 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted, in which case powdered rou gui is added to the strained decoction (zheng fu 作煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yan Xue)

**Patent medicines**

- **Su Zi Jiang Qi Wan** 苏子降气丸 (Su Zi Jiang Qi Wan)
- **Er Chen Wan** 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan)
- **Tong Xuan Li Fei Pian** 通宣理肺片 (Tong Hsuan Li Fei Pien)
- **Qi Guan Yan Ke Sou Tan Chuan Wan** 气管炎咳痰喘丸 (Cough and Phlegm Pills)

**Acupuncture**

BL.13 (fei shu ▲), BL.43 (gao huang shu ▲), BL.20 (pi shu ▲), LI.5 (shi ze -), LI.7 (tie que -), LI.9 (tai yuan -), LI.13 (zhang men +), SI.3 (tai bai +), ST.40 (feng long -), SP.6 (san yin jiao +), ST.36 (zhi san li +)
- with wheezing add **ding chuan** (M-BW-1)
- with fullness in the chest add PC.5 (jian shi)

**Clinical notes**

- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as upper respiratory tract infection, chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, emphysema or asthma.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment.
- Dietary modification, in particular reduction of dairy products, sugar, greasy foods and in some patients, wheat, is essential for good results.
In elderly patients and children with recurrent Cold Phlegm, prolonged treatment is needed for satisfactory results.
2.6 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Phlegm Heat is related to Lung Heat and Phlegm Damp. Lung Heat can be either dry or congealed Lung fluids. When congealed, fluids become Phlegm Heat. This usually follows a Wind Heat (or Cold) pathogenic invasion of the Lungs. See also fei yong (Lung Abscess), p.111.
• Phlegm Heat cough can also occur as an acute flareup in those with chronic Phlegm Damp in the Lungs, particularly where there is a pre-existing tendency to Heat as a result of overindulgence in heating substances like alcohol, spicy foods and tobacco.
• Phlegm Heat in the Lungs is mostly acute, however in some patients it can linger at a low level and become chronic, with consequent involvement of the Spleen. The key feature is the continued presence of yellow or green Phlegm. The accompanying symptoms are generally milder.

Clinical features
• hacking cough with profuse thick, yellow or green, hard to expectorate mucus; in some cases there may be blood streaked mucus
• fullness and stuffiness in the chest and epigastrum
• wheezing that tends to be worse at night and first thing in the morning
• poor appetite, nausea
• loose stools or constipation
• lethargy and weakness
• maybe a sore or congested throat
• bitter taste in the mouth
T thick, greasy, yellow coat, although maybe only on the root
P soft or slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Phlegm and clear Heat
Redirect Lung qi downward, stop cough

Prescription
QING JIN HUA TAN TANG 清金化痰汤
(Clear Metal, Transform Phlegm Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ingredient</th>
<th>quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhe bei mu (Bulbus Frilitariae Thunbergii) 浙贝母</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

jiegeng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 9g
yu xing cao (Herba Houttuyniae) 鱼腥草 30g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuan Shao Ce)

Modifications
• With streaks of blood in the mucus or haemoptysis, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根 9g, chao pu huang (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄 9g and ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 蒲黄 9g. See also Haemoptysis, p.195.
• If there is vigorous Lung Heat with high fever, distressing cough, wheezing and severe thirst, delete jie geng and chen pi and add jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 15g, shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 20g and ting li zi (Semen Cercidiphyllum japonicum) 丁香 9g.
• With constipation, add Da huang (Radix et Rheum Rhei) 大黄 6-9g.
• During the convalescent stage of this condition, the patient often has night sweats, residual hard to expectorate mucus and fatigue due to the Heat damaging Lung yin. In this case, add di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮 12g and qing hao (Herba Artemisiae Annuae) 青蒿 12g and more herbs to nourish Lung yin. See also fei yong (Lung Abscess), p.111.

Variations and additional prescriptions
• In cases where the mucus is yellow or green, purulent and foul smelling, WEI JING TANG (Reed Decoction 芦茎汤) modified, may be selected. Traditionally indicated for Lung abscess, it is appropriate for cases with significant Phlegm Heat and Toxic Heat (i.e. with pus in the mucus, like severe bronchitis or pneumonia). See also fei yong (Lung Abscess) p.111.
• lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 芦根 30g
• yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 肥儿 30g
• dong gua ren (Semen Benincassae Hispidae) 冬瓜仁 24g
• tao ren (Semen Persicae) 杏仁 9g
• yu xing cao (Herba Houttuyniae) 鱼腥草 30g
• jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 15g
• huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
• jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 9g

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines
Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan 清气化痰丸 (Pinellia Expectorant Pills)
Qing Fei Yi Hua Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Chuan Ke Ling 喘咳灵 (Chuan Ke Ling)
She Dan Chuan Bei Ye (She Dan Chuan Bei Ye)

Acupuncture
Lu.5 (zhé -), St.40 (fēng long -), Lu.6 (kōng zú -), Lu.7 (lì que -), J.I.11 (qu shì -), Bl.13 (shí shìr -), Lu.10 (ju jī -), Ren.17 (shān zhòng)
- with wheezing add dīng chuan (M-BW-1)
- with fullness in the chest add PC.5 (jiān shì)

Clinical notes
- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as acute and chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, pneumonia, whooping cough or lung abscess.
- Generally responds reasonably well to correct treatment, plus avoidance of heating foods and tobacco. In severe cases, and in the elderly, frail or debilitated, concurrent use of antibiotics may be necessary to quickly cool the Heat. Herbs and acupuncture support the swift action of the antibiotics, and finish the job by expelling the pathogen, clearing residual Phlegm, strengthening resistance and nourishing damaged yīn.

2.7 LIVER FIRE INVADING THE LUNGS

Pathophysiology
- Liver Fire invading the Lungs can be acute or chronic. Most commonly the episodes of coughing are acute and provoked by some intense emotional situation. The cough typically persists for several weeks then subsides, only to recur weeks or months later. Liver Fire invading the Lungs is an example of a reverse controlling (kē, p.70) cycle disorder. This usually occurs in someone with chronic Liver qi stagnation, so there is a large emotional component, and satisfactory long term treatment must deal with both the underlying Liver qi stagnation and acute manifestation of Fire. Once the acute episode is under control, the underlying qi stagnation needs to be dealt with so as to prevent recurrence.

Clinical features
- Paroxysmal, severe cough; the cough comes in bursts, and causes focal chest and hypochondriac pain. The cough is aggravated or provoked by stress, emotional turmoil and anger. There may be blood streaked mucus.
- During episodes of coughing, the patient may get hot, flushed and upset. The cough often drags on, or reoccurs fairly regularly and may become self-perpetuating as anxiety and worry about the illness further complicates the existing emotional stress.
- red face and red sore eyes
- bitter taste in the mouth, thirst
- quick temper, irritability, restlessness, depression
- hypochondriac tension or discomfort
- dizziness, headaches
- on examination, acupuncture points like Liv.14 (qì men) and Liv.3 (tài chóng) are very tender and reactive

T: red and dry with a thick or thin yellow coat
P: wiry or slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Liver Fire, moisten the Lungs and transform Phlegm

Prescription
DAI GE SAN 黛蛤散
(Indigo and Conch Powder) plus
QING JIN HUA TAN TANG 清金化痰汤
(Clear Metal, Transform Phlegm Decoction) modified

This formula is best for severe cases and for patients with concurrent Phlegm Heat.
This formula is not as cooling as the primary prescription and is more suitable for mild cases.

- **sang bai pi** (Cortex Mori Albace Radicis) 桑白皮 12g
- **sang ye** (Folium Mori Albace) 桑叶 9g
- **di gu pi** (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮 15g
- **mu dan pi** (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 4.5g
- **zhu ru** (Caulis Bambusae in Taenias) 竹茹 6g
- **zhe bei mu** (Tilebus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 神贝母 9g
- **geng mi** (Semen Oryzae) 桂皮 9g
- **zh im gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 薄甘草 1.8g
- **da zao** (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 2pce

**Method:** Decoction. **Source:** Formulas and Strategies

**Modifications (apply to both prescriptions)**
- If insomnia and restlessness are severe add **huang lian** (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g and **dan zhu ye** (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 10g.
- With blood streaked mucus, delete **jie geng** and **mai dong,** and add **mu dan pi** (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 10g, **ou jie** (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 驱血节 10g, and **xian he cao** (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 30g.
- With constipation, add **da huang** (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g.
- With chest or flank pain, add **yu jin** (Tuber Curculae) 郁金 9g and **chuan lian zhi** (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 9g.

*With severe Liver Heat, add **long dan cao** (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 6-9g.

**Follow up treatment**
- For patients prone to this type of disorder, a *qi* regulating formula (in combination with relaxation and stress management) is indicated once the acute phase has settled. Appropriate *qi* moving formulae include **XIAO YAO SAN** (Bupleurum and Dong Gui Formula) (p.139), **SI NI SAN** (Frigid Extremities Powder) (p.926), **YUE JU WAN** (Escape Restraint Pill) (p.567) and **CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN** (Bupleurum and Cyperus Formula) (p.566).

**Patent medicines**
- **Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan** 清气化痰丸 (Pinellia Expectorant Pills)
- **Long Dan Xie Gan Wan** 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- **Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian** 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
- **Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian** 穿心莲抗炎片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

**Acupuncture**
- BL13 (fei shu -), Lu.5 (shi ze -), Liv.2 (xing jian -), Liv.3 (tai chong -), GB.34 (yang lin quan -), BL18 (gan shu -), Liv.14 (qi men -), PC.6 (nei guan -)
  - With haemoptysis add Lu.6 (kong zui -)

**Clinical notes**
- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as pleurisy, upper respiratory tract infection, tonsillitis, bronchitis, pneumonia, tracheitis, whooping cough in adults, chronic chest infection or chronic bronchitis.
- The acute episode responds well to correct treatment, however the underlying *qi* stagnation often needs a comprehensive approach involving relaxation, stress management and removal (or amelioration of) the factors causing stress.
- In severe cases or in debilitated patients, concurrent use of antibiotics (especially if there is also Phlegm Heat) along with TCM treatment may be necessary to control the acute phase.
2.8 LUNG YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- When Lung yin is damaged by chronic or severe disease, febrile diseases, smoking, excessive use of bronchodilators, or prolonged exposure to hot or drying environments a chronic cough may develop. Lung yin deficiency can also follow Kidney yin deficiency.
- Lung yin deficiency can cause cough in two ways. Firstly as an expression of the weakness of the Lungs descending function, and secondly from the rising of any resultant yin deficient Heat.

Clinical features
- Chronic weak, dry cough, with little or no mucus. If mucus is present, it is hard to expectorate, sticky and may be blood streaked. There may be occasional haemoptysis in severe cases.
- Dry mouth and throat
- Low grade fever which rises in the afternoon or evening
- Facial flushing or malar flushing
- Night sweats
- A sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- Emaciation, fatigue
- Red and dry, with little or no coat, or a peeled coat (mirror tongue)
- Threaded and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish Lung yin to stop cough
Moisten the Lungs, transform Phlegm

Prescription

**BAI HE GU JIN TANG 百合固金汤**
*(Lily Combination)*

This formula is selected in milder cases, when Lung yin deficiency is primary.

- **bai he** (Bulbus Lilii) 百合 24g
- **sheng di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae 生地) 12g
- **shu di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitates 熟地) 18g
- **mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici 麦冬) 15g
- **xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae 玄参) 9g
- **chuan bei mu** (Bulbus Frullariase Cirrhosae 川贝母) 9g
- **jie geng** (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 9g
- **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归) 9g
- **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora 白芍) 9g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis 甘草) 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: *Formulas and Strategies*)

**YUE HUA WAN 月华丸** *(Moonlight Pill)* modified

This formula has a stronger tonifying action than the primary prescription and is used for more severe and chronic cases. It is commonly used for consumptive Lung disease.

- **sha shen** (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 30g
- **mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 30g
- **tian dong** (Tuber Asparagus cochinchinensis) 天冬 30g
- **sheng di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae 生地) 30g
- **shu di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitates 熟地) 30g
- **bai bu** (Radix Notoginseng 白术) 30g
- **shen yao** (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae 山药) 30g
- **e jiao** (Gelatinum Cori Asini) 阿胶 30g
- **chuan bei mu** (Bulbus Frullariase Cirrhosae 川贝母) 30g
- **ju hua** (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 60g
- **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 15g
- **san qi** (Radix Notoginseng 三七) 15g
- **sang ye** (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 60g
- **kuan dong hua** (Flos Tussilagi Farfarae) 茜冬花 9g

Method: Decoction or pills. When decocted the dose is reduced by 50%-70%. To make pills, grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 3-5 pills daily. (Source: *Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue*)

Modifications (where not already included)
- With haemoptysis, delete **jie geng** and add **ou jie** (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 藕节 10g, **san qi fen** (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 5g or **bai ji fen** (Rhizoma Bletillae Striatae) 白及粉 5g, the last two to the strained decoction.
- With severe cough, add **bai bu** (Radix Stemonae) 白术 9g, **zi wan** (Radix Asteris Tataricae) 紫菀 9g and **kuan dong hua** (Flos Tussilagi Farfarae) 茜冬花 9g.
- If there is some stick, deeply rooted mucus, add **hai ge ke fen** (powdered Concha Cyclinae Sinensis) 海蛤壳粉 3g to the strained decoction.
- If there is prominent afternoon or tidal fever, add **yin chai hu** (Radix Scutellariae Dichotomae) 银柴胡 10g, **di gu pi** (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮 15g and **huang qin** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g.
- With copious mucus left over following an acute upper respiratory tract infection in a patient with pre-existing yin deficiency, the principle is to carefully clear the mucus first, before nourishing Lung yin.
Variations and additional prescriptions

Lung and Kidney yin deficiency
• With Lung and Kidney yin deficiency (signs of Lung yin deficiency with lower back, knee and heel pain, tinnitus, dizziness), the correct treatment is to nourish Lung and Kidney yin with MAI WEI DI HUANG WAN (Ophiopogon, Schizandra and Rehmannia Formula) as guiding formula.

Heart yin deficiency
• With Heart yin deficiency (irritability, palpitations, insomnia and mouth ulcers), XUAN MIAO SAN (Wonderful Scrophularia Powder 玄妙散) may be used instead.
  - xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 9g
  - dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 9g
  - nan sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 南沙参 12g
  - fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadici) 茯苓 12g
  - bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 9g
  - mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 茅冬 9g
  - jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 枳椇 9g
  - chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosa) 川贝母 9g
  - xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 9g
  - he huan hua (Flos Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢花 9g
  - dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 3g
  - deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Effusae) 灯心草 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhe Yi: Ke Ke Xue)

Lung yin damage following a febrile illness
• If the yin deficiency produces substantial Heat or follows a febrile disease which damages Lung yin, with a dry cough and wheeze, dry and parched throat and scanty or blood streaked mucus, BU FEI E JIAO TANG (Tonify the Lungs Decoction with Ass-Hide Gelatin 补肺阿胶汤) may be selected as the guiding formula.
  - e jiao* (Gelatunum Corii Asini) 阿胶 9g
  - ma dou ling* (Fructus Aristolochiae) 马兜铃 6g
  - xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 9g
  - niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappace) 牛蒡子 6g
  - nuo mi (Semen Oryzae) 糯米 12g
  - gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 汤化). (Source: Shi Yong Zhe Yi: Ke Ke Xue)

Patent medicines

Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan 养阴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)

Acupuncture
BL13 (fei shu+), BL43 (gao huang shu+), Lu.9 (tai yu an+), Lu.5 (shi zhe -), Lu.7 (lie que), Kid.6 (zhao hai), BL.23 (shen shu+), Kid.3 (tai xi +),
• with severe Heat add Lu.10 (yin ji -)

Clinical notes
• The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as emphysema, chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, silicosis, pulmonary tuberculosis, pharyngitis, atmospheric pollution or long term medicated asthma.
• This pattern can be difficult to treat satisfactorily, and success is largely dependent on the degree of deficiency and the chronic nature of the disorder. Long term therapy is necessary. Many patients will need adjuvant medical treatment for some time. Many chronic and long term lung diseases fall into this category.
• When Lung yin is damaged following an acute febrile illness or Phlegm Heat, there is usually residual Phlegm in the Lungs that may persist for some time. This complicates treatment because yin tonics aggravate Phlegm, and Phlegm resolving herbs can damage yin. The general principle of treatment however, is to first clear the excess, then tonify. Clearing of residual Phlegm without damaging yin can usually be achieved with gentle patent medicines such as She Dan Chuan Bei Kou Fu Ye 蛇胆川贝液 (Snake Bile and Fritillaria Liquid).
2.9 LUNG QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- When Lung qi is weak, its descending function is impaired and a chronic cough results.

Clinical features
- Chronic, weak cough which tires the patient out, and which is aggravated or initiated by exertion, fatigue or exposure to wind. Mucus, if present, is thin and mostly clear, frothy or white.
- shortness of breath
- spontaneous sweating
- aversion to wind
- frequent colds
- weak low voice or a reluctance to speak
- fatigue
- T pale with a thin white coat
- P weak

Treatment principle
Tonify Lung qi, calm cough
Transform thin mucus

Prescription
BU FEI TANG 补肺汤
(Tonify the Lungs Decoction)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>药物</th>
<th>用量</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi huang qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>18-30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquatae)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi zi wan (honey fried Radix Asteris Tatarici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi You Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With thin mucus, delete sang bai pi, and add bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 9g, fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 12g, gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 6g, ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 9g, chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 6g, hou po (Cortex Magnolie Officinalis) 9g, xing ren* (Semem Pruni Armeniacae) 9g.
- With spontaneous sweating, add mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 15g, ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 9g, fu xiao mai (Semen Triticum Aestivum) 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency
- With Spleen deficiency as well (loose stools, poor appetite, puffy eyelids, sallow complexion, abdominal distension, copious watery mucus), the correct treatment is to strengthen the Spleen to resolve Phlegm with LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination) modified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>药物</th>
<th>用量</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou po (Cortex Magnolie Officinalis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semem Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi You Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Lung qi and yin deficiency
- Lung deficiency syndromes frequently overlap. The copious sweating of qi deficiency can damage yin and the chronic cough of yin deficiency can deplete Lung qi, so it is not uncommon to see Lung qi and yin deficiency together in the clinic. The manifestations are a combination of the syndromes—chronic cough with scant mucus that is hard to expectorate, shortness of breath, spontaneous sweating, a dry mouth and tongue, a pale or pink and swollen tongue with surface cracks and little coating, and a weak and thready pulse. The guiding formula for tonifying Lung qi and yin is SHENG MAI SAN (Generate the Pulse Powder 脉散).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>药物</th>
<th>用量</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>9-15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>9-12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis)</td>
<td>3-6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. White ginseng (bai ren shen 白人参) is preferred here as it is less heating than the Korean variety.

Patent medicines

Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan)
Yu Ping Feng Wan 玉屏风丸 (Yu Ping Feng Wan)
Shen Qi Da Bu Wan 参芪大补丸 (Shen Qi Da Bu Wan)
Sheng Mai Wan 生脉丸 (Sheng Mai Wan)
Ren Shen Yang Ying Wan 人参养营丸 (Ginseng Tonic Pills)

Acupuncture
Bl.13 (fei shu + △), Bl.43 (gao shuang shu + △), Lu.9 (tai yuan +), Lu.7 (lie que), Du.14 (da zhuihui + △), St.36 (zusan li + △).
Clinical features
- chronic, recurrent cough with thin watery mucus, usually with wheezing and dyspnoea; the cough is worse with exertion
- generalised oedema, possibly pitting oedema
- cold intolerance
- cold, heavy limbs
- spontaneous sweating
- nocturia or difficult urination
- dizziness and palpitations
- T pale and swollen with a moist white coat
- P deep and slippery

Pathophysiology
- This pattern is characterised by a failure of Spleen and Kidney yang to adequately process fluids. These fluids accumulate in the Lungs and obstruct the descent of Lung qi. The cough can be quite severe, especially when there is a lot of fluid in the Lungs, in which case removing the excess fluid through diuresis is the treatment priority. Once the condition has stabilised, appropriate treatment for strengthening Spleen and Kidney yang can be phased in.

Clinical notes
- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as chronic bronchitis, asthma, weak immunity, emphysema or hayfever.
- Generally responds well to correct and prolonged treatment.

Treatment principle
Warm yang, disperse Cold
Transform qi to move fluids

Prescription
ZHENG WU TANG 真武湯
(True Warrior Decoction)

This formula has a powerful fluid mobilising and diuretic activity, and is used when there is fluid in the Lungs causing cough. Once the fluid has resolved, other yang strengthening formulae may be more appropriate (see variations).

zhì fu zǐ* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 .... 9g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)茯苓 ....... 9g
shēng jiāng (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens)生姜 .... 9g
bài shāo (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora)白芍 ........... 9g
bái zhū (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 ......... 6g

Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zǐ is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (sàn jìan 先煎). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Ingredients:
- zhì fu zǐ (制附子): 9g
- fu ling (茯苓): 9g
- shēng jiāng (生姜): 9g
- bái shāo (白芍): 9g
- bái zhū (白术): 6g

*Note: zhì fu zǐ is boiled for 30 minutes before adding the other ingredients.

Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue
Modifications

- For severe cough, add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinale) 6g, xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 3g and wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 6g.
- With severe fluid accumulation in the Lungs, add ting li zhi (Semen Descurainiae seu Lepidii) 9g.
- If there is fullness in the chest and hypochondrium, add bai jie zi (Semen Sinapis Albae) 9g and xuan fu hua (Flos Inulae) 9g.
- For severe shortness of breath, add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 12g.
- With loose stools, add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinale) 6g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

- Once the cough has stabilised and excess fluid drained from the Lungs, the treatment principle is to strengthen Spleen and Kidney yang with a formula like JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN (Rehmannia Eight Formula 金匮肾气丸, p.150).

Acupuncture

BL.20 (pi shu + △), BL.23 (shen shu + △), Ren.9 (shui fen △), Ren.6 (qi hai + △), Kid.7 (fu liu -), Kid.3 (zai xi +), Sp.9 (yin long guan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), St.36 (zu san / zu san -)

- with orthopnoea from fluid in the Lungs, add St.28 (shui dao - △)
- with nocturia, add Ren.4 (guan yuan + △)

Clinical notes

- The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as congestive cardiac failure, pulmonary oedema, chronic bronchitis or chronic asthma.
- This pattern can be tricky to treat satisfactorily, largely dependent on the degree of deficiency. Fluid metabolism, however, generally improves fairly quickly. Long term therapy is necessary to maintain the result.

2.11 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- A Blood stagnation cough usually follows some sort of trauma to the chest wall, like contusions or fractures of the ribs. It may also reflect the late stage of a serious Lung disease, such as lung cancer.

Clinical features

- Recurrent, irritating cough (with a history of trauma or other chronic Lung disease), which tends to be worse at night. If there is mucus it is usually scanty, or may be blood streaked or may have dark patches of clotted blood. There may be pain around the site of the injury during coughing episodes.

Treatment principle

Resolve stagnant Blood in the Lungs, stop cough

Prescription

XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐瘀汤 (Achyranthes and Persica Combination) modified

tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................................... 12g
hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 .................................. 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ................................ 9g
xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 ................................ 9g
chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 .......................... 9g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ............................... 9g
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 .................................. 6g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ................................ 6g
jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ................................ 6g
zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枳壳 .................................... 6g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ........................... 6g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ........................................... 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 甘草 ................................ 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

Modifications

- With blood streaked mucus or dark clotty material in the mucus, add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 五七粉 5g and bai mao gen
LUNGS

(Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 9g.

Patent medicines
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Dan Shen Pian 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)
Jian Kang Wan 健康丸 (Suinho Mutú Ginseng Tablets)
Sheng Tian Qi Pian 生田七片 (Raw Tian Qi Ginseng Tablets)
Jin Gui Die Shang Wan 筋骨跌伤丸 (Chin Koo Tseh Shang Wan)
Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消瘡瘀丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 如科乌金丸 (Woo Garm Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Bl.17 (ge shu -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Li.5 (chi zee -), Li.4 (he gu -),
Liv.3 (tai chong -), PC.6 (nei guan), Sp.10 (xue hai -)
• with haemoptysis, add Lu.6 (kong zhi -)
• following trauma, add points of pain (ah shi)

Clinical notes
• The cough in this pattern may be associated with biomedical
  conditions such as traumatic chest injury, lung cancer, pulmonary
  tuberculosis, chronic obstructive airways disease (COAD), emphysema
  and chronic asthma.
• If due to a recent trauma to the chest wall, this pattern can respond
  quite well to correct treatment (following appropriate resetting of
  broken ribs etc.). However, late stage Lung disease (for example long
  term damage to Lung jin by smoking) is difficult to resolve with TCM
  alone.

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open
circle° or a hat°, see the tables on pp.944-952.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR COUGH

Acute
Wind Cold - Hua Gai San 华盖散
• with congested fluids - Xiao Qing Long Tang 小青龙汤
• with internal Heat - Ma Xing Shi Gan Tang 麻杏石甘汤

Wind Heat - Sang Ji Yin 桑菊饮
• persistent cough after resolution of exterior symptoms
  - Zhi San San 止咳散

Wind Dryness
• Warm Dryness - Sang Xing Tang 桑杏汤
  - with damage to yin - Qing Zao Jiu Fei Tang 清燥救肺汤
• Cool Dryness - Xing Su San 杏苏散

Lung Heat - Ma Xing Shi Gan Tang 麻杏石甘汤
• Lung Fire - Liang Ge San 凉隔散

Phlegm Heat - Qing Jin Hua Tan Tang 清金化痰汤
• with purulent mucus - Wei Jing Tang 薇荎汤

Liver Fire - Dai Ge San 黛蛤散 + Qing Jin Hua Tan Tang 清金化痰汤

Chronic
Phlegm Damp - Li Chen Tang 二陈汤
• with Spleen qi deficiency - Liu Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤
• recurrent, with Kidney deficiency - Su Zi Jiang Qi Tang 苏子降气汤

Phlegm Heat - Qing Jin Hua Tan Tang 清金化痰汤

Liver Fire - Sang Dan Xie Bai Tang 桑丹泻白汤

Lung jin deficiency - Bai He Gu Jin Tang 百合固金汤
• with Kidney jin deficiency - Mai Wei Di Huang Wan 麦味地黄丸
• with Heart jin deficiency - Xuan Miao San 玄妙散
• following a febrile disease - Bu Fei El Jiao Tang 补肺解表汤

Lung qi deficiency - Bu Fei Tang 补肺汤
• with jin deficiency - Sheng Mai San 生脉散
• with Spleen qi deficiency - Lin Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤

Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency - Zhen Wu Tang 铁芪汤
• after cough has stabilised - Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸

Blood stagnation - Xue Fu Zhu Yu Tang 血府逐瘀汤
In TCM terms, feiyong can develop in those attacked by powerful pathogenic Wind Heat, which may combine with pre-existing Phlegm or Phlegm Heat to generate Toxins. The term Toxin (du 痧) is defined here as a highly concentrated focus of pathogenic energy that destroys tissue to create pus.

The direct translation of feiyong is Lung abscess which can be somewhat misleading. In TCM terms, feiyong includes any severe suppurative lung infection manifesting with malodorous, purulent, discoloured sputum. This includes diseases such as bronchitis, pneumonia, pulmonary gangrene, bronchiectasis, and, of course, lung abscess.

In China, the disease diagnosis of feiyong is frequently the starting point for the analysis and treatment of severe, acute, suppurative lung infection. At a particular level of severity, the clinical features are similar regardless of the individual patient, and the main feature of treatment is recognition of the correct stage. Three stages are discussed; early, middle (with obvious pus formation and severe systemic symptoms) and convalescent stage. The various stages are marked by a progression from exterior excess to internal excess, and ultimately to deficiency.

AETIOLOGY
Toxic Heat
The presence of Toxic Heat is a key feature defining this pattern. Toxic Heat is an intense and concentrated species of Heat (alone or with Dampness or Phlegm) that is usually external (and occasionally epidemic) in origin. Most frequently Wind Heat is the pathogen responsible, although Wind Cold can transmute into Heat once lodged in the Lungs. When an area affected by Heat is constrained and the Heat unable to dissipate, destruction of the local tissue occurs, forming pus.

DIAGNOSIS
In the early stages feiyong resembles a straightforward Wind Heat attack, and indeed the initial prescription is very similar. The difference becomes apparent after a day or two as the condition progresses. The severity of the fever, rigors, cough with purulent sputum and general malaise provide clues as to the presence of Toxic Heat.

1. EARLY STAGE
Pathophysiology
- This stage of feiyong is due to simple invasion of a strong Wind Heat (or transmuted Wind Cold) pathogen. Alternatively, pre-existing Phlegm Damp can be inflamed by Wind Heat to create the early stage of feiyong. The body seals off a portion of the Heat which then intensifies, generating a locus of Toxic Heat. At this stage, the pattern (usually) resembles a Wind Heat attack with severe systemic symptoms.

Clinical features
- acute fever and chills or rigors
- chest pain which is worse when coughing
- cough with scant, sticky white or yellowish sputum
- painful or wheezy and difficult respiration
- dry throat, mouth, nose and lips
- lethargy, malaise, weakness, poor appetite

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and Heat
Clear Heat from the Lungs and transform Phlegm

Prescription
YIN QIAO SAN 银翘散
(Lonicera and Forsythia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 连翘</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu xing cao (Herba cum Radice Houttuyniae Cordatae) 羽腥草</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 芦根</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pu gong ying (Herba Taraxaci Mongolici) 潘公英</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 桔梗</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桃梗</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 竹叶</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellaria Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Cook no longer than 30 minutes. (Source: Zong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shen Ci)
Modifications

- With headache, add ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 12g, sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 10g and man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 连刺子 10g.
- For a severe, distressing cough, add xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 10g and chuan bei mu (Bulbus Frullariarum Cirrhosae) 川贝母 10g.
- With severe thirst for cold drinks, add sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 15g, mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 天冬 10g and tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 15g.
- With severe wheezing, combine with MA XING SHI GAN TANG (Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination) 麻杏石甘汤, p.31.

Patent medicines

QING FEI YI HUO PIAN 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
CHUAN XIN LIAN KANG YAN PIAN 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
MA XING ZHI KE PIAN 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pien)
NIU HUANG JIE DU PIAN 牛黄解毒片 (Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien)

Acupuncture

Du.14 (da zhu-), Du.12 (shen zhu-), Du.10 (jing tai-), BL.13 (fei shu-),
Lu.5 (chi ze-), Lu.7 (tie que-), LI.4 (he gu-), LI.11 (gu chi-),
SJ.5 (wai gan-), Lu.10 (yu ji-)

Clinical notes

- This pattern may be diagnosed as bronchitis, pneumonia, bronchiectasis, upper respiratory tract infection, asthmatic bronchitis and the early stage of lung abscess.
- This pattern can respond well to correct and timely treatment. This is usually a fairly serious infection and concurrent use of antibiotics may be necessary in some patients to quickly cool the Heat. Herbs and acupuncture can support the swift action of the antibiotics, to finish the job by expelling the pathogen, clearing residual Phlegm, strengthening resistance and nourishing damaged jin. In the latter stages of fei yang, i.e. when aiding the discharge of pus, stopping night sweats and aiding convalescence, TCM treatment excels.
- Acupuncture can be applied 2-3 times daily in severe cases.

2. MIDDLE STAGE (SUPPURATION, RUPTURE STAGE)

Pathophysiology

- At this stage the Heat and Toxins have intensified and damaged portions of Lung tissue, creating pus and Blood stasis.

Clinical features

- high fever with or without rigors
- the cough is hacking and painful, with expectoration of copious purulent malodorous mucus; the mucus may be streaked with blood
-restricted movement of chest, laboured breathing
- sweating
- dry mouth and throat
- irritability, restlessness, lethargy, malaise
- a chest X-ray at this stage may show a space occupying lesion
- T red with a greasy yellow coat
- P slippery and rapid, or flooding and rapid

Treatment principle

Clear Heat and Toxins
Disperse accumulation of pus and Blood stasis

Prescription

QIAN JIN WEI JING TANG 千金苇茎汤 (Reed Decoction) plus
JIE GENG TANG 桔梗汤
(Platycodon Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmitis Communis) 芦根</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi ren (Semen Coicos Lachryma-jobi) 苡仁</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semen Persicae) 赤杏仁</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dong gua ren (Semen Benincasae Hispidae) 冬瓜仁</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu xing cao (Herba cum Radice Houttuyniae Cordatae) 薏苡草</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa) 连翘</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhe bei mu (Bulbus Frullariarum Thunbergii) 浙贝母</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Cook no longer than 30 minutes. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)
Modifications

- With severe Heat and thirst, add shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 30g cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs, zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 12g and shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山桅子 15g.
- With severe Toxic Heat, add ban zhi lian (Herba Scutellariae Barbatae) 半枝莲 15g, ban bian lian (Herba Lobeliae Chinensis) 半边莲 15g and zi hua di ding (Herba cum Radice Violae Yedoensis) 紫花地丁 30g.
- For fullness in the chest and wheezing with copious sputum, add ting li zhi (Semen Descurainiae seu Lepidii) 葶苈子 10g, sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 15g and gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 医楼 15g.
- With chest pain, add yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 15g and yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 9g and zhi shi (Fructus Citri Auranti Immaturus) 枳实 10g.
- With blood streaked sputum, delete jie geng, tao ren and chi shao, and add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 30g, ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatis) 藕节 15g, bai ji (Rhizoma Bletillae Striatae) 白芨 15g, and mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 12g, or add YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yunnan White Powder 云南白药) to the strained decoction.
- If the Heat has damaged the yin, with relapsing afternoon and evening fever, restlessness, insomnia and night sweats, add di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Radicis) 地骨皮 9g, qing hao (Herba Artemesiae Annuae) 青蒿 15g and bie jia° (Carapax Amydae Sinensis 贝甲 15g. See also Convalescent stage, p.114.

Patent medicines

Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan 清气化痰丸 (Pinellia Expectorant Pills)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗菌片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
Huang Lian Su Pian 黄连素片 (la bellea Berberini)
Niu Huan Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian 麻杏止咳片 (Ma 1sing Chih Ke Pien)
Niu Huang Jie Du Pian 牛黄解毒片 (Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien)

Acupuncture

Lu.5 (chi zhe), Lu.1 (zhong fu), St.40 (jeng long), Bl.13 (fei xu),
Du.14 (da zhi), Du.12 (shen zhu), Du.10 (ting tai), Lu.6 (kong zhi),
Ren.17 (shan zhong), SJ.6 (zhi gong), PC.7 (da tang)

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may be diagnosed as middle (or suppurative) stage fei yong include bronchitis, pneumonia, bronchiectasis, upper respiratory tract infection, asthmatic bronchitis and ruptured lung abscess.
- This pattern can respond well to correct treatment. See also clinical notes, p.110.
3. CONVALESCENT STAGE

Pathophysiology
- At this stage, the patient is recovering and the pathogen has subsided. Zheng qi has been damaged and is weak. Following a strong Heat pathogenic disorder Lung, yin and fluids are damaged, and the general pattern shifts from an excess Heat to a deficient Heat. The main features at this stage are drenching night sweats, weakness and marked irritability.

Clinical features
- lingering low fever which tends to rise in the afternoon and evening
- easing cough with small quantities of sputum, which may still contain some purulent material
- spontaneous sweating, drenching night sweats
- weakness and fatigue
- mild chest pain
- shortness of breath
- poor appetite
- dry mouth and throat
- irritability and restlessness
- insomnia
  - Red with a thin yellow coat
  - P thready, rapid and weak

Treatment principle
- Strengthen and tonify qi and yin
- Clear any remaining Toxins

Prescription

**SHA SHEN MAI MEN DONG TANG** 沙参麦门冬汤
(Adenophora and Ophiopogon Combination) modified

- sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 .............. 15g
- mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 .................. 15g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .................. 15g
- chao yi ren (dry fried Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 炒苡仁 .15g
- huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ................. 15g
- jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 .................. 15g
- tai zi shen (Radix Pseudostellariae Heterophyllae) 太子参 ....... 12g
- he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 .............. 24g
- bai ji fen (powdered Rhizoma Bletillae Stiratae) 白及粉 ........ 9g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 栝楼 .................... 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .................. 6g

**yu xing cao** (Herba cum Radice Houttuyniae Cordatae)
- 鱼腥草 .................................................. 15g

Method: Decoction. Cook no longer than 30 minutes. **Bai ji fen** is added to the strained decoction (zheng fu 冲服). (Source: Zheng Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou He)

Modifications
- For persistent low fever, add **di gu pi** (Cortex Lycii Radicis) 地骨皮 9g,
- **bai wei** (Radix Cynanchi Baiwei) 白薇 9g and **qing hao** (Herba Artemesiae Annuae) 青蒿 15g.
- For severe drenching night sweats, add **qing hao** (Herba Artemesiae Annuae) 青蒿 15g, **di gu pi** (Cortex Lycii Radicis) 地骨皮 9g, **mu li** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g and **ma huang gen** (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9g.
- If the Spleen has been weakened, with poor appetite, indigestion and abdominal distension, delete **sheng di** and add **dang shen** (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 15g, **bai zhu** (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 9g and **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 15g.
- For persistent cough, add **gua lou** (Fructus Trichosanthis) 桔梗 15g, **pi pa ye** (Folium Erictotryae Japonicae) 枇杷叶 10g and **chuan bei mu** (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 10g.
- If there is persistent bloody sputum, add **san qi fen** (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 6g and **bai mao gen** (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根 12g, or combine with **YUN NAN BAI YAO** (Yin Nan White Powder 云南白药).

Patent medicines

**Sheng Mai Wan** 生脉丸
- **Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan** 养阴清肺丸
- **Luo Han Guo Chong Ji** 罗汉果冲剂
- **Bai He Gu Jin Wan** 百合固金丸
- **She Dan Chuan Bei Ye** 珊瑚川贝液

- Excellent for difficult to expectorate residual sputum

**Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan** 清气化痰丸
- For irritability add Ht.7 (shen men) and Liv.8 (gu quan)
Clinical notes
• This pattern occurs in the convalescent stage of disorders such as bronchitis, pneumonia, bronchiectasis, upper respiratory tract infection and asthmatic bronchitis.
• Ongoing treatment at this stage can produce good results. The nightsweats and residual fever usually improve rapidly.

Disorders of the Lung

3. Wheezing

Excess patterns
Wind Cold
Wind Cold with congested fluids
Wind Cold with internal Heat
Wind Heat
Phlegm Damp
Phlegm Heat
Qi stagnation

Deficient patterns
Lung qi and yin deficiency
Lung and Spleen qi deficiency
Lung and Kidney yin deficiency
Kidney yang deficiency

Appendix 1 – Asthma
Appendix 2 – Paediatric asthma
In Chinese medicine, wheezing refers to a sense of tightness, congestion, breathlessness or constriction in the chest with difficult inspiration. The term asthma is commonly used when referring to this condition, however true asthma is only one of a number of biomedical diagnoses that may fall into the TCM category of wheezing, hence the adage of Western medicine, ‘All that wheezes is not asthma, however a lot of it is’. Because asthma is diagnosed so frequently, a separate discussion is warranted (appendix 1 and 2, pp.155, 157).

In TCM terms, wheezing is due to failure of Lung qi to descend as it naturally should. There are two primary mechanisms, excess and deficient. Excess wheezing is due to obstruction to Lung qi by an external pathogen (Wind plus Heat or Cold) or internally generated pathogens (Phlegm, Heat or qi stagnation). Deficient wheezing occurs when Lung qi is too weak to descend under its own steam, or Kidney qi is unable to grasp qi and aid the Lungs. In either case, the end result is accumulation of qi in the chest, leading to a sense of fullness, tightness or constriction.

Wheezing may be acute or chronic, and in many cases acute episodes occur on a background of chronic disease. In severe cases, the breathing difficulty may be serious enough to cause severe distress, and perhaps precipitate collapse, anoxia and even death. This is a medical emergency requiring immediate hospitalisation.

**AETIOLOGY**

**External pathogens**

Any of the external pathogens can give rise to wheezing due to the relatively superficial and therefore vulnerable position of the Lungs. Most frequently implicated are Wind Cold (as Cold constricts the bronchi, narrowing the airway) and Wind Heat. The Lungs are considered to be the ‘delicate’ organ and easily affected by the environment. Entry to the Lungs may be through the nose and mouth, or the skin (the Lungs and skin are closely related). In most cases there will also be an underlying deficiency, allowing Wind (plus Cold or Heat) to enter.

**Spleen deficiency**

Spleen deficiency can contribute to wheezing by leading to weakness of Lung qi and by generating Phlegm. Spleen deficiency is frequently implicated in the chronic wheezing of children. Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw or sweet foods, or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen qi or yang. Long term or frequent use of antibiotics can weaken the Spleen and encourage the generation of Dampness and Phlegm.

**Phlegm Damp, Phlegm Heat**

Phlegm is frequently implicated in wheezing. It can be the result of several factors. In the Western world, diet is a common cause of Phlegm accumulation. Overeating generally, which stresses the digestive system leading to inefficient digestion and build up of Dampness and Phlegm, is common. Similarly, a high average consumption of dairy foods, sugar, meat and fatty foods, commonplace in the developed world, is a significant contributing factor to the manufacture and accumulation of Phlegm and Dampness.

Phlegm Heat may accumulate if too much rich food is consumed or if pre-existing Heat in the body congeals Fluids into Phlegm.

Prolonged Liver qi stagnation may damage the Spleen and retard the movement of fluids which congeal into Phlegm. A tendency to Phlegm problems may also be constitutional.

Yang deficiency (affecting any or all of the Kidneys, Spleen or Heart) can cause impaired fluid metabolism and retard movement of Fluids, with consequent accumulation of Phlegm Fluids.

Once Phlegm is present it can gather in the Lungs (the Lungs are the ‘storehouse’ of Phlegm). In the Lungs, Phlegm may be obvious (as an ongoing rattle, cough or throat clearing) or latent. If the Phlegm is latent (or hidden), it may only appear when an external pathogen flushes it out.

**Liver qi stagnation**

The Liver system is the one most affected (and easily obstructed) by stress, frustration, anger and repressed emotion. It strongly affects the chest because
of the pathway of the channel, and the position of the Liver organ itself, directly beneath the diaphragm. Once the circulation of Liver qi is disrupted, qi can accumulate in the chest causing a sensation of tightness, stuffiness, distension and, particularly, difficulty getting a deep breath.

Complications of qi stagnation can also contribute to wheezing. Liver qi stagnation can damage the Spleen and retard fluid movement, causing buildups of Dampness and congealing of fluids into Phlegm. Prolonged qi stagnation can also generate Heat. The common feature of all varieties of Liver qi stagnation type wheezing is provocation with emotional turmoil and stress.

**Lung deficiency**
This refers to Lung qi or yin deficiency. When the Lungs are weak, Lung qi may not be able to follow its correct trajectory, and ascends or simply accumulates in the chest instead of descending. Lung qi may be compromised by poor posture, shallow breathing and lack of exercise, or conversely by repeated or extreme physical overexertion. Prolonged, excessive or unexpressed grief or sadness can weaken Lung qi. Lung qi deficiency can also lead to Phlegm accumulation, as the fluids that should be sent to the Kidney for reprocessing accumulate and congeal in the Lungs. If Spleen qi is deficient then Lung qi will not be supported via the generating (sheng) cycle. Lung qi can be damaged by dry hot environments, febrile diseases, smoking and as a secondary result of Kidney yin deficiency. Lung qi may also be dispersed by the use of some bronchodilating medications.

**Kidney deficiency**
Kidney qi aids the Lungs in the grasping of qi. As Lung qi descends with a breath, the Kidney anchors it. If the Kidney is weak this anchoring function is inadequate and the inspired qi is not drawn down completely.

**TREATMENT**
The majority of patients presenting with wheezing disorders are already medicated and their symptoms generally controlled. They will have inhalant medications to control their acute attacks, usually drugs like salbutamol, theophylline or beclamethasone.

The main aim of TCM treatment, therefore, is to improve Lung function and gradually decrease the reliance on drugs. The long term side effects of bronchodilators (Box 1, p.155) warrant persistent efforts to reduce the reliance on the drugs if possible.

TCM is also effective during acute episodes, or during periods of frequent or uncontrolled attacks. During an episode, the main principle of treatment is to first stop the wheezing, and then when the patient is more comfortable, deal with the root. There are therefore two distinct phases of treatment:
- treatment during an acute episode of wheezing
- treatment in between episodes

TCM treatment can have the most far reaching effect in the phase between acute episodes with the aim of strengthening lung function and reducing or eliminating attacks. In general, the longer a patient has been medicated, the more treatment the patient will require (this is especially true for adults, children are generally more responsive), and the enduring results come from regular and persistent treatment. In very chronic cases, one or two years of treatment may be required. The main point is that results in long term wheezing disorders are slow, and patients often get discouraged. As well as good quality treatment, lots of reassurance and positive encouragement are necessary when treating these chronic patterns.
3.1 WIND COLD

Pathophysiology

- Wind Cold invades the Lungs, blocking the descent of Lung qi, causing accumulation of qi, constriction of the chest and wheezing. This pattern generally occurs as an acute episode or an acute exacerbation of a chronic condition.
- The exterior symptoms noted below may not be present in every case. Wind Cold may simply penetrate the Lungs, constricting the bronchi. This corresponds to an acute attack of wheezing triggered by cold air or weather change.

Clinical features

- acute wheezing and tightness in the chest which may be triggered by cold air, cold drinks or weather changes
- cough with thin Watery or frothy mucus
- simultaneous fever and chills, chills more prominent than the fever
- no sweating
- occipital or frontal headache, muscle aches, neck stiffness
- nasal obstruction, or runny nose with thin watery mucus, sneezing
- T normal or with a thin white coat
- P floating, or floating and tight

Treatment principle

Dispels Wind and Cold
Redirect Lung qi downwards, stop wheezing

Prescription

MA HUANG TANG 麻黄汤
(Ma Huang Combination)

This prescription is for wheezing with clear exterior signs. Generally once sweating occurs the wheezing will subside.

- ma huang* (Herba Ephedrae 麻黄) ................................................. 9g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae 桂枝) .............................. 6g
- chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae 炒杏仁) 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae 茯苓) .................................................. 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With no clear exterior signs, delete gui zhi and use zhi ma huang* (honey fried Herba Ephedrae 炙麻黄).
- For severe wheezing, add su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis 苏子) 9g

and qian hu (Radix Peucedani 前胡) 9g.
- With copious mucus, add two or three of the following herbs: ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae 半夏) 9g, chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae 陈皮) 6g, tian nan xing* (Rhizoma Atisiamatis 天南星) 6g or bai jie zi (Semen Sinapis Albae 白芥子) 6g
- With severe fullness and stiffness in the chest, add jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori 桟芥) 9g, zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantium 批杷) 9g and zi su geng (Ramulus Perillae Frutescentis 苏梗) 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

- If the wheezing is not relieved following sweating, use GUI ZHI JIA HOU PO XING REN TANG (Cinnamon, Magnolia and Apricot Seed Combination 桂枝厚朴杏仁汤) to harmonise ying wei, redirect qi downwards and alleviate wheezing.

  gu i zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae 桂枝) ................................................. 6g
  bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora 白芍) ........................................... 12g
  chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae 炒杏仁) 10g
  hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis 厚朴) .............................................. 9g
  sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens 生姜) 3g
  da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae 大枣) ................................................... 3g
  zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae 茯苓) ........................................... 3g

  Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nai Ke Xue)

- In patients with significant qi deficiency, ma huang and gui zhi may be too dispersing. An alternative prescription that supports qi is SHEN SU YIN (Ginseng and Perilla Combination 参苏饮, p.21).

Patent medicines

Xiao Qing Long Wan 小青龙丸 (Xiao Qing Long Wan)

Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji 感冒清热冲剂 (Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji)

Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji 感冒止咳冲剂 (Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji)

Acupuncture

ding chuan (M-BW-1), LI.4 (he gu -), Lu.7 (lie que -), BL.12 (feng men -Ω), BL.13 (fei shu -Ω), GB.20 (feng chi -), Lu.5 (chi zhe -), Ren.22 (tian lu -), Ren.17 (shen zong -)

- If the nose is congested or runny add Du.23 (shang xing)

Clinical notes

- See 3.2 Wind Cold with Phlegm Fluids, p.125.
3.2 WIND COLD WITH PHLEGM FLUIDS

Pathophysiology
• In this pattern Wind Cold invades the Lungs and stirs up chronic pre-existing Phlegm in the chest. The Wind Cold and Phlegm block the descent of Lung qi, which accumulates in the chest, causing wheezing. This pattern is generally an acute episode, or an acute exacerbation of a chronic condition.

Clinical features
In addition to the symptoms listed for the Wind Cold pattern (p.122) there are additional symptoms of:
• wheezing with expectoration of copious thin watery or stringy mucus
• orthopnoea
• copious thin watery nasal discharge
• excessive lacrimation

Treatment principle
Warm the Lungs and disperse Cold
Warm and transform Phlegm Fluids, stop wheezing

Prescription
XIAO QING LONG TANG 小青龙汤
(Minor Blue Dragon Combination)

- ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 .............................................. 9g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .............................................. 9g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinesis) 五味子 .............................................. 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .............................................. 9g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .............................................. 9g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 .............................................. 9g
- gan jiang (Rhzoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 .............................................. 3g
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radicis Asari) 玄参 .............................................. 3g

Method: Decoction to be taken hot. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications
• With severe wheezing, add xing ren* (Semen Prunus Armeniaca) 杏仁 9g, she gan (Rhzoma Belamcandace) 射干 9g, qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 9g and zi wan (Radix Asteris Tatarici) 紫苑 9g.
• With Heat, add shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 18g and lu gen (Rhzoma Phragmites Communis) 苦根 18g.
• If Phlegm Fluids are very copious, with marked congestion and orthopnoea, combine with TING LI DA ZAO XIE FEI TANG (Descurainia and Jujube Decoction to Drain the Lungs 葶苈大枣泻肺汤).
  ting li zi (Semen Descurainiae seu Lepidii) 葎苈子 .............................................. 9-12g
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .............................................. 12pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions
• Phlegm Fluids may accumulate due to a failure of Spleen and Kidney yang to transform fluids. After the acute phase has resolved, formulate to strengthen the Spleen and Kidneys and transform fluids, such as LING GUI ZHU GAN TANG (Atractylodes and Locien Combination 女桂术甘汤, p.818), LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination 六君子汤, p.88), JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN (Rehmannia Eight Formula 金匮肾气丸, p.150), should be used to consolidate the treatment.

• When Heart and Kidney yang deficiency give rise to Phlegm Fluids, causing pulmonary oedema with wheezing, orthopnoea and frothy mucus, the correct treatment is to warm yang and promote urination with ZHEN WU TANG (True Warrior Decoction 真武汤, p.103).

Patent medicines
Xiao Qing Long Wan 小青龙丸 (Xiao Qing Long Wan)
Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji 感冒清热冲剂 (Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji)
Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji 感冒止咳冲剂 (Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji)

Acupuncture
ding quan (M-BW-1), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω), Bl.13 (fei shu -Ω), SP.3 (tai bai -), ST.40 (feng long -), Lu.7 (tie que -), Lu.6 (kong zui -), PC.6 (nei guan), Ren.17 (shao yang)
  • with orthopnoea from fluid in the Lungs, add St.28 (shui dao - ▲) and Ren.9 (shui fen ▲)

Clinical notes
• The wheezing in Wind Cold patterns may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as acute bronchitis, acute exacerbation of chronic bronchitis, asthmatic bronchitis, common cold, influenza, hay fever or congestive cardiac failure.
• The acute symptoms respond well to correct and timely treatment. Depending on the reason for the accumulated Phlegm Fluids (Spleen, Kidney or Heart yang deficiency), treatment of the root may be prolonged, but generally responds well.
3.3 WIND COLD WITH INTERNAL HEAT

Pathophysiology
• If a Wind Cold attack occurs in someone with a pre-existing internal Heat (whether from yang excess, yin deficiency, Phlegm accumulation or smoking), then wheezing and chest constriction can occur with accompanying signs of Heat. This pattern may progress to a Phlegm Heat pattern in patients with pre-existing Phlegm.
• In some cases, although there is no obvious pre-existing internal Heat, it can be generated by the intense struggle between a strong pathogen and robust zheng qi. This produces pronounced and severe symptoms.

Clinical features
• acute wheezing with fullness or tightness in the chest
• fever and chills (or even rigors)
• loud cough with sticky yellow mucus
• no sweating or mild sweating
• muscle aches
• nasal obstruction
• occipital headache
• thirst with desire for cold liquids
• sore throat
• irritability and restlessness
• dry stools or constipation
• red or with a red up and edges, and a thin white or yellow coat
• floating and tight, and possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Redirect Lung qi downward, stop wheezing
Dispel external Cold, clear internal Heat, transform Phlegm

Prescription
DING CHUAN TANG (Stop Wheezing Decoction)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bai guo* (Semen Ginko Bilobae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ma huang* (honey fried Herba Ephedrae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuan dong hua (Flos Tussilaginis Farfarae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 柘梗 .................................. 3g
Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yao Xue)

Modifications
• If there is no sweating (i.e. Wind Cold locking the pores shut), use unprocessed (sheng 生) ma huang.*

Patent medicines
Ding Chuan Wan 定喘丸 (Ding Chuan Wan)
Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pien)
Chuan Ke Ling 喘咳灵 (Chuan Ke Ling)

Acupuncture
Du.14 (da zhui - Ω), ding chuan (M-BW-1), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω),
LI.11 (qu chi -), LI.4 (be gu -), Lu.5 (chi ze -), SJ.5 (wai guan -),
Ren.17 (shan zhong),
• If the throat is very sore and swollen add Lu.11 (shao shang ↓) and
  SJ.2 (ye men -), Lu.10 (yu ji -)
• with much internal Heat add SJ.2 (ye men -), Lu.10 (yu ji -)

Clinical notes
• The wheezing in Wind Cold with internal Heat patterns may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as common cold, upper respiratory tract infection, acute asthma, acute bronchitis, pneumonia and whooping cough.
• The acute symptoms respond well to prompt and correct treatment.
3.4 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology

• Wind Heat invades the Lungs blocking the descent of Lung qi, causing acute wheezing and chest tightness. It commonly progresses to the Phlegm Heat type (an interior pattern, p.135), particularly when there is pre-existing Phlegm Damp.

Clinical features

• acute wheezing and cough with scant, sticky yellow, hard to expectorate mucus
• fullness or tightness in the chest
• mild fever with little or no chills
• thirst
• nasal obstruction, or a thick and yellow or green nasal discharge
• sore, dry or scratchy throat
• mild sweating
• headache (usually frontal)
T normal or red tipped with a thin white or yellow coat
P floating and rapid

Treatment principle

Expel Wind and Heat, clear Lung Heat
Redirect Lung qi downwards, stop wheezing

Prescription

SANG JU YIN 桑菊饮
(Morus and Chrysanthemum Formula) modified

This prescription is suitable for milder wheezing with more signs of Wind Heat.

sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 ........................................ 12g
ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 ................................ 9g
lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmitis Communis) 芦根 ............................ 15g
jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 ......................... 12g
lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘 .......................... 9g
chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 炒杏仁 ........ 9g
jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 枸椇 ......................... 9g
ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根 ............. 9g
sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 ...................... 9g
bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 .......................... 6g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ..................... 6g

Method: Decoction. Cook for 20 minutes only. Bo he is added near the end of cooking (hou xia). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

MA XING SHI GAN TANG 麻杏石甘汤
(Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination) modified

This prescription is used when wheezing is more severe and there are fewer signs of Wind, and more of Lung Heat.

zhi ma huang* (honey fried Herba Ephedrae) 炙麻黄 .............. 9g
chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 炒杏仁 ........ 9g
shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 ................................................. 30g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ............................ 3g
sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 ........................................ 15g
gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 瓜楼 ............................... 15g
ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 .............................. 12g
ma dou ling* (Fructus Aristolochiae) 马兜铃 ....................... 12g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ..................... 9g

Method: Decoction. Shi gao is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xian jian 先煎). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chong Shou Ge)

QING ZAO JIU FEI TANG 清燥救肺汤
(Eriobotrya and Ophiopogon Combination)

If the Heat is severe enough to dry out the Lungs and damage Lung yin, this can give rise to wheezing, a frequent hacking non-productive cough, fullness and pain in the chest and behind the sternum, headache, haemoptysis, parched throat, and a dry tongue without coat. This formula moistens Dryness, clears Heat and nourishes Lung yin.

shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 ................................................. 18-30g
sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 ........................................ 9g
xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 ............................ 9g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ............................ 9g
hei zhi ma (Semen Sesami Indici) 黑芝麻 .......................... 9g
zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae) 枇杷杷叶 .......... 9g
nan sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 南沙参 ........ 9g
e jiao* (Gelatinu Corii Asini) 阿胶 .................................. 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ............................ 3g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 汤化). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xin)

Modifications

• With sore throat, add she gan (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 射干 9g.
With epistaxis, mild haemoptysis or blood streaked mucus add **bai mao gen** (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 12g and **ou jie** (Nodus Nelumbois Nuiciferae) 藕节 9g. See also Haemoptysis, p.187.

* With constipation, add **da huang** (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 3-6g.

**Patent medicines**

*Ding Chuan Wan* 定喘丸 (Ding Chuan Wan)
*Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian* 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)
*Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian* 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
*Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian* 穿心莲抗菌片
(Chuang Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
*Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan* 清气化痰丸 (Pitellia Expectorant Pills)
*Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian* 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pien)

**Acupuncture**

ding quan (M-BW-1), Du.14 (da zhi - 大), Bl.12 (feng ren - 风门),
Lu.1 (zhong fu - 中府), Ren.17 (shan zhuang - 山重伤), L1.11 (qui chi - 齐池), L1.4 (be gu - 背俞),
Lu.5 (chi zhi - 刺直), SJ.5 (wei guan - 腰关)
- If the throat is very sore and swollen add Lu.11 (shao shang - 小商) and
  SI.17 (tian rong - 天容)

**Clinical notes**

- The wheezing in Wind Heat patterns may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as bronchitis, acute asthma, upper respiratory tract infection, bronchitis, asthmatic bronchitis, pneumonia and whooping cough.
- This pattern responds well to correct treatment (especially in the early stages).

---

### 3.5 PHLEGM DAMP

**Pathophysiology**

- Phlegm Damp wheezing is a chronic pattern usually associated with inappropriate diet and/or recurrent respiratory tract infections.
- Infections like bronchitis, sinusitis and tonsillitis are usually treated with multiple courses of antibiotics. Antibiotics, which are very Cold in nature, are good at cooling Heat (and killing microbes), but they damage Spleen yang and do disperse all the pathogenic factors. Therefore, pathogenic Phlegm remains in the Lungs, a situation which is then aggravated by the now impaired Spleen function. This sets the stage for further respiratory infections and courses of antibiotics creating a self-perpetuating cycle.
- A Phlegm generating diet (especially one rich in dairy products) can also predispose to Phlegm Damp type of wheezing.
- This pattern is not uncommon in children with a modern diet of takeaway food and too much ice cream. It is often these same children who suffer frequent upper respiratory tract or ear infections and take many courses of antibiotics.
- In general, this is a mixed excess (Phlegm Damp) and deficiency (Spleen and Lung) pattern. The long term success of treatment depends on ascertaining their relative balance.
- Because of its obstructing quality, Phlegm Damp may periodically generate Heat, causing acute Phlegm Heat wheeze (p.135).

**Clinical features**

- wheezing and cough with copious thick, sticky, hard to expectorate white or clear mucus; there is a noticeable rattle in the chest with the wheeze and it tends to be worse in the morning and after eating
- fullness, tightness and stuffiness in the chest
- poor appetite
- nausea or vomiting
- loose stools
- lethargy and weakness
- T pale and swollen with toothmarks and a thick, moist, greasy white coat
- P soft and slippery

**Treatment principle**

Transform Phlegm, stop wheeze
Strengthen the Spleen, dry Damp
Prescription

SAN ZI YANG QIN TANG 三子养亲汤
(Three Seed Devotion to Nourish One’s Parent) plus
ER CHEN TANG 二陈汤
(Citrus and Pinellia Combination) modified

su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescens) 苏子 .................. 12g
bai jie zi (Semen Sinapis Albae) 白芥子 .................. 10g
lai fu zi (Semen Raphani Sativi) 莱菔子 .................. 10g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 莪术 .................. 15g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 10g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 15g
cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 .................. 10g
hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 .................. 10g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

• With very copious Phlegm and severe wheezing causing the patient difficulty with lying flat (orthopnoea), add tingle zi (Semen Descurainiae seu Lepidii) 陈皮子 10g and da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6g.

• With Cold (aversion to cold, watery mucus, cold extremities, chilliness) add xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 3g and gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingibers Officinalis) 干姜 6g.

• With mild Heat, add one or two of the following herbs: huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 6g, gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜楼仁 12g, sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 9g, dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 淡黄芩 6g or hai ge ke* (Concha Cyclinae Sinensis) 海蛤壳 6g.

• With mild signs of Spleen deficiency, add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 归参 15g, yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 紫仁 20g and bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency with Phlegm Damp

If the Spleen deficiency appears to be primary (i.e. with significant digestive weakness, and thus the source of the ongoing Phlegm) the emphasis of treatment is first to strengthen the Spleen and second to resolve Phlegm. The formula is LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination 六君子汤) modified.

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .................. 9g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 .................. 12g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 12g

Chronic or recurrent Cold Phlegm Damp accumulation

• In older patients and children with chronic ‘asthma’ (see also appendix, p157), Phlegm Damp, Cold and Kidney deficiency combine to produce a pattern that recurs every Winter. In this pattern, there are repeated attacks of productive cough with thin watery mucus, usually triggered by a Cold invasion during the Winter months. Wheezing, breathlessness and tightness in the chest are common, particularly at night and early in the morning. The mucus may also be scanty and tenacious. In severe cases there is orthopnoea. There may also be lower back and leg pain and weakness, fatigue, and oedema of the extremities. The treatment is to redirect qi downward, stop cough and wheezing, and warm and transform Cold Phlegm. The guiding formula is SU ZI JIANG QI TANG (Perilla Fruit Combination 苏子降气汤).

Patent medicines

Su Zi Jiang Qi Wan 苏子降气丸 (Su Zi Jiang Qi Wan)
Er Chen Wan 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan)
Qi Guan Yan Ke Son Tan Chuan Wan 气管炎咳嗽痰喘丸 (Cough and Phlegm Pills)
Peng Wei San 平胃散 (Peng Wei San)
She Dan Chuan Bei Ye 蛇胆川贝液 (She Dan Chuan Bei Ye)
3.6 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Phlegm Heat can accumulate in the Lungs after invasion by Wind Heat (or Cold) which dries and congeals Lung Fluids.
- It may also develop from a chronic Phlegm Damp Lung condition, especially in those with a hot constitution or after excess consumption of heat inducing substances.
- Phlegm Heat in the Lungs is usually an acute condition, but occasionally some residual Phlegm Heat will linger, causing low grade chronic wheezing with persistent coloured mucus. In such cases, in addition to clearing the Phlegm Heat, the Spleen and Lung may need to be strengthened.

Clinical features
- wheezing and cough that tends to be worse at night and first thing in the morning, with profuse thick, yellow or green, hard to expectorate mucus; in some cases there may be blood streaked mucus
- fullness, tightness, stuffiness and burning in the chest
- red complexion
- bitter taste in the mouth, dry mouth
- nausea, loss of appetite
- loose stools or constipation
- lethargy and weakness
- maybe a sore or congested throat
- thick, greasy, yellow coat, although maybe only on the root
- P soft or slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
- Expel Phlegm and clear Heat
- Redirect Lung qi downward, stop wheezing

Prescription
MA XING SHI GAN TANG (Ma Huxiang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi ma huang* (honey fried Herba Ephedrae) 炎麻黄</td>
<td>9 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 炒杏仁</td>
<td>9 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏</td>
<td>30 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 苡仁</td>
<td>15 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dong gua ren (Semen Benincasae Hispidae) 冬瓜仁</td>
<td>15 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 芦根</td>
<td>15 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acupuncture
- Bl.13 (fei shu ▲), Bl.20 (pi shu ▲), Lu.9 (tai yuan -), Sp.3 (tai hui +),
- St.40 (feng long -), ding chuan (M-BW-1), Lu.1 (zhong fu -),
- Ren.17 (shan zhuang -), Lu.7 (lie que -), Ren.12 (zhong wan -),
- Ren.22 (tian fu -)
  - with fullness in the chest, add PC.5 (jian shi)

Clinical notes
- The wheezing in Phlegm Damp patterns may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, emphysema and asthma.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct and prolonged treatment.
- Dietary modification, in particular reduction of dairy products, sugar, greasy rich foods and in some people, wheat, is essential for good results. In elderly patients and children with recurrent Cold Phlegm, prolonged treatment is needed for satisfactory results.
Wheezing associated with food stagnation or food intolerances

- In some patients wheezing may be induced by overeating or by certain foods. The wheezing in these cases is associated with obstruction to the natural descent of both Stomach and Lung qi, and typically the patient will have obvious digestive symptoms (especially bloating or constipation) associated with wheezing episodes. When wheezing is related to food stagnation or Phlegm Heat in the Stomach the correct treatment is to redirect Lung and Stomach qi downward, transform Phlegm and stop wheezing with BAO HE WAN (Citrus and Crategus Formula) modified.

   chao shan zha (dry fried Fructus Crategus) 炒山楂 .................. 180g
   shen qu (massa Fermentata) 神曲 .................. 60g
   ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .................. 90g
   fu ling (Sclerotum Porae Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 30g
   chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 30g
   lai fu zi (Semen Raphani Sativii) 莱菔子 .................. 30g
   lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 连翘 .................. 30g
   da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 .................. 20g

   Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. Take one pill 2-3 times daily. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yau Xue)

Patent medicines

Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan 清气化痰丸 (Pinellia 
Qing Fei Yi Huo Pien 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Ding Chuan Wan 定喘丸 (Ding Chuan Wan)
She Dan Chuan Bei Ye 蛇胆川贝液 (She Dan Chuan Bei Ye)

Acupuncture

Lu.5 (chi ye -), ding chuan (M-BW-1), St.40 (feng lung -), Lu.6 (kong zui -),
Lu.1 (zhong fu -), Li.11 (qua chi -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Lu.10 (yu ji -), Ren.17
(shan zhong)
* with fullness in the chest add PC.5 (jian shi)

Clinical notes

- The wheezing in Phlegm Heat patterns may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as acute and chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, pneumonia, whooping cough, asthma, food allergy
- This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment, plus avoidance of heating foods and tobacco. In severe cases, especially in the elderly, frail or debilitated, concurrent use of antibiotics may be necessary to quickly cool the Heat. Herbs and acupuncture support the swift action of the antibiotics, and finish the job by clearing residual Phlegm, strengthening resistance and nourishing damaged yin.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Chronic Phlegm Heat

- In chronic cases, the Phlegm Heat is persistent and the systemic symptoms are generally mild or absent. The main features are frequent expectoration of yellow mucus, throat clearing and clearly audible rattles and rales with breathing. There may be digestive or bowel disturbances, depending on the degree of Spleen involvement. The treatment principle is to root out residual Phlegm Heat with the following formula ER CHEN TANG (Citrus and Pinellia Combination 二陈汤 ) modified.

   ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .................. 9g
   chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 9g
   fu ling (Sclerotum Porae Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 12g
   gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Ursulensis) 甘草 .................. 6g
   gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌 .................. 18g
   zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taenias) 竹茹 .................. 9g
   huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .................. 9g

   Method: Decoction. Once the Phlegm is resolved, a Spleen strengthening formula such as LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination, p.88), can be used to consolidate the effect. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Ji Xue)

Modifications

- When Heat is severe, add two or three of the following herbs: huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 12g, da qing ye (Folium Daqingyge) 大青叶 12g, ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根 12g or huang lian (Rhzoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.
- With severe wheezing and profuse mucus, add she gan (Rhizoma Belamacandae) 射干 9g, sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 12g and ting li zi (Semen Dscurneuria seu Lepidii) 葶苈子 9g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 3-6g and quan lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜楼仁 12g. In this condition it is very important to keep the bowels open.
- During the convalescent stage of this condition, the patient often has considerable nightsweats, residual hard-to-expectorate mucus and fatigue due to the Heat damaging Lung jin. In this case add di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮 12g and qing hao (Herba Artemesiae Apicaceae) 青蒿 12g. See also fei jing (Lung Abscess), p.114.

Methods: Decoction. Shi gao is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xian jian 先煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Niu Ke Xue)
3.7 LIVER QI STAGNATION DAMAGING THE LUNGS

**Pathophysiology**
- When qi stagnates in the Liver it can rebel backwards along the controlling (ke 督, p.70) cycle and disrupt the descent of Lung qi. Lung qi accumulates and the breath becomes shallow. In addition, the stagnation of qi in the Liver channel (which traverses the chest) and organ (which lies directly beneath the diaphragm) causes a sensation of tightness in the chest and difficulty in drawing a full breath.

**Clinical features**
- Tightness in the chest, dyspnoea, wheezing, shortness of breath, difficulty getting a deep and satisfying breath, with little or no mucus, clearly related to emotion. The sensation is generally described as ‘tightness’ or ‘fullness’ in the chest. During an episode the patient is often panicky or emotional.
  * frequent sighing
  * plum stone throat
  * insomnia
  * palpitations
  * vague chest pain
  * premenstrual syndrome, irregular menstruation, breast tenderness
- T unremarkable, or with brown or purplish stasis spots on the edges and a thin white coat
  P wiry

**Treatment principle**
Move Liver qi, redirect Lung qi downwards, stop wheezing

**Prescription**

**WU MO YIN ZI 五磨饮子**
( Five Milled Herb Decoction)

This formula is good for acute episodes of chest tightness due to stagnant Liver qi in robust patients.

- *wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药 .................................. 9g*
- *zhi shi (Fructus Citri Aurantii Immaturus) 枸实 ................................ 9g*
- *bing lang (Semen Arecae Catechu) 槟榔 ...................................... 9g*
- *mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 ................................. 6g*
- *chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae) 沉香 ...................................... 6g*

Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and take a tablespoon as a draft with warm water 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted. (Source: Zhang Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**Liver qi stagnation with Heat or Fire**
- If qi stagnation generates Heat or Fire with wheezing or chest tightness brought on by emotions, as well as symptoms such as thirst, bitter taste in the mouth, temporal headaches, feeling hot during episodes, irritability, constipation, concentrated urine, red edges on the tongue and a rapid pulse, the correct treatment is to clear Liver Heat (Fire) and redirect Lung qi downwards. In severe cases (i.e. Fire), the appropriate formula is LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG (Gentiana Combination 龙胆泻肝汤, p.365). For milder cases (i.e. stagnant Heat) the correct
LUNGS

Clinical notes
- The wheezing in Liver qi invading the Lungs, or Liver Heat patterns may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as anxiety neurosis, stress related breathing difficulties and hysteria.
- Episodes respond well to correct treatment and relaxation. Long term results require an appropriate management plan with relaxation, exercise and stress management.

Patent medicines
- Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 罂粟舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)
- Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan 加味逍遥丸 (Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan)
- Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan)

Acupuncture
- yin tang (M-HN-3), PC.5 (jian shi), P.6 (wei guan), Liv.14 (qi men), Liv.5 (li gong), Liv.3 (tai chong), LI.14 (he gu), Ren.17 (shan zhi), Ren.11 (jian lü), Bl.18 (gan shu), Bl.15 (xin shu), Bl.13 (fei shu)
3.8 LUNG QI AND YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Lung qi and yin deficiency describes a chronic condition, which is the result of either long term Lung disease or the extended use of asthma medications. There are elements of Lung qi deficiency, i.e. qi which cannot descend, and yin deficiency, i.e. Heat. Depending on the relative balance of qi and yin deficiency, the actual presentation can vary considerably.

Clinical features
- wheezing, panting, shortness of breath—worse with exertion
- weak cough with little or no mucus
- soft voice with little desire to talk
- spontaneous sweating
- aversion to wind, frequent colds and flu
- dry mouth
- malar or facial flushing
- occasional sore dry throat
- T pale red and dry, swollen and often extensively cracked with little or no coat
- P weak and soft, possibly extending up the thenar eminence

Treatment principle
- Tonify and nourish Lung qi and yin
- Redirect Lung qi downward, stop wheezing

Prescription

**SHENQ MAI SAN (Generate the Pulse Powder) modified**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>9 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>12 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis)</td>
<td>6 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae)</td>
<td>15 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu zhu (Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati)</td>
<td>10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae)</td>
<td>10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian hu (Radix Peucedanii)</td>
<td>10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. Take one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted. (Source: *Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce*)

**Modifications**
- If the patient tends toward qi deficiency with thin watery mucus and fewer if any hot symptoms, reduce the dose of mai dong, sha shen and yu zhu by half, and add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 30g, gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 5g and zhi kuan dong hua (honey fried Flos Tussilaginis L'farrae) 10g.
- If the patient tends toward yin deficiency, replace ren shen with xiang shen (Panax Quinquefolium) 9g and add huang jing (Rhizoma Polygonati) 12g.
- For irritability and insomnia or restless fitful sleep, add suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Jujubae) 10g and he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 10g.
- In atopic patients (see modifications p.151), add two or three of the following herbs: tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis) 12g, du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 12g, hu tao ren (Semen Juglandis Regiae) 9g and bu gu zhi (Fructus Psonaleae Corylifoliae) 12g.

**Patent medicines**

*Sheng Mai Wan (Generate the Pulse Powder)*

*Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan (Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan)*

*Ba He Gu Jin Wan (Ba He Gu Jin Wan)*

**Acupuncture**

BL.13 (fei shu +), BL.43 (gao huang shu +), Lu.9 (tai yuan +), Lu.7 (he que), Kid.6 (yao hai), BL.23 (shen shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Lu.5 (shi yang +), ST.36 (gu san liu +)

- with severe Heat add Lu.10 (yu jiu) and Kid.2 (ren qu)

**Scarring plasters**

- In between episodes, a sticking plaster with a small amount of irritant herbs like da suan (Bulbus Alli Sativii) 大蒜 and xi xin (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 may be placed over points such as Du.14 (da zhen) or BL.43 (gao huang shu) for 1-2 days, until a blister forms. This method strengthens the Lungs and wei qi, and is useful in chronic wheezing.

**Clinical notes**

- The wheezing in this pattern may be diagnosed as chronic asthma, chronic obstructive airways disease, emphysema or tuberculosis.
- This pattern often follows years of medication with bronchodilators and steroid drugs. Prolonged therapy (more than one year) while gradually reducing medication is generally necessary for a satisfactory result.
3.9 LUNG AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Lung and Spleen qi deficiency type wheezing is particularly common in those who have suffered repeated upper respiratory tract, ear or other infections, and who have been treated with numerous courses of antibiotics (see Phlegm Damp, p.131). It also occurs in patients with an inherited weak constitution (deficient qi). Such patients are often diagnosed as 'asthmatic' during an upper respiratory tract infection when their lung capacity is reduced, then medicated with bronchodilators. These medications disperse Lung qi relieving bronchospasm, but over time deplete Lung qi. When Lung qi is thus weakened, it will not descend properly leading to wheezing and shortness of breath.

Clinical features

- wheezing and shortness of breath that are provoked by exercise and exertion, or that occur during colds and flu; if there is coughing it is usually weak, with thin white mucus
- frequent colds
- lethargic and easily fatigued
- pale complexion
- spontaneous sweating
- soft voice or reluctance to speak
- depending on the degree of Spleen involvement there may be loose stools, poor appetite, copious mucus, ‘food allergies’, abdominal distension and (in children) failure to thrive
- T pale with a thin to thick white coat (depending on mucus)
- P thready and weak

Treatment principle

Strengthen Lung and Spleen qi
Consolidate wei qi, stop wheezing

Prescription

BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>6g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens)</td>
<td>3pce</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction or powder. When powdered the dose is 5-grams three times daily. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With cold extremities, delete mai dong and add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 6g
- With copious thin watery mucus, add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 6g, ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g and hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 6g
- With spontaneous sweating, add mu li' (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9g and fu xiao mai (Semen Trichuri Aestivii) 浮小麦 12g
- In atopic patients (see modifications p.151), add two or three of the following herbs: tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis) 蒲公英子 12g, du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲 12g, hu tao ren (Semen Juglandis Regiae) 胡桃仁 9g or bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleaee Corylifoliae) 南骨脂 12g

Variations and additional prescriptions

Spleen deficiency with Phlegm Damp

- For obvious Spleen deficiency signs, particularly if there is copious mucus, use LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination 六君子汤, p.88), with the addition of gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 千姜 6g, xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Ains) 细辛 3g and wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g

With Blood deficiency

- If the dyspnoea and shortness of breath occur post-partum, after menstruation or following haemorrhage, the main treatment is to first powerfully tonify qi and Blood with SHI QUAN DA BU TANG (Ginseng and Dang Gui Ten Combination igital 大补汤, p.529) or DANG GUI BU XUE TANG (Dang Gui Blood Tonic Decoction 当归补血汤, p.555).
Patent medicines

Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Xiang Sha Lin Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan)
Shen Qi Da Bu Wan 参芪大补丸 (Shen Qi Da Bu Wan)
Shi Quan Da Bu Wan 十全大补丸 (Shi Quan Da Bu Wan)
- with Blood deficiency

Acupuncture

BL13 (fei shu + ▲), BL43 (gao huang shu + ▲), LU9 (taiyuan +),
REn6 (qi hai + ▲), BL20 (pi shu + ▲), ST36 (zusanli + ▲),
REn12 (zhongwan + ▲), SP6 (san jiao +)
- The points of the upper back may also be gently cupped. This method is especially useful for children and those who have difficulty with moxa smoke.

Scarring plasters

- In between episodes, a sticking plaster with a small amount of irritant herbs like da suan (Bulbus Allii Sativi) 大蒜 and xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) xi xin may be placed over points such as DU14 (da zhai) or BL43 (gao huang shu) for 1-2 days, until a blister forms. This method strengthens the Lungs and wei qi, and is useful in chronic wheezing.

Clinical notes

- The wheezing associated with Spleen and Lung qi deficiency may be diagnosed as childhood asthma, immune deficiency, chronic bronchitis or emphysema.
- A common type of asthma in children, but also occurs in adults. The wheezing in this pattern may be associated with digestive or food intolerance.
- Generally responds well to correct treatment, particularly when combined with appropriate dietary changes (see p.157).
Patent medicines

Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan 阳阴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)
Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan 八仙长寿丸 (Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan)
Bai He Gu Jin Wan 白合固金丸 (Bai He Gu Jin Wan)
Luo Han Guo Chong Ji 罗汉果冲剂 (Luo Han Guo Beverage)
Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao 川贝枇杷膏 (Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao)

Acupuncture

Bl.13 (fei shu +), Bl.43 (gao huang shu +), Lu.9 (tai yuan +),
Lu.1 (zhong fu +), Lu.7 (lie que), Kid.6 (zhao hai), Kid.27 (shu jü),
Bl.23 (shen shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Lu.5 (chi yu -), Kid.1 (yang quan)
- with severe Heat add Lu.10 (yu jü -)
- The points of the upper back and chest should be needled very carefully and superficially as patients with this pattern will often have hyperinflated lungs.

Scarring plasters

- In between episodes, a sticking plaster with a small amount of irritant herbs like da suan (Bulbus Alii Sativi 大蒜) and xi xin* (Herba cum Radicis Asari 细辛) may be placed over points such as Du.14 (da zhu) or Bl.13 (gao huang shu) for 1-2 days, until a blister forms. This method strengthens the Lungs and wei qi, and is useful in chronic wheezing.

Clinical notes

- Wheezing associated with Lung and Kidney yin deficiency may be diagnosed as chronic asthma, chronic obstructive airways disease, pulmonary tuberculosis or silicosis.
- This can be a difficult condition to treat and requires great persistence to achieve a satisfactory result. Prolonged therapy (more than one year) while gradually reducing medication is generally necessary.
3.11 KIDNEY YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

Kidney yang has a very important function in respiration. When Kidney yang is weak wheezing results for the following reasons:

• First, one of the fundamental functions of the Kidney is to anchor the qi upon inhalation. If it fails, Lung qi rises and accumulates in the chest.

• Second, Kidney yang is the basis for zheng and wei qi of the body. If Kidney yang is weak, the body is more vulnerable to external pathogens invading and obstructing Lung qi, causing wheezing.

• Third, Kidney yang is responsible for overseeing the fluid metabolism of the body. A failure in this function can lead to an accumulation of fluids in the Lung causing severe wheezing, orthopnoea and in serious cases, a sense that the patient is drowning.

Clinical features

• chronic wheezing, with inhalation more difficult than exhalation; the wheeze is worse for physical exertion, when fatigued or cold and following sex

• lethargy and listlessness

• spontaneous sweating

• frequent colds

• pale or cyanosed complexion, dark rings under the eyes and facial puffiness

• pitting oedema with scanty urination, or nocturia and urinary frequency

• lower back soreness or weakness, sore legs and knees

• cold extremities

T swollen and pale or purplish/bluish with a thin white coat

P deep, thready and slow or imperceptible or large, deficient and without root

Treatment principle

Strengthen Kidney yang to aid grasping of qi
Support wei qi

Prescription

JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN 金匮肾气丸
(Rehmannia Eight Formula)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitaie)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposite)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(\text{mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) \quad ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) }\) \(90g\)
\(\text{rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) \quad 60g}\)

zhi fu zi\(^*\) (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Preparata) \(60g,\) zhi fu zi\(^*\) is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9 gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill, 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.

Modifications

- Giovanni Maciocia\(^1\) speculates that allergic or atopic asthma (usually of juvenile onset) is associated with an inherited deficiency of the ‘Lungs and Kidney defensive qi system’—wei qi and Kidney yang—which enables stubborn Wind to linger in the Lungs. On the basis of this theory, while utilising the appropriate constitutional formula in each case, he typically adds herbs to tonify this system. Usually only a few herbs are added, depending on the relative mix of Lung and Kidney weakness. These herbs are usually yang tonics, like tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis) 藜子, du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲, hu tao ren (Semem Juglandis Regiae) 胡桃仁 and bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifolae) 补骨脂. Smaller amounts of yang tonic herbs may be (cautiously) added in cases of jin deficiency.

- With copious tenacious mucus, add two or three of the following herbs: su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 苏子 9g, qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 9g, hai ge ke\(^*\) (Concha Cyclinae Sinensis) 海蛤壳 9g, xing ren\(^*\) (Semem Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 9g, chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g or che qian zi (Semem Plantaginis) 半夏子 12g.

- If oedema is severe add ting li zi (Semem Descurainiae seu Lepidui) 蒐苈子 9g and chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephala) 炒白术 12g.

- In severe cases add ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 3-6g, dong chong xia cao\(^*\) (Cordyceps Sinensis) 10g, wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g, bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifolae) 补骨脂 6g, hu tao ren (Semem Juglandis Regiae) 胡桃仁 10g or combine with REN SHEN GE JIE SAN (Ginseng and Gecko Powder)

\(\text{ren shen (Radix Ginseng) \quad ge jie\(^*\) (Gecko) \quad 人参蛤蚧散)\)

Method: Grind equal quantities of both ingredients to a fine powder. The dose is 3-grains twice daily.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Heart and Kidney yang deficiency

- Kidney and Heart yang deficiency can lead to significant generalised pitting and pulmonary oedema (as in congestive cardiac failure), severe wheezing, dyspnoea, orthopnoea and frothy mucus. The correct treatment is to warm the yang and promote urination with ZHEN WU TANG (True Warrior Decoction 真武汤) modified, until fluid balance is controlled. When fluids are moving the original prescription or other suitable tonifying prescription should be selected.

  - zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata 制附子) 9g
  - chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae 炒白术) 9g
  - sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis 生姜) 9g
  - bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora 白芍) 12g
  - fu ling (Sclerotium Portae Cocos 茯苓) 12g
  - che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis 车前子) 12g
  - ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis 泽泻) 12g

Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zi is decocted for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xian jian 先煎), che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (hao yuan 包煎).

Collapse of Heart yang

- If Heart yang is collapsing (with severe dyspnoea, icy extremities, copious sweating and an imperceptible pulse) immediate action to restore yang, strongly tonify yuan qi and prevent collapse, is required. Suitable formulae include SI NI JIA REN SHEN TANG (Frigid Extremities Decoction plus Ginseng 四逆加人参汤, p.926), HEI XI DAN (Lead Special Pill 黑锡丹, p.920) or SHEN FU TANG (Ginseng and Prepared Aconite Decoction 参附汤, p.665).

Patent medicines

- Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotom Pills)
- Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
- Ren Shen Lu Rong Wan 人参鹿茸丸 (Jen Shen Lu Yung Wan)
- Ge Jie Bu Shen Wan 喜结补肾丸 (Gejie Nourishing Kidney Pills)

Acupuncture

- Bl.13 (fei shu +△), Lu.9 (tai yuan +), Bl.23 (shen shu +△), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Ren.6 (qi hai +△), Ren.4 (guan yuan +△)
- with congested fluids add Ren.9 (shui fen p), Kid.7 (fu liu -), Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), St.28 (shui dao -)
- The points of the upper back and chest should be needled very carefully and superficially as patients with this pattern will often have hyperinflated lungs.

Scarring plasters

- In between episodes, a sticking plaster with a small amount of irritant herbs like da suan (Bulbus Alli Sativii) 大蒜 and xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 may be placed over points such as Du.14 (da zhui) or Bl.43 (gao huang shu) for 1-2 days, until a blister forms. This method strengthens the Lungs and wei qi, and is useful in chronic wheezing.

Clinical notes

- Wheezing associated with Kidney yang deficiency may be diagnosed as chronic asthma, pulmonary oedema, congestive cardiac failure, cardiac asthma, cor pulmonale
- Mild cases of Kidney yang deficiency can respond well to correct and prolonged treatment. In severe cases it can be difficult to treat, especially patients presenting with Kidney yang wheezing complicated by pulmonary oedema, or Heart and Kidney yang deficiency. These patients are usually on the maximum dose of conventional medicine.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR WHEEZING

Acute patterns
Wind Cold - Ma Huang Tang 麻黄汤
- with congested fluids - Xiao Qing Long Tang 小青龙汤
- with internal Heat - Ding Chuan Tang 定喘汤

Wind Heat - Sang Ju Yin 桑菊饮
- more wheezing and Lung Heat - Ma Xing Shi Gan Tang 麻杏石甘汤
- with Lung yin deficiency - Qing Zao Jiu Fei Tang 清燥救肺汤

Chronic patterns
Phlegm Damp - San Zi Yang Qin Tang 三子养亲汤 + Er Chen Tang 二陈汤
- with significant Spleen deficiency - Lin Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤
- in elderly patients with recurrent wheezing in Winter and Kidney deficiency - Su Zi Jiang Qi Tang 苏子降气汤

Lung qi and yin deficiency - Sheng Mai San 生脉散

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤
- postpartum wheezing - Shi Quan Da Bu Tang 十全大补汤 or Dang Gui Bu Xue Tang 当归补血汤

Lung and Kidney yin deficiency - Bai He Gu Jin Tang 百合固金汤

Kidney yang deficiency - Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸
- with severe congested Lung fluids - Zhen Wu Tang 真武汤

Acute or Chronic patterns
Phlegm Heat - Ma Xing Shi Gan Tang 麻杏石甘汤
- chronic Phlegm Heat - Er Chen Tang 二陈汤

Liver qi stagnation - Wu Mo Yin Zi 五磨饮子
- with hysteria - the above formula plus Gan Mai Da Zao Tang
- between episodes - Xiao Yao San逍遥散
- with stagnant Heat - Dan Zhi Xiao Yao San 丹栀逍遥散
- with Liver Fire - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.

---

Appendix 3.1
ASTHMA (qi chuan 气喘)

In modern clinical practice, wheezing disorders (or those presenting with a reduced lung capacity) are frequently diagnosed as asthma, and whether this is correct or not, a discussion of asthma is warranted as it is expected that many practitioners will use this chapter for the analysis of asthma.

Asthma has become in the last few decades a very common disorder in developed nations. For example, 1 in 4 children and 1 in 10 adults are diagnosed with asthma in Australia. The precise reason for such a huge increase in atopic conditions like asthma has not yet been adequately explained, but we may suppose that aspects of our modern lifestyle and environment contribute a significant part of the picture.

Exposure to environmental airborne pollutants, especially fine particulate matter, appears to either directly cause inflammation in the bronchi, or exacerbate it. At the same time that atmospheric pollution has increased so has the number of chemicals (pesticides, preservatives etc.) in our food. While these may not be so directly involved in the etiology of asthma, it is possible they play a role in over-sensitising or derailing parts of the immune system, thus producing abnormal responses to various external stimuli. One of these external stimuli, which has been strongly implicated as a trigger (or cause if exposure happens early in life) of asthma, is the excreta of dust mites.

SIDE EFFECTS OF ASTHMA MEDICATION ACCORDING TO TCM

- Salbutamol (Ventolin, Asmol): A β2-adrenergic agent, salbutamol temporarily disperses accumulated zong and Lung qi, giving some relief from wheezing and chest tightness. Prolonged use significantly weakens the Lungs and depletes zong qi, ultimately creating a dependence on the medication as the Lungs become truly weak and cannot function properly without help. The depletion of zong qi is evident from the side effects, which include tachycardia, arrhythmias, hand tremors and insomnia.
- Corticosteroids (inhaled as Becotide or Becloforte, or orally as Prednisolone): Corticosteroids are warm, acrid and dispersing, and powerfully disperse Lung qi and yin by activating Kidney yang, in a similar way to fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Preparata) 附子.
  Overstimulation of yang eventually depletes yin. Chronic use of steroids in the treatment of asthma usually leads to the development of Lung and Kidney yin deficiency, which is difficult to treat satisfactorily.
  Patients on steroid therapy also seem to be slower to respond to TCM treatment.
In addition to the increase in pollutants and allergens in the environment, a marked change in behaviour and diet has occurred, particularly in children. More time spent watching television and less spent in physical activity combined with a Phlegm generating diet (sweets, ice cream, dairy) can lead to reduced lung capacity and vitality, and therefore increased vulnerability to Lung disorders.

Asthma has also long been known to have a genetic component. While the observed increase in incidence cannot be explained in terms of simple genetic inheritance, the decline in the quality of gametes can perhaps be considered a factor. TCM places great store in the quality of jing (gametes) in producing offspring with strong qi. It is now well recognised that sperm quality is affected by many environmental pollutants and that egg quality diminishes rapidly in women by their late 30s, an age when an increasing number of women have children.

The analysis of asthma in TCM can be made using the categories found in both the wheezing and cough sections of this book, according to the prominent symptoms. In many cases where medication has suppressed all symptoms, diagnosis will need to be made on constitutional and auxiliary signs and symptoms—still using the categories in this and the last chapter as a guide. The TCM effects of bronchodilating medications are summarised in Box 1.

It should be noted that TCM texts by Chinese authors describe asthma (not wheezing) as a disorder of Wind Cold, Kidney deficiency and Phlegm accumulation. The way chronic asthma presents in our clinics in the West does not, however, always fit these patterns. The picture may be complicated by the widespread use of medication, often from an early age. Sometimes there is little evidence of Phlegm accumulation (but see p.157) and few or no Kidney signs and symptoms.

The patterns described in this book are appropriate for the symptom of wheezing, which includes asthma amongst other disorders. There is a special exception associated with allergy, elucidated by Maciocia. He has proposed an aetiology for allergic (or atopic) asthma based on an inherited deficiency of Lung and Kidney defensive qi (see also p.151). This deficiency allows Wind to settle and lodge in the bronchi causing chronic respiratory distress. In addition to the factors outlined above which affect the quality of jing, he thinks immunisations may play a part in the heightened sensitivity response of the atopic individual.


### Appendix 3.2

**PAEDIATRIC ASTHMA** *(Xiao Er Qi Chuan 小儿气喘)*

Asthma is a more prevalent disease in childhood than in adulthood and warrants separate mention here not only for this reason, but because children are generally treated differently to adults. TCM recognises that children have unique physiological characteristics and cannot be considered as miniature adults. One of the features of paediatric physiology that is pertinent to our discussion of asthma is the immaturity of the digestive system. This inherent digestive weakness predisposes to incomplete breakdown of food and the accumulation of Phlegm. Fatty and cold foods, unfortunately the mainstay of many a modern child's diet, are especially dangerous in this regard. Phlegm is very clearly a key component of all types of paediatric asthma.

Asthma in children, even in its more severe forms, is amenable to TCM treatment providing very persistent treatment is applied between episodes, sometimes through several seasons or years. If the treatment is consistently kept ahead of the disease, that is, it is applied before acute episodes and when the child is generally stronger and more healthy (often during the Summer months), and lifestyle and diet changes (see below) are firmly adhered to, then if not a cure, it can significantly reduce attacks and morbidity.

Specifically, all children with asthma (no matter which category) need to be on a diet that reduces Phlegm. This means restricting foods that produce congestion of mucous membranes (for example peanut butter and dairy foods, such as ice cream), and foods that impair the Spleen's ability to breakdown food (excessive raw or cold foods and sugar). Aspects of lifestyle and behaviour that require attention are those that deplete qi and do not encourage its efficient production and movement. Many children spend far too many hours in front of the television and computer screen. Not only is the lack of movement not beneficial for the qi of the body, but the nature of the sometimes mindless absorption and focus on the screen is seen to deplete qi. At the other end of the spectrum, but also common in modern day children, is the plethora of after school activities and the expectations of parents that their child, for example, should not only train in swimming, dance and gymnastics, but also play the violin! Such relentless pursuit of achievements in so many fields not only exhausts the child's qi, but leaves very little room for the valuable dreaming time of childhood.

As for adults, asthma is differentiated into acute and chronic categories. Acute episodes are best treated with Western medication or a combination of Chinese medicine and Western drugs. Acupuncture can be very helpful.
PATRONS AND TREATMENT

Weekly acupuncture treatments are strongly advised and generally well tolerated in all but the Kidney yang deficient child who is quite phobic and easily traumatised. Children with Kidney yang deficiency patterns may respond to laser acupuncture. Practitioners experienced in treating childhood asthma have warned that it is important to approach the removal of Phlegm from the Lungs slowly, so as not to overwhelm Lung qi and cause obstruction. Often the use of points like Ren.22 (tian li) will begin to clear the upper reaches of the Lungs, while points like St.40 (feng long) can be brought in a little later to start clearing deeper levels of Phlegm.

ACUTE ASTHMA ATTACK

During an attack, the only distinction that needs to be made is between Cold and Hot types. As noted previously, Phlegm is common to all patterns and lies dormant until stirred up by a pathogenic invasion or some other trigger.

Cold type

- This is an excess pattern, and while described as Cold it is really the absence of Heat that defines it. It may be triggered by changes in weather, exposure to cold or an upper respiratory tract infection, but may also be due to overeating, stress, or exposure to allergens such as animal fur, pollen and certain foods.

  * wheezing and cough, often worse or more frequent during winter
  * frothy clear or white tenacious sputum
  * body and/or extremities are normal temperature, or cold
  * pale or ashen complexion
  * T thin white or greasy white coat
  * P floating, tight or slippery

Hot type

- This type is associated with Heat, usually Wind Heat or Phlegm Heat, and is closely associated with an upper respiratory tract infection such as flu or bronchitis.

  * wheezing and cough
  * the cough may be unproductive, or with yellow sputum
  * fever or feels hot to the touch
  * sweating
  * red complexion
  * thirst
  * constipation
  * T thin yellow or greasy yellow coat
  * P slippery and rapid

Kidney yang deficiency

- wheezing and cough in a frail child
- ashen complexion
- cold body and extremities
- general lack of vitality, soft voice, low spirits
- cold clammy sweat, especially on the head
- enuresis, frequent urination

T pale
P weak

Treatment of the acute episode

Most children will be taking some form of inhaled bronchodilating medication, and from a convenient and practical point of view, this is the treatment of choice for acute episodes. Herbs and acupuncture can also be effective for acute attacks, however, and are summarised below. The general principle is to expel pathogens, redirect Lung qi downward and calm asthma. Keep in mind that a small child with an acute attack is usually very frightened and lots of needles don’t help.

Acupuncture

Main points

ding chuan (M-BW-1), Lu.7 (lie que), Ren.22 (tian li), PC.6 (nei guan), Ren.17 (shen men), Bl.13 (fei shu).

- In very frightened children, ding chuan retained and Lu.7 (lie que) not retained is often enough to settle them, after which other points may be added as appropriate. The fewer needles the better. Cupping on the upper back points can be useful in the Cold and Hot types. Kidney deficient children are often so phobic that needling is impossible, however they can usually tolerate laser acupuncture treatment.

Additional points for different patterns

- for Cold type add St.36 (zhi san li p), Ren.12 (zhong wai), Bl.20 (pi shu), St.40 (feng long)
- for Hot type add Lu.5 (chi ye), Du.14 (da zhi) and LI.11 (qi chi)
- with emotional disturbance add Liv.3 (tai chong), LI.4 (bei gu) and HT.7 (shen men)
- for Kidney deficiency, Lu.9 (tai yuan), Bl.20 (pi shu), Bl.23 (shen shu), Ren.4 (guan yuan), Kid.7 (fu li), Kid.3 (tai xi), Sp.6 (san xin jiao). Moxa may be used.

Prescriptions

The herbal prescriptions for acute attacks are the same as for adults but in a reduced dose. The formula may be concentrated and administered with an eyedropper. Select one only, depending on accompanying symptoms.

Cold type
MA HUANG TANG 麻黄汤
(Ma Huang Combination) p.122 - wheezing triggered by a cold
XIAO QING LONG TANG 小青龙汤
(Minor Blue Dragon Combination) p.124 - wheezing triggered by cold with copious watery mucus

Hot type
DING CHUAN TANG 定喘汤
(Stop Wheezing Decoction) p.126
BAO YING DAN 保婴丹
(Protect the Child Special Pill) - a popular paediatric patent medicine

CHRONIC PATTERNS OF ASTHMA

In practice, usually all of the following patterns are present to a greater or lesser extent. The key is to decide which is prominent and thus which pattern to start with.

Phlegm Damp
- cough with lots of mucus
- constant runny nose
- may occur in an otherwise robust child, and is often associated with accumulation disorder in infants—red checks, abdominal fullness, irregular bowel habits

Lung and Spleen deficiency
- weak child, possibly small for their age
- frequent colds, takes a long time to recover
- poor appetite, or very picky eater
- pale complexion
- general lack of vitality (or, paradoxically, hyperactivity)
- weak low voice

Lingering pathogenic factor
- swollen glands (usually in the neck) that are hard
- history of repeated infections treated with antibiotics
- loud cough

Kidney yang deficiency
- long history of asthma (often since birth)
- weak pale child, possibly small for their age
- enuresis
- cold extremities
- pale tongue

Treatment between episodes

Treatment at this stage focuses on the underlying pattern. Both acupuncture and herbs (in conjunction with diet) are effective when given regularly. A piecemeal approach is almost worse than nothing, causing the child to resist treatment and the parents to despair.

Acupuncture

Acupuncture treatment is generally very simple and the number of points kept to a minimum.
- For infants, the main points are the si feng (M-11: 9) points. These points can be needled with a fine gauge filiform needle. Needle all points on both hands at each treatment. It usually takes 4-5 days to get the full effect of the si feng points, so one weekly treatment is generally sufficient. These points are not suitable for Kidney yang deficiency, which should be gently warmed and tonified with moxa and cups.
- For children, the main points are selected from the Lung and Bladder channels, typically Lu.9 (tai yuan), Lu.5 (chi ze) and Bl.13 (fei shu). Gentle cupping may be applied to the upper back. Cupping and massage techniques can also be taught to the parents.

Herbal prescriptions

Lung and Spleen deficiency and Phlegm Damp types

Use LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination 六君子汤, p.88) and add more Phlegm cutting herbs if necessary. It has been noticed by practitioners here that the addition of Phlegm removing herbs often provokes the coughing up of significant quantities of mucus, even though there had been little symptomatic evidence of mucus. As mentioned above, care does need to be taken when mobilising Phlegm from the Lungs; Lung qi must be strong enough to deal with the Phlegm as it is being dredged from the deeper and further reaching bronchioles. Also useful, for this and for patterns with a lingering pathogenic factor, especially in children under three years old, is the patent medicine BAO YING DAN (Protect the Child Special Pill 保婴丹). This medicine is particularly good if the Phlegm is associated with accumulation disorder.

Children over the age of three can take adult medicines at appropriately
reduced dosages. For those who catch cold frequently, combine LIU JUN ZI TANG with YU PING FENG SAN (Jade Screen Powder 玉屏风散, p.21). If they tend to have lots of watery mucus, SU ZIJIANG QI TANG (Perilla Fruit Combination 苏子降气汤, p.133) is useful. This formula is also good for children with Kidney yang deficiency.

**Lingering Pathogenic Factors**

"GUNGY GLAND MIX". This formula is applied in all cases where the glands in the neck are swollen or hardened and can be repeated until the glands have shrunk and softened. It may be boiled down to a very concentrated mix and squirted down the throat in small amounts, or it can be administered in ground powder form or granulated form. As always add or remove individual herbs according to the presentation.

- **xiao ku cao** (Spica Prunella Vulgaris) 夏枯草 .......................... 15g
- **pu gong ying** (Herba Taraxaci Mongolici cum Radice) 蒲公英 .................................. 15g
- **xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 .................. 12g
- **jin yin hua** (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 .......................... 10g
- **lian qiao** (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 连翘 .......................... 10g
- **zhe bei mu** (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 浙贝母 .......................... 10g
- **niu bang zi** (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子 .......................... 15g
- **cang zi** (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子 .......................... 10g

**Kidney yang deficiency**

For children with asthma from birth, or early after birth, the congenital component needs to be addressed. This can be achieved with YOU GUI WAN (Liucommia and Rehmannia Formula 右归丸, p.256), JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN (Rehmannia Eight Formula 金匮肾气丸, p.150), or the patent medicines GE JIE BU SHEN WAN (Gejie Nourishing Kidney Pills 贡蚧补肾丸) or HAI CHIEH TING KAT WAN 哈蚧定咳丸. Also useful is SU ZIJIANG QI TANG (Perilla Fruit Combination 苏子降气汤, p.133).

---

3. Courtesy of Helen Gordon, TCM paediatric specialist, Sydney, Australia.
EPISTAXIS

Epistaxis is defined as bleeding from the nose from a cause other than physical trauma. The most common cause of epistaxis is trauma, however, from a TCM viewpoint, most cases due to trauma need little treatment other than first aid. This chapter deals with epistaxis related to an underlying physiological dysfunction.

Epistaxis can vary from mild spotting to severe and potentially dangerous bleeding. In TCM, the nose is closely associated with the Lungs and is traversed by the yang ming (Stomach and Large Intestine) channels. Epistaxis, therefore, is most commonly due to dysfunction of the Lungs and Stomach, particularly those associated with Heat. Liver Fire, yin deficiency, and Spleen deficiency failing to hold Blood in the vessels may also give rise to epistaxis.

Epistaxis can be differentiated into excess and deficient patterns. The excess patterns are associated with Heat in the Lungs, Stomach and Liver. The bleeding is often copious and acute, and there are signs of systemic Heat. In deficient patterns, the bleeding is generally mild and recurrent.

AETIOLOGY

Wind Heat, Lung Heat

External Wind Heat usually invades the Lung through the nose or mouth, and can affect any (or all) of the structures of the respiratory system (nose, sinuses, throat, pharynx, skin and lung). The Wind Heat can dry the nasal mucous membranes damaging the local luo mai, causing bleeding.

Toxic Heat

Toxic Heat is an intense and virulent species of Wind Heat or Damp Heat, which invades the Lung system through the nose or mouth. In this context Toxic Heat may be considered a particularly powerful variant of Wind Heat, such as that seen in epidemics where symptoms develop rapidly and affect the whole body. In this pattern it is the Heat that causes the bleeding by quickening Blood and forcing it from the vessels.

Stomach Heat

Simple overeating or overconsumption of heating foods (spicy hot foods and alcohol) can cause Stomach Heat directly. Any pre-existing Heat in the body, from Liver qi stagnation, yin deficiency or external invasion can do the same. If stagnant Liver qi invades the Stomach via the controlling (ke 開, p.70) cycle repeatedly, it can damage Stomach yin giving rise to Heat. Finally external Cold or Heat can penetrate the Stomach and Intestines directly.

Liver Fire

Frustration, anger, hatred, bitterness, repressed emotion and stress can all disrupt the circulation of Liver qi. When qi stagnates for any length of time, the resulting pressure can generate Heat. Depending on the severity of the stagnation (and to some extent the intensity of the aetiological conditions) this can cause stagnant Heat or the more severe Fire, the latter being exacerbated by a diet of heating foods and alcohol. Because one of the functions of the Liver is to store Blood, pathological Heat affecting the Liver is easily transferred to the Blood. Therefore, in addition to the Fire directly rising to the head and damaging the nasal passages, the Blood can be heated and forced from the vessels.

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency

When Liver and Kidney yin become damaged (from illness, overwork or taking drugs), the resultant Heat can dry the mucous membranes of the Lungs and nose, causing bleeding. Also, there is the tendency for yang to rise when yin is deficient. At a critical point of deficiency, Liver yang suddenly slips its mooring and surges towards the head, causing abrupt bleeding. Uncontrolled rising yang, as a result of yin deficiency, can increase the pressure in the Blood vessels of the head, damage the luo mai and cause nosebleed and scleral haemorrhage.

Spleen qi deficiency

Overwork, excessive worry, irregular or poor dietary habits or prolonged illness weaken Spleen qi. One of the main functions of Spleen qi is to exert an external pressure on the vessels preventing the leakage of Blood and when this aspect is weak, Blood ‘oozes’ out. Bleeding is generally mild, chronic and prolonged. This is in contrast to most other types of epistaxis in which the Blood is heated and quickened, and forced from the vessels.
BOX 4.2 FIRST AID TO STOP BLEEDING

1. Cold compress
   • to the bridge of the nose while pinching the soft part of the nose between the thumb and forefinger. This is best performed with the patient reclining.
   • applied to the neck (around DU 15 yu men). An ice cube applied to DU 15 may also be useful. The neck is where the yang channels meet, and cold applied here can restrain yang, redirect Fire downwards and cool the Blood. Suitable in excess patterns of epistaxis.

2. Haemostatic powder
   • insert a ball of cotton wool coated with YUN NAN SA YAO (云南白药) or san qi (Radix Notoginseng) into the nose, and press the soft part of the nose between thumb and forefinger.
   • In recurrent cases, YUN NAN SA YAO powder can be blown in the nose with a straw several times daily.

3. Moxibustion or counterirritant therapy
   • for recurrent bleeding due to Heat (usually deficient Heat), direct or indirect moxibustion can be applied to Kid.1 (yang quan). Similarly, garlic paste, or powdered wu zhu yu (Fructus Evodiae Rutaecarpae) can be used on the same point. The feet can also be dipped in very hot water. All these methods lead Heat downward.

4. SI.3 (hou xi) - LI.4 (he gu) compression method
   • this method is derived from martial arts first aid and is primarily employed in traumatic epistaxis. A piece of string or rubber band is tied around the open hand covering both points. The patient then closes the hand into a fist, increasing the pressure on both points.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of epistaxis is usually straightforward, but it can occasionally be confused with other TCM disease categories in which mucus and blood are expelled together. Epistaxis is diagnosed when only blood is lost through the nose, or the volume of blood is greater than mucus. In cases where the volume of mucus is greater, or it is simply streaked with blood, the disease diagnosis is usually naso-sinusitis (鼻渊). Diagnosis can be difficult when blood drains from the nose into the pharynx and is swallowed or coughed up. In such cases, where the bleeding is generally mild and comes from the posterior nasal cavity, the patient may present with coughing or vomiting blood. Any chronic case of epistaxis needs examination by rhinoscopy.

Epistaxis also occurs in very dry climates due to simple drying and cracking of the mucus membranes—this usually does not require specific treatment other than topical protection with an emollient substance like lanolin.

TREATMENT

In general, there are several steps to consider when treating any bleeding disorder. The first, and most important step, is to stop the bleeding. When the bleeding is severe, the initial focus of treatment is to use first aid or herbs to quickly staunch the bleeding. This can usually be achieved with a styptic formulae, or with the use of the patent medicine Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Piaiyao).

Once bleeding has ceased, or is under control, the underlying pattern can be dealt with more fully. There are two additional aspects to consider. Any residual Blood outside the vessels is stagnant Blood, which must be moved as it may become pathological if allowed to remain. Thus, herbs to gently invigorate or regulate Blood are incorporated into the appropriate formula. This is especially important in Heat types of bleeding, as the herbs used to stop bleeding will likely be cold natured and astringent. These herbs congeal Blood. Finally, any qi or Blood deficiency that exists as a direct result of Blood loss should be supplemented.

Fig. 4.1 Summary of epistaxis patterns
4.1 WIND HEAT, LUNG HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Pathogenic Heat invades the Lungs through the mouth and nose, drying the nasal mucous membranes and damaging nasal capillaries, causing bleeding. This pattern is acute and usually not recurrent.

Clinical features
- nosebleed with fresh red blood, generally not copious
- dry nostrils, nasal obstruction
- fever, mild chills
- headache
- dry, sore throat, thirst
- cough
- Normal or red tipped with a thin dry white or yellow coat
- P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
- Expel Wind and Heat
- Cool Blood, stop bleeding

Prescription
SANG JU YIN 桑菊饮 (Morus and Chrysanthemum Formula) modified

This formula is selected when exterior signs and Wind Heat are primary.

- sang ye (Folium Morii Alb. 桑叶) ............................. 12g
- ju hua (Fl. Chrysanthemi Morifoli 菊花) .............. 9g
- bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae 白茅根) .... 18g
- lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis 芦根) ........... 15g
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis 牡丹皮) ............... 12g
- xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae 杏仁) .................. 12g
- lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensea 连翘) ............. 9g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflor 桔梗) ............... 9g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis 薄荷) .................. 6g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis 甘草) ................. 3g

Method: Decoction. Do not cook longer than 20 minutes. Bo he is added near the end of cooking (hou xin 后下). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xue)

Modifications
- If the exterior signs are severe (fever, chills, headache, sore throat), add jing jie (Herba seu Fls Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 芥芥 10g and feng (Radix Ledebouriuellae Divaricatae) 防风 10g.
- With severe thirst, add tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 12g and mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 12g.
- If the throat is very sore, add yuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 元参 18g and ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaeriae seu Calvatiae) 马勃 3g.
- If cough is severe, add chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosa) 川贝母 9g, dong gua ren (Semen Benincasae Hispidae) 冬瓜仁 and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌仁 12g.
- With constipation, add da huan (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌仁 9g.

Patent medicines
Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Ma Xing Zhi Ke Pian 麻杏止咳片 (Ma Hsing Chih Ke Pien)
Yunnan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- This medicine can be taken internally and/or blown into the nose with a straw. It is used in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
LI4 (he gu -), SJ5 (wai guan -), Lu11 (zhao shang -), GB20 (feng chi -), LI20 (ying xiang), Bl13 (fei shu -)
- if fever is severe add LI11 (qu chi -)
- if cough is severe add Lu5 (chi ye -)

Clinical notes
- The biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Heat or Lung Heat epistaxis include the common cold, tonsillitis, upper respiratory tract infection, acute bronchitis, pneumonia, early stage of measles and sinusitis.
- Responds well to correct and timely treatment.
4.2 TOXIC HEAT

Pathophysiology

- Toxic Heat type nosebleed accompanies symptoms of severe systemic Heat and distress. It occurs after a particularly virulent or epidemic pathogen invades the Lungs and body forcing Blood from the vessels. This pattern shares some characteristics with the Heat affecting the Blood pattern of the wen bing (see p.41)

Clinical features

- nosebleed, usually profuse and perhaps also with other sites of bleeding (gums, skin etc.)
- high fever
- malaise, irritability, restlessness
- dry mouth and throat, thirst
- insomnia
- concentrated urine
- in severe cases delirium
- T red with a yellow coat
- P forceful and rapid

Treatment principle

Purge Fire and eliminate Toxins
Cool the Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription

HUANG LIAN JIE DU TANG (Coptis and Scute Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis)</th>
<th>3g</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ce bai ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ou jie (Nodus Nelumboe Nuciferae Rhizomatis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qing dai (Indigo Pulverata Levis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Qing dai is added to the strained decoction (zhong ju shu)
(Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions

- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g.
- If the throat is sore, add xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 18g and ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaerae seu Calvatiae) 马勃 3g

Patent medicines

- Huang Lian Jie Du Wan (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan) 黄连解毒丸
- Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pian) 清肺抑火片
- An Gong Niu Huang Wan (An Gong Niu Huang Wan) 安宫牛黄丸

With delirium

Yun Nan Bai Yao (Yunnan Baiyao) - this medicine can be taken internally and/or blown into the nose with a straw. It is used in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Clinical notes

- Epistaxis associated with Toxic Heat may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as septicaemia, pneumonia, encephalitis, meningitis and sinusitis.
- This pattern should be managed in hospital.

Modifications

- With severe dryness and thirst, add shi hu (Herba Dendrobi) 石斛 12g and tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthis Kirilowii) 天花粉 12g.
4.3 STOMACH HEAT

Pathophysiology
- The yang ming (Stomach and Large Intestine) channels strongly influence the nose. When Heat accumulates in the Stomach, it disrupts the natural descent of Stomach qi. The Heat rebels up through the Stomach channel to the nose, causing bleeding. This pattern can be acute, as the result of an exceptional episode of overindulgence, or an invasion of external Heat into the Stomach and Intestines (yang ming), but more commonly is chronic and recurrent.

Clinical features
- nosebleed with copious fresh red blood
- swollen, ulcerated or bleeding gums
- irritability
- frontal headache
- thirst with desire for cold drinks
- indeterminate gnawing hunger
- acid reflux
- bad breath
- constipation
- concentrated urine
- red swollen face and nose, bags under the eyes (if chronic)
- T red with a yellow coat
- P slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat from the Stomach
Cool the Blood, stop bleeding

Prescription
YU NU JIAN 玉女煎
(Jade Woman Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medicine</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>18-30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>18-30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu xi (Radix Aconitum Bidentatum) 牛膝</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zhi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With severe bleeding, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae) 白茅根 18g and qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 苦草根 9g.
- With severe thirst, add tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 12g and shi hu (Herba Dendrobii) 石斛 12g.
- If this pattern is usually related to overindulgence (typically of alcohol or spicy food), herbs to relieve food stagnation can be added, like shan zha (Fructus Crataegi) 神曲 9g, chao shen qu (dry fried Massa Fermentata) 炒神曲 12g and ji nei jin (Endothelium Corneum Gigeriae Galli) 鸡内金 6g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜楼仁 12g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- When nosebleed follows a pathogenic invasion into the Stomach and Intestines (yang ming syndrome) and is accompanied by high fever, sweating, thirst and a flooding pulse, the correct treatment is to clear Heat from yang ming with BAI HU TANG (Anemarrhena and Gypsum Combination 白虎汤, p.32), modified appropriately.

Patent medicines
Huang Lian Jie Du Wan 黄连解毒丸 (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan)
Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Niu Huang Jie Du Pian 牛黄解毒片 (Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien)
Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Baiyao)
- this medicine can be taken internally and/or blown into the nose with a straw. It is used in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
Du.23 (shang xing -), St.3 (ju liao -), LI.2 (er jian -), St.44 (nei ting -), St.45 (li dai -), LI.14 (be gu -), LI.11 (gu chi -)

Clinical notes
- Epistaxis associated with Stomach Heat may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as alcoholism, overindulgence, gastritis, reflux oesophagitis, gingivitis, meningitis or encephalitis.
- This pattern can respond well to correct treatment combined with dietary and lifestyle modification, particularly limiting hot and spicy foods, alcohol and overeating.
4.4 LIVER FIRE

Pathophysiology
- When Liver Fire causes nosebleed the Blood is quickened and forced from the vessels of the upper body. The key to this pattern is the relationship of the symptoms to emotional stress, and there will often be a history of emotional tension or high stress. In addition, there are frequently elements of Stomach Heat in this pattern, as the development of Liver Fire is aided by overindulgence in heating foods and beverages.

Clinical features
- nosebleed with copious fresh red blood, which is initiated by emotional turmoil; in some cases there may also be scleral haemorrhage
- bitter taste in the mouth, dry mouth
- hypochondriac tension or discomfort
- irritability, short temper
- temporal headache
- dizziness, tinnitus
- insomnia
- red, sore eyes; facial flushing
- in chronic cases the nose may be swollen and red with orange peel like skin, and spider naevi may be evident on the cheeks

P wiry, forceful and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Liver Fire
Cool the Blood, stop bleeding

Prescription
LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG (Gentiana Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ingredient</th>
<th>amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (I.uctus Gardeniae Jasmoidis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc bai ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is usually cooked in a cloth bag (bao jian).

Modifications
- With severe bleeding, add qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 赤芍根 9g, xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 12g and bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 18g.
- With severe Heat, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptis) 黄连 6g, ling yang jiao fen° (powdered Cornu Antelopis) 羚羊角粉 3g.
- With dryness, delete che qian zi and ze xie, and add mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 12g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 18g and zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 12g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- Nosebleeds that occurs premenstrually are often associated with Heat in the Liver affecting the Blood. Accompanying symptoms include irritability, thirst, dizziness and a shortened cycle. In extreme cases, the period is scanty or even absent. The correct treatment is to clear Heat from the Liver, redirect qi and Blood downwards, and stop bleeding with SI WU TANG (Dang Gui Four Combination 四物汤) modified.
  - sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 30g
  - bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 30g
  - bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 15g
  - chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 15g
  - yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g
  - dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
  - e jiao° (Gelatinum Corii Asi) 阿胶 9g
  - mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g
  - huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
  - chuan lian zi° (Frutus Meliae Toosendan) 川棟子 9g
  - gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 5g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang he fang). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Fu Ke Xin)

Patent medicines
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- this medicine can be taken internally and/or blown into the nose with a straw. It is used in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.
Acupuncture

Bl.13 (fei shu -), Lu.5 (chi ze -), Liv.2 (xing jian -), GB.20 (feng chi -),
GB.18 (cheng ling -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.3 (tai chong -),
Bl.18 (gan shu -), LI.11 (qu chi -)

Clinical notes

• Epistaxis associated with Liver Fire may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as hypertension, alcoholism, hepatitis and bleeding diathesis.
• Episodes generally respond satisfactorily to correct treatment. Long term results require an appropriate management plan with lifestyle modification, relaxation, exercise and stress management.

4.5 LIVER AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

• Liver and Kidney yin deficiency epistaxis has two aspects to it. The first is the background Liver and Kidney yin deficiency, the drying effect of which on the Lungs gives rise to the occasional weak bleeding. The second is the tendency for yang to rise when yin is deficient. Uncontrolled rising yang as a result of yin deficiency can increase the pressure in the vessels of the head, damaging the delicate luo mai, causing nosebleed and scleral haemorrhage.

Clinical features

• Intermittent nosebleeds, usually with only small amounts of blood
• Loose teeth, atrophy of the gums
• Dizziness, tinnitus, blurred vision, poor memory
• Malar or facial flushing, night sweats
• Sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
• Lower back ache
T red and dry with little or no coat
P thready and rapid

Treatment principle

Nourish yin, clear Heat
Cool the Blood, stop bleeding

Prescription

ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八味丸
(Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula)

| shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 | 24g |
| shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药 | 12g |
| shan zhu yu (Fructus Cori Officinalis) 山茱萸 | 12g |
| fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 | 9g |
| mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 | 9g |
| ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 浓沥 | 9g |
| zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 | 9g |
| yan huang bai (salt fried Cortex Phellodendi) 盐黄柏 | 9g |

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9 gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with the doses as shown. (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xue)

Modifications

• If the bleeding is more than just a small amount, add han lian cao (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草 12g, ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatis) 藕节 12g and e jiao* (Gelatinum Cori Asini) 阿胶 9g.
**Clinical notes**

- Epistaxis associated with Liver and Kidney yin deficiency may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as hypertension, menopausal syndrome, leukaemia and Hodgkin's disease.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

*With Liver yang rising*

- If Liver is weak, add bie jia (Carapax Amydae Sinensis) 12g, qing hao (Herba Artemisiae Annuae) 15g.
- If the Spleen is weak, double the dose of shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposite) 山药 and add chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g, and bai zhao (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 台术 12g.

*With Blood deficiency*

- In very chronic cases with persistent or severe bleeding, Blood deficiency may occur. The correct treatment is to focus on stopping the bleeding, and nourish Blood with JIAO AI TANG (Ass-Hide Gelatin and Marnegrwo Decoction 枸艾汤).
  
  - **E jiao** (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 9g
  - **ai ye** (Folium Artemisiae Argyi) 艾叶 9g
  - **shu di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita) 熟地 18g
  - **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
  - **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorea) 白芍 9g
  - **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g
  - **zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 6g

  Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 消化). (Source: Shi Yang Jing Ji Xin)

**) Patent medicines**

- **Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan** 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- **Qi Jin Di Huang Wan** 杞菊地黄丸 (Lycium-Rehmannia Pills)
- **Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan** 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)
- **Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan** 阳阴降压丸 (Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan)
- **Yun Nan Bai Yao** 云南白药 (Yunnan Baiyao)

  - this medicine can be taken internally and/or blown into the nose with a straw. It is used in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

**) Acupuncture**

- **Bl.23 (shen shu +), Bl.18 (gan shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Liv.3 (tai chong), Bl.7 (tong xian), Kid.1 (yong quan), Sp.1 (yin bai ▲), Sp.6 (san yin jiao)**
### 4.6 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

#### Pathophysiology
- In contrast to the Heat patterns, a Spleen qi deficiency type nose bleed drips rather than pours as the deficient Spleen qi allows slow leakage of Blood from the vessels.

#### Clinical features
- Occasional dripping nosebleed with pale pink blood; the quantity is usually small, but may occasionally be copious, maybe accompanied by other sites of bleeding—easy bruising, bleeding gums, heavy menstrual period, uterine bleeding
- Pale complexion
- Abdominal distension
- Poor appetite
- Loose stools
- Fatigue
- Postural dizziness
- T pale with thin white coat
- P thready and weak, or hollow if there has been significant blood loss

#### Treatment principle
Strengthen the Spleen, tonify qi and Blood
Stop bleeding

#### Prescription
**GUI PI TANG**
*(Ginseng and Longan Combination)* modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotum Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosa)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long yan rou (Arillus Luphoriae Longanae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ce bai ye (Cuminum Biota Orientalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di yu tan (charrred Radix Sanguisorbae Officinalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e jiao* (Gelatinum Cordii Asini)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction *(yang hua H E)*. (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Han Ke Xue)*

### Modifications
- If the bleeding persists, other astringent styptic herbs like xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 12g, chao pu huang (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄 9g and han lian cao (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草 12g can be added, or consider JIAO AI TANG *(Ass-Hide Gelatin and Magwort Decoction)* p.178.
- With Cold or yang deficiency, add two or three of the following herbs: zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6g, gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 6g, rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g, xian ling pi (Herba Epimedi) 仙灵脾 12g or ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 9g

### Variations and additional prescriptions

#### Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
- If Spleen and Kidney yang are deficient, the correct treatment is to warm and tonify Spleen and Kidney yang with a guiding formula such as YOU GUI WAN *(Eucommia and Rehmannia Formula)* 右归丸 p.256, or JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN *(Rehmannia Eight Formula)* 金匮肾气丸 p.150 with the addition of herbs like huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 and dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 当参

#### Patent medicines

**Gui Pi Wan**归脾丸 *(Gui Pi Wan)*

**Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan**金匮肾气丸 *(Sexoton Pills)*

- yang deficiency

**Yan Nan Bai Yao 云南白药** *(Yunnan Piyao)*

- This medicine can be taken internally and/or blown into the nose with a straw. It is used in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

### Acupuncture

Sp.6 *(san yi jiao + А)*, Bl.20 *(pi shu + А)*, St.36 *(zuo san li + А)*, Du.20 *(bai hui + А)*, Ren.6 *(qi hui + А)*, Sp.1 *(jin bai + А)*

### Clinical notes
- Epistaxis associated with qi deficiency may be diagnosed as biomedical conditions such as thrombocytopoenia, haemophilia, idiopathic thrombocytopoenic purpura and anaemia.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment, although genetic bleeding disorders are difficult.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR EPISTAXIS

Excess patterns

Wind Heat - Sang Ju Yin 桑菊饮

Toxic Heat - Huang Lian Jie Du Tang 黄连解毒汤
  • with disordered consciousness - plus Xi Jiao Di Huang Tang 次角地黄汤 or Qing Ying Tang 清营汤

Stomach Heat - Yu Nü Jian 玉女煎
  • with external invasion into yang ming - Bai Liu Tang 白鹿汤

Liver Fire - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤

Deficient patterns

Lung and Kidney  yin deficiency - Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸
  • with yang rising - Zhen Gan Xi Feng Tang 镇肝熄风汤
  • with Blood deficiency - Jiao Ai Tang 橘艾汤

Spleen qi deficiency - Gui Pi Tang 归脾汤
  • with Kidney yang deficiency - You Gui Wan 右归丸, or Jin Gui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
HAEMOPTYSIS

Ke xuen 血咳

Haemoptysis is the coughing up or spitting of blood originating in the lungs. The blood may appear as fresh blood, blood clots or blood streaked mucus. Clinically, haemoptysis is less common as a primary presentation than as a subsidiary symptom of other TCM respiratory ‘diseases’, like cough or fei yong (Lung abscess). It often accompanies severe Heat patterns involving the Lungs, but in these cases (unless the bleeding is copious) the TCM diagnosis is more likely to be cough or fei yong. When haemoptysis is the primary presentation, it is usually a serious condition requiring investigation.

AETIOLOGY

Cough

A chronic or severe cough, from any cause, can result in haemoptysis. Repeated coughing can mechanically disrupt the delicate lining of the lungs, rupturing superficial vessels. If the cough causing the haemoptysis is simply a response to an inhaled irritant, then identification and removal of the irritant is the only treatment required.

Heat

Heat is the most common cause of haemoptysis. When there is Heat in the body it can influence the Blood, quickening it and forcing it from the vessels. The Heat may be excess or deficient in origin. Heat also dries and damages the lining of the Lungs, causing rupture of superficial vessels.

Excess Heat is either external, or internally generated. External Heat is due to Wind Heat or Wind Cold that turns hot once in the body. If qi is weak or the pathogen strong the pathogen can penetrate further into the body, leading to Lung Heat or Phlegm Heat (when there is pre-existing Phlegm). Heat of external origin is probably the most common cause of haemoptysis.

Internal Heat can be the product of prolonged Liver qi stagnation (see Liver Fire), or excessive consumption of heating foods and tobacco. The presence of pre-existing internal Heat, derived from the aforementioned factors, can predispose patients to increased damage by external Heat. Once affected by Heat, chest fluids and jin can be dried out and damaged. This can cause thickening of fluids into Phlegm or an increase in the viscosity of Blood leading to sluggish and stagnant Blood.

Deficient Heat is generated by jin deficiency. Lung jin is damaged by other chronic or severe hot Lung diseases, like recurrent Phlegm Heat. Smoking, living in very dry environments, use of bronchodilating medications and inhaled steroids or jin deficiency of other yang can contribute to Lung jin deficiency. A hot and spicy diet may also contribute by continually dispersing Lung qi and jin.

Dryness

Dryness easily damages the Lungs. The dryness may be external and associated with Wind and Heat or Cold, or may simply be the result of living in a very dry environment. Any of the Heat pathogens may dry the Lungs, including the Heat generated by jin deficiency. As well as generating Heat, jin deficiency fails to adequately moisten the Lungs.

Liver Fire

Emotions like frustration, resentment and anger can disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, which can over time generate sufficient Heat to be redefined as Fire. The Liver and the Lungs have a close relationship. According to five phase (wu xing 五行) theory, the Lungs restrain the Liver, and prevent it from getting too ‘strong’. When the Lungs are weak or the Liver too ‘strong’ (that is, Liver qi is stagnant or there is some other excess pattern involving the Liver), then the controlling (ke 肾, p.70) cycle breaks down and the pent up Liver qi or Fire rebels backwards along the controlling cycle. When Liver Fire damages the Lungs (via the reverse ke cycle) haemoptysis is the result. In contrast, when Liver qi stagnation follows the same path to affect the Lungs, the result is (usually) cough.

Spleen qi deficiency

Overwork, excessive worry, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw foods or prolonged illness weaken Spleen qi. One of the main functions of Spleen qi is to exert an external pressure on the vessels preventing the leakage of Blood and when this aspect is weak Blood ‘oozes’ out. Bleeding of this type is generally mild, chronic and prolonged. This is in contrast to most other types of haemoptysis in which the Blood is heated and quickened and forced from the vessels. This is an uncommon type of haemoptysis as deficiency bleeding generally affects the lower body and skin.

BOX 5.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF HAEMOPTYSIS

- acute infections (bronchitis, lor disease, URTI)
- chronic bronchitis
- bronchiectasis
- tuberculosis
- lung and laryngeal tumours
- pulmonary infarction
- HIV
- foreign body
- thromboembolism
- lung abscess
- anticoagulants
- trauma
- blood dyscrasia
- epidemic haemorrhagic diseases
- thrombocytopenia
- mitral stenosis
- Goodpasture's syndrome
- roundworm or hookworm infestation
5.1 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Wind Heat invades the Lungs through the mouth and nose. Once lodged in the Lungs, Heat damages and dries the surface of the Lungs and the delicate lung causing bleeding.

Clinical features
- acute cough with yellow blood streaked mucus. The blood is fresh red. Depending on the degree of Heat, there may be only small amounts of sticky mucus with larger quantities of blood. (When there is more mucus than blood, or simply streaks of blood on the mucus, the TCM disease diagnosis of cough may be more appropriate, see p.77)

- sore throat
- fever, mild chills
- thirst
- headache
- sweating
T normal or red tip with a thin yellow coat
P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
Disperse Wind and clear Heat from the Lungs
Cool Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription
YIN QIAO SAN 红芍散
(Lonicera and Forsythia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin yin hua (Hlos Lonicerae Japonicae)</td>
<td>12-15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae)</td>
<td>12-15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jing jie (Herba seu Hlos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhotae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han lian cao (Herba Echiptae Prostratae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai mao gen (Rhzizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomat)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Do not cook for more than 20 minutes. Bo he is added near
the end of cooking (bao xia & 下) Jie geng, which appears in the original formula, has an ascending action and is unsuitable for haemoptysis. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If the haemoptysis is severe, add YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yunnan White Powder 云南白药) or san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng 三七粉) 3g to the cooked decoction (chongfu 冲服).
- With some Phlegm Heat (copious sticky yellow mucus, a greasy tongue coat and a slippery pulse), add huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis 黄芩 12g) and yu xing cao (Herba Hototuyniae 鱼腥草 15g).
- If following the resolution of the exterior symptoms, there is damage to body fluids, with a persistent dry cough, little or no mucus and a red dry tongue, delete jing jie and bo he and add tian dong (Tuber Asparagus Cochinchenis) 天冬 9g, mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonics) 麦冬 12g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 15g and tian hua fei (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 9g.

Patent medicines
Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)
Qing lei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
- for more severe Heat
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected.

The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
Lu.6 (kong zui -), Lu.10 (yu ji -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Li.4 (he gu -),
SJ.5 (wai guan -), Li.16 (ju gu -)
- if fever is severe add Li.11 (gu chi -)
- if cough is severe add Lu.5 (chi ge -)
- sore swollen throat, add l.u.11 (shao shang 1) and Si.17 (tian rong -)

Clinical notes
- The haemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as the common cold, tonsillitis, upper respiratory tract infection, acute bronchitis, pneumonia, early stage of measles, encephalitis or meningitis.
- Generally responds well to correct and timely treatment.

5.2 DRYNESS AFFECTING THE LUNGS

Pathophysiology
- Seasonal dryness or depletion of normal fluids due to dry Heat, Wind or smoking can lead to dryness of the Lungs, damage to the delicate tao mai and consequent bleeding. This pattern is common in Autumn in China when very dry winds blow off the Gobi desert. This is not a common pattern in humid or damp climates, although widespread indoor climate control may influence this.

Clinical features
- dry, hacking cough with blood or scant, blood streaked mucus
- dry throat, lips, nose and mouth
- mild fever
- aversion to wind
- thirst
- irritability
- Thin, dry, white coat
- P floating and possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Clear and moisten the Lungs
Calm the cough and stop bleeding

Prescription
QING ZAO JIU FEI TANG 清燥救肺汤 (Eriobotrya and Ophiopogon Combination) modified

xìng rén* (Semen Pruni Armeniaceae) 杏仁.............................. 9g
săng ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶...................................... 9g
sha shen (Radix Adenosphaerae seu Glehniae) 沙参..................... 9g
zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae Japonicens) 桑杏........... 9g
- xìng rén* (Semen Pruni Armeniaceae) 杏仁.............................. 9g
-ăng ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶...................................... 9g
- sha shen (Radix Adenosphaerae seu Glehniae) 沙参..................... 9g
-zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae Japonicens) 桑杏........... 9g

shèng di tàn (charred Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地炭........................ 12g
cái bái ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 侧柏叶.......................... 12g
gàn cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草............................ 3g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (jiàng húa 炙化). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)
Modifications
- With severe bleeding, add qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae)
  茜草根 9g, xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 12g and
  bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 18g, or combine
  with YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yunnan White Powder 云南白药).
- With constipation, add tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g and huo ma
  ren (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 9g.

Patent medicines
Luo Han Guo Chong Ji 罗汉果冲剂 (Luo Han Guo Beverage)
Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan 养阴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)
Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao 川贝枇杷膏 (Nín Jiōm Pei Pa Káo)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected.
- The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
Lu.6 (kōng zǐ -), Lu.10 (yu jī -), Bl.13 (jiē shu -), Li.4 (he gu -),
SJ.5 (wāi guān -), Li.16 (jīng hū -), Kid.6 (zhào bāi +), Lu.7 (he qū)
  • with fever add Li.11 (gu chī -)
  • if cough is severe add Lu.5 (chī zé -)

Clinical notes
- The hemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical
  conditions such as upper respiratory tract infection, influenza, acute
  and chronic bronchitis, pneumonia and whooping cough.
- Generally responds well to correct treatment.

5.3 WIND COLD
Pathophysiology
- Invasion of Wind Cold disrupts the circulation of Lung qi and leads to
coughing which can damage the huo mai of the Lungs. This is an uncommon
cause of haemoptysis, except in those with pre-existing Lung disease and
chronic cough.

Clinical features
- cough with thin watery mucus mixed with a small quantity of blood
  • chill and mild fever or aversion to cold
  • occipital headache
  • stiff neck, myalgia
  • nasal obstruction or runny nose with clear watery mucus
  • usually unremarkable, with a thin white coat
  • floating and tight

Treatment principle
Dispel Wind and Cold
Soothe the Lungs and stop bleeding

Prescription
JIN FEI CAO SAN 金沸草散
(Inula Powder) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin fei cao (Herba Inulae) 金沸草</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenufolia) 菊芥</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu líng (Sclerotum Poriae cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bān xià (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xī xīn (Herba cum Radice Asari) 沙参</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gān cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shēng jiāng (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜</td>
<td>3pce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bái mào gèn (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chāo pu huāng (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If the bleeding is severe, combine with YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yunnan
  White Powder 云南白药).
5.4 LUNG HEAT

Pathophysiology

- Lung Heat results from the penetration of Wind Heat (or Wind Cold which turns hot) into the Lungs. Once lodged internally, Heat easily dries and damages the delicate Lung tissus mai and may quicken the Blood, causing it to spill from the vessels. This pattern often follows unresolved Wind Heat.

Clinical features

- dry, hacking painful cough with blood and little or no mucus; if there is a small amount of mucus it is sticky, hard to expectorate and may be blood streaked
- fever with or without sweating
- shortness of breath, laboured breathing or wheezing
- chest tightness and pain
- sensation of heat in the chest
- dry mouth and thirst
- red face
- T red or with a red tip and a yellow coat
- P flooding and rapid, or wiry and rapid

Treatment principle

Clear Heat from the Lungs
Cool Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription

MA XING SHI GAN TANG 麻杏石甘汤
(Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi ma huang* (honey fried Herba Ephedra)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu xing cao (Herba Houttuyniae)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines

Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji 感冒清热冲剂 (Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji)
Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji 感冒止咳冲剂 (Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji)
Zhi Sou Wan 止嗽丸 (Zhi Sou Wan)
Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan 川芎茶调丸 (Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan)
- with prominent headache

Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Baiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture

LI.4 (bei gu -), Lu.7 (lie que -), Lu.6 (kong zui -), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω), Bl.13 (fei shu -Ω), Du.14 (zi shui -Ω)
- If there is significant wheezing use ding chuan (M-BW.1)
- If the nose is congested or runny add Du.23 (shang xing)

Clinical notes

- The haemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as the common cold, influenza and upper respiratory tract infection.
- Generally responds well to correct treatment.
Modifications
• If the bleeding is severe or resistant, combine with YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yunnan White Powder) or add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) to the cooked decoction.
• With chest pain, add tao ren (Semen Persicae) 9g and yu jin (Tuber Curculae) 9g.
• If the cough is severe, add ma dou ling* (Fructus Aristolochiae) 9g and zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Foli um Friobotryae) 9g.
• With severe thirst, add tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthis Kirilowii) 9g.
• If the throat is very sore, add she gan (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 9g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 15g or ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaeræ seu Calvatiae) 9g.

Patent medicines
Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
Niu Huang Qing Hua Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Hua Wan)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Baiyao)

Clinical notes
• The haemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as the common cold, upper respiratory tract infection, tonsillitis, bronchitis and tracheitis.

5.5 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Phlegm Heat is related to Lung Heat and Phlegm Damp. Lung Heat can dry or congeal Lung Fluids to become Phlegm Heat. This usually follows a Wind Heat (or Cold) invasion that penetrates into the Lungs.
• It also occurs as an acute flare up in those with chronic Phlegm Damp in the Lungs, particularly where there is a pre-existing tendency to Heat as a result of overindulgence in heating foods, alcohol and tobacco. See also fei yong (Lung Abscess) p.111.

Clinical features
• hacking or rattling cough with blood and/or profuse foul smelling, sticky yellow or green, blood streaked or rust-like mucus
• fever which may rise in the afternoon and evening
• fullness and stuffiness or mild pain in the chest
• wheezing that tends to be worse at night and first thing in the morning
• sore or congested throat
• bitter taste in the mouth
• loose stools or constipation
• lethargy, malaise
• loss of appetite, nausea
• abdominal distension
• T soft or slippery and rapid

P thick, greasy yellow coat, maybe only on the root

Treatment principle
Expel Phlegm and clear Heat
Cool the Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription
WEI JING TANG 芍茎汤 (Reed Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 芦根</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 茺仁</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu xing cao (Herba Houttuyniae) 鱼腥草</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dong gua ren (Semem Benincasae Hispidae) 冬瓜仁</td>
<td>24g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindriceae) 白茅根</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferæ Rhizomatis) 藕节</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.6 LIVER FIRE

Pathophysiology

- Long term stagnation of qi can generate fire which can damage the Lungs via the (ke 炎, p.70) cycle. In addition, Blood may be heated by contact with the hot Liver (the Liver stores Blood) and spill from the vessels. This process is exacerbated by excessive consumption of Liver heating substances. The Lungs are more vulnerable to Liver Fire when their qi is deficient.

Clinical features

- Paroxysmal intense cough which comes in bursts with blood streaked mucus or coughing of fresh red blood. The quantity of blood may be large or small. The cough may be initiated or aggravated by emotional upset or stress.
- During coughing episodes the patient is flushed, hot and upset
- Focal chest or hypochondriac distension or pain
- Temporal headache
- Dizziness
- Irritability and anger outbursts
- Dry mouth and thirst
- Bitter taste in the mouth
- Red, sore eyes
- Red with a yellow coat
- P wiry and rapid

Treatment principle

Clear Heat from the Liver and Lungs
Cool the Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription

XIE BAI SAN 泻白散
(Morus and Lycium Formula) plus
DAI GE SAN 黛蛤散
(Indigo and Conch Powder) modified

chao sang bai pi (dry fried Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 炒桑白皮 .................................................. 30g
di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Radicis) 地骨皮 .................................................. 30g
geng mi (Semen Oryzae) 梗米 .................................................. 15g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 .................................................. 3g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .................................................. 9g
**Method:** Decoction. Qing dai is cooked in a muslin bag (bou jiao) (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**KE XUE FANG 喘血方**
*(Coughing of Blood Formula)*

This formula is suitable for chronic or recurrent haemoptysis due to Liver Fire. It is not as strong as the primary prescription, and is suited to prolonged use.

- **qing dai** (Indigo Pulverata Levis) 青黛 .......................... 9g
- **shan zhi zi** (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山桅子 ........... 9g
- **fu hai shi** (Pumice) 浮海石 ........................................ 9g
- **gua lou ren** (Semem Trichosanthis) 瓜楼仁 ...................... 9g
- **he zi** (Fructus Terminaliae Chebulae) 诃子 .......................... 9g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 1.5-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill, several times daily. May also be decocted, in which case qing dai is cooked in a muslin bag (bou jiao). (Source: Shi Yang Fang Ji Xue)

**Modifications**
- With severe bleeding add **YUN NAN BAI YAO** (Yunnan White Powder 云南白药) or **san qi fen** (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 3g to the cooked decoction (chong ji 冲去).
- With severe Liver Heat (dizziness, flushing and red, sore eyes), add **long dan cao** (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 9g and **dai zhe shi** (Haematitum) 代赭石 12g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**
- If the Heat is severe enough to affect the Blood, affecting the *shen* and causing disordered consciousness, the correct treatment is to first clear Toxic Heat, cool Blood and clear ying with a resuscitation formula like **AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN** (Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone 安宫牛黄丸, p.914), **ZHI BAO DAN** (Greatest Treasure Special Pill 至宝丹, p.660), **ZI XUE DAN** (Purple Snow Special Pill 紫雪丹, p.707), **XI JIAO DI HUANG TANG** (Rhinoceros Horn and Rhemannia Decoction犀角地黄汤, p.41) or **QING YING TANG** (Clear the Ying Decoction 清营汤, p.38).

**Patent medicines**
- **Long Dan Xie Gan Wan** (龙胆泻肝丸) 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- **Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian** (清肺抑火片) (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
- **Yun Nan Bai Yao** (云南白药) (Yunnan Paiyao)

*this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill included with the medicine is only used in severe cases.*

**Acupuncture**
- Liv.2 (xing jian -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Lu.6 (kong zui -), Lu.5 (chi ze -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.3 (Tai chong -), Bl.18 (gan shu -), Sp.10 (xue bai -)

**Clinical notes**
- The haemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as pleurisy, upper respiratory tract infection, tonsillitis, bronchitis, pneumonia, tracheitis, bronchiectasis, hypertension, whooping cough in adults and lung cancer.
- Episodes generally respond satisfactorily to correct treatment. Long term resolution of recurrent Liver Fire patterns requires an appropriate management plan that includes lifestyle and dietary modification, relaxation, exercise and stress management.
Table 5.1 Comparison of excess Heat haemoptysis patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Tongue &amp; Pulse</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wind Heat</td>
<td>acute cough with blood &amp; scant blood streaked sputum, sore throat, fever, mild chills, thirst, sweating, headache</td>
<td>T: normal or red tip &amp; thin yellow coat P: floating &amp; rapid</td>
<td>YIN QIAO SAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung Heat</td>
<td>dry, hacking cough with blood &amp; little or no sputum, fever, chest tightness &amp; pain, red face, shortness of breath, thirst</td>
<td>T: red or red tip &amp; yellow coat P: floating &amp; rapid</td>
<td>MA XING SHI GAN TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlegm Heat</td>
<td>hacking or rattling cough with sticky, yellow, blood streaked or rusty sputum, fullness in the chest, wheezing, loose stools or constipation, anorexia, nausea</td>
<td>T: thick, greasy yellow coat P: soft or slippery &amp; rapid</td>
<td>WEI JING TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver Fire</td>
<td>intense paroxysmal cough with fresh blood, aggravated by emotion, chest &amp; hypochondriac pain, irritability, pounding headache, bitter taste, red eyes, thirst</td>
<td>T: red with a thick or thin yellow coat P: wiry &amp; rapid</td>
<td>XIE BAI SAN + DAI GE SAN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.7 LUNG AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY WITH HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Lung and Kidney yin deficiency leads to dryness in the Lungs and damages their delicate luo mai. The yin deficiency also generates Heat that aggravates the dryness and can cause the Blood to move recklessly. The result is a generally mild but persistent haemoptysis.

Clinical features
- dry weak cough with spots of fresh red blood, usually with little or no mucus, or mucus mixed with fresh red blood; the cough and haemoptysis are chronic and recurrent
- malar or facial flushing, afternoon or bone steaming fever, night sweats
- sensation of heat in the palms, soles and chest (‘five hearts hot’)
- insomnia
- dry mouth and throat
- dull pain in the chest
- dry and burning sensation in the skin
- lower back pain
- tinnitus, dizziness

T: red with little or no coat
P: thready and rapid

Treatment principle
- Nourish yin and clear Heat
- Cool the Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription

BAI HE GU JIN TANG 百合固金汤
(Lily Combination) modified

- bai he (Bulbus Lilii) 百合 .................................................. 24g
- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita) 熟地 .................. 18g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................... 15g
- mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 .......................... 15g
- xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 ................................. 9g
- chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 ..................... 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ............................. 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ............................ 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Ursaleis) 甘草 ............................ 3g
- bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 ............... 18g
- ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatis) 蒲节 ........................ 12g
- han lian cao (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草 ..................... 9g
**YUE HUA WAN 月华丸**
(Moonlight Pill modified)

This formula has a stronger tonifying action than the primary prescription and is used for more severe and chronic yin deficiency. It is commonly used for consumptive Lung disease.

- *sha shen* (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 30g
- *mai dong* (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 30g
- *tian dong* (Tuber Asparagi cochinchinensis) 天冬 30g
- *sheng di* (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 30g
- *shu di* (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinatae Conquiate) 熟地 30g
- *bai bu* (Radix Stemonae) 白术 30g
- *shan yao* (Radix Dioscoreae Opposite) 山药 30g
- *c jiao* (Gelatinum Corni Asini) 阿胶 30g
- *chuan bei mu* (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 30g
- *fu ling* (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 15g
- *san qi* (Radix Notoginseng) 三七 15g
- *sang ye* (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 60g
- *ju hua* (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 60g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 3-5 pills daily. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xun)

**ZHENG YIN LI LAO TANG 援阴理劳汤**
(Rescue yin, Manage Exhaustion Detoxication modified)

This formula is selected when deficient Heat is mild, and there are more signs of qi deficiency (shortness of breath, fatigue, light red blood, and a pink or reddish, swollen tongue with tooth marks).

- *bai ren shen* (Panax Ginseng) 白人参 9g
- *mai dong* (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 9g
- *wu wei zi* (Fructus Schizandrae Chinesis) 五味子 6g
- *dang gui* (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 6g
- *bai shao* (Radix Paeoniae Iactiflora) 白芍 6g
- *sheng di* (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 9g
- *mu dan pi* (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 6g
- *yi ren* (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 芍仁 12g
- *lian zi* (Semen Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子 6g
- *chen pi* (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
- *xian he cao* (I Ierba Aegrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 9g
- *bai ji* (Rhizoma Bletillea Striatae) 白及 9g
- *ce bai ye* (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 侧柏叶 9g
- *e jiao* (Gelatinum Corni Asini) 阿胶 6g
- *gan cao* (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xun)

**Modifications**
- If the bleeding persists, add *YUN NAN BAI YAO* (Yunnan White Powder) or *san qi fen* (powdered Radix Notoginseng).
- With afternoom fever or bone steaming fever, add *di gu pi* (Cortex Lycii Radicis).
- With severe night sweats, add *mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 山楂 30g, *fu xiao mai* (Semen Tritici Aestivis) 活小麦 12g, and *ma huang gen* (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9g.
- With significant flushing, add *zh i mu* (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 玄母 12g and *huang bai* (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 12g.

**Patent medicines**

- *Bai He Gu Jin Wan* 百合固金丸 (Bai He Gu Jin Wan)
- *Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan* 柴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)
- *Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan* 八仙长寿丸 (Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan)

- Lung and Kidney yin deficiency
- *Yun Nan Bai Yao* 云南白药 (Yunnan Painao)

- The medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill included with the medicine is only used in severe cases.

**Acupuncture**

- Lu.5 (chi ze +), Bl.13 (fei shu +), Bl.43 (gao huang shu +), Kid.2 (run gu -), Bl.23 (she shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Lu.9 (tai yin -), Lu.1 (zhang fu -)
  - with severe haemoptysis add Lu.6 (kong qu)
  - with severe Heat add Lu.10 (yu ji -)

**Clinical notes**

- The haemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as lung cancer, pulmonary tuberculosis, chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, silicosis, asbestosis and bleeding diathesis.
- This pattern can be difficult to treat well, and generally requires prolonged therapy, often combined with Western medicine for satisfactory results.
5.8 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
• Spleen qi deficiency gives rise to a relatively uncommon type of haemoptysis, as bleeding from deficient Spleen qi usually occurs in the lower part of the body. However, if Spleen qi is unable to maintain the integrity of Blood vessels, leakage of Blood into the skin and Lungs may occur.

Clinical features
• Coughing or spitting of blood or expectorating blood streaked mucus. There may also be bleeding from other parts of the body, typically the uterus, rectum or skin.
• pale lustreless or sallow complexion
• fatigue and lethargy
• dizziness, tinnitus
• palpitations
• poor appetite
• loose stools
• abdominal distension
T pale and swollen
P thready and weak or hollow

Treatment principle
Tonify qi to restrain Blood
Strengthen the Spleen, nourish Blood

Prescription
ZHENG YANG LI LAO TANG 振阳理劳汤
(Rescue yang, Manage Exhausation Decoction) modified

huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 .......................... 15g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 .......................... 12g
xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 .......................... 12g
ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参 .................................. 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .................................. 6g
chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................................. 6g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ...................... 6g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 .......................... 6g
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .......................... 3g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......................... 3g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 再化). (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

GUI PI TANG 归脾汤 p.180
(Ginseng and Longan Combination) modified

This formula is selected when shen disturbance is obvious, with insomnia, anxiety or palpitations.

Modifications
• If the bleeding persists, add YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yunnan White Powder 云南白药) or san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng 三七粉) 3g to the cooked decoction (zheng jin 冲服), and consider JIAO AI TANG (Ass-Hide Gelatin and Magnwort Decoction 艾艾汤, p.178).
• Without Cold, delete rou gui, and add shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 熟地 15g.

Patent medicines
Gui Pi Wan 归牌丸 (Gui Pi Wan)
Ge Jie Da Bu Wan 蛤蛤大补丸 (Gejie Da Bu Wan)
Ren Shen Yang Yin Wan 人参养营丸 (Ginseng Tonic Pills)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Piyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill included with the medicine is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
Sp.6 (san yi jiao + △), Bl.20 (pi shu + △), St.36 (zu san li + △),
Bl.23 (shen shu + △), Ren.6 (qi bai + △), Sp.1 (jin bai △)

Clinical notes
• The haemoptysis in this pattern may be associated with biomedical conditions such as thrombocytopenia, haemophilia, AIDS related illness, lung cancer, pulmonary oedema and mitral stenosis.
• Qi deficiency symptoms can respond well to correct treatment, depending on the duration and depth of the disease. For qi deficiency patterns associated with HIV infection, tumours or other severe chronic or structural disorder, the outlook is poorer.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR HAEMOPTYSIS

Excess patterns
Wind Heat - *Yin Qiao San 银翘散
Wind Dryness - *Qing Zao Jin Fei Tang 清燥救肺汤
Wind Cold - *Jin Fei Cao San 金沸草散
* persistent cough and haemoptysis after resolution of exterior symptoms - *Zhi Sou San 止嗽散
Lung Heat - *Ma Xing Shi Gan Tang 麻杏石甘汤
Phlegm Heat - *Wei Jing Tang 薏茎汤
Liver Fire - *Xie Bai San 泻白散 + *Dai Ge San 黛蛤散

Deficient patterns
Lung and Kidney *yin deficiency - *Bai He Gu Jin Tang 百合固金汤
* with *qi deficiency - Zheng Yin Li Lao Tang 滋阴理劳汤
Spleen *qi deficiency - Zheng Yang Li Lao Tang 滋阳理劳汤

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle○ or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.

Disorders of the Lung

6. Loss of Voice and Hoarse Voice

Acute patterns
Wind Cold
Wind Heat
Lung Dryness
Phlegm Heat
Liver Qi stagnation

Chronic patterns
Lung and Spleen Qi deficiency
Lung and Kidney Yin deficiency
Qi, Blood and Phlegm stagnation
**LOSS OF VOICE (HOARSE VOICE)**

Shi yin 失音

This condition is characterised by acute or chronic hoarseness, raspiness or complete loss of voice. Disorders of the voice are mostly due to disorders of the larynx and vocal cords, which in turn are related to the Lungs, Liver, Kidneys and Stomach. The larynx and vocal cords are part of the Lung system, and thus strongly influenced by the same factors that affect the Lung-Wind, yin and qi deficiency and Phlegm. The Liver and Kidneys influence the throat through their internal channel pathways. The Stomach influences the throat through the channel pathway and because of its close anatomical relationship with the throat. The Stomach is prone to Heat disorders, and Heat tends to rise through the oesophagus to the throat.

In cases of persistent hoarseness, referral to a specialist for laryngoscopy to exclude neoplasm is advised.

**AETIOLOGY**

**External pathogens**

The Lungs are considered to be the ‘delicate’ organ—they are relatively superficial and therefore vulnerable to Wind Heat and Wind Cold. Wind and associated pathogens gain access to the vocal cords through the nose and mouth. Pathogens are most likely to lodge at the level of the throat where there is an underlying weakness, for example in patients with a history of repeated tonsillitis, smoking, or voice overuse.

**Phlegm Heat**

Dampness or Phlegm accumulating as a result of Spleen weakness may over time become Phlegm Heat. Alternatively, Phlegm Heat can accumulate if too many rich foods are consumed, or if existing Heat in the body congeals Fluids into Phlegm.

Pre-existing Phlegm Heat can be stirred up Wind causing acute hoarseness or loss of voice. Heavy tobacco smoking which dries and congeals Lung Fluids is a common aggravating feature of this pattern. Chronic Phlegm Heat may lead to the formation of polyps or nodules on the vocal cords.

**Liver qi stagnation**

Frustration, anger and unexpressed emotion can disrupt the circulation of Liver qi. Because the Liver channel passes through the throat, the qi stagnation can affect the larynx and vocal cords. In extreme cases, for example outrage, the stagnation can completely obstruct the vocal cords so that speech is impossible or there is severe stuttering—the person chokes on his or her own words. There are other interesting psychological aspects to this pattern. If emotions or feelings are unexpressed (due to lack of confidence, social constraint or embarrassment) they can get caught in the throat, manifesting as a sensation of something lodged there—known in TCM as ‘plum stone qi’. Long term emotional repression can eventually lead to Blood (and Phlegm) stagnation and structural changes in the throat (see qi Blood and Phlegm stagnation below).

**Lung deficiency**

The strength and projection of the voice is dependent on Lung qi, the moisture and suppleness of the vocal cords on Lung yin. Weak qi and yin, by failing to support the vocal cords, lead to lack of force behind the voice, and chronic dryness, hoarseness or complete loss of voice.

Lung qi may be compromised by poor posture, shallow breathing and lack of exercise, or conversely by repeated or extreme physical overexertion. Prolonged or excessive grief or sadness can weaken Lung qi. If Spleen qi is deficient, then Lung qi will not be supported via the generating (sheng 生, p.70) cycle.

Lung yin is damaged by hot dry environments, febrile disease, smoking and as a secondary result of Kidney yin deficiency. Lung qi and yin can be damaged by overuse of the voice and some medications (like salbutamol and prednisone for asthma).

**Kidney yin deficiency**

Kidney yin deficiency generates Heat, which rises up to the throat through the Kidney channel, causing recurrent dryness, soreness or hoarseness, usually in the afternoon. Lung and Kidney yin have a close relationship. On the one hand, Kidney yin is the basis of Lung yin, and on the other hand Heat from Kidney yin deficiency will dry Lung Fluids. Kidney yin is weakened by overexertion, insufficient sleep, stimulant drug use, febrile illness, insufficient hydration and ageing.

**Qi, Blood and Phlegm stagnation**

Qi, Blood and Phlegm can accumulate and stagnate in the throat and vocal cords. When this happens, they can cause dryness, soreness and hoarseness. Both Phlegm and Blood need to move freely in the throat, or they will dry up and cause hoarseness or complete loss of voice.

**BOX 6.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF HOARSE VOICE OR LOSS OF VOICE**

- acute and chronic laryngitis
- tuberculosis laryngitis
- vocal cord polyps
- smoking

**Extrapharyngeal**

- thyroid disorders
- lesions of the neck
- acromegaly

- Paralysis of the vagus or recurrent laryngeal nerves
- traumatic injury to the throat
- post surgical nerve damage
cords as the result of other chronic pathology. Chronic Liver qi stagnation, Phlegm Heat and Lung weakness are all predisposing factors. The end result is structural changes in the throat or vocal cords, typically polyps or nodules.

Overuse

Overuse of the voice, amongst people like singers, teachers, race callers and actors can lead to hoarseness or loss of voice. The mechanism here is related to weakening of Lung qi.

**BOX 6.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Aggravation**
- in the afternoon - yin deficiency
- in the morning - qi deficiency
- with emotional upset - Liver qi stagnation
- when fatigued and with overuse of the voice - qi and/or yin deficiency

**Amelioration**
- with rest - qi deficiency

**Appearance of vocal cords**
- red - excess Heat
- pale and flaccid - qi deficiency
- pale red - yin deficiency
- nodular and lumpy - qi, Blood or Phlegm stagnation

**Fig 6.1 Summary of hoarseness and loss of voice patterns and relationships**
6.1 WIND COLD

Pathophysiology

- Wind Cold invades the Lungs and lodges in the throat, obstructing the free movement of Lung qi, thereby preventing full expression of the voice.

Clinical features

- sudden weakness, hoarseness or loss of the voice; the throat is mildly red and swollen and the vocal cords look normal or pale
- fever and chills, with chills predominant
- itchy or slightly sore throat
- occipital headache
- no sweating
- muscle aches, neck stiffness
- nasal obstruction, or runny nose with thin watery mucus
- sneezing
- cough or wheezing with thin watery mucus
- T normal or with a thin white coat
- P floating, or floating and tight

Treatment principle

Disperse Wind and Cold
Aid the descent of Lung qi

Prescription

LIU WEI TANG 六味汤
(Six Flavour Decoction)

jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 .......................... 12g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......................... 10g
jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 荆芥 .......................... 10g
fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 .......................... 10g
jiang can* (Bombyx Batryticatus) 僵蚕 .......................... 10g
chan tui* (Periuteracrum Cicadae) 蝉蜕 .......................... 10g
zi su ye (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 紫苏叶 .......................... 10g
qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 .......................... 10g
xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniaceae) 杏仁 .......................... 10g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 3pce
bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. Bo he is added at the end of cooking (hou xia后下).

(Source: Zhang Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications

- With a productive cough, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 10g and bai qian (Radix et Rhizoma Cynanchi Baiqian) 白前 10g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

With internal Heat

- With a Wind Cold invasion on top of pre-existing internal Heat, the symptoms are those described above, plus thirst, sore throat, irritability, constipation and a yellow tongue coat. The correct treatment is to dispel Wind Cold and clear internal Heat with DA QING LONG TANG (Major Blue Dragon Combination 大青龙汤, p.52).

Patent medicines

Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji 感冒清热冲剂 (Colds and Flu Tea)
Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan 川芎茶调丸 (Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan)
- with prominent headache

Gargle

- Decoct equal amounts of huo xiang (Herba Agastaches seu Pogostemi) 香薷, pei lan (Herba Eupatorium Fortunei) 佩兰, zi su ye (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 紫苏叶 and cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) oader白, and gargle warm as often as practical.

Acupuncture

LI.4 (be gu下), Lu.7 (lie que下), GB.20 (jeng chi下), Bl.12 (jeng men - Ω), Bl.13 (fei shu - Ω), Ren.22 (tian tui), bai luo (M-HN-30)

- If there is significant wheezing use deng chuan (M-BW-1)
- If the nose is congested or runny add Du.23 (shang xing)

Clinical notes

- Wind Cold type hoarse voice or loss of voice may be associated with biomedical conditions such as the common cold, influenza, upper respiratory tract infection and laryngitis.
- This pattern responds well to correct treatment.
6.2 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Wind Heat, or Wind Cold which turns hot, penetrates and lodges in the throat and larynx causing redness, swelling, inflammation and pain, thereby making speech difficult.

Clinical features
• Sudden weakness, hoarseness or loss of voice. The throat and vocal cords are red and swollen and there may be a white or yellow exudate on their surfaces. In severe cases swelling significantly narrows the throat causing difficulty with swallowing.
• Sore throat
• Fever and chills, with predominant fever
• Headache
• Nasal obstruction
• Fatigue, poor appetite, malaise
• Productive cough
• T slightly red tip and edges with a thin yellow or white coat

P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and Heat
Moisten and benefit the throat

Prescription
SHU FENG QING RE TANG 疏风清热汤
(Dispel Wind, Clear Heat Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonpetae Tenuifolia)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan tu (Periostracum Cicadae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pang da hui (Semem Sterculiae Scaphigerae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Bo he is added at the end of cooking (hou xia 后下).
(Source: Zhang Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications
• When Wind Heat is complicated by pre-existing Phlegm Heat, add gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 18g, zhe bei mu (Bulbus Liritiariae Thunbergii) 9g and zhu ru (Caulis Bamhusiae in Taeniiis) 9g.
• If the exterior symptoms have resolved but the heat and hoarseness persists, delete jing jie and fang feng.

Patent medicines
Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)
Qing Yin Wan 清音丸 (Qing Yin Wan)
Shuang Liao Hou Feng San 双料喉风散 (Superior Sore Throat Powder) - for topical use
Xi Gua Shuang 西瓜霜 (Watermelon Frost) - for topical use

Powders
• see Wind Heat sore throat, p.286-287

Gargle
• Decoct equal portions of jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae)
金银花, jie geng (Radix Platycedi Grandiflori) 和 lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 连翘 and gargle warm as often as practical.

Acupuncture
Ren.22 (tian tu -), SJ.6 (zhi gong -), LI.4 (be gu -), LI.18 (fu tu -),
Lu.6 (kong zai -), Lu.10 (yu ji -), LI.11 (qu chi -), bai luo (M-HN-30)
- If the throat is very sore and swollen add Lu.11 (shao shang ↓) and
  SI.17 (tian rong -)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Heat type loss of
voice or hoarse voice include tonsillitis, laryngitis, pharyngitis, upper
respiratory tract infection and bronchitis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wind Cold</td>
<td>sudden weakness, hoarseness, or loss of voice, fever &amp; chills, occipital headache, no sweating, myalgia, nasal blockage or thin watery mucus</td>
<td>slightly red &amp; swollen, pale or pink vocal cords T: normal or thin white coat P: floating &amp; tight</td>
<td>LIU WEI TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind Heat</td>
<td>sudden weakness, hoarseness, or loss of voice, fever, mild chills, headache, sweating, malaise, cough with sticky yellow mucus</td>
<td>red, inflamed throat, red vocal cords with yellow or white exudate T: red tip with thin yellow coat P: floating &amp; rapid</td>
<td>SHU FENG QING RE TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlegm Heat</td>
<td>husky, raspy, hoarse voice, throat clearing, expectoration of thick yellow sputum, cough, low fever, bitter taste</td>
<td>red throat with possible swellings of the vocal cords T: greasy yellow coat P: slippery, rapid</td>
<td>QING YAN NING FEI TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver qi stagnation</td>
<td>sudden loss of voice associated with emotion, 'plum stone' throat, irritability, depression</td>
<td>no inflammation or swelling T: normal or dark with a thin coat P: wiry</td>
<td>XIAO JIANG QI TANG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.3 LUNG DRYNESS

Pathophysiology
• Lung Dryness is due to pathogenic Wind and Dryness (with either Heat or Cold depending on the season) invading the Lungs. It usually occurs during dry seasons (or periods of dry weather), damaging Lung fluids which are then unable to nourish and moisten the larynx and throat. Today, due to climate controlled buildings, this syndrome can occur in any season.

Clinical features
• hoarse, husky or raspy voice
• sore, dry, ticklish throat
• dry mouth, nose and lips
• dry hacking, non-productive cough
T dry and normal or red with a thin coat
P slightly rapid

Treatment principle
Clear and moisten the Lungs
Benefit the throat

Prescription
SANG XING TANG 桑杏汤
(Morus and Apricot Seed Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sang ye (Folium Mori Albae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xing ren* (dry fried Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nan sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae)</td>
<td>24g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogon Japonici)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl Indici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li pi (Fructus Pyri)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Ying Zheng Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With Heat, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 12g and shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 18g.
- With headache and fever, add bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g, lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensae) 连翘 12g and chan tui (Periostracum Cicadae) 蝉蜕 9g.
- With exterior symptoms, add jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 金银花 9g and bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g.
- With severe or painful cough, add sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albica Radicis) 桑白皮 12g and ma dou ling* (Fructus Aristolochiae) 马兜铃 9g.
- With severe dryness, add tian dong (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchinensis) 天冬 9g and tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kurilowii) 天花粉 12g.
- If the throat is sore, add xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15g, ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaeræ seu Calvatiae) 马勃 3g, or she gan (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 射干 9g.
- With epistaxis or blood streaked mucus, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 白茅根 18g and sheng di tan (charred Radix Menthae Haplocalycis) 生地炭 12g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
With Lung yin damage
- If the dryness is severe enough to damage Lung yin, this can give rise to severe hoarseness or total loss of voice, a frequent hacking non-productive cough, fullness and pain in the chest and behind the sternum, headache, haemoptysis, parched throat, wheezing and a dry tongue without coat. The correct treatment is to moisten Dryness, clear Heat and nourish Lung yin with QING ZAO JIU FEI TANG (Eriobotria and Ophiopogon Combination 清燥救肺汤) modified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang ye (Folium Mori Albae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaeræ seu Calvatiae)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hei zhi ma (Semen Sesami Indici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi pi pa ye (honey fried Folium Eriobotryae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl Indici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li pi (Fructus Pyri)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl Indici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e jiao* (Gelatinum Cuti Asini)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 芳化). (Source: Shi Ying Zheng Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan 养阴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)
Qing Yin Wan 清音丸 (Qing Yin Wan)
Luo Han Guo Chong Ji 罗汉果冲剂 (Luo Han Guo Beverage)
Chuan Bei Pi Pa Gao 川贝枇杷膏 (Nin Jiom Pei Pa Kao)
6.4 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
There are two presentations of Phlegm Heat voice disorders:
- The first is acute, triggered by a Wind (Heat) invasion in a patient with pre-existing Phlegm accumulation. Heat and Phlegm mix and block the channels of the throat obstructing Lung qi and the larynx (see p.214-215).
- The second pattern is internally generated and can persist at a subacute level for prolonged periods. It occurs in heavy smokers. The pattern presented below is of this type.

Clinical features
- husky, raspy or hoarse voice, throat clearing and expectoration of thick yellow mucus, possibly worse in the morning, worse with smoking and prolonged use
- dry, sore, red or congested throat
- dry mouth with a bitter taste
- possible low fever
- cough with yellow mucus
- greasy yellow coat
- P slippery, possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Clear the Lungs and resolve Phlegm
Clear Heat, benefit the throat

Prescription
QING YAN NING FEI TANG 清咽宁肺汤
(Clear the Throat and Calm the Lungs Decoction) modified

- sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 .......................... 15g
- qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 ........................................ 10g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralsis) 甘草 ............................. 10g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ............................ 10g
- zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 ........ 10g
- zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Turbinatae) 巴豆母 .................. 10g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芪 ....................... 10g
- shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山植子 .................. 10g
- gua lou pi (Pericarpium Trichosanthis) 瓜楼皮 ....................... 10g
- chan tui' (Periostracum Cicadae) 蝉蜕 .............................. 10g
- pang da hai (Semen Sterculiae Scaphigerae) 肥大海 .................. 10g
- mu hu die (Semen Oroxyli Indici) 木蝴蝶 ............................ 10g

Method: Decocition. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lu Chiang Shou Ce)
Modifications
- With a very sore and congested throat, add she gan (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 射干 9g.
- With severe Heat, add shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 15g.
- With jin and fluid damage, add xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 15g and tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 12g.
- If the Phlegm Heat is severe, with thick malodorous mucus, cough, wheeze and more systemic symptoms, see Cough p.90 or fei yong (Lung Abscess), p.111.
- If there are nodules or polyps on the vocal cords, add the herbs suggested in qi, Blood and Phlegm stagnation, p.230.

Patent medicines
Qing Qi Hua Tan Wan 清气化痰丸 (Pinellia Expectorant Pills)
Qing Yin Wan 清音丸 (Qing Yin Wan)

Gargle
- see Wind Heat, p.215-216

Acupuncture
Ren.22 (tian tu -), Lu.7 (lie que -), St.40 (feng long -), LI.18 (fu tu -) Lu.5 (chi ze -), Lu.1 (zhong ju -), Lu.6 (kong zui -), Lu.7 (lie que -), LI.11 (qu chi -), BL.13 (fei shu -), Lu.10 (yu ji -), Ren.17 (shan zhang)
- with wheezing add ding chuan (M-BW-1)
- with fullness in the chest add PC.5 (jian shi)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Phlegm Heat type loss of voice or hoarse voice include bronchitis, tonsillitis, laryngitis, pharyngitis, upper respiratory tract infection and smokers throat.
- Generally responds reasonably well to correct treatment, plus avoidance of heating foods and tobacco. For patients with severe cases (with obvious fever and systemic symptoms), and the elderly, frail or debilitated, concurrent use of antibiotics may be necessary to quickly cool the Heat. Herbs and acupuncture support the swift action of the antibiotics, and finish the job by expelling the pathogen, clearing residual Phlegm, strengthening resistance and nourishing damaged jie.

6.5 LIVER QI STAGNATION
Pathophysiology
- Liver qi stagnation represents a ‘hysterical’ or stress induced aphonia. Liver qi becomes so severely obstructed in the throat that a lump may be felt there and the vocal cords may shut down.

Clinical features
- sudden loss of voice brought on by depression, anger, worry, emotional turmoil or sudden upset
- ‘plum stone’ throat, or a congested feeling in the throat but on examination the throat is (generally) not swollen or inflamed
- irritability
- fullness or tightness in the chest (‘difficulty getting a deep breath’)
- women may experience irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome or breast tenderness
- in chronic cases there may be signs of heat-flushing, red eyes, tidal fever, dry mouth, short temper
- T normal or dark with a thin coat (red edges if there is heat)
- P slightly wiry or choppy (rapid with heat)

Treatment principle
Soothe the Liver, move and regulate qi
Benefit the throat (clear Heat)

Prescription
XIANG JIANG QI TANG 小降气汤
(Minor Descending qi Decoction) modified

This formula is selected for qi stagnation without Heat.
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .......................... 12g
- zi su ye (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 紫苏叶 .......................... 9g
- mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl Indici) 木蝴蝶 ................................ 9g
- wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药 .......................... 6g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ................................ 6g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 .......................... 6g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 .... 3pce
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .......................... 3pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)
CHAI HU QING GAN TANG 柴胡清肝汤
(Bupleurum Liver Clearing Decoction) modified

This formula is selected for qi stagnation with Heat.

- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ........................................ 9g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .......................... 9g
- shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 ..................... 9g
- lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘 .......................... 9g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........................ 6g
- ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参 ......................................... 9g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ................................ 9g
- mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl I Indici) 木蝴蝶 ................................ 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........................... 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- To disperse stagnation and nourish the Heart, add bai he (Bulbus Lilii) 百合 12g and dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhiza) 丹参 9g.
- To enhance the Liver soothing, qi dispersing action, add one or two of the following herbs: hou po hua (Flos Magnolae Oficinalis) 厚朴花 9g, mei gui hua (Flos Rosae Rugosae) 玫瑰花 6g, bai ji li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris) 白蒺藜 9g or he huan hua (Flos Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢花 9g.
- To redirect qi downwards, add chuan lian zi (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 9g.
- If Lung qi is stagnant, with Phlegm in the chest, add su zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescentis) 苏子 6g and gua lou pi (Pericarpium Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌皮 12g.
- If worry and anxiety have drained Heart qi, causing insomnia with much dreaming, add two or three of the following herbs: yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 6g, fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Coccos Paradicis) 补神 12g, shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g, long chi (Dens Draconis) 龙齿 18g or suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 12g.

Patent medicines
- Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan)
- Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)

Acupuncture
- Liv.3 (tai chong), PC.5 (jian shi), PC.6 (nei guan), Ht.5 (tong li), Sj.6 (zhi gou), yin tang (M-HN-3)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Liver qi stagnation type loss of voice or hoarse voice include hysterical aphonia, stage fright, hysteria, stuttering with anger, laryngeal strain, globus hystericus and social awkwardness.
- Episodes respond reasonably well to correct treatment and relaxation.
- Long term results require an appropriate management plan with relaxation, exercise and stress management.
6.6 LUNG AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Lung and Kidney yin deficiency hoarseness or loss of voice is chronic and develops over a long period of time. It may follow years of other throat or larynx pathology (like recurrent tonsillitis or laryngitis), heavy smoking or years of over use of the voice.

Clinical features
- Chronic or recurrent raspy, hoarse voice with little strength. The voice cannot be used for long before becoming hoarse, and may be lost in some cases. It is worse or recurs in the afternoon or evening and is worse when fatigued. The condition gradually gets worse.
- Dry, non-productive cough, dry mouth and throat
- Pale red throat and vocal cords; the vocal cord may be thickened
- Mild recurrent sore throat that is worse in the afternoon or when fatigued
- Malar or facial flushing, night sweats
- A sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- Dizziness, tinnitus, insomnia
- Lower back ache
- T red with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
- Moisten and nourish the Lungs and Kidneys
- Clear Heat, benefit the throat

Prescription

BAI HE GU JIN TANG 百合固金汤
(Lily Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bai he (Bulbus Lilii)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platyco di Grandiflori)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan tui (Periostracum Cicae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he zi (Fructus Terminaliae Chebulae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl Indici)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

MAI WEI DI HUANG WAN 麦味地黄丸
(Ophiopogon, Schizandra and Rehmannia Formula), p.148

This formula is selected when Kidney yin deficiency is prominent.

Modifications (applied to both prescriptions)
- With severe Heat, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 12g and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g
- With qi deficiency, delete xuan shen and sheng di, and add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 15g and tai zi shen (Radix Pseudostellariae Heterophyllae) 太子参 12g
- If there are nodules or polyps on the vocal cords, add the herbs suggested in qi, Blood and Phlegm stagnation, p.230.

Patent medicines

Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan 八仙长寿丸 (Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan)
Bai He Gu Jin Wan 百合固金丸 (Bai He Gu Jin Wan)
Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan 阳阴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)

Gargle
- Decoct equal amounts (9-12 grams is sufficient) of jie geng (Radix Platyco di Grandiflori) 桔梗, gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 and pang da hai (Semen Sterculiae Scaphigerae) 胖大海, and gargle several times daily.

Acupuncture

Bl.13 (fei shu +), Bl.23 (shen shu +), K.3 (tai xi +), Kid.6 (zhao bai +),
Lu.7 (jie gu), Lu.9 (tai yuan +)
* With Heat add Lu.10 (yu ji -)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as yin deficiency type loss of voice or hoarse voice include throat cancer, tuberculosis, chronic bronchitis, chronic laryngitis, bronchiectasis, silicosis, polyps, singers throat, post viral syndrome, post glandular fever and post stroke.
- This pattern can be difficult to treat and prolonged therapy is usually necessary for satisfactory results. Often complicated by nodules or polyps on the vocal cords.
6.7 LUNG AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
• The Lungs have a powerful influence over the throat and the power of expression of the voice. When Lung qi is chronically weak there is little force in the voice and what little there is, is easily spent. Weakness of Lung qi is compounded if qi production is impaired by Spleen weakness.

Clinical features
• chronic hoarse voice which is worse with use, fatigue and in the morning
• weak low voice
• vocal cords appear pale, flaccid and without tone
• shortness of breath on exertion
• spontaneous sweating
• poor appetite
• loose stools
• pale complexion
T pale and swollen with a thin white coat
P deficient and weak

Treatment principle
Tonify Lung and Spleen qi
Open and benefit the throat

Prescription
BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>剂型</th>
<th>用量</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi huang qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>炙黄芪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>当归</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>炒白术</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis)</td>
<td>炙甘草</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>陈皮</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>当归</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)</td>
<td>升麻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>柴胡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he zi (Fru ctus Terminaliae Chebulae)</td>
<td>诃子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei)</td>
<td>石菖蒲</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Fa Bu Hou Ke Xue)

Modifications
• With Dampness or Phlegm, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g, fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)茯苓 12g and bian dou (Semen Dolichoris Lablab) 扁豆 9g.
• If there are nodules or polyps on the vocal cords, add the herbs suggested in qi, Blood and Phlegm stagnation, p.230.

Patent medicines
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中音气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan 参苓白术丸 (Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan)
Shen Qi Da Bu Wan 参芪大补丸 (Shen Qi Da Bu Wan)
Chong Cao Ji jing 虫草鸡精 (Cordyceps Essence of Chicken)

Gargle
• Decoct equal amounts (9-12 grams is sufficient) of jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)桔梗, gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 and pang da hai (Semen Sterculiae Scaphigerae) 脾大海, and gargle several times daily.

Acupuncture
LI 4 (he gu), St. 36 (zu san li + ▲), Bl. 13 (fei xue + ▲), Lu. 9 (tai yuan +), Lu. 7 (lie que), Du. 14 (da zhei + ▲), Sp. 6 (san jin jiao +)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as Lung and Spleen qi deficiency type loss of voice or hoarse voice include chronic overuse, post viral syndrome, allergic laryngitis (especially in people with food allergies), chronic gastritis, oesophageal reflux, hiatus hernia, chronic asthma and chronic steroid overuse (usually related to chronic rhinitis)
• Generally responds well to correct treatment, more difficult if there are polyps or nodules
6.8 QI, BLOOD AND PHLEGM STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- This pattern represents a complication of chronic throat and vocal cord pathology resulting from jin and qi deficiency, chronic qi stagnation and Phlegm Heat. It involves structural change, that is, thickening and the development of polyps or nodules on the vocal cords.
- In most cases there will be a constitutional pattern in addition to the polyps, typically chronic Phlegm or Phlegm Heat, jin deficiency and/or qi deficiency.

Treatment generally involves adding the herbs listed below to an appropriate constitutional formula.

Clinical features
- relatively severe huskiness and hoarseness of the voice, with a sensation of something in the throat
- frequent clearing of the throat
- polyps on the vocal cords, thickening, lumpiness and darkness of the vocal cords

Treatment principle
Apply the relevant treatment principle for the underlying pattern, with the addition of:
- Invigorate the circulation of qi and Blood
- Transform Phlegm

Additional herbs
The herbs below (or appropriate selection thereof) are added to one of the following formulae:

QING YAN NING FEI TANG 清咽宁肺汤
(Clear the Throat and Calm the Lungs Decoction, p.221) modified

BAI HE GU JIN TANG 百合固金汤
(Lily Combination p.226)

MAI WEI DI HUANG WAN 麦味地黄丸
(Ophiopogon, Schizandra and Rehmannia Combination p.148) or

BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination p.228)

chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 ........... 3-9g
gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜楼仁 .................... 9-12g
fu hai shi (Pumice) 浮海石 .................................. 6-15g

Acupuncture
LI.18 (fu tzu), SI.17 (tian rong), Lu.7 (lie que), Ren.22 (tian luo)

Clinical notes
- This condition is difficult to cure with TCM alone.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR LOSS OF VOICE AND HOARSE VOICE

Acute patterns

Wind Cold - Liu Wei Tang 六味汤

Wind Heat - Shu Feng Qing Re Tang 疏风清热汤

Lung Dryness - Sang Xing Tang 桑杏汤
  • with severe dryness or following a febrile upper respiratory tract infection - Qing Zao Jin Fei Tang 清燥救肺汤

Phlegm Heat - Qing Yan Ning Fei Tang 清咽宁肺汤

Liver qi stagnation - Xiao Jiang Qi Tang 小建气汤
  • with stagnant Heat - Chai Hu Qing Gan Tang 柴胡清肝汤

Chronic patterns

Lung and Kidney yin deficiency - Bai He Gu Jin Wan 百合固金丸

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤

Disorders of the Lung

7. Sinusitis and Nasal Congestion

Excess conditions

Wind Cold
Wind Heat
Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat
Liver and Gall Bladder Fire
Phlegm Heat

Deficient conditions

Lung qi deficiency
Spleen qi deficiency
Kidney deficiency
Blood stagnation

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952
SINUSITIS AND NASAL CONGESTION

The terms bi yuan 鼻渊, bi zhi 鼻窒 refer to a group of disorders characterised by nasal discharge, nasal congestion, sinus pain and frontal headache. Bi yuan is associated with infection and inflammation of the sinuses and nasal cavity, and thus correlates closely with acute sinusitis. Bi zhi describes the chronic nasal congestion which can linger with or without infection.

Chronic sinusitis and nasal congestion are common and distressing conditions that are quite often intractable to antibiotic therapy. Similarly, acute sinusitis can be difficult to resolve completely with antibiotic treatment alone. For this reason, these conditions are commonly seen in TCM clinics in the Western world. Allergic and perennial rhinitis (bi qin 鼻鼽) are covered in the next chapter.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

- Rhinitis: rhinitis is a disorder with two components. The first (hay fever) is a seasonal allergy characterised by sneezing, nasal itch, watery nasal discharge, sore, dry, throat and red, sore, itchy eyes. It tends to re-occur at much the same time each year in response to seasonal allergens. The second (perennial rhinitis) exhibits the same set of symptoms but may exist all year round. Sinusitis and nasal congestion generally do not have the itchiness or sneezing typical of rhinitis, and do have more supraorbital and maxillary pain.

AETIOLOGY

External pathogens

Wind Heat (or Wind Cold transforming into Heat) is the most common external cause of sinusitis, while Wind Cold (without Heat) is a common cause of nasal congestion. Invasion of Wind disrupts the functioning of the Lung system, in this case obstructing and preventing drainage of the normal fluids (bi 水) of the sinuses and nasal passages.

If Heat is present, these fluids quickly condense to form the thick, sticky yellow or green mucus (Phlegm Heat) present in bi yuan. Recurrent flare-ups of sinusitis will occur with further attacks of Wind Heat if this accumulated mucus is not cleared from the sinuses.

Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat

Ongoing stress and repressed emotions disrupt the circulation of Liver qi. Prolonged qi stagnation generates Heat which can rise to the sinuses, drying fluids and causing congestion of the mucous membranes. This type of sinusitis is characterised by swelling and congestion (rather than discharge), and is clearly worse for stress. The chronic congestion of this pattern provides the ideal environment for the generation of more intense focal Heat. This development is characterised by sinus pain and purulent discharge, and at this point is redefined as Liver and Gall Bladder Fire.

Phlegm Heat

This pattern is caused or prolonged by overconsumption of Heating and/or Phlegm producing substances, such as rich, greasy foods and alcohol. Phlegm Heat may also occur in an individual who accumulates Dampness due to Spleen deficiency (see below). Dampness that stagnates can generate Heat congealing fluids further into Phlegm Heat. If antibiotics (which clear Heat but do not disperse Damp) are used repeatedly, Phlegm and Damp will be retained in the sinuses creating the perfect conditions for recurrent Phlegm Heat.

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency

Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular eating habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw foods or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen (and Lung) qi. Chronic cough or upper respiratory tract infections can damage Lung qi. Weakened Lung qi may be unable to descend adequately, and fluids (that should go to the Kidney) accumulate in the Lungs and sinuses.

When the Lungs and Spleen are weak, food and fluids are poorly processed, and pathological fluids and Damp may accumulate. This can be exacerbated by certain food groups, the most commonly implicated in the Western world being dairy products. The mucus such foods provoke (in the gut epithelium) brings about a generalised Phlegm Damp condition (whereby the respiratory tract membranes also become congested). Repeated antibiotic use can further complicate the picture by weakening the Spleen and allowing more Phlegm to accumulate.

Kidney deficiency

Kidney deficiency is usually a factor in chronic conditions, and almost always in older people. It can be acquired from chronic illness, ageing or overexertion, or it can be inherited. When inherited, patients sometimes describe a history of some atopic condition during childhood. In these cases, Kidney yang is not strong enough to support Lung qi, to maintain wei qi or to regulate body fluids. Thus, respiration and defences are weak, and fluids easily accumulate in the upper body. These individuals are particularly vulnerable to Wind and environmental irritants. In some old texts, this chronic sinus congestion and discharge is referred to as ‘dripping brain’ (nào lòu 滴腦).
TREATMENT

Acute patterns generally respond well to correct treatment. Chronic patterns are more difficult and require persistent effort to resolve. Patients with chronic Phlegm in the sinuses are very prone to repeated attacks of acute sinusitis, so should be encouraged to seek treatment promptly upon catching cold or producing coloured mucus. The earlier the treatment the better and faster the result.

Sinus wash

Sinus congestion and tendency to infection benefits considerably from daily washing of the sinuses with warm salty water (with good quality sea salt). This dislodges thick or hidden mucus and any focal infection, and tones the mucous membranes. Several months of this practice are usually necessary in most chronic cases. The salt water can be introduced into the nose with a dropper or specialised pot (such as a neti pot, used in certain yoga practices), and should come out through the other nostril or mouth.

Table 7.1 Differentiation between excess and deficient patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Excess</th>
<th>Deficient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congestion</td>
<td>continuous, sustained</td>
<td>variable, intermittent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sense of smell</td>
<td>transient decline or loss</td>
<td>variable transient or permanent loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>generally severe, frontal, maxillary or temporal</td>
<td>dull or thick, with dizziness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge</td>
<td>thick yellow or green, copious, purulent and malodorous; may be blood streaked</td>
<td>sticky, yellow or white, generally not malodorous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucous membranes</td>
<td>red and swollen</td>
<td>pale and swollen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 7.1 Acute and chronic sinusitis and nasal congestion

---

**Acute**
- Phlegm

**Chronic**
- Phlegm
- Heat

**Other**
- Wind Cold
- Wind Heat
- Lung Heat

Symptoms:
- Congestion
- Headache
- Discharge
- Mucous membranes
7.1 WIND COLD

Pathophysiology
- Wind Cold invades the exterior and Lungs, disrupting descent of the normal fluids of the Lung system (肺) causing blocked sinuses and nose. This condition often precedes the secondary infection that characterises patterns like Wind Heat or Phlegm Heat.

Clinical features
- nasal congestion, or copious clear or white watery discharge, with discomfort and stuffiness in the nose and sinus region
- reduction or loss of sense of smell
- simultaneous fever and chills
- aversion to cold
- frontal or occipital headache
- T normal with a thin white coat
- P floating and tight

Treatment principle
Disperse Wind Cold
Redirect Lung qi downwards, open the nose

Prescription

**XIN YI SAN 辛夷散**
*(Magnolia Flower Powder)*

- **xin yi hua** (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 ........................................ 10g
- **xi xin** (Herba cum Radicis Asari) 细辛 ........................................ 10g
- **gao ben** (Rhizoma et Radix Ligustici) 茝本 ........................................ 10g
- **sheng ma** (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 升麻 ........................................ 10g
- **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........................................ 10g
- **mu tong** (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ........................................ 10g
- **fang feng** (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 ........................................ 10g
- **qiang huo** (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygi) 羌活 ........................................ 10g
- **bai zhi** (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 ........................................ 10g
- **zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ........................................ 10g

Method: Grind to a powder and take 6-grams 2-3 times daily with water. May also be decocted. (Source: Zhong Yi Nai Ke Lin Chung Shou Ce)

Patent medicines

- **Bi Min Gan Wan** 鼻敏感丸 (Pe Min Kan Wan)
- **Gan Mao Ling** 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
7.2 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Wind Heat (or Wind Cold becoming hot), invades the Lungs, heating and preventing drainage of normal Lung fluids (水液) from the sinuses, causing inflammation and congestion. The congestion and nasal discharge is particularly marked when there is pre-existing Phlegm Damp. In contrast to the Phlegm Heat (plus Wind) pattern, the symptoms here tend to be limited to the upper respiratory tract.

Clinical features
- sticky yellow or green purulent and malodorous mucus discharge from the nose; or nasal congestion
- inflamed and swollen nasal mucous membranes
- reduction or loss of sense of smell, nasal voice
- frontal headache and maxillary pain
- cough with yellow sputum
- thirst
- in the early stages there may be fever, or fever and chills

P normal or yellow coat
O floating and/or rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and clear Heat
Open the nose

Prescription
CANG ER ZI SAN 苍耳子散
(Xanthium Formula) modified
- cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子 9g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g
- xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 3g
- bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 9g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
- ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 12g
- lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa) 连翘 15g
- ge gen (Radix Puerariae) 葛根 10g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With severe frontal or maxillary headache, increase the dose of bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 to 12g and add man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 蔓荆子 9g.

- With temporal headache, add chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g.
- If there is a cough with copious sputum, add xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniaceae) 旋覆花 9g and jie geng (Radix Platycoeli Grandflori) 旋覆花 9g.
- With purulent nasal discharge, add jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 15g and yu xing cai (Herba Houttuyniae) 鱼腥草 15g.
- With Lung Heat, add shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 18g and zhi mu (Radix Aconiti) 祖母 9g.
- With pre-existing Phlegm Damp, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 茯苓 6g, fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 12g and chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g.

Patent medicines
Bi Yan Ning 鼻炎宁 (Bi Yan Ning)
Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian 千柏鼻炎片 (Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian)
Niu Huang Jie Du Pian 牛黄解毒片 (Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien)
- all the above are good for conditions characterised by congestion or thick yellow mucus and frontal mucus

Acupuncture
SJ5 (wai guan -), LI4 (he gu -), GB20 (feng chi -), LI11 (qu chi -),
Du23 (shang xing), BL2 (zao shu), LI20 (yang xiang), yin fang (M-HN-3),
tai yang (M-HN-9), bi tong (M-HN-14)

Snuff
- BING LIAN SAN (Borneol and Coptis Powder 冰连散) can be snuffed into each nostril several times daily.
  huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连
  xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花
  bing pian (Borneol) 冰片
Method: Finely powder equal amounts of each herb and store in an airtight container until needed. (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present with Wind Heat type sinus congestion include acute or chronic sinusitis and acute or chronic rhinitis.
- This pattern responds well to treatment, but has a tendency to become chronic, particularly with repeated antibiotic treatment.
7.3 LIVER QI STAGNATION WITH STAGNANT HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Chronic stress, emotional turmoil, a high pressure job or lifestyle combined
  with smoking and sedentary work can contribute to the generation of Liver qi stagnation and over time, stagnant Heat. The Heat ascends and lodges in the nasal sinuses, causing inflammation.

Clinical features
- Chronic sinus inflammation and congestion, perhaps with sinus pressure
  or pain and occasional postnasal discharge. The main feature is the chronic congestion which is worse for stress and emotional upset.
- frontal or temporal headaches, neck and shoulder tension
- red eyes, facial flushing
- irritability, easily angered
- hypochondriac tension or discomfort
- bitter taste in the mouth
- red edges, with red spots and a thin yellow coat
- wiry and possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Soothe the Liver qi, clear Heat
Open the nose

Prescription
DAN ZHI XIAO YAO SAN 被消養沙散
(Bupleurum and Paeonia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbs</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cu bai shao (vinegar fried Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man jing zi (Fructus Vitis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs to a fine powder and take in 9-gram doses 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted, in which case bo he is added towards the end of cooking.

Modifications
- With severe congestion, add cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 6g and xin yi hua (Flos Magnolii) 6g, or combine with HUO DAN WAN (Agastache and Pig Bile Pills) and chuan xiong (Herba Agastachis seu Pogostemon) 6g.
- With severe Heat, add yu jin (Tuber Curculigae) 12g and chuan zhi zi* (Fructus meliae Toosendan) 12g. (See also Liver and Gall Bladder Fire, p.244).
- With abdominal distension, poor appetite and/or epigastric discomfort or pain with stress, add Bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 12g and mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 12g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 12g and zhi shi (Fructus Citri Auranti Immaturus) 10g.

Patent medicines
Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan 加味逍遥丸 (Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan)
Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)
Bi Yan Ning 比炎宁 (Bi Yan Ning)
- usually combined with one of the first three patent formulae
Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian 千柏鼻炎片 (Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian)
- usually combined with one of the first three patent formulae
Xin Yi San 辛夷散 (Xin Yi San)
- usually combined with one of the first three patent formulae

Acupuncture
Liv.3 (tai chong -), LI.4 (he gu -), Liv.2 (xing jian -), GB.20 (feng chi), St.3 (hou xi), Du.23 (shang xing), BL.2 (zao zhu), LI.20 (yin xiang), yin tang (M-HN-3), tai yang (M-HN-9), bi tong (M-HN-14)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present with Liver qi stagnation type sinus congestion include hypertension, chronic sinusitis, chronic rhinitis and stress induced sinus congestion.
- Daily sinus wash definitely improves results (see p.236).
- This pattern is often difficult and it takes time and effort on the part of the patient to get a good result. Long term results require an appropriate treatment plan which includes lifestyle modification, diet (especially reducing alcohol), relaxation, exercise and stress management.
7.4 LIVER AND GALL BLADDER FIRE

Pathophysiology
- Liver and Gall Bladder Fire is usually an acute aggravation of the previous pattern, Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat. This pattern usually represents an acute and severe infection of the sinuses.

Clinical features
- thick, sticky, copious yellow or green nasal discharge which is malodorous and maybe purulent
- nasal congestion, reduced sense of smell
- inflamed and swollen nasal mucous membranes
- violent frontal, maxillary or temporal headache or distension
- bitter taste in the mouth
- dry throat
- dizziness, tinnitus
- insomnia, much dreaming
- irritability and restlessness, quick temper
- dry stools or constipation
- feverishness
T red, with a yellow coat
P wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Fire from the Liver and Gall Bladder
Resolve Dampness, open the nose

Prescription
LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiu dang gui (wine fried Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Monfoliis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is usually cooked in a cloth bag (bajian 袋煎).

Modifications
- With severe headache add shi jue ming* (Concha Haliotidis) 石决明 15g and gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 12g.
- This formula is usually combined with the patent pill HUO DAN WAN (Agastache and Pig Bile Pills 包胆丸).

Patent medicines

Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien)
Bi Yan Ning 异炎宁 (Bi Yen Ning)
- usually combined with one of the first two patent formulae
Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian 千柏鼻炎片 (Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian)
- usually combined with one of the first two patent formulae
Huo Dan Wan 虚胆丸 (Agastache and Pig Bile Pills)
- this patent is combined with the primary prescription
Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
- for severe Heat

Acupuncture
SJ.5 (wai guan -), LI.4 (he gu -), GB.20 (feng chi -), Liv.2 (xing jian -),
GB.39 (xuan zhong -), Du.23 (shang xing), BL.2 (xian zhi),
LI.20 (ying xiang -), yin tang (M-HN-3), tai yang (M-HN-9),
bai tong (M-HN-14)

Snuff
- BING LIAN SAN (see Lung Heat, p.241)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present with Liver Fire type sinus congestion include acute sinusitis, acute rhinitis, stress induced sinus congestion and hypertension.
- Daily sinus wash definitely improves results (see p.236)
- Antibiotics are often prescribed for this type of attack and this type of individual who prefers the quick fix rather than the necessary lifestyle modification. However, prompt treatment with Chinese herbs and acupuncture can certainly be effective in the motivated patient.
7.5 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Phlegm Heat type sinusitis can present as an acute attack or a subacute and prolonged congestion.
- It occurs as an acute episode when Phlegm Heat is provoked by extreme overindulgence in rich heating foods and alcohol (sinus following 'the big night out'). In those with specific food intolerances even a small amount (for example one glass of red wine) can set off an attack.
- Acute Phlegm Heat sinusitis also occurs when someone with chronic Phlegm Damp gets a Wind Heat attack. These are the patients who know that as soon as they get a cold, sinusitis will follow.
- Alternatively, this pattern represents chronic nasal congestion with thick, sticky yellow mucus. It is usually seen in individuals who eat too much rich and spicy food on a regular basis.
- If this pattern is overenthusiastically treated with antibiotics or bitter cold herbs, the Spleen may be damaged. See also p.252.

Clinical features
- copious sticky, continuous yellow or green nasal discharge, or thick nasal congestion
- inflamed and swollen mucous membranes
- vertigo and dizziness
- heavy, woolly-headedness, frontal headache
- heaviness and aches in the body
- lethargy and fatigue
- epigastric and abdominal distension, poor appetite, loose or sluggish stools
- T red, with a greasy yellow coat
- P soft or slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear and transform Phlegm Heat
Open the nose

Prescription

DAN XI BI YUAN FANG 丹溪鼻渊方
(Dan Xi's Nasal Congestion Formula) modified

- bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 ................. 9g
- jiu huang qin (wine fried Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 酒黄芩 ................. 9g
- shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 ................. 9g
- xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 ................. 9g
- jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 菊节 ................. 9g
- huo xiang (Herba Agastachis seu Pogostemon) 霍香 ................. 12g
- bai dou kou (Fructus Amomi Kravania) 白豆蔻 ................. 6g
- lian qi (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae) 連翘 ................. 12g
- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ................. 6g

Modifications
- With severe congestion, add cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苓耳子 9g and bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g.
- With signs of Wind Heat, add two or three of the following herbs: jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 15g, niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子 9g, bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g or ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Mortiflori) 菊花 12g.
- For cough with copious sputum, add xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 9g, jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 根梗 6g and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌仁 9g.
- With a bitter taste in the mouth and dry throat, add tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 15g, zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 9g and lu gen (Rhizoma Phtragmites Communis) 芦根 20g.
- With tinnitus and loss of hearing, add pei lan (Herba Eupatorii Fortunei) 佩兰 9g and increase the dose of shi chang pu to 9g.
- With insomnia and much dreaming, add yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 6g, suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 15g and ye jiao teng 夜交藤 15g.

Patent medicines

Bi Yan Ning 鼻炎宁 (Bi Yen Ning)
Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian 千柏鼻炎片 (Qian Bai Bi Yan Pian)
Huang Lian Jie Du Wan 黄连解毒丸 (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
  (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

Huo Dan Wan 霍胆丸 (Agastache and Pig Bile Pills)
  - this patent is combined with the primary prescription
Clinical features
- Chronic nasal and sinus congestion, or discharge of copious thin white or sticky mucus which does not smell (although the patient may perceive it to). The discharge or congestion is variable and aggravated by exposure to wind and cold. When congestion is the main problem, it may be worse at night and when lying down, and better during the day.
- pale, swollen mucous membranes
- diminished sense of smell
- shortness of breath, soft voice or reluctance to speak
- fatigue and spontaneous sweating
- waxy, pale complexion
- weak cough with thin white spumur
T pale with a thin white coat
P weak and forceless

Treatment principle
Tonify and warm Lung qi
Disperse Cold, open the nose

Prescription

WEN FEI ZHI LIU DAN 温肺止流丹
(Warm the Lungs, Stop the Flow, Special Pill) modified

- **zhi huang qi** (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei) - 15g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 - 12g
- ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参 - 9g
- jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonpetae Tenuifolia) 荆芥 - 9g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 - 9g
- he zi (Fructus Terminaliae Chebulae) 诃子 - 9g
- yu nao shi ‘ (Psuedoscaenae Otolithum) 鱼脑石 - 6g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 - 6g
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radicce Asari) 细辛 - 3g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 - 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)
**Modifications**
- With frequent colds and spontaneous sweating, double the dose of zhi huang qi.
- With headache or dizziness, add chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)
  川芎 6g and gao ben (Rhizoma et Radix Ligustici) 高本 9g.
- If the congestion is very severe, delete he zi and wu wei zhi, and add two or three of the following herbs: shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acon) 石菖蒲 6g, xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 新益花 9g, cang er zi (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子 9g, bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 9g, gui zhi (Ramulus Cinamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g or chuan jiao (Pericarpium Zanthoxyli Bungeani) 川椒 3g.
- With continuous, copious watery nasal discharge, add one or two of the following herbs: long gu' (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15g, jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae) 金樱子 9g, fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Aestivae) 芙蓉子 12g or nuo dao gen (Radix et Rhizoma Oryzae Glutinosae) 糯稻根 15g.
- With minor signs of Heat or Damp Heat, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 3g, che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 6g and mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 6g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**With a Wind attack**
- In a patient with pre-existing Lung qi deficiency who catches cold (with mild fever and chills, muscle aches, occipital headache etc.), the correct treatment is to expel Wind Cold and support qi with SHEN SU YIN (Ginseng and Perilla Combination 参苏饮, p.21).

**Resistant cases**
- If a patient with Lung qi deficiency suddenly experiences an aggravation of the congestion, or the primary prescription fails to control the congestion, a more dispersing formula may be used for a short period.
  **WEN FEI TANG** (Warm the Lungs Decoction 温肺汤) may be selected, but because this formula is more dispersing to the qi, it is not suitable for prolonged use.
  - huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 18g
  - ge gen (Radix Puerariae) 葛根 9g
  - qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 正活 9g
  - fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 9g
  - ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 6-9g
  - sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 升麻 6g
  - cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 息白 3pc
  - ding xiang (Flos Caryophylli) 丁香 3g

**Patent medicines**
- **Yu Ping Feng Wan** (玉屏风丸) 玉屏风丸
  - Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan (香砂六君子丸) 香砂六君子丸
  - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan (补中益气丸) 补中益气丸
  - Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan (参苓白术丸) 参苓白术丸

**Acupuncture**
- Lu.9 (tai yuan ▲ +), St.36 (zu san li ▲ +), L.I.20 (ying xiang ▲ +), Du.20 (bai hai ▲ +), Du.23 (shang xing ▲ +), yin tang ▲ (M-HN-3), li tong (M-HN-14), L.I.4 (bega ▲ ), Bl.2 (zun zhu ▲ ), GB.20 (feng chi ▲ ), Bl.13 (fei sha ▲ ).
- *Treating yin tang with moxa cones over slices of raw ginger is particularly good.

**Medicated oil**
- Particularly good for congestion, these herbs are powdered and steeped in sesame oil for a few days. The oil is filtered and rubbed into the nasal mucosa several times daily.
  - e bu shi cao (Herba Centipeda) 乳不食草 30g
  - hai er cha (Pasta Acaciae seu Uncariae) 孩儿茶 60g
  - bing pian (Borneol) 冰片 15g

**Clinical notes**
- Biomedical conditions that may present with Lung qi deficiency type sinus congestion include chronic sinusitis and allergic rhinitis.
- *Sinus wash may be useful, especially if the pattern is aggravated by Wind Cold (see p.236)
7.7 Spleen Qi deficiency

Pathophysiology
- Spleen qi deficiency is a chronic pattern characterised by congestion and loss of sense of smell. It often follows chronic or recurrent Hot type sinus problems that have been treated with repeated courses of antibiotics. The Phlegm resulting from the weakened Spleen becomes harder and harder to shift and constantly clogs the nasal epithelium, reducing the ability to smell. This pattern often overlaps with Lung qi deficiency (p.249). When Spleen deficiency predominates the mucus is thicker and congestion is more severe.

Clinical features
- Chronic, copious and persistent, sticky nasal discharge or nasal congestion. The mucus is sticky and white, not malodorous, and the congestion is relatively severe. The congestion may be worse at night and when lying down, and better during the day and when active.
- Pale and swollen mucous membranes
- Reduction or loss of sense of smell
- Fuzzy-headedness, dizziness
- Fatigue, heavy, tired limbs
- Poor appetite
- Abdominal distension
- Pale sallow complexion
- Diarrhoea or loose stools
- Pale with a thin or thick white coat
- Moderate and weak

Treatment principle
- Strengthen the Spleen and tonify qi.
- Facilitate the ‘raising of clear yang and the descent of turbid jin’

Prescription

BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi huang q (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao yang (dry fried Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao bian dou (dry fried Semen Dolichos Lablab)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao shan yao (dry fried Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

SHEN LING BAI ZHU SAN 参苓白术散
(Ginseng and Atractylodes Formula) modified

This formula is selected when gastrointestinal symptoms (particularly diarrhoea or loose stools) are prominent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>15-30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>10-20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao yang (dry fried Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao bian dou (dry fried Semen Dolichos Lablab)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao shan yao (dry fried Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and take in 9-gram doses 2-3 times daily with warm water. May also be decocted with doses as shown. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Li Huo Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If the Phlegm is sticky white, copious and very persistent, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g and chen pi (Perciparum Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g or consider LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination 六君子汤, p.88).
- If complicated with Phlegm Heat or if the congestion is severe or provoked by trigger foods, add two or three of the following herbs: huo xiang (Herba Agastaches seu Pogostemi) 藁香 12g, xia ku cao (Spica Prunella Vulgaris) 夏枯草 12g, cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 刺车前子 6g or xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 6g.
Patent medicines

Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan)
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan 参苓白术丸 (Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan)
Shen Qi Da Bu Wan 参芪大补丸 (Shen Qi Da Bu Wan)

Acupuncture

LI.20 (ying xiang +), Du.20 (bai hui +), Du.23 (shang xing +),
yin tang ▲ (M-HN-3), bi tong (M-HN-14), LI.4 (beigou +), Bl.2 (zun zhu +),
GB.20 (feng chi +), Bl.20 (pi shu ▲), St.36 (zhu san li +), St.40 (feng long -),
Sp.3 (tai bai +)
• yin tang (M-HN-3) is treated with moxa cones over slices of raw ginger.

Medicated oil

• see Lung qi deficiency, p.251

Clinical notes

• Biomedical conditions that may present with Spleen qi deficiency type sinus congestion include chronic sinusitis and chronic rhinitis.
• Dietary modification is very important in this pattern.
• Sinus wash may be useful (see p.236)

7.8 KIDNEY DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

• The incessant, chronic mucus typical of Kidney deficiency is part of the systemic failure of fluid movement and metabolism. It can develop from long term sinusitis from any cause, or it may be due to congenital or acquired Kidney weakness, or both.
• This is a very chronic pattern and as such involves the jing. Weak jing can manifest as either yin or yang deficiency, depending on the constitution of the patient. With yin deficiency there is a tendency to Hot signs and symptoms, with yang deficiency a tendency to cold. When both are equally weak, that is qi or jing deficiency, there may be no obvious tendency to either Heat of Cold.

Clinical features

• chronic nasal discharge, worse with exposure to cold
• diminished sense of smell
• dizziness, tinnitus, loss of hearing
• forgetfulness, poor memory
• muddleheaded or slow to learn
• soreness and weakness in the back and spine
• greying lifeless hair
• pale lustreless complexion
• oedema of the lower extremities
• Kidney yin deficiency: sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot'), insomnia, night sweats, facial or malar flushing, a red, dry tongue with little or no coat and a thready, rapid pulse
• Kidney yang deficiency: pale complexion, aversion to cold, cold extremities, nocturia, impotence, a pale or blueish and swollen tongue, and a deep, slow pulse

Treatment principle

Tonify the Kidney and supplement jing
Benefit the brain and stop discharge

Prescription

7.8.1 Kidney yin deficiency

LIU WEI DI HUANG WAN 六味地黄丸
(Rehmannia Six Formula) plus
SHENG MAI SAN 生脉散
(Generate the Pulse Powder)

This formula is selected when there are obvious Heat signs.
### 7.8.2 Kidney yang deficiency

**YOU GUI WAN 右归丸**  
*(Eucommia and Rehmannia Formula)*

This formula is selected when there are obvious Cold signs. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbs</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate)</td>
<td>250g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositeae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu jiao jiao (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Oficialisis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata)</td>
<td>60-180g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>60-120g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Method:** Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.  

(Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)  

### 7.8.3 Kidney qi or jing deficiency

**BU NAO WAN 补脑丸**  
*(Brain Tonic Pills)*

This formula is selected when there are no obvious Heat or Cold signs. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbs</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacae)</td>
<td>180g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou cong rong (Herba Cistanches Deserticolae)</td>
<td>180g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Patent medicines**

**Kidney yang**

- *Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸* (Sexotan Pills)  
- *You Gui Wan 右归丸* (You Gui Wan)  
- *Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸* (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)  
- *Ning Xin Bu Shen Wan 宁心补肾丸* (San Yuen Medical Pills)  
- *Zhuang Yao Jian Shen Pian 壮腰健肾片* (Zhuang Yao Jian Shen)

**Kidney yin**

- *Lin Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸* (Liu Wei Dihuang Wan)  
- *Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸* (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)

**Kidney jing**

- *Bu Nao Wan 补脑丸* (Cerebral Tonic Pills)  
- *Chong Cao Ji Jing 虫草鸡精* (Cordyceps Essence of Chicken)

**Acupuncture**

- Bl.23 (shen shu +), Du.4 (ming men +), Ren.4 (guan yuan +), Ren.6 (qi hai +), GB.39 (xuan zhong +), Du.20 (hai bei), Bl.15 (xin shu), yin tang (M-HN-3), bi tong (M-HN-14).
  - Use moxa in jing and yang deficiency. Treating yin tang with moxa cones over slices of raw ginger is particularly good.

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present with Kidney deficiency type sinus congestion include chronic sinusitis and rhinitis.  
- The sinus wash may offer some symptomatic relief (see p.236).
7.9 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- Blood stagnation sinus congestion is the end result of many years of chronic pathology of the sinus and nasal passages. The mucous membranes develop a distinctive dark and swollen appearance.

Clinical features
- chronic continuous nasal congestion or post nasal drip with sticky yellow or white mucus
- nasal mucous membranes appear swollen, hard and dark or purple (in some cases the same colour as ripe mulberry fruit)
- reduction or loss of sense of smell
- dark red or purple with brown or purple stasis spots
- P wiry and thick or choppy

Treatment principle
Harmonise qi and Blood
Move stagnation and eliminate Blood stagnation

Prescription
DANG GUI SHAO YAO SAN 当归芍药散
(Dang Gui and Peonia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotum Porae Cocos)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrophalae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju hua (Fructus Chrysanthemi Morifolii)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di long (Lumbricus)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Bo he is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下)
(Source: Zhang Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With headache or dizziness, add bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 10g, gao ben (Rhizoma et Radix Ligustici) 藁本 10g, bai ji li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris) 白蒺藜 10g and man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 管蓟子 10g.

Acupuncture
LI.20 (jing xiang +), Du.20 (bai hui +), Du.23 (shang xing +), yin tang ▲ (M-HN-3), bi tong (M-HN-14), LI.4 (he gu +), BL.2 (yan zhu +), GB.20 (feng chui +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), BL.17 (ge shu)
- yin tang is treated with direct moxa or moxa cones over slices of raw ginger.

Patent medicines
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Tong Jing Wan 痛经丸 (Tong Jing Wan)
Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消瘰疬丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present with Blood stagnation type sinus congestion include chronic sinusitis, chronic rhinitis and nasal polyps.
- This is generally a difficult condition to treat successfully, and requires persistence and prolonged treatment for a result.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR SINUSITIS AND NASAL CONGESTION

Wind Cold - *Xin Yi San* 辛夷散

Lung Heat (Wind Heat) - *Cang Fu Zi San* 苍耳子散

Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat - *Dan Zhi Xiao Yao San* 丹桅逍遥散

Liver Fire - *Long Dan Xie Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤

Damp Heat affecting the Spleen - *Dan Xi Bi Yuan Fang* 丹溪鼻渊方

Lung qi deficiency - *Wen Fei Zhi Liu Dan* 温肺止流丹

Spleen qi deficiency - *Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang* 补中益气汤

Kidney deficiency

- *yin* deficiency - *Lin Wei Di Huang Wan* 六味地黄丸 + *Sheng Mai San* 生脉散
- *yang* deficiency - *You Gui Wan* 右归丸
- *jing* deficiency - *Bu Nao Wan* 补脑丸

Qi and Blood stagnation - *Dang Gui Shao Yao San* 当归芍药散

---

Disorders of the Lung

8. Rhinitis

Acute episode

**Wind Cold**

In between episodes

Lung qi deficiency

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency (with Phlegm)

Kidney deficiency

---

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat†, see the tables on pp.944-952.
**RHINITIS**

*bi qi 鼻鼽*

Rhinitis is a seasonal or perennial disorder characterised by episodes of nasal congestion, watery nasal discharge, sneezing and irritation of the conjunctiva, throat, and ala nasi. It is due to hypersensitivity of the nasal mucosa to pollen, dust mites, fungal spores, animal dander and saliva, fumes and certain food substances.

When rhinitis occurs in response to allergens like grasses and pollens which have a limited seasonal distribution, it is referred to as seasonal allergic rhinitis, or hayfever. In between episodes of hayfever, patients are usually asymptomatic. The main features are frequent attacks of sneezing with profuse watery nasal discharge and obstruction. The attacks usually last a few hours and can be accompanied by sore watery eyes.

Perennial rhinitis can occur at any time of the year in response to exposure to a variety of mostly non-seasonal allergens, like animal dander, house dust, fungal spores and irritants like cold air, smoke and perfume. Perennial rhinitis may be intermittent or, in some cases, more or less continuous and in general the symptoms are less marked than those in seasonal allergic rhinitis. The main features of perennial rhinitis are low grade itching, irritation and congestion of the nose and eyes, with occasional exacerbations.

Patients with rhinitis usually have swollen nasal mucous membranes, which can prevent sinus drainage, predisposing them to secondary infection and the development of sinusitis (*bi yuan 鼻渊* p.234). The symptom picture of sinusitis and rhinitis overlap somewhat, but sinusitis usually exhibits maxillary and supraorbital pain, and less sneezing and itching.

**AETIOLOGY**

Rhinitis, whether seasonal or perennial, is usually an allergic condition. In TCM terms we relate this concept to deficiency of *wei qi*. The *wei* (or protective) *qi* has its basis in Kidney *yang* and is distributed by the Lungs to all the surfaces of the body. This includes the mucous membranes of the nose and throat. If the functioning of *wei qi* at these surfaces is inadequate, then inappropriate responses to inhaled particles and gases can result, and the area will become irritated and inflamed, provoking mucus production and sneezing.

**Allergens**

In a TCM context, the allergens which can trigger an episode of rhinitis are a form of external Wind. This Wind is able to invade the nose in the absence of an adequate defense by *wei qi*, and then remain there. The chronic itching and sneezing of rhinitis is due to the persistence of this external Wind in the mucous membranes of the nose. Uncharacteristically for Wind generally, this Wind can remain in the nose for months or years if *wei qi* is too weak to expel it.

**Lung qi deficiency**

*Lung qi* deficiency will be found in individuals who are constitutionally *qi* deficient, have a history of chronic Lung disease or who have damaged *Lung qi* with insufficient or excessive exercise. *Lung qi* is also weakened by excessive or unexpressed sadness and grief.

Those with weak *Lung qi* tend to have weak *wei qi* and will be vulnerable to invasion by, and retention of, external Wind.

**Kidney deficiency**

Kidney deficiency develops from chronic illness, ageing, overwork or is hereditary. When the Kidney weakness is constitutional, the symptoms of allergic disease often start in childhood. The role the Kidneys play in the aetiology of rhinitis is in the above mentioned role of being the foundation of all the body's *qi* (*zheng qi*) of which *wei qi* is one aspect. Sometimes the *wei qi* deficiency is the only sign of Kidney deficiency.

---

![Fig 8.1 Summary of rhinitis patterns](image-url)
Spleen deficiency

Spleen function is usually damaged by bad eating habits and a diet of cold and Phlegm producing foods. The weakened Spleen function means more Damp and Phlegm accumulation and the rhinitis of this pattern will tend to generate more mucus than the others. Rhinitis that is triggered by fumes and cigarette smoke can fall into this category—it is the nature of strong smells to not only disperse qi and irritate mucous membranes, but to also mobilise Phlegm Damp.

TREATMENT

There are two aspects to consider when treating rhinitis—treatment of the acute episodes, in which severe and debilitating symptoms need to be quickly controlled, and treatment between episodes. When symptoms are acute, herbal treatment may need to be administered twice or more per day and acupuncture at least daily. In all except the simple Wind Cold (Heat) category, the treatment should persist between episodes to build the constitution. This is especially important in the months before the hay fever season. Treatment of Lung, Kidney and Spleen type rhinitis can be achieved using the following guiding formula during and after acute episodes (with appropriate modification).

Interestingly, in the Kidney deficient types of allergic rhinitis, there may be little in the way of the typical Kidney symptoms. Nevertheless the supposed Kidney yang deficiency (manifesting as wei qi deficiency) will always be addressed with the addition of a few Kidney yang tonic herbs. See also p. 151.

8.1 WIND COLD

Pathophysiology

- A Wind Cold invasion is the most common presentation of an acute episode of rhinitis. Wind Cold invades the nose, obstructs the passage of normal Lung Fluids (ti 氣) and irritates the mucous membranes. The formulae presented here are not suitable for prolonged use as they will eventually aggravate any underlying deficiency, and ultimately make the problem worse. They should be reduced or withdrawn as symptoms improve and appropriate constitutional treatment phased in.

Clinical features

- acute sneezing, nasal itch, runny nose with copious, thin, watery mucus, or nasal obstruction
- reduction or loss of sense of smell
- itchy, irritated, watery eyes
- frontal or maxillary headache
- t normal or with a thin white coat
- P floating, or floating and tight

Treatment principle

Warm the Lungs and disperse Wind Cold
Warm and transform Phlegm Fluids, redirect Lung qi downward

Prescription

XIAO QING LONG TANG 小青龙汤
(Minor Blue Dragon Combination)

This prescription is suitable for acute episodes of allergic rhinitis or flareups of perennial rhinitis with copious watery mucus and sneezing.

- ma huang* (Herba Ephedra) 麻黄 .......................... 9g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .......................... 9g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .......................... 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .......................... 9g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .......................... 9g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
- 炙甘草 .................................................. 6g
- gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 ......................... 3g
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 .......................... 3g

Method: Decoction to be taken hot. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With severe sneezing and itching nose, add cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子 6g, bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 9g and

Variations and additional prescriptions

- If Wind Cold transforms into Heat, or the initial pathogen is Wind Heat, causing sneezing, sore, itchy or scratchy throat, thirst, thick or coloured nasal discharge and very red, irritated eyes, the correct treatment is to expel Wind Heat with SANG JU YIN (Morus and Chrysanthemum Formula) modified. This presentation occurs more in perennial rhinitis.

Method: Decoction. Do not cook for more than 20 minutes. Bo he is added near the end of cooking (hou xia 后下).

Patent medicines

- Bi Min Gan Wan 鼻敏感丸 (Pe Min Kan Wan)
- Xin Yi San 辛夷散 (Xin Yi San)
- Bi Yan Pian 鼻炎片 (Bi Yen Pien)

Acupuncture

- Lu.7 (lie que -), LI.4 (he gu -), BL.12 (feng men -Ω), BL.13 (fei shu -Ω), LI.20 (ying xiang), DU.23 (shang xing), GB.20 (feng chi -),

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Cold type rhinitis include acute episodes of hayfever and allergic rhinitis.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment.
8.2 LUNG QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- If weak wei qi, (which is a subtype of Lung qi) does not nourish and protect the lining of the respiratory tract, inhaled particles may cause inappropriate responses causing sneezing and congestion. The deficiency of Lung and wei qi predisposes to frequent invasion by Wind.

Clinical features

- transitory, recurrent episodes of paroxysmal sneezing, nasal itch, copious clear watery nasal discharge or congestion
- symptoms initiated or aggravated by exposure to wind and cold air
- reduction or loss of sense of smell
- frequent colds
- soft, low voice
- shortness of breath
- spontaneous sweating
- waxy pale complexion
- in atopic individuals there may be a history of (or concurrent) eczema or asthma

T pale with a thin white coat
P deficient and weak

Treatment principle

- Warm and tonify the Lungs
- Expel Wind

Prescription

YU PING FENG SAN 玉屏风散
(Jade Screen Powder) plus
CANG ER ZI SAN 苍耳子散
(Xanthium Formula)

huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 .......................... 15-30g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 .......................... 9g
fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 .......................... 9g
cang er zi (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子 .......................... 9g
bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 .......................... 9g
xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 .......................... 9g
bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction or powder. When powdered, the dose is 9-grams 1-2 times daily. When decocted bo he is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下).
(Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hua Ke Xue)

Modifications

- Because of the assumed underlying Kidney deficiency (see modifications p.151) in atopic patients, two or three of the following herbs are generally added: tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis) 蜀枝子 12g, du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲 12g, hu tao ren (Semem Juglandis Regiae) 胡桃仁 9g, bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifoliae) 补骨脂 12g, ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 12g, xu duan (Radix Dyspaci Asperi) 续断 12g, fei pen zi (Fructus Rubi Chinii) 薇丹子 9g or wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 9g. We also find that powerfully strengthening wei qi with large doses of huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 is essential, regardless of the prescription. Huang qi (and any yang tonics) are quite warming, however, and in some cases may need to be balanced with cooling herbs when used for lengthy periods. Huang qi is contraindicated in patients with acute exterior patterns, as it can lock the pathogen in, and encourage its internal penetration.

- With severe congestion, add two or three of the following herbs: xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 3g, gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g, chuan jiao (Pericarpium Zanthoxyli Bungeani) 川椒 3g or mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 6g

- With exhausting paroxysms of sneezing, add one or two of the following herbs: chan tui (Periostracum Cicadae) 蝉蜕 9g, quan xie (Buthus Martensi) 金蝎 1.5g, she tui (Ixuviae Sergentii) 蛇蜕 2g or di long* (Lumbricus) 地龙 9g.

- With continuous, copious, watery nasal discharge, add one or two of the following herbs: jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae) 金樱子 9g, fu xiao mai (Semem Triuci Aestivi Levis) 浮小麦 12g or nuo dao gen (Radix et Rhizoma Oryzae Glutinosae) 糯稻根 15g

Variations and additional prescriptions

- One type of rhinitis is initiated or aggravated by certain foods or wine. This is thought to be due to stagnant Heat affecting the Lung and Large Intestine channels, with a background of Lung deficiency. The formula for this pattern is XIN YI QING FEI YIN (Magnolia Flower Lung Clearing Decoction 辛夷清肺饮).

- shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 .......................... 12-18g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .......................... 9g
- shan zhi zhi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 .......................... 9g
- zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 .......................... 9g
- sang Bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 .......................... 9g
- xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 .......................... 9g
- pi pa ye (Folium Eriobotryae Japonicae) 枇杷叶 .......................... 9g
- bai he (Bulbus Lilii) 百合 .......................... 9g
**Patent medicines**

- **Yu Ping Feng Wan** (玉屏风丸) 9g
- **Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan** (香砂六君子丸) 9g
- **Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan** (补中益气丸) 6g
- **Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan** (参苓白术丸) 6g
- **Bi Min Gan Wan** (鼻敏感丸) 6g

**Method:** Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

**Acupuncture**

- GB.20 (feng chi), LI.20 (ying xiang), LI.19 (bei liu), BL.13 (fei shu +), BL.20 (pi shu +), LI.7 (lie que), LI.9 (tai yuan +), ST.36 (zui san li +), BL.23 (shen shu +), KD.6 (zhang hui), LI.4 (bei gu)
- Moxibustion on the following points is very useful in chronic cases:
  - Select 3 or 4 per treatment: yin tang (M-HN-3), DU.4 (ming men), DU.12 (shen shu), DU.23 (shang xing), Ren.6 (qi hui), Ren.8 (shen que), Ren.12 (zhang wan), SP.6 (san yin jiao), ST.36 (zu san li). When treating yin tang, moxa cones over slices of ginger is particularly good.

**Snuff**

- In severe cases **BI YUN SAN** (Blue Cloud Powder) can be sniffed into each nostril several times daily:
  - **chu bu shi cao** (Herba Centipeda) 3g
  - **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 3g
  - **xi xin** (Herba cum Radice Asari) 3g
  - **xu yi hua** (Flos Magnolias) 3g
  - **qing dai** (Indigo Pulverata Levis) 3g

**Method:** Powder equal amounts of each herb and store in an airtight container until needed. (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

**Paste**

- A paste may be made of lanolin and powdered **chu bu shi cao** (Herba Centipeda) and applied to the nasal mucosa
- powdered **gan jiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) can be mixed with honey and applied to the nasal mucosa

---

**Nasal wash**

- In all chronic cases, rinsing the nasal cavity and sinuses with warm salty water to dislodge mucus and tone the mucous membranes is useful (see p.236). Other useful rinses can be made with one of the following herbs:
  - a few shallots (cong bai Bulbus Allii Fistulosi), **chu bu shi cao** (Herba Centipeda) 3g or **xu yi hua** (Flos Magnolias) 3g

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Lung qi deficiency type rhinitis include acute or chronic rhinitis.
- Can take a while to respond and often needs prolonged treatment for satisfactory results.
8.3 LUNG AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY (WITH PHLEGM)

Pathophysiology
- Lung and Spleen qi deficiency with Phlegm is a common pattern occurring frequently in children (although it also occurs in adults) and in Western society is often due to excessive consumption of dairy products and sugar. The main feature here is the quantity and persistence of mucus.

Clinical features
- Recurrent episodes of relatively severe nasal congestion or persistent runny nose with thin watery or sticky white mucus
- Nasal mucosa swollen and pale or ashen; patients with this pattern often have nasal polyps and children may have upturned noses from frequent wiping upwards with the palm of the hand
- Nasal itch, sneezing
- Reduction or loss of sense of smell
- Fullness and heaviness in the head, woolly headedness
- Fatigue, listlessness
- Aversion to cold
- Tired limbs
- Poor appetite, picky eater
- Loose stools or diarrhea
- Pale or pale and swollen with tooth marks and a white coat
- P soft and weak

Treatment principle
Strengthen the Spleen and tonify qi
Tonify the Lungs to consolidate qi

Prescription
LIU JUN ZI TANG 六君子汤
(Six Major Herbs Combination) modified

This formula can be used for acute exacerbations of a chronic Spleen qi deficiency (with Phlegm Damp) pattern, and in between episodes. It is suitable for prolonged use.

- ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参 9g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
- huang qi (Radix Atragali Membranacei) 黄芪 15-30g
- he zi (Fructus Terminaliae Chebulae) 诃子 9g
- xin yi hua (Flos Magnoliae) 辛夷花 9g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g
- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acorn Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: ZHANG Yi Er Bi Hao Ke Xue)

Modifications
- To address the atopy (see modifications p.151), add two or three of the following herbs: tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis) 菟丝子 12g, du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲 12g, hu tao ren (Semem Juglandis Regia) 胡桃仁 9g, bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifoliae) 补骨脂 12g, ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 12g, xu duan (Radix Dipsaci Asperi) 续断 12g, fu pen zi (Fructus Rubi Chinig) 覆盆子 9g or wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g. We also find that powerfully strengthening wei qi with large doses of huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 is very useful (see modifications p.269).
- With severe congestion, add two or three of the following herbs: xi xin* (Herba cum Radix Asari) 细辛 3g, gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g, chuan jiao (Pericarpium Zanthoxyli Bungeani) 川椒 3g, mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 6g or cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 茅芋子 6g.
- With frontal headache, add bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 9g.
- With exhausting paroxysms of sneezing, add one or two of the following herbs: chan tui* (Periostracum Cicadae) 榆蜕 9g, quan xie* (Bothus Martensi) 全蝎 1.5g, she tui* (Exuviae Serpentis) 蛇蜕 2g or di long* (Lumbricus) 地龙 9g.
- With continuous, copious, watery nasal discharge, add one or two of the following herbs: jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae) 金樱子 9g, fu xiao mai (Semem Triticum Aestivii) 浮小麦 12g or muo dao gen (Radix et Rhizoma Oryzae Glutinosae) 米稻根 15g.
- Once the mucus clears, the principle of treatment should tend more towards tonification. Delete the dispersing, Phlegm cutting herbs (ban xia, xin yi hua etc.) as the patient's condition improves, so as not to disperse qi.

Variations and additional prescriptions
In children
- In children with perennial rhinitis the formula of choice is SHEN LING BAI ZHU SAN (Ginseng and Atractylodes Formula 参苓白术散 modified, p.253).
8.4 KIDNEY DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Kidney deficiency is a very chronic pattern, often present from childhood, and frequently encountered in atopic patients who may also be subject to asthma and eczema. It may also evolve from one of the previous patterns. Depending on constitutional and environmental factors, it may tend to yin or yang deficiency, with yang deficiency being clinically more common.

Clinical features

- many years of perennial nasal itch, congestion, sneezing, watery nasal discharge, all of which are worse in the morning and evening, after sex or when fatigued
- reduction or loss of sense of smell
- nasal mucosa pale, wet and oedematous
- There may be no accompanying symptoms of Kidney deficiency if deficient weiqi is its only manifestation. In other cases Kidney symptoms are obvious and the manifestations will vary depending on the type of deficiency, that is, yang, qi or yin deficiency.

Kidney yang deficiency

- cold intolerance, symptoms worse after exposure to cold, weak sore lower back, low libido, impotence, nocturia and frequent urination or oedema and scanty urine, lethargy, pallor, swollen pale tongue and a deep, thready, weak pulse

Kidney yin deficiency

- dizziness and tinnitus, forgetfulness, insomnia, heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot'), facial flushing, night sweats, a red dry tongue with little or no coat and a thready, rapid pulse

Kidney qi or jing deficiency

- If tending to neither yin or yang deficiency, that is, with no obvious Hot or Cold signs, the symptoms reflect general Kidney weakness—sore low back and knees, nocturia, low libido, weak proximal positions on the pulse. If the deficiency is at the level of jing, there may be additional symptoms of forgetfulness, poor memory, greying, lifeless or falling hair.

Treatment principle

Tonify and support Kidney yang (or yin)
Prescriptions

8.3.1 Kidney yang deficiency

JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN 金匮肾气丸
(Rehmannia Eight Formula) modified

In addition to addressing rhinitis with Kidney yang deficiency symptoms, this formula can be used to treat asymptomatic patients prior to the pollen season if they exhibit signs of Cold, or at least no signs of Heat.

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 熟地 ......... 240g
- huang qi (Radix Atragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ............. 180g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposite) 山药 ............. 120g
- shan zhu yu (Fructus Cornii Officinalis) 山茱萸 ...... 120g
- fu ling (Gelatium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ............... 90g
- ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ............ 90g
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicans) 牡丹皮 ......... 90g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .... 60g
- zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ... 60g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .......... 40g

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.

(Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

WEN FEI ZHI LIU DAN 温肺止流丹
(Warm the Lungs, Stop the Flow Special Pill) modified

This formula is recommended when there is some ongoing congestion, or perennial rhinitis of a yang deficiency type. It may also be selected to treat asymptomatic atopic patients prior to the pollen season, provided there are no signs of Heat.

- huang qi (Radix Atragali Membranacei) 黄芪 .......... 180g
- rou cong rong (Herba Cistanches Deserticalae) 肉苁蓉 .... 150g
- hu tao ren (Semen Juglandis Regiae) 胡桃仁 .......... 120g
- jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 荆芥 ... 120g
- he zi (Fructus Terminaliae Chebuleae) 诃子 .......... 90g
- ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参 ............. 90g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 板兰根 ...... 90g
- fu pen zi (Fructus Rubi Chingii) 覆盆子 ........... 90g
- jin ying zhi (Fructus Rosae Laevisatae) 金樱子 ...... 90g
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 ........... 60g
- yu nao shi* (Pseudosciaenae Otolithum) 鱼脑石 ....... 60g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .... 60g
- ge jie* (Gecko) 蛤蚧 ............ 60g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Radialis) 甘草 ......... 30g

Method: Grind herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.

(Source: Zheng Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

8.3.2 Kidney yin deficiency

ZUO GUI WAN 左归丸
(Ascyranthus and Rehmannia Formula)

This formula is used for chronic rhinitis in a patient with Kidney yin deficiency and signs of Heat. It may also be selected to treat asymptomatic patients with a tendency to yin deficiency prior to the pollen season.

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 熟地 ......... 240g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposite) 山药 ............. 120g
- shan zhu yu (Fructus Cornii Officinalis) 山茱萸 ...... 120g
- gou qi zhi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 .......... 120g
- tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis) 葛玉子 .......... 120g
- gui ban jiao* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟版胶 ....... 120g
- lu jiao jiao (Cortus Cervi Gelatinum) 鹿角胶 .......... 120g
- huai niu xi (Radix Ascyranthis Bidentatae) 怀牛膝 ....... 90g

Method: Grind herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.

In decoction, lu jiao jiao and gui ban jiao are melted in the strained decoction.

(Source: Zheng Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Patent medicines

Kidney yang (qi) deficiency

Any of these may be selected (in the absence of Heat) for asymptomatic atopic patients

- Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotonin Pills)
- You Gui Wan 左归丸 (You Gui Wan)
- Bai Ji Yin Yang Wan 白芷阴阳丸 (Bai Ji Yin Yang Wan)
- Ning Xin Ba Shen Wan 宁心补肾丸 (San Yuen Medical Pills)
- Zhuang Yao Jian Shen Pian 壮腰健骨片 (Zhuang Yao Jian Shen)

Kidney yin deficiency

- Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
- Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- Ba Nao Wan 补脑丸 (Cerebral Tonic Pills)
- Chong Cao Ji Jing 虫草鸡精 (Cordyceps Essence of Chicken)

Acupuncture

- BL23 (shen shu +), DU4 (ming men +), Ren4 (guan yu an +), Ren6 (qi hai +), GB39 (xuan zhong +), DU20 (bai hui), BL15 (xin shui), LI7 (lie que), KID6 (zhao hai), LU9 (tai yu an), yin tang (M-HN-3), bi tong (M-HN-14)
Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney deficiency type rhinitis include chronic atopic or perennial rhinitis.
- Generally takes prolonged treatment (more than 1 year) to achieve satisfactory results.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR RHINITIS

Acute patterns
Wind Cold - Xiao Qing Long Tang 小青龙汤
  - with Heat - Sang Ju Yin 桑菊饮

Chronic or recurrent patterns
Lung qi deficiency
  - Yu Ping Feng San 玉屏风散 + Cang Jie Zi San 苍耳子散
  - Initiated by food or drink - Xin Yi Qing Fei Yin 辛夷清肺饮

Lung and Spleen qi deficiency - Liu Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤

Kidney deficiency
  - Yang (qi) deficiency (or when asymptomatic but with no Heat signs) - Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 or Wen Wei Zhi Lian Dan 温肺止流丹
  - Yin deficiency - Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat¹, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Lung

9. Sore Throat

Acute patterns
Wind Heat
Lung and Stomach Heat

Chronic patterns
Lung and Kidney yin deficiency
Spleen qi deficiency

Appendix - Throat abscess
SORE THROAT

This chapter deals with the analysis and treatment of sore throat, regardless of the disease defined by Western medicine. The sore throats are mostly seen in the clinic are those associated with colds and flu, tonsillitis or pharyngitis. The term hou bi (literally ‘throat obstruction’) is a general expression for throat disorders characterised by swelling and pain.

In the language of Chinese medicine, acute tonsillitis is described as ‘milk moth’ (niu 蠶), a term which relates to the appearance of the tonsils when inflamed, swollen and suppurative.

AETIOLOGY

In Chinese medicine terms the most important cause of sore throat is Heat. The Heat may be excess, in which case the sore throat is acute and usually intense, or the Heat may be deficient in which case the sore throat is more chronic and recurrent. In severe cases, Toxins can be generated by the local intensity of the Heat, causing local destruction of tissues and the development of pus. Toxins may also give rise to significant systemic symptoms—fever, anorexia and malaise (see also Throat Abscess, p.301).

Wind Heat (& Damp)

Wind Heat is the most common cause of acute sore throat. Wind Heat invades through the mouth and lodges in the throat inflaming the local tissues. This causes redness, swelling and pain of the throat and/or tonsils. If the Heat is intense enough, Toxins may be generated giving rise to suppuration, which can be observed on the tonsils or the rear of the throat.

Wind Heat can combine with Dampness as well, producing a slightly different picture. Unlike Wind Heat, the presence of the Damp prevents full expression of the Heat, and the disorder may develop slowly. The Dampness complicates and prolongs the Heat elements and tends to linger once the Heat has dissipated. The Damp can also lead to various swellings (glandular, liver, spleen etc.). Unlike straight Wind Heat, this pattern may be associated with quite prolonged illness and may become latent, reappearing when the patient is run down or under stress.

Lung and Stomach Heat

Smoking is the most common cause of internal Lung Heat. Similarly, Stomach Heat can be generated by overconsumption of spicy, rich foods or alcohol. Prolonged Liver qi stagnation that gives rise to Heat will also have the effect of producing Stomach Heat via the controlling (ke 肝, p.70) cycle.

Such Heat can smoulder at a low level, damaging the tissues of the upper respiratory and digestive tract, and thus causing low grade inflammation of the throat. Prolonged Heat retained in the throat, can suddenly flare into a particularly severe and supplicative sore throat, if provoked by an invasion of Wind.

Deficient Heat

Sore throat due to yin deficient Heat is chronic and recurrent, and usually milder than the acute types. The deficient Heat that causes sore throats is the result of Lung and Kidney yin deficiency. Lung yin is easily damaged in those who smoke or live in very dry environments, who use bronchodilating medication or those with recurrent or severe Lung disease of a Hot nature. A hot and spicy diet may also contribute by continually heating the Stomach, damaging the yin Fluids of the Stomach and Lung.

Kidney yin is consumed by overwork, ageing, excessive sexual activity or drug use, or after febrile diseases. Frequent episodes of acute sore throat from Wind Heat or Lung and Stomach Heat will eventually develop into the chronic type as Lung yin is repeatedly damaged.

Spleen deficiency (with lingering pathogens)

This pattern is mostly due to overuse of antibiotic drugs in the treatment of repeated sore throats or other upper respiratory tract infections. The cooling nature of the drugs clears Heat, but not any of the associated pathogens. Antibiotics also damage the Spleen, predisposing to more Damp accumulation, setting the stage for recurrent infections.

BOX 9.1 SOME BIO MEDICAL CAUSES OF SORE THROAT

- acute infection (bacterial or viral laryngitis, tonsillitis)
- pharyngeal abscess, diphtheria
- gonococcus, syphilis, hepatitis
- measles, chicken pox, epiglotitis
- oral herpes simplex
- glandular fever
- oral thrush
- HIV
- foreign body
- postnasal drip from chronic sinus congestion
- aphthous ulcers
- leukaemia
- agranulocytosis
- angina, myocardial infarction
- tobacco smoke
- antiseptic lozenges
- reflux oesophagitis
- mouth breathing
- carcinoma of the oropharynx
- trauma from overuse or burns from hot food
BOX 9.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS

Appearance of the throat
• red and swollen - Wind Heat
• red, swollen with pus - Lung and Stomach Heat, Wind Heat with local Toxic Heat
• not red or pale red - yin deficiency or qi deficiency

Aggravation
• with fatigue - yin deficiency
• with spicy food - any Heat pattern, particularly yin deficiency

Amelioration
• with rest - yin deficiency

Frequency
• continuous pain (during an episode) - Wind Heat, Lung and Stomach Heat, Toxic Heat
• worse in the morning - qi deficiency
• worse in the evening - yin deficiency

9.1 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Wind Heat is the most frequent type of acute sore throat, and is the most commonly identified TCM pathogen (especially at an early stage) in viral infections (like colds and flu) and bacterial infections (such as tonsillitis and pharyngitis).

Clinical features
• acute sore throat, worse with swallowing and coughing
• the throat and tonsils are (perhaps only slightly) swollen and red, and there may or may not be a white or yellow exudate on their surfaces
• swollen cervical lymph nodes
• fever and chills, with fever predominant
• headache
• nasal obstruction
• fatigue, poor appetite, malaise
• productive cough
• red up with a thin white or slightly yellow coat
• P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
Expel Wind and Heat
Eliminate Toxins and benefit the throat

Prescription

SHU FENG QING RE TANG 疏风清热汤
(Dispel Wind, Clear Heat Decoction)

jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 ...................... 30g
lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae) 连翘 ..................... 15g
tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 ................ 15g
xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 ............... 15g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .................. 12g
sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albac Raticis) 桑白皮 .................. 12g
jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ...................... 12g
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 .......................... 10g
jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 荆芥 .......... 10g
fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 ................ 10g
zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 浙贝母 .............. 10g
niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子 ...................... 10g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ..................... 10g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zheng Yi Nei Ke 1.in Chong Shou Chi)
Variations and additional prescriptions

With Damp Heat

- When combined with Dampness, the symptom picture more closely resembles a Warm Disease (wen bing). The patient has a sore throat, fever, lethargy and malaise, loss of appetite, generalised lymphadenopathy, nausea, headaches and a red tongue with a thick coat. The treatment is to clear Damp Heat, ease the throat and eliminate Toxin. When the Damp elements are prominent (fever, sore throat), the primary prescription is suitable. When the Damp elements are prominent (nausea, loss of appetite, lassitude and malaise), consider LIAN PO YIN (Coptis and Magnolia Bark Decoction 连朴饮, p.14) with the addition of Toxic Heat clearing herbs like bai hua she she cao (Herbs Oldenlandia Diffusa) 白花蛇舌草 30g, ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根 15g or daqing ye (Folium Daqingye) 大青叶 20g.

With Wind Cold

- Occasionally, sore throat may occur as part of a Wind Cold pattern. Although the pain associated with Wind Cold is generally mild, it may be severe in some cases. The treatment is to disperse Wind Cold with JING FANG BAI DU SAN (Schizonepeta and Ledebouriella Powder to Overcome Pathogenic Influences 制防败毒散, p.6).

Patent medicines

Yin Qiao Jiu Du Pian 银翘解毒片 (Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien) 银翘解毒片
Niu Huang Jiu Du Pian 牛黄解毒片 (Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien) 牛黄解毒片 - commonly used for early stage febrile disorder with sore throat, mouth ulcers, conjunctivitis, otitis and suppurative skin infections
Ban Lan Gen Chong Ji 板蓝根冲剂 (Ban Lan Gen Chong Ji) 板蓝根冲剂
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets) 穿心莲抗炎片
Shuang Liao Hou Feng San 双料喉风散 (Superior Sore Throat Powder) 双料喉风散
Xi Gua Shuang 西瓜霜 (Watermelon Frost) 西瓜霜

Gargles

- Decoction equal portions of jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花, jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 菊梗 and lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae) 连翘, and gargle several times daily.

Lozenges

- Lozenges are boluses of powdered herbs, which are held in the mouth and sucked slowly, releasing the ingredients over the tonsils. They are useful for patients prone to sore throat to carry while travelling etc. Formulæ include TIE DI WAN (Iron Whistle Pill) 连翘丸, jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 菊梗 60g, zhe bei mu (Bu which is Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 30g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Nipponensis) 玄参 30g, gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 60g, he zi (Fructus Terminaliae Chebulae) 还子 30g, gua lou pi (Pericarpium Trichosanthis) 瓜楼皮 30g.
**LU NG S 9. SORE THROAT 289**

**fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos)** 茯苓 .......................... 30g
**qing guo (Fructus Canariae Album)** 青果 .......................... 12g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 3-gram pills with honey.
(Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

**RUN HOU WAN (Moisten the Throat Pill 润喉丸)**
**gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)** 甘草 .................... 300g
**wu mei (Fructus Pruni Mume)** 乌梅 ....................... 750g
**peng sha (Borax)** 砒砂 .......................... 15g
**shi yan (salt)** 食盐 .......................... 15g
**xuan ming fen (Mirabilisitum Purum)** 玄明粉 .................. 30g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 3-gram pills with water chestnut powder and honey.
(Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

**Clinical notes**
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Wind Heat type sore throat include tonsillitis, pharyngitis, influenza, common cold, epiglottitis, glandular fever and scarlet fever.
- Unresolved or resistant cases may go on to develop abscesses of the throat, thus the timing of treatment is important - the earlier the intervention the better and faster the result.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct and timely treatment.

**9.2 LUNG AND STOMACH HEAT (TOXIC HEAT)**

**Pathophysiology**
- Wind Heat (or Cold that transforms into Heat) is usually the trigger that provokes latent Lung and Stomach Heat to flare in the throat. The main characteristic of this pattern is the severity of the pain and swelling, the clear development of Toxic Heat (in the form of pus) and the systemic symptoms.

**Clinical features**
- Acute sore throat. The pain is usually severe, and radiates to the lower jaw or ears. On examination the throat or tonsils are swollen and red with a white or yellow exudate on their surfaces. In severe cases, swelling significantly narrows the throat causing difficulty swallowing.
- swollen tender cervical lymph nodes
- high fever
- thirst
- constipation
- scanty concentrated urine
- bad breath
- abdominal distension
- hoarse voice
- cough with thick yellow sputum
- T deep red, with a thick greasy yellow coat
- P flooding, big and rapid

**Treatment principle**
Clear and drain Toxic Heat
Reduce swelling and benefit the throat

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wind Heat</th>
<th>Acute Lung and Stomach Heat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Throat and tonsils</td>
<td>red and swollen with or without suppuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General features</td>
<td>sore throat, fever, chills, cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tongue</td>
<td>normal or red tipped, thin white or yellow coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>floating, rapid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PU JI XIAO DU YIN 普济消毒饮 (Universal Benefit Decoction to Eliminate the Toxins) modified**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 板蓝根</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa) 连翘</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiu huang qin (wine fried Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang lien (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiang can (Bombex Batryticatus) 僵蚕</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma bo (Fructificatio Lasiosphaeræa seu Calvatiae) 马勃</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) 牛蒡子</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 10g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 6g
jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 6g
bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 3g

Method: Decoction. Bo he is added just before the end of cooking (bou xiao 后下), ma bo is usually cooked in a muslin bag (bou jian 包煎). (Source: Zhang Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

**Modifications**

- With very high, persistent fever, add shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 30g, tian zhu huang (Concretio Silicea Bambuseae Textillis) 天竺黄 10g and jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 30g.
- With severe thirst, add tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 15g and mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 10g.
- If there is a cough with copious sticky Phlegm, add quan gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 全栝楼 15g, she gan (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 射干 15g and zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 施贝母 10g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rheii) 大黄 6-9g and mang xiao (Mirabilis) 芒硝 6g.
- With dizziness, blurred vision and red, sore eyes, add sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 10g, ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 15g and xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris) 番枯草 15g.
- If the urine is concentrated and scanty, add zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 竹叶 6g and lu gen (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis) 芦根 30g.

**Patent medicines**

*Niu Huang Jie Du Pian* (Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien)
- commonly used for early stage febrile disorder with sore throat, mouth ulcers, conjunctivitis, otitis and suppurative skin infections

*Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian* (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

*Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan* (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
- severe cases

*Da Bai Du Jiao Nang* (DBD Capsule)
- severe cases

*Shuang Liao Hou Feng San* (Superior Sore Throat Powder)
- for topical use

*Xi Gua Shuang* (Watermelon Frost)
- for topical use

**Acupuncture**

L1.4 (he gu -), St.44 (nei ting -), LI.11 (qu chi -), SJ.5 (wai guan -),
Lu.11 (shao shang -), Ren.22 (tian te), Lu.7 (lie que), Lu.10 (yu jin -),
SI.17 (tian rong -), LI.18 (fu fu -)

_Ear points_: throat, tonsils 

- Treatment needs to be quite frequent in this pattern—1-2 strong treatments daily may be necessary.

**Topical treatment**
- The same powders, gargles and lozenges that are used for Wind Heat, p.286-288 can be used for Lung and Stomach Heat.

**Clinical notes**
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Lung and Stomach or Toxic Heat type sore throat include tonsillitis, pharyngitis, epiglottitis, developing peritonsillar abscess and retropharyngeal abscess.
- Unresolved or resistant cases frequently go on to develop abscesses of the throat (see p.301).
- This pattern can respond well to correct, frequent and timely treatment.
9.3 LUNG AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- The Lung and Kidney yin deficiency pattern represents a chronic sore throat which gets worse when the patient is tired. Lung and Kidney yin deficiency leads to dryness and Heat in the throat, causing recurrent low grade inflammation of the tonsils and surrounding tissues. Depending on the initial conditions and the patient’s constitution, the deficiency may tend towards either the Lung or Kidney, although in practice it is often difficult to differentiate between them, and there are mostly elements of both. In some patients there will be a history of repeated acute throat infections.

Clinical features
General
- chronic sore throat, which gets worse in the afternoon or evening, and with fatigue
- possibly swollen tonsils; if the tonsils are squeezed with a tongue depressor there may be a whitish or yellowish watery exudate
- the throat is dry and feels blocked or hoarse
- itchy irritating sensations in the throat
- afternoon fever or malar flushing
- tiredness and weakness
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)

T red and dry with little or no coat
P thready and rapid

If Lung yin deficiency predominates there is:
- mild throat soreness, dry mouth and throat with little or no desire to drink, red lips, dry cough with little or no sputum, shortness of breath, the throat may appear a dull or darkish red

If Kidney yin deficiency predominates there is:
- sore, dry throat that tends to be worse than in Lung yin deficiency, and with more deficient Heat, low back and knees weak and sore, restlessness, insomnia, dizziness, blurred vision, tinnitus, the throat appears dull or darkish red and dry, or shiny and atrophic with some scab like crustings

9.3.1 Lung yin deficiency
Treatment principle
Nourish Lung yin, clear Heat
Generate fluids and moisten dryness

9.3.2 Kidney yin deficiency
Treatment principle
Nourish Kidney yin, redirect Fire downwards
Clear and benefit the throat

Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prescription</th>
<th>GAN LU YIN 甘露饮</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Sweet Dew Decoction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquae) 熟地</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 菊延</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian dong (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchinensis) 天冬</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi hu (Herba Dendrobii) 石斛</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枝壳</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pi pa ye (Folium Frutootryae) 扇把叶</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhang Yi Li Bi Hou Ke Xin)

Modifications
- If Fire flares strongly add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 9-12g and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 6-9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
Yin and Blood deficiency
- In cases with both yin and Blood deficiency causing chronic sore, dry throat, visual disturbances, numbness in the extremities, pale lips etc. (a
pattern common in post partum women), the correct treatment is to first nourish Blood and yin, and moisten dryness with SI WU TANG (Dang Gui Four Combination 四物汤) modified.

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquatiae) 熟地 ...... 18g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ............... 12g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ............... 9g
he shou wu (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 何首乌 ....... 9g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ....... 9g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ....... 6g
e jiao (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 ............... 6g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 34-38).

Qi and yin deficiency

- When Lung qi, fluids and yin are damaged, causing a chronic sore, dry throat, poor appetite, shortness of breath, low voice or weak cough, the treatment is to tonify qi and generate fluids with SI JUN ZI TANG (Four Major Herbs Combination 四君子汤) modified.

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ............... 9g
bai zhong (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephala) 白术 ...... 9g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........... 6g
huang qi (Radix Astragalii Membranaceae) 黄芪 ....... 18g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药 ............ 12g
huang jing (Rhizoma Polygonati) 黄精 ............... 12g
shi hu (Herba Dendrobii) 石斛 ................... 9g
yu zhu (Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati) 玉竹 ............ 9g
bai he (Bulbus Lilii) 百合 ..................... 9g
da zao (Frutus Ziziphi Jujubae) 枣肉 ................ 3pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Fa Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Kidney yang deficiency

- There is another type of sore throat that is attributed to Kidney yang deficiency. This type of sore throat is characterised by a feeling of discomfort and vulnerability in the throat, rather than inflammation. In a yang deficient person insufficient yang rises to the neck and head, the area of the body that in normal circumstances is ‘the meeting point of all the yang’. A lack of yang reaching the head can also inhibit clarity of thought. This mild sore throat (often worse in the morning) and muddled thinking can be part of a post viral or chronic fatigue syndrome. There may also be accompanying Cold signs and symptoms, such as cold extremities, cold intolerance, loose stools or diarrhoea and a pale swollen tongue. Use the formula JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN (Rehmannia Eight Formula 金匮肾气丸, p.150) to warm and invigorate Kidney yang.

Patent medicines

Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan 八仙长寿丸 (Ba Xian Chang Shou Wan)
Bai He Gu Jin Wan 百合固金丸 (Bai He Gu Jin Wan)
Qing Yin Wan 清音丸 (Qing Yin Wan)
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills)

- for Kidney yang deficiency

Topical treatments

TIE DI WAN (Iron Whistle Pill 铁笛丸)
RUN HOU WAN (Moisten the Throat Pill 润喉丸)
- see Wind Heat, p.274-275

Acupuncture

Kidney yin deficiency

LI.4 (le gu), LI.11 (qu chi), St.36 (zu san li +), St.6 (jia che), Lu.7 (lie que),
Kid.6 (zhe hai +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Lu.10 (yu jing), Bl.23 (shen shu +),
Bl.13 (fei shu +), Lu.9 (tai yuan +), LI.18 (fu tui), bai luo (M-HN-30)

Kidney yang deficiency

Du.14 (da zhu +), Du.20 (bai hui), Bl.23 (shen shu +),
Bl.43 (gao huang shu +), Kid.27 (shu feng), Du.4 (meng men +)

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Lung and Kidney deficiency type sore throat include chronic laryngitis, pharyngitis, tonsillitis, smokers throat, chronic fatigue syndrome, immune system deficiency and post glandular fever sore throat.
- Can require prolonged treatment for a satisfactory result.
- Sipping pear juice frequently can help to moisten the throat.
9.4 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Spleen qi deficiency sore throat is a chronic pattern and frequently a direct result of overuse of antibiotic drugs. Clinically, this is most frequently seen in children who receive repeated courses of medication for tonsillitis. Antibiotics clear the Heat associated with the throat infection, but do not clear Damp or disperse other pathogens that remain in the throat. These lingering pathogenic factors encourage repeated episodes of infection, which may occur as soon as the course of medication ceases. Repeated courses of antibiotics become less effective at combating the infection, but still damage Spleen yang qi. As a result, more Damp can accumulate and production of zheng and wei qi is inhibited. Wei qi deficiency allows repeated Wind invasion, which simply aggravates the latent pathogens, until the throat is constantly sore and irritated. Eventually, the tonsils may be removed, but the Spleen deficiency remains.

Clinical features

- chronic sore throat, which is worse in the morning and when tired
- the throat appears slightly red or pale and swollen, possibly with a sheen of mucus
- frequent or continual swollen glands in the neck
- frequent colds and upper respiratory tract infections
- poor appetite, picky eating, abdominal distension
- tiredness, lack of vitality
- loose stools or diarrhoea
- nausea or vomiting
- runny nose, puffy eyes, mild oedema
- pale complexion

T pale and possibly swollen and coated
P weak

Treatment principle

Tonify and strengthen Spleen qi
Leach out and dry Dampness and benefit the throat

Prescription

SHEN LING BAI ZHU SAN 参苓白术散
(Ginseng and Atractyloides Formula) modified

- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 ........................................ 12g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 ................................ 12g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .................................................. 12g
- chao bian dou (dry fried Semen Dolichos Lablab) 炒扁豆 ........................................... 12g
- chao shan yao (dry Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 炒山药 ........................................... 15g
- chao yu ren (dry fried Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 炒苡仁 ........................................... 15g
- lian zi (Semem Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子 ........................................... 9g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ........................................... 6g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ........................................... 6g
- mu hu die (Semem Oryxyl Indici) 木蝴蝶 ........................................... 6g
- sha ren (Fructus Amomi) 砂仁 .................................................. 3g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 赤甘草 ........................................... 3g
- xing ren (Fruktus Achnatheri) 降香 ........................................... 3g
- zheng ren (Fruktus Arisata) 赤小豆 ........................................... 3g
- zhi gao (sticky rice) 甘草 .................................................. 3g

Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and take 9 grams (or proportionately less for children) 2-3 times daily with warm water. May also be decocted, in which case sha ren is added at the end of cooking (hou xia & T). (Source: Zheng Yi Nei Ke Lin Chong Shou Ge)

Modifications

- With frequent colds, add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 15g and fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 9g.
- With copious Phlegm, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g.
- With swollen glands, add zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 少贝母 9g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 12g and chang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 冬虫夏草 9g. See also section on paediatric asthma (p.162) for the swollen gland formula ‘Gungy Gland Mix’.

Patent medicines

Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan 参苓白术丸 (Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan)
Jian Pi Wan 健脾丸 (Jian Pi Wan)
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
- for Spleen yang deficiency
Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)
- yang deficiency

Acupuncture

St.36 (zu san li + △), L1.11 (qu chi + △), Bl.20 (pi shu + △),
Lu.9 (tai yuen +), Bl.13 (fei shu + △), Ren.12 (zhong wan + △)
- with Phlegm add St.40 (feng long -)
- with frequent colds add Du.14 (da zhui △)
Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Spleen qi deficiency type sore throat include chronic tonsillitis, immune dysfunction, chronic fatigue syndrome and post glandular fever sore throat.

- Children with this pattern are often subject to repeated attacks of Wind Heat, so timely treatment with a convenient formula (like Peking Niu Huang Chieh Tu Pien), can help prevent chronic tonsillitis and tonsillectomy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Main Signs &amp; Symptoms</th>
<th>Appearance of the throat</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACUTE</td>
<td>Wind Heat</td>
<td>sore throat, difficulty swallowing, fever &amp; chills, red tipped tongue with thin white or yellow coat</td>
<td>slightly red or red &amp; swollen, maybe with suppuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lung &amp; Stomach Heat</td>
<td>severe sore throat, high fever, thirst, constipation, bad breath, concentrated urine, red tongue with a thick yellow coat</td>
<td>very red &amp; swollen with obvious suppuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHRONIC</td>
<td>Lung yin deficiency</td>
<td>sore, irritated, scratchy throat, worse in the afternoon &amp; evening, dry cough, red lips, facial flushing, thready rapid pulse, red, dry tongue with little or no coat</td>
<td>dull or darkish red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kidney yin deficiency</td>
<td>sore throat worse in the afternoon &amp; evening, lower back ache, insomnia, tinnitus, dizziness, flushing, night sweats, thready rapid pulse, red dry tongue with little or no coat</td>
<td>dull or darkish red &amp; dry, or shiny &amp; atrophic with a scab-like crusting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kidney yang deficiency</td>
<td>sore throat, worse in the morning, pale complexion, oedema, cold intolerance, nocturia, loose stools, pale wet swollen tongue</td>
<td>neither red nor swollen, may be pale &amp; atrophic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spleen qi deficiency</td>
<td>sore congested throat, worse in the morning, throat clearing, poor appetite, abdominal distension, pale complexion, frequent colds, pale tongue</td>
<td>possibly pale &amp; swollen, with a coating of mucous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR SORE THROAT

Wind Heat - Shu Feng Qing Re Tang 疏风清热汤
• Wind Cold - Jing Fang Bai Du San 荆防败毒散

Lung and Stomach Heat - Pu Ji Xiao Du Yin 普济消毒饮

Lung yin deficiency - Gan Lu Yin 甘露饮
• with Blood deficiency - Si Wu Tang 四物汤
• with qi deficiency - Si Jun Zi Tang 四君子汤

Kidney yin deficiency - Lin Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸
• Kidney yang deficiency - Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸

Spleen qi deficiency - Shen Ling Bai Zhu San 参苓白术散

Appendix

THROAT ABSCESS (hou your 喉痛)

A throat abscess is a suppurative, space occupying lesion that usually follows an unresolved bacterial throat infection (primarily tonsillitis). Once an abscess has formed, the main focus of therapy is to eliminate Toxic Heat and expel pus. There are several different prescriptions used depending on the stage and severity of the disorder, and whether the abscess is forming, or has ruptured.

Clinical features

• sore throat with marked one sided swelling and medial displacement of the uvula and (usually) one tonsil, difficulty swallowing, swollen and tender cervical lymph nodes
• in the early stages there will usually be signs of Wind Heat–fever, chills, headache, malaise, floating rapid pulse, yellow tongue coat
• in later stages, as the pathogen moves internally (usually affecting yang ming and in serious cases, the Pericardium), the severity of the systemic symptoms increases—high fever, severe headache, constipation, dark urine, bad breath, a flooding, rapid pulse and a red tongue with a thick yellow coat

Treatment principle

Expel Wind, clear Toxic Heat, reduce swelling, stop pain

Prescription

WU WEI XIAO DU YIN 五味消毒饮
(Five Ingredient Decoction to Eliminate Toxin) modified

This prescription is used in the early stages of the abscess, when pus is being formed and the abscess is still developing. At this stage, although the throat is very sore, red and swollen, the systemic symptoms are generally relatively mild, reflecting a Wind Heat pattern.

jīn yīn huā (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 .................. 15-30g
zǐ huā di dīng (Herba cum Radice Violae Yedeonisits)
紫花地丁 .................................................. 15-30g
pú gōng yīng (Herba Taraxici Mongolici) 蒲公英 ............... 15-30g
yè jū huā (Flos Chrysanthemi Indici) 野菊花 .................. 12g
jǐng jié (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 刷芥 ........ 12g
zǐ bēi tiān kūi (Herba Begoniae Fimbripulatae) 紫背天葵 .9g
fāng fēng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 ................ 9g
bái zhī (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 .................. 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhang Yi Er Bi Hau Ke Xue)

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Variations and additional prescriptions

**Heat in the Blood**

- If the Toxic Heat progresses further into the body and enters the Blood, affecting the Pericardium and shen and causing bleeding or clouded consciousness, the correct treatment is to clear Toxic Heat, cool Blood and clear ying with XI JIAO DI HUANG TANG (Rhinoceros Horn and Rehmannia Decoction 犀角地黄汤, p.41) or QING YING TANG (Clear the Ying Decoction 清营汤, p.38).

**With delirium or disturbances of consciousness**

- If there is delirium or loss of consciousness, a resuscitation formula like AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN (Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone 安宫牛黄丸, p.914) or ZI XUE DAN (Purple Snow Special Pill 紫雪丹, p.707) is appropriate.

**Slow to heal ulcerations following rupture in the post acute phase**

- If, after the throat abscess has ruptured, there is residual ulceration that is slow to heal (usually in run down patients), the treatment is to tonify qi and Blood, and expel residual toxin. With non-healing ulceration and residual thin discharge use DANG GUI BU XUE TANG (Dang Gui Decoction to Tonify the Blood 当归补血汤) modified.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{huang qi} & \ (\text{Radix Astragali Membranacei}) \quad \text{黄芪} \quad 30g \\
\text{dang gui} & \ (\text{Radix Angelicae Sinensis}) \quad \text{当归} \quad 6g \\
\text{jin yin hua} & \ (\text{Flos Lonicerae Japonicae}) \quad \text{金银花} \quad 15g \\
\text{gan cao} & \ (\text{Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis}) \quad \text{甘草} \quad 9g
\end{align*}
\]

Method: Decoction.

**Chronic abscess that do not rupture**

- For chronic painful, hot abscesses with pus, but which do not readily rupture, the treatment is to tonify qi and Blood to expel Toxins and pus. The formula (a variation of the previous formula) is TOU NONG SAN (Discharge Pus Powder 透脓散).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{huang qi} & \ (\text{Radix Astragali Membranacei}) \quad \text{黄芪} \quad 15-24g \\
\text{dang gui} & \ (\text{Radix Angelicae Sinensis}) \quad \text{当归} \quad 9g \\
\text{chuan shan jia} & \ (\text{Squama Manitis Pentadactylae}) \quad \text{穿山甲} \quad 9g \\
\text{zao jiao ci} & \ (\text{Spina Gleditsiae Sinensis}) \quad \text{皂角刺} \quad 9g \\
\text{ru xiang} & \ (\text{Gummi Olibanum}) \quad \text{乳香} \quad 6g \\
\text{mo yao} & \ (\text{Myrrha}) \quad \text{没药} \quad 6g \\
\text{chuan xiong} & \ (\text{Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong}) \quad \text{川芎} \quad 6g
\end{align*}
\]

Method: Decoction with a 50:50 mixture of water and yellow wine. (Source: Shi Yong Ping Ji Xue)

**Chronic non Healing ulceration**

- For prolonged non-healing ulceration in a patient with no residual Toxic and severe deficiency, the treatment is to warm and tonify qi and Blood...
Clinical notes
- The types of biomedical condition that may present as a TCM defined throat abscess include quinsy, peritonsillar abscess and retropharyngeal abscess.
- In severe cases surgical drainage of the abscess and administration of antibiotics may be indicated, in addition to herbs.
- The same gargles and topical treatments that apply to Wind Heat sore throat (p.286-288) may be used in throat abscess.

Disorders of the Lung

10. Tuberculosis

Yin deficiency with Lung Heat
Lung and Kidney yin deficiency
Qi and yin deficiency
Yin and yang deficiency
Symptomatic treatment
The TCM term *fei lao* is usually translated as Lung consumption or Lung asthenia, and corresponds to pulmonary tuberculosis.

Tuberculosis is a chronic disorder of the Lungs characterised by cough, haemoptysis, expectoration, night sweats, weakness and emaciation. Such a collection of symptoms was described by Sun Si-miao in the *Qian Jin Fang* (Thousand Ducat Prescriptions) in the Tang dynasty, and he perceptively ascribed the condition to Lung worms (*chong* 虫). Today, of course, we know that the bacillus *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is the pathogenic organism responsible for tuberculosis infection.

Until a few years ago tuberculosis was almost eradicated in the developed world. Now we are encountering it more frequently as migration from and travel to developing countries increases. Drug resistant varieties are appearing at various locations around the world.

### AETIOLOGY

#### Pathogens

As noted by Sun Si-miao, it has long been recognised that a special type of pathogen was responsible for *fei lao*. We now know that the early stages of tuberculosis are generally symptomless, although in some cases there may be a vague illness associated with a cough. This most likely corresponds with an invasion of Wind Heat that is never cleared and becomes a latent or hidden (*fa* 伏) pathogen. The usual initial presentation is one of Lung *yin* deficiency (Fig 10.1).

#### Deficiency

The body’s ability to protect itself and contain the pathogen is of primary importance in the development of tuberculosis. If *zheng qi* is intact, the disease may remain silent for years. As *zheng qi* declines, the pathogen opportunistically reactivates, and thus tuberculosis is more common in those too weak to mount a strong defense. Tuberculosis is more common amongst the homeless, the poor, the malnourished and the immuno-compromised. Zhu Dan-xi, writing during the Yuan dynasty, noted that *yin* deficiency was the main predisposing and presenting feature.

### TREATMENT

Tuberculosis generally develops gradually and has a long course. Most cases begin with mild, intermittent and often vague symptoms like cough, fevers, night sweats and malaise. As the disease progresses, the pattern becomes more obviously one of *yin* deficiency affecting first the Lungs, then Kidneys. Often the Spleen will also be involved. In advanced disease both *yin* and *yang* are depleted.

The fundamental principle of treatment is to vigorously replenish *yin* (and *qi* or *jia*) while eliminating the pathogen. Today, the principle of eliminating the pathogen is usually achieved with specific antibiotic therapy (usually a combination of rifampicin, isoniazid and pyrazinamide). Because tuberculosis can be so debilitating and in many cases ultimately fatal, the most rational approach is to combine the precision of Western chemotherapy with the constitution strengthening benefits of Chinese medicine.

There are numerous herbs that inhibit the tuberculosis bacillus (Table 10.1). The prescriptions recommended in the source texts, however, concentrate almost entirely on the constitutional patterns evident and not on the pathogen. Presumably, an appropriate selection of known antitubercular herbs can be added to the primary constitutional formula or may be used as a first line treatment in cases of drug resistant tuberculosis. There are, however, certain cautions to be observed in the use of these herbs (see Table 10.1, p.309).

---

**Figure 10.1 Possible TCM aetiology of fei lao - pulmonary tuberculosis**
Symptomatic treatment

The symptoms of tuberculosis can be very distressing and may serve to further weaken the patient. When severe they should be controlled with specific herbal combinations added to the main prescription, or treated vigorously first with a specific symptomatic formula (see p.318) before dealing with the constitutional pattern. The treatments outlined in this section are not specific to tuberculosis, and may be adapted to suit any pattern presenting with these symptoms.

### Table 10.1 Herbs which inhibit Mycobacterium tuberculosis (from Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Flavour &amp; Nature, dose</th>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Adverse effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shi Da Gong Lao Ye (Folium Mahoniae Bealei)</td>
<td>bitter, cool 10-15g</td>
<td>Important herb for TB. Nourishes Lung <em>yin</em>, alleviates deficient Heat</td>
<td>Prolonged use can significantly damage the Spleen. Can be made into a syrup with honey or dates to alleviate this tendency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuan Xin Lian (Herba Andrographis Paniculatae)</td>
<td>bitter, cold 9-15g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang Qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>bitter, cold 6-15g</td>
<td>clear Damp Heat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang Lian (Rhizoma Coptidis)</td>
<td>bitter, cold 3-9g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xia Ku Cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris)</td>
<td>bitter, acrid, cold, 9-15g</td>
<td>clears Heat &amp; Toxins, dissipates accumulations</td>
<td>Can weaken the Spleen &amp; Stomach, although not as much as the previous herbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jin Yin Hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae)</td>
<td>sweet, cold 9-30g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Da Suan (Bulbus Allii Sativi)</td>
<td>acrid, warm 3-5 cloves</td>
<td>Kills parasites</td>
<td>Can deplete <em>yin</em>. May be taken in rice congee to alleviate this tendency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bai Guo (Semem Ginkgo Bilobae)</td>
<td>sweet, bitter, astringent, slightly toxic, 6-9g</td>
<td>Expels Phlegm, Stops wheezing, eliminates Dampness</td>
<td>Caution with hard to expectorate sputum. Long term use can cause toxic side effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di Yu (Radix Sanguisorbae Officinalis)</td>
<td>bitter, sour, cool, 6-15g</td>
<td>Cools the Blood &amp; stops bleeding, Clears Heat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi Liu Pi (Percarpium Punicae Granati)</td>
<td>sour, astringent, warm, toxic, 3-9g</td>
<td>Kills parasites, astringes the intestines</td>
<td>Can aggravate cases with Heat. Caution with hard to expectorate sputum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bai Bu (Radix Stemonae)</td>
<td>sweet, bitter, slightly warm 3-9g</td>
<td>Moistens the Lungs, stops cough, kills parasites</td>
<td>Can aggravate Spleen deficiency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An Xi Xiang (Benzoinum)</td>
<td>acrid, bitter, neutral, 0.3-1.5g</td>
<td>Opens the orifices, moves qi &amp; Blood</td>
<td>Can aggravate <em>yin</em> deficiency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.1 LUNG YIN DEFICIENCY WITH HEAT

Pathophysiology
- In Lung yin deficiency with Heat, the Heat is confined to the chest and the yin deficiency to the Lungs. This is generally the early stage and initial presentation of infection, before other complications intervene.

Clinical features
- dry cough with little or no mucus or recurrent haemoptysis with frothy fresh red blood
- chest pain with coughing
- afternoon or tidal fever
- night sweats
- sensation of heat in the palms, soles and chest ('five hearts hot')
- malar flush
- warm dry skin
- red lips, dry throat
- emaciation
- insomnia, dream disturbed sleep
- irritability and restlessness, easy anger

Treatment principle
Nourish yin, moisten the Lung, clear Heat
Kill pathogens

Prescription
YUE HUA WAN 月华丸
(Moonlight Pill) modified

sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 .................. 30g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ................. 30g
tian dong (Tuber Asparagus cochinchinensis) 天冬 ................ 30g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .................. 30g
shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitaec) 熟地 .......... 30g
bai bu* (Radix Stemonae) 百部 ............................. 30g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 ................... 30g
c jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 .......................... 30g
chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillarii Cirrhoseae) 川贝母 .......... 30g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 苦苓 ........................ 15g
san qi (Radix Notoginseng) 三七 .............................. 15g
sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 .............................. 60g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is five pills daily. May also be decocted with an appropriate reduction in dose. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- To target the pathogen directly, add two or three herbs from Table 10.1, p.309.
- For a guide to other approaches to symptomatic relief see symptomatic treatment, p.318.

Patent medicines (as adjunct or symptomatic therapy only)
Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan 养阴清肺丸 (Yang Yin Qing Fei Wan)
Bai He Gu Jin Wan 百合固金丸 (Bai He Gu Jin Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets) - used in addition to one of the patent medicines above

Acupuncture
Lu.5 (chi ze -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Bl.43 (gao huang shu + ▲), St.36 (zhu san li +)
  • with bone steaming fever add Du.14 (da zhuhi), Kid.3 (tai xi),
  PC.8 (lao gong), Lu.10 (yu jia)
  • with night sweats add Ht.6 (jin xi), Kid.7 (ju liu)
  • with haemoptysis add Lu.6 (kong zai), Bl.17 (ge shi)
  • with hoarse voice add Lu.9 (tao yuan), LI.18 (fu tu)

Clinical notes
- This pattern represents an early stage of pulmonary tuberculosis.
- At this stage, the condition usually responds well to correct treatment.
10.2 LUNG AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Lung and Kidney yin deficiency is very similar to the previous Lung yin deficiency, the difference being the addition of obvious Kidney deficiency signs. The Heat eventually damages Lung yin sufficiently to deplete Kidney yin via the generative (sheng 生, p.70) cycle. There is a gradual transition between Lung yin deficiency and combined Lung and Kidney yin deficiency, with more Kidney symptoms progressively appearing.

Clinical features
- irritating cough with scanty, sticky yellow mucus or recurrent haemoptysis with frothy fresh red blood
- bone steaming or tidal fever
- night sweats, malar flush
- lower back soreness and weakness
- dizziness, tinnitus
- restlessness, irritability, easy anger
- insomia
- sensation of heat in the palms, soles and chest ('five hearts hot')
- in men involuntary seminal emission, in women amenorrhoea
- emaciation
- chest or hypochondriac pain
- T red or crimson, with a peeled or cracked surface
- P thready, rapid and weak

Treatment principle
Tonify and nourish the Lung and Kidney
Nourish yin and purge Fire
Kill pathogens

Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BAI HE GU JIN TANG 百合固金湯 (Lily Combination) modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bai he (Bulbus Lili) 百合</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai bu* (Radix Stemona) 白术</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi da gong lao ye (Folium Mahoniae Bealei) 十大功劳叶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui ban* (Plastrum Testudinis) 龟板</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 熟地</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifications
- To target the pathogen directly, add two or three herbs from Table 10.1, p.309, taking extra care with the Spleen and Stomach in emaciated patients.
- For a guide to other approaches to symptomatic relief see symptomatic treatment, p.318.

Patent medicines (as adjunct or symptomatic therapy only)
Chong Cao Ji Jing 虫草鸡精 (Cordyceps Essence of Chicken)
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuang Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets) - used in addition to one of the patent medicines above

Acupuncture
Lu.5 (shi zee -), Bl.13 (ji shu -), Bl.23 (chen shu +),
Bl.43 (gao huang shu + ▲), St.36 (que san li +), Kid.2 (ran gu -),
Kid.6 (zhao hai)
- with bone steaming fever add Du.14 (da zhi), Kid.3 (tai xi),
PC.8 (lao gong), Lu.10 (jin ji)
- with night sweats add Ht.6 (jin xi), Kid.7 (ji liu)
- with haemoptysis add Lu.6 (kung qiu), Bl.17 (ge shu)
- with hoarse voice add Lu.9 (tai yuan), LI.18 (fu lin)

Clinical notes
- This pattern represents a more advanced stage of pulmonary tuberculosis.
10.3 LUNG QI AND YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Lung qi and yin deficiency represents another variation on the possible development of this disease. Because the Lungs have a close relationship with qi, deficiency of qi is a frequent complication of any Lung pathology.

Clinical features
- weak dry cough with watery or scanty mucus or recurrent haemoptysis with frothy fresh red blood
- aversion to wind and cold
- spontaneous sweating
- night sweats
- poor appetite
- abdominal distension
- loose stools
- shortness of breath
- low voice
- waxy pale complexion
- chest pain
- malar flush, mild afternoon or tidal fevers
- dry mouth and throat
- T pale pink or red and swollen with teeth marks, a cracked surface and a thin or peeled coat

Treatment principle
- Tonify qi and yin
- Strengthen the Lung and Spleen
- Kill pathogens

Prescription

BAO ZHEN TANG 保真汤 
(Preserve the True Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai he (Bulbus Lili) 百合</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng 人参)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos 茯苓)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis japonici 大黄)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian dong (Tuber Asparagi cochinchinensis 天冬)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae 生地)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate 熟地)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 3-5 pills daily. May also be decocted in which case zi he che is taken separately in pill or powder form. (Source: Zheng Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)

Modifications
- To target the pathogen directly, add two or three herbs from Table 10.1, p.309. Extra care must be taken with additions in this pattern to avoid aggravating Spleen damage.
- For a guide to other approaches to symptomatic relief, see p.318.

Patent medicines (as adjunct or symptomatic therapy only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medicine</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chong Cao Ji Jing 虫草鸡精 (Cordyceps Essence of Chicken)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hua Qi Shen Ji Jing 花旗参鸡精 (American Ginseng Essence of Chicken)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheng Mai Wan 生脉丸 (Sheng Mai Wan)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片</td>
<td>(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets) - used in addition to one of the patent medicines above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acupuncture

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Point</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lu.5 (chi qì), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Bl.23 (shen shu +), Ren.6 (qi hai), Bl.43 (gao huang shu +), St.36 (zi san ii +), L.i.9 (tai yuan), Ren.12 (zhong yuàn),</td>
<td>with bone steaming fever add Du.14 (da zhu), Kid.3 (tai xi), PC.8 (lao gong), Lu.10 (yu ji)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clinical notes
- Another variation of advanced pulmonary tuberculosis.
10.4 YIN AND YANG BOTH DEFICIENT

Pathophysiology
• Yin and yang deficiency is an advanced stage of tuberculosis. The Lung, Spleen and Kidney are significantly weakened.

Clinical features
• cough and wheeze worse with exertion, with expectoration of frothy or dark streaked mucus
• mild tidal fever
• cold body, aversion to cold
• spontaneous sweating, night sweats
• superficial and facial oedema
• mouth and tongue ulcers
• emaciation
• anxiety, nervousness
• dark lips
• poor appetite, loose stools or cockcrow diarrhoea
• amenorrhoea, impotence

Depending on the balance of yin and yang the tongue will be either red, dry, peeled or cracked, or pale, purplish and swollen with toothmarks
P minute, thready and rapid or deficient and large

Treatment principle
Nourish yin, tonify yang
Support yuan qi, consolidate the root
Kill pathogens

Prescription

BUT TIAN DA ZAO WAN 补天大造丸
(Tonify Heaven Great Creation Pill)

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitaetr) 熟地 100g
huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 50g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 40g
suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinossae) 酸枣仁 40g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 40g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 40g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 40g
gui ban (Plastrum Testudinis) 龟板 40g
lu jiao jiao (Cornu Cervi Gelatimun) 鹿角胶 30g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 30g
ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 30g
gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii 枸杞子) 30g
yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Temuinolae) 远志 20g
zi he che (Placenta Hominis) 杏河车 6g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 3-5 pills daily. May also be decocted in which case zi he che is taken separately in pill or powder form and lu jiao jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 洋化). (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xiu)

Modifications
• To target the pathogen directly, add two or three herbs from Table 10.1, p.309, taking extra care with the Spleen and Stomach.
• With cockcrow diarrhoea, add wu zhu yu (Fructus Evodiae Rutaceae) 吴茱萸 15g, rou dou kou (Semen Myristicae Fragrans) 肉豆蔻 40g and bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifoliae) 补骨脂 40g
• For a guide to other approaches to symptomatic relief, see p.318.

Patent medicines (as adjunct or symptomatic therapy only)
Chong Cao Ji Jing 虫草鸡精 (Cordyceps Essence of Chicken)
Hua Qi Shen Ji Jing 花旗参精 (American Ginseng Essence of Chicken)
Zhuang Yao Jian Shen Pian 壮腰健肾片 (Zhuang Yao Jian Shen)
Wu Ji Bai Feng Wan 鸟鸡白凤丸 (Wuchi Paifeng Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Anti-phlogistic Tablets) - used in addition to one of the patent medicines above

Acupuncture
Bl.43 (gao huang shu ▲), Bl.13 (fei shu ▲), Bl.17 (ge shu ▲), Bl.19, Bl.15 (xin shu ▲), Ren.6 (qi hai ▲)
• with bone steaming fever add Du.14 (da zhu), Kid.3 (tai xi), PC.8 (lao gong), Lu.10 (yu jie)
• with night sweats add Ht.6 (yin xi), Kid.7 (fu liu)
• with haemoptysis add Lu.6 (kong zhim), Bl.17 (ge shu)
• with hoarse voice add Lu.9 (tai yuan), LI.18 (fu tui)

Clinical notes
• This pattern represents advanced and difficult pulmonary tuberculosis.
• Treatment is difficult at this stage.
10.5 Symptomatic treatment

Treatment may focus specifically on a particularly distressing symptom, especially in cases where palliative treatment is most appropriate.

Treatment strategy, thus focuses first on the manifestations and second on the underlying pattern. The following modifications apply to all preceding prescriptions. If any of the following herbs appear in the primary prescription, the dosage may simply be altered depending on the severity of the symptoms.

10.5.1 Night sweats, spontaneous sweating

- In mild cases, add one or two of the following herbs: fu xiao mai (Semen Triticum Aestivum)浮小麦 15g, ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9g, wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g, wu bei zi (Galla Rhois Chinensis) 五倍子 6g, shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 12g, long gu (Os Draconis)龙骨 15g or mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g.

- When night sweats are severe, combine with MU LI SAN (Oyster Shell Formula) 牡蛎散:
  - mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 30g
  - fu xiao mai (Semen Triticum Aestivum)浮小麦 15g
  - ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 6g
  - huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 60-90g
  - bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 60g
  - fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 60g

Method: Grind equal amounts of the herbs to a fine powder and take 9 grams as a draft twice daily. May also be decocted.

- When spontaneous sweating is severe, combine with MU LI SAN (above) and YU PING FENG SAN (Jade Screen Powder 玉屏风散):
  - huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 30g
  - bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 30g
  - fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 30g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and take 9 grams as a draft twice daily. May be decocted with an appropriate reduction in dosage.

- When choosing to initially treat the night sweats only, use DANG GUI LIU HUANG WAN (Dang Gui and Six Yellow Pills 当归六黄丸) modified:
  - dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
  - huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 30g
  - sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 20g
  - shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 18g
  - huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g
  - huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
  - huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 6g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 3-5 pills daily. May also be decocted. (Source: Lin Chuang Shou Ce Zhong Yi Nei Ke)

10.5.2 Bone steaming fever, tidal fever

- In mild cases, add one or two of the following herbs: qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽 9g, qing hao (Herba Artemisiae Annuae) 苦蒿 15g, bie jia (Carapax Amydae Sinensis) 螯甲 15g, yin chai hu (Radix Stellariae Dichotomae) 旋覆花 9g, hu huang lian (Rhizoma Picrorhiza) 胡黄连 9g or di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮 12g.

- When choosing to initially treat the fever only, use QIN JIAO BIE JIA SAN (Gentiana Qinjiao and Soft-shelled Turtle Powder 秦艽鳖甲散) modified:
  - qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽 30g
  - di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮 30g
  - shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 30g
  - suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 炎枣仁 30g
  - sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 30g
  - xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 30g
  - fu xiao mai (Semen Triticum Aestivum)浮小麦 30g
  - yin chai hu (Radix Stellariae Dichotomae) 旋覆花 12g
  - qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽 9g
  - hu huang lian (Rhizoma Picrorhiza) 胡黄连 9g
  - xuan she n (Radix Scrophulariae Nigpoensis) 玄参 30g
  - fu xiao mai (Semen Triticum Aestivum)浮小麦 30g
  - shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 18g
  - qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽 9g
  - hu huang lian (Rhizoma Picrorhiza) 胡黄连 9g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 3-5 pills daily. May also be decocted. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Liu Chuang Shou Ce)

10.5.3 Haemoptysis

- In mild cases, add one or two of the following herbs: bai mao ge n (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 18g, bai ji (Rhizoma Bletilae Striatae) 白及 12g, ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 花椒 9g, xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 12g, xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 9g, ce bai ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 车前叶 12g, xue yu tan (Crinis Carbonisatus Hominis) 血余炭 6g, or YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yun Nan White Powder 云南白药).

- A useful formula that can be taken as a powder in addition to the primary formula in cases of recurrent haemoptysis is ZHI FEI JIE HE KE TAN XUE FANG (Tuberculosis and Iaemoptysis Formula 治肺结核咳痰血方):
  - bai bu* (Radix Stemonae) 白术 120g
  - bai ji (Rhizoma Bletilae Striatae) 白及 120g

* The notation * indicates that the herb is used for a specific condition.
10.5.4 Cough

- In mild cases, add two or three of the following herbs: chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 9g, xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniaceae) 杏仁 9g, sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 12g, ma dou ling* (Fructus Aristolochiae) 马兜铃 6g, kuan dong hua (Flos Tussilagi Farfarae) 款冬花 9g or bai bu* (Radix Stemonae) 百部 12g.

- When choosing to initially treat only the cough, use ZI WAN TANG (Aster Decoction 紫苑汤).
  
  - zi wan (Radix Asteris Tatarici) 紫苑 ............................................. 12g
  - zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 ............................................. 12g
  - fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 ............................................. 12g
  - chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 ............................................. 9g
  - jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ............................................. 9g
  - e jiao* (Gelatinum Cori Asini) 阿胶 ............................................. 9g
  - wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ............................................. 6g
  - gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ............................................. 3g

  Method: Decocution. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (jiang hua 江花). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xin)

10.5.5 Chest pain

- This usually occurs with severe coughing. If distressing, add one or two of the following herbs: si gua luo (Fasciculus Vascularis Luffae) 丝瓜络 12g, yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g or yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g.

10.5.6 Nocturnal seminal emission

- In mild cases, add two or three of the following herbs: mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15g, jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae) 金樱子 12g, lian xu (Stamen Nelumbinis Nucifera) 莲须 9g, wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g.

  - In severe cases, combine with JIN SUO GU JING WAN (Metal Lock Pill to Stabilize the Essence 金锁固精丸).

  - sha yuan ji li (Semen Astragali Complanati) 沙苑蒺藜 ............................................. 90g
  - qian shi (Semen Euryales Ferocis) 芪实 ............................................. 90g

lian xu (Stamen Nelumbinis Nucifera) 莲须 ............................................. 90g
duan long gu* (calcined Os Draconis) 焙龙骨 ............................................. 30g
duan mu li* (calcined Concha Ostreae) 焙牡蛎 ............................................. 30g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9 gram pills with honey. The dose is three pills daily. May also be decocted. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xin)

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Kidney

11. Lower Back Pain

**Acute patterns**
- Wind Cold
- Wind Heat
- Wind Damp
- Damp Heat

**Chronic patterns**
- Kidney deficiency
- Liver qi stagnation
- Spleen deficiency

**Acute or Chronic**
- Cold Damp
- Blood stagnation
Deficient patterns are associated with weakness of Kidney yin, yang or qi. Frequently, deficient and excess types will co-exist, as weakness of the Kidney enables pathogens to penetrate through the channels of the back.

External pathogens
The external pathogens, Wind, Cold, Dampness and Damp Heat (see below) may penetrate the channels traversing the lower back, impeding the circulation of qi and Blood, causing pain. Cold and Dampness are the most common, and these pathogens can invade the body after exposure to environmental cold damp, for example sitting on cold damp ground, wearing damp clothing, exercising vigorously and sweating in cold damp weather and prolonged immersion in cold water. Once Cold Damp is lodged in the channels of the back, it tends to be persistent. The key feature of the Cold Damp (or external Damp Heat) types is their responsiveness to changes of weather.

Invasion of Cold and Dampness is facilitated where there is pre-existing Kidney weakness. The presence of these pathogens (especially Cold) will in turn drain and weaken Kidney yang. In most cases, especially chronic ones, a mixture of excess and deficiency arises. If the circulation of qi and Blood is impeded for a long time, Heat may occasionally be generated giving rise to Damp Heat type lower back pain.

Wind Damp, and less commonly Wind Cold and Wind Heat, can also cause pain in the back although in practice the latter two are more likely to affect the upper back and neck. Wind Damp, with the modifying heaviness of the Dampness, tends to sink to the lower back. These patterns are different from the Cold Damp type, in that they are usually associated with colds or flu and are therefore generally self-limiting, even without treatment.

Damp Heat
Damp Heat lower back pain corresponds to either inflammation of the spine and/or soft tissues of the lower back, or internal organs that refer pain to the lower back. The source of the Damp Heat may be external or internal. The external Damp Heat pattern may be associated with a direct invasion of Damp Heat into the channels of the lower back, or a transformation of pre-existing Cold Damp. The former is associated with some variety of acute arthritis or myositis; the latter with an inflammatory flareup of a chronic condition. In either case, it is the tissues of the lower back that are affected. External Damp Heat can also cause lower back pain indirectly, by causing inflammation of pelvic organs, like the bladder or kidney. This is more likely to present with symptoms such as painful urination or vaginal discharge, rather than lower back pain.

Internally generated Damp Heat is more likely to cause inflammation of an organ or pelvic structure, which then refers pain to the lower back. Typical
Blood stagnation

Traumatic injury can lead to acute stagnation of qi and Blood in the channels of the lower back. Sudden twisting or bending (such as swinging golf clubs or throwing a ball), lifting or pulling with the spine flexed, exercising vigorously before the body is warmed, or doing heavy work when tired are common causes of acute trauma to the lower back. In practice, however, there may be no discernible trigger, even though the pattern is clearly acute Blood stasis. Often there will be predisposing factors like Kidney or Spleen weakness or Liver qi stagnation. Blood stagnation can also be more chronic, manifesting in chronic lower back pain that gradually deteriorates into fixed stabbing pain with systemic signs of stagnant Blood.

Liver qi stagnation

Liver qi stagnation is caused by repressed emotion, frustration, anger and resentment. Prolonged qi stagnation leads to generalised hypertonicity of both skeletal and smooth muscle, which further restricts the circulation of qi and Blood to all tissues. This affects the nutrition and elasticity of muscles, particularly those of the lower back. In this case, this chronic muscular tension predisposes the lower back to injury.

Spleen deficiency

This pattern is associated with lack of exercise and poor diet which damage Spleen qi, causing a generalised hypotonicity and malnutrition of smooth and skeletal muscle (compare with Liver qi stagnation). The loss of muscle tone leads to loss of mechanical support and hypermobility of the lumbar spine. Ligaments, facet joints and other spinal structures may be subject to excessive strain. Patients with this pattern are usually sedentary, with lifestyles involving long periods of sitting or inactivity. They may have a high percentage

---

**BOX 11.1 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Duration**
- acute pain - invasion of pathogens, Blood stagnation
- chronic pain - Kidney deficiency, or combined Kidney deficiency and pathogenic invasion, Spleen deficiency with Damp

**Nature of the pain**
- sharp, stabbing and fixed - Blood stagnation
- vague, mobile, variable - Liver qi stagnation, Wind patterns
- dull ache - Cold Damp, Spleen Damp or Kidney deficiency

**Aggravation**
- with cold or wet weather - Cold Damp
- not influenced by weather - Liver qi stagnation, Blood stagnation, Kidney deficiency
- with activity or movement - Blood stagnation, deficiency patterns
- after sex - Kidney deficiency
- in the morning - Spleen deficiency with Damp
- with stress - Liver qi stagnation

**Amelioration**
- with rest - Kidney deficiency
- with exercise - Liver qi stagnation, Spleen deficiency with Damp
- with heat - Cold or Cold Damp, Kidney yang qi deficiency

---

**BOX 11.2 DISTAL POINTS FOR ACUTE PAIN**

- Liv.3 (tai chong), Li.4 (he gu) and Du.26 (ren zhong) - Calms the shen, soothes qi, stops pain and relieves muscle tension. These points are treated with the patient lying supine with a pillow under the knees. A particularly good combination for acute back sprain in patients who are very distressed and unable to comfortably lie prone. This is a popular treatment for backs that are so locked up that the patient cannot flex or extend. Usually treated with an even method.
- Du.26 (ren zhong) - Needled with the patient sitting up or walking while gently flexing and extending as far as they can manage. For pain that is centred on the midline.
- yao tong xue (N-UE-19, Fig 11.2) - Found at the proximal junction of the second and third and the fourth and fifth metacarpal bones, needled with the patient sitting or standing while gently flexing and extending as far as they can manage. These points are for pain that is one sided and that restricts mobility markedly. Select the most tender point on the affected side and needle strongly.
- Bi.40 (wei zhong) - Needled with or without bleeding, when there is localised stabbing pain, particularly along the course of the Bladder channel. This may be done with the patient standing and gently flexing and extending. Bi.40 (wei zhong) may be needled with a lancet or three edged needle when there is venous congestion in the popliteal fossa. The latter technique is best performed with the patient lying prone.
of body fat and are often overweight. Depending on the degree of Spleen weakness, puffiness or fluid retention of the tissues of the waist may be a feature.

**Kidney deficiency**

Kidney deficiency is a common cause of chronic backache. Kidney deficiency back aches are often the ones that defy biomedical diagnosis and Western medical treatment. Weak Kidney qi makes the back more vulnerable to invasion by pathogenic factors and predisposes it to traumatic injury. There are several specific factors that can contribute to Kidney deficiency lower back pain. These include excessive physical work, particularly that involving overuse of the lumbar muscles, such as heavy lifting and bending and prolonged standing. Prolonged exposure to cold weakens Kidney yang. Chronic fear or a sudden severe fright or shock can weaken the Kidneys, predisposing the back to injury or pathogenic invasion.

In addition to the specific factors, the Kidneys are depleted by excessive activity of any kind (the Kidneys are the ultimate store of the body's energy).

---

**Box 11.3 Distal Points for Acute or Chronic Pain**

- **Bl60 (Kun Lun)** - good for low back and neck pain
- **Bl58 (Fei Yang)** - luo connecting point, very often tender in chronic pain
- **Bl59 (Fu Yang)** - xue accumulation point of Yang Qiao Mai, very often tender in chronic pain
- **Bl36 (Cheng Fu)** and **Bl37 (Yin Men)** - for pain radiating down the Bladder channel.
- **GB30 (Huan Tiao)** - a major point for back pain with a Gall Bladder and Urinary Bladder channel distribution, particularly with buttock pain or pain radiating down the sciatic nerve
- **GB31 (Feng Shi), GB34 (Yang Ling Quan)** and **GB39 (Xuan Zhong)** - for pain radiating down the Gall Bladder channel
- **SI3 (Hou Xi)** and **BL62 (Shen Mai)** - needled on the affected site, particularly when there is pain radiating out from the midline

---

This is often seen in sportspeople and professional athletes who often use more qi in their activity than they acquire from food and rest. Runners are very prone to back ache as the physical pounding also strains the lower back. The Kidneys are also depleted by pregnancies, either too close together or without adequate recuperation following labour, by miscarriage, termination and sexual activity that is excessive for an individual's constitution.

**Acupuncture Treatment**

Acupuncture is very effective for lower back pain and is the treatment of choice in acute cases. Point selection depends on the location and radiation of the pain and the channel or channels involved. For a full discussion of the TCM acupuncture approach to lower back pain, see Legge (1997); for the myofacial approach see Baldry (1993) and Travell and Simons (1983).

**Principles of Point Selection**

**Acute Pain**

The main principle of treatment in acute pain is to invigorate the circulation of qi and Blood, remove obstruction, unblock the channels and stop pain. In general, the main focus of treatment in acute pain is distal points, which should be stimulated strongly with a reducing method. In very acute and painful cases, only distal points are used for the first treatment or two, until the lower back is more relaxed and accessible. Local points can then be chosen on the basis of tenderness and according to channel involvement. As the pain improves, more local points are chosen as appropriate.

**Cupping** is very useful on ah shi points to draw out the stagnation. When cups are used the patient should be informed about the sometimes dramatic purple bruising he or she is likely to have following an effective treatment. The bruising usually subsides after a few days. **Bleeding**, usually applied on Bl40 (weizhong), may be useful especially when there is venous congestion in the popliteal fossa.

**Chronic Pain**

The main principle in chronic pain is to expel any pathogens, invigorate the circulation of qi and Blood, and tonify any underlying deficiency. The point selection is focused on the painful area with one or two distal points in support. Local points are selected according to the degree of tenderness to pressure, the channels involved and the type of deficiency being supplemented. Acupuncture is supplemented in Cold or yang deficient patterns by moxa, either on the needle or in a moxa box.
11.1 COLD DAMP

Pathophysiology
- This type of lower back pain may follow exposure to cold and damp environmental conditions, or there may be no obvious cause. The patient is unaware of any mechanical strain. Either way, the key feature is the clear relationship to weather changes. The Cold Damp pathogen invades the channels of the lower back region. The presence of Cold Damp gradually drains Kidney yang.
- This pattern may be acute or, more commonly, chronic. In both the acute and chronic patterns there is usually some degree of Kidney deficiency.

Clinical features
- The lower back region feels cold to touch, or the patient may perceive it as feeling cold, aching and heavy. The pain is often described as a ‘deep ache’, unremitting in nature. The pain is occasionally severe. Twisting and bending are difficult and the symptoms tend to gradually get worse. The pain may radiate down the leg.
- The pain is clearly aggravated by cloudy, wet or cold days and is not improved by rest or lying down
- Greasy white coat, particularly on the root
- P deep and slow or moderate

Treatment principle
Expel Cold and Damp
Warm and open the channels, support the Kidneys

Prescription
GAN JIANG LING ZHU TANG 甘姜苓术汤
(Lavorie, Ginger, Heleen and Atractylodes Decoction) plus
DU HUO JI SHENG TANG 独活寄生汤
(Du Huo and Vacucom Combination) modified

This formula is best for chronic patterns with a component of Kidney deficiency. In very acute cases, see also Wind Damp, p.335

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sang ji sheng (Ramulus Sangjisheng)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Porta cocos)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xu duan (Radix Dipsaci Asperi)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescentis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zh (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhang Yi Nai Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)

Modifications
- With Wind (mobile pain, usually in the early stages of the pattern), add fang feng (Radix Ledebourii Divaricatae) 防风 9g, qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽 9g and qiang huo (Rhzoma et Radix Notopterygi) 苍术 6g.
- With severe Cold Damp (the area or the patient feels very cold, the pain is severe and significantly relieved with warmth), add cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 10g and zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmacnchela Praeparata) 委附子 6-9g.
- With obvious signs of Kidney deficiency (nocturia, low libido), add bai ji tian (Radix Morin cadea officinalis) 白术 12g, xian ling pi (Herba Epimedi) 仙灵脾 12g and xian mao (Rhzoma Curculiginis Orchoidis) 仙茅 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- When the Cold aspect of this pattern has been successfully cleared, patients are occasionally left with residual Dampness, as Damp is sticky and harder to shift. Very persistent Dampness is thought to congeal even further into Phlegm. Extreme overuse of moxa may also congeal Dampness into Phlegm. If the Damp has an internal component there may be digestive symptoms (see also Spleen deficiency, p.343). The treatment is to dry Dampness and transform Phlegm with SHEN SHI TANG (Leach out Dampness Decoction 清湿汤)
  - cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 10g
  - fu ling (Sclerotium Porta cocos) 茯苓 12g
  - bai zh (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 12g
  - gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 10g
  - gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6g
  - chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
  - ding xiang (Flos Carophylli) 丁香 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhi Ni Ke Xi Xue)

Patent medicines
Du Huo Ji Sheng Wan 独活寄生丸 (Du Huo Ji Sheng Wan)
Xiao Huo Luo Dan 小活络丹 (Xiao Huo Luo Dan)
- This formula is very hot and should only be used where Cold is very obvious. Its use should be monitored carefully. Watch for signs of
11.2 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- DAMP HEAT lower back pain is usually acute, and may be the result of invasion of a DAMP HEAT pathogen through the TAI YANG channels, chronic Cold DAMP stagnation which transforms into HEAT or referred pain from an inflamed internal organ.
- When from external DAMP HEAT, this pattern corresponds to inflammation of the lumbar spine and/or surrounding soft tissues.
- When from internal DAMP HEAT, the pain may be associated with an inflammatory or infectious process in the structures of the pelvic basin or kidneys, or with kidney stones. There may be symptoms reflecting the source (usually the middle JIAO) and current location of the DAMP Heat.

Clinical features
- the lower back area is sore and feels hot, either to the patient, the practitioner or both and may appear red and swollen
- the pain is clearly aggravated by hot, humid or rainy weather and is not improved by rest
- irritability, feverishness, thirst
- when DAMP HEAT affects a pelvic organ, there may be symptoms reflecting its location, for example vaginal discharge, dark urine, diarrhoea, etc.
- greasy yellow coating
- soft and rapid

Treatment principle
- Clear HEAT and dry DAMPNESS
- Ease the Tendons, stop pain

Prescription

JIA WEI ER MIAO SAN 加味二妙散
(Augmented Two Marvel Powder)

- huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 ........................................... 12g
- cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 ........................................... 15g
- niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 ......................................... 12g
- dang gui wei (tail of Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归尾 .......................... 12g
- fang ji (Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae) 防己 ........................................ 10g
- bi xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 薏解 .................................. 12g
- yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 茅仁 ........................................ 20g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ..................................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)
11.3 WIND (DAMP, COLD OR HEAT)

**Pathophysiology**
- These three patterns are acute and due to invasion of Wind with either Damp, Cold or Heat into t'ai yang channels. Most commonly the upper back and neck are affected, however, the Urinary Bladder channel passes through the lower back and may be affected at that level, particularly in the presence of Kidney deficiency. Wind Damp is most likely to cause lower back ache because of the heavy nature and sinking tendency of Damp. Wind Cold lower back pain is less common and Wind Heat lower back pain is rare.
- In contrast to acute Cold Damp (p.330), which frequently becomes chronic, these patterns are self limiting, usually reflecting a viral or influenza like illness.

11.3.1 WIND DAMP

**Clinical features**
- acute lower back pain, heaviness or ache and stiffness, unrelieved by changing position or stretching
- generalised sensation of heaviness in the body
- headache or woolly headedness
- mild fever and chills
- maybe mild superficial oedema
- T generally normal, or with a thin greasy white coat
- P floating

**Treatment principle**
Expel Wind Damp

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QIANG HUO SHENG SHI TANG (Notopterygium Decoction to Overcome Dampness)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 八活............... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescents) 独活.................. 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gao ben (Rhizoma et Radix Ligustici) 草本.................. 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风........... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎............... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 薰荆子.................... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草............... 3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)
Modifications
- With Cold, add gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 6g and ma huang* (Herba Ephedrae) 麻黄 6g.
- With severe Damp, add cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloidis) 苍术 9g.
- With severe pain, add zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6g.

Patent medicines
- Du Huo Ji Sheng Wan 独活寄生丸 (Du Huo Ji Sheng Wan)
- Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji 感冒清热冲剂 (Gan Mao Qing Re Chong Ji)

Acupuncture
- Lu.6 (kong zui -), LI.4 (he gu -), SJ.6 (zhi gong -), Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Ren.12 (zhong wan -), St.36 (zu san li -)

11.3.2 WIND COLD
Clinical features
- acute lower back ache, unrelieved by changing position or stretching
- high fever and chills or shivering
- generalised myalgia
- stiff neck, occipital headache
- no sweating
- cough
- nasal obstruction, or runny nose with thin watery mucus
- sneezing
- T normal or with a thin or greasy white coat
- P floating and soggy, or floating and tight

Treatment principle
Disperse Wind Cold

Prescription
JING FANG BAI DU SAN 荆防败毒散
(Chishunepeta and Ledebourilla Powder to Overcome Pathogenic Influences)
- jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 荆芥 10g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 10g
- qiang hu (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 羌活 8g
- du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescens) 独活 6g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 8g
- jie geng (Radix Platycladi Grandiflori) 桔梗 10g
- qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡 10g

Modifications
- With internal Damp (fullness and distension in the chest and epigastrium, poor appetite and nausea), add zhi xia xia fu (prepared Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 姜附香 10g, zhi su ye (Folium Perillae Frutescens) 紫苏叶 12g and chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 10g.

Patent medicines
- Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
- Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan 川芎茶调丸 (Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan)

Acupuncture
- LI.4 (he gu -), LU.7 (lie que -), GB.20 (feng chi -), BL.12 (feng men - ），BL.13 (ji shi - ）。Cups can be applied to ab shi points on the lower back.

11.3.3 WIND HEAT
Clinical features
- acute lower back pain or heat, unrelieved by changing position or stretching
- fever
- mild sweating
- dry mouth, thirst
- sore throat
- T normal or with a red tip
- P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
Dispel Wind Heat
Prescription

**XIAO CHAI HU TANG** 小柴胡汤

*(Minor Bupleurum Combination)* modified

- **chai hu** (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .......................... 12g
- **huang qin** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ......................... 9g
- **qiang huo** (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 羌活 ......................... 9g
- **xu duan** (Radix Dipsaci Asper) 竹竿 .......................... 9g
- **hei dou** (Semen Glycines Nigrum) 黑豆 .......................... 9g
- **ren shen** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......................... 6g
- **sheng jiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 .................. 3pce
- **da zao** (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .......................... 3pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zheng Yi Niu Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With constipation, add **da huang** (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 3-6g.

Patent medicines

- **Yin Qiao Jie Du Pian** 银翘解毒片 *(Yin Chiao Chieh Tu Pien)*
- **Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji** 感冒止咳冲剂 *(Gan Mao Zhi Ke Chong Ji)*
- **Gan Mao Ling** 感冒灵 *(Gan Mao Ling)*
- **Xiao Chai Hu Wan** 小柴胡丸 *(Xiao Chai Hu Wan)*

Acupuncture

- Du.14 (da zhu -Ω), Bl.12 (feng men -Ω), LI.11 (qu chi -), LI.14 (he gu -),
  SJ.5 (we gwan -). Cups can be applied to ah shi points on the lower back.
- If the throat is very sore and swollen add Lu.11 (shao yang -) and
  SI.17 (tian zhong -)

Clinical notes
- The lower back pain in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as the common cold, influenza, tonsillitis, upper respiratory tract infection, acute bronchitis, early stage of measles, encephalitis or meningitis.
- Strong cupping is very useful in any early stage Wind disorder.
- The back pain of an external Wind pattern may precede the systemic symptoms by a day or two and persist when other symptoms appear.

11.4 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- This type of lower back pain is usually acute and follows some trauma or injury, typically lifting a heavy object, or twisting and bending while lifting. The precipitating event may be trivial and pain may occur one or two days after a mild sprain, or even coughing or sneezing. In practice there is often no discernible event.
- Stagnant Blood can also intervene in prolonged lower back pain due to some other pathogenic process, such as chronic Cold Damp.

Clinical features
- Sharp, piercing lower back pain that is fixed in location and aggravated by pressure and palpation. In severe cases movement is difficult or very painful and the range of movement is very restricted. The pain may be worse in the evening and is unaffected by weather or temperature changes.
- In acute cases the tongue may be unremarkable; in chronic cases it may have a purplish tinge, or purplish spots

P choppy or wiry

Treatment principle

Invigorate the circulation of Blood, eliminate stagnant Blood
Regulate qi and stop pain

Prescription

**HUO LUO XIAO LING DAN** 活络效灵丹

*(Fantastically Effective Pill to Invigorate the Collaterals)* modified

- **dan shen** (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 .......................... 25g
- **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 12g
- **chuan niu xi** (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 .......................... 12g
- **yan hu suo** (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanzhusuo) 延胡索 .......................... 12g
- **tao ren** (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 .......................... 12g
- **ru xiang** (Gummi Olibanum) 乳香 .......................... 10g
- **mo yao** (Myrrha) 没药 .......................... 10g
- **hong hua** (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 .......................... 10g
- **chuan xiong** (Rhizoma Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .......................... 10g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......................... 10g
- **di bie chong** *(Eupolypogon seu Opisthoplatia)*
  地鳖虫 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zbong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou C)
11.5 LIVER Qi STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- This pattern is characterised by generalised hypertonicity of muscles (compare with Spleen qi deficiency) and occurs in tense, emotionally repressed or stressed individuals. The chronic ‘holding pattern’ of emotion locked away in the muscles causes poor elasticity and nutrition and predisposes the lower back to injury.

Clinical features
- Lower back pain which tends to be aggravated by stress and emotional upset and often radiates from the lower back to the lower abdomen or hypochondriac region. The pain is vague and distending, may move from place to place and come and go. When identifying the painful area, the patient often uses the whole hand and indicates a large area. The range of motion may be normal or only slightly restricted.
- other signs of stagnant Liver qi, such as irritability, headaches, digestive upset, fullness in the chest, irregular menstruation or premenstrual syndrome may be present
- T darkish (qing 赤) or with red edges and a thin coat
- P wiry and thready, or deep and wiry

Treatment principle
Regulate the Liver, move qi

Prescription

**TIAN TAI WU YAO SAN 天台乌药散**
*(Top Quality Lindera Powder)* modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao xiao hui xiang (dry fried Fructus Foeniculi Vulgari) 炒小茴香</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gao liangjiang (Rhizoma Alpiniae Officinaris) 高良姜</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan lian zi (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bing lang (Semen Arecae Catechu) 槟榔</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and take 3 grams as a draft, 2-3 times daily or as a decoction with 30% reduction in dosage. (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Niu Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With Dampness, add cang zhu (Rhizoma Arctacylodos) 苍术 9g and yiren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 眼仁 15g.
11.6 SPLEEN DEFICIENCY (WITH DAMP)

Pathophysiology
- Spleen deficiency lower back ache is characterised by generalised muscular hypotonicity (compare with Liver qi stagnation), loss of mechanical support and hypermobility of the lumbar spine. The weakened Spleen may also fail to produce sufficient qi and Blood to nourish the tissues of the lower back, or allow accumulation of Damp.

Clinical features
- Aching and heaviness of the lower back region, which may be flabby and with poor muscle tone
- Tendency to be overweight, and have poor posture
- Depending on the degree of Spleen deficiency, there may be symptoms of digestive weakness or fluid retention
- T pale, swollen or with a greasy white coat
- P slippery or soft

Treatment principle
Strengthen the Spleen to eliminate Damp

Prescription
BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified

This formula is particularly good for general Spleen deficiency with poor and flabby muscle tone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifoliae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xu duan (Radix Dipsaci Asper)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. May also be powdered and taken in doses of 9 grams as a draft.
PING WEI SAN 平胃散
(Magnolia and Ginger Formula)

This formula is selected when signs of Spleen Damp (abdominal bloating, diarrhoea, flabby tongue with a greasy tongue coat) are obvious.

cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides) 苍术 ........................................ 15g
hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ........................................ 12g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ................................. 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........................................ 3g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 ............................ 3pce
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ........................................ 1pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

FANG JI HUANG QI TANG 防己黄芪汤
(Stephania and Atractylodes Combination)

This prescription is selected in cases with mild Damp accumulation (especially when it also affects the knees causing swelling and pain) and easy sweating.

huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ........................................ 15g
fang ji (Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae) 防己 ........................................ 12g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 ........................................ 12g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ........................................ 3g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 ........................................ 4pce
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ........................................ 1pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

SHI PI YIN 实脾饮
(Magnolia and Atractylodes Combination) modified

This formula is selected when there are signs of Spleen yang deficiency and obvious Damp accumulation (pitting oedema) in the tissues.

hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ........................................ 30g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ........................................ 30g
mu gua (Fructus Chaenomelis) 木瓜 ........................................ 30g
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 ........................................ 30g
cao guo (Fructus Amomis Tsao-ko) 草果 ........................................ 30g
bing lang (Semen Arecae Catechu) 槟榔 ........................................ 30g
zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ........................................ 30g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ........................................ 30g
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 ........................................ 30g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ........................................ 15g

da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ........................................ 5pce

Method: Grind herbs to powder and take in 10-12 gram drafts with boiled water. It may also be decocted, with a 60-80% reduction in dosage. When decocted zhi fu zi is generally cooked for 30 minutes before adding the other herbs (xian jian 丸煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
- Spleen qi deficiency
Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Aplotaxis-Ammonium Pills)
- Spleen qi deficiency with Dampness
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
- with signs of Spleen yang deficiency or Cold
Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)
- yang deficiency

Acupuncture
In addition to points selected according to the nature and location of the pain (see Box 11.2-4, pp.311-12), add Sp.9 (yin ling quan), Sp.3 (tai bai), St.40 (feng long), St.36 (zu san li) and Bl.20 (pi shu+)

Clinical notes
- This type of lower back pain is generally mild and tends to occur in those with an inactive and sedentary lifestyle, or in those who suffer from some immobilising disorder.
- This pattern responds well to correct treatment if the patient also starts exercising and develops correct posture. Exercise is often the key feature of treatment, and results are likely to be poor without it. The patient may also need to change diet and in some cases lose weight. Abdominal exercises are useful, and the patient will be better with a kidney belt or thermal lumbar support.
11.7 KIDNEY DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- The Kidneys have a powerful influence over the tissues of the lower back and (in association with the Spleen’s role in general muscle tone) are largely responsible for the strength and integrity of the lower back. Weakness of the Kidneys can lead to inadequate or sluggish circulation of qi and Blood through the area, predisposing to injury or allowing invasion by pathogens (especially Cold and Damp).

Clinical features

General features
- chronic dull lower back ache, soreness or weakness, improved by massage and rest
- the pain recurs frequently, and is aggravated by exertion, prolonged standing, sexual activity and fatigue
- weak, sore legs and knees

In addition there may be:

Kidney qi deficiency
- clear copious urine, urinary frequency or nocturia, pale lustreless complexion, oedema of the lower extremities, sore knees, a pale or pink tongue with a thin white coat and a deep, thready pulse

Kidney yang deficiency
- same as for Kidney qi deficiency, with the addition of Cold signs, such as cold extremities, cold intolerance, a wet, swollen tongue with a white coat and slow pulse

Kidney yin deficiency
- heat intolerance, occasional urinary irritation or mild discomfort, tinnitus, dizziness, facial flushing, night sweats, sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’), a red tongue with little or no coat and a thready, rapid pulse

11.7.1 Kidney yang (qi) deficiency

Treatment principle
- Support and strengthen the lower back
- Tonify the Kidneys and support yang

Prescription

YOU GUI WAN 右归丸
(Eucommia and Rehmannia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbal Name</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glaucocarpa)</td>
<td>250g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu jiao (Cornu Cervi)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zhi (Semen Cuscutae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zhi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huai niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xu duan (Radix Dipsaci)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zhi* (Radix Aconiti Carminatus)</td>
<td>60-180g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi)</td>
<td>60-120g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage, in which case zhi fu zhi is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added (xian jia: 先煎), rou gui is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下) and lu jiao is added before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 治化). (Source: Zheng Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)

Modifications
- With few Cold signs (i.e. Kidney qi deficiency), delete zhi fu zhi and rou gui, and add ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 90g or dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 独参 150g.

11.7.2 Kidney yin deficiency

Treatment principle
- Tonify the Kidneys and nourish yin
- Strengthen and support the lower back

Prescription

ZUO GUI WAN 左归丸
(Achyranthes and Rehmannia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbal Name</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glaucocarpa)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zhi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zhi (Semen Cuscutae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui ban jiao° (Plastri Testudinis Gelatinum)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KIDNEY

11. LOWER BACK PAIN

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR LOWER BACK PAIN

Acute patterns

Cold Damp -  

Damp Heat -  

Wind Damp -  

Wind Cold -  

Wind Heat -  

Blood stagnation -  

Chronic patterns

Liver qi stagnation -  

Spleen deficiency -  

with Spleen Damp -  

* with knee pain and sweating -  

* with Cold, Spleen yang deficiency and oedema -  

Kidney deficiency

* yang (qi) deficiency -  

* yin deficiency -  

Acupuncture

Bl.25 (shen shu +), Bl.25 (da chang shu +), Du.4 (ming men +), 
Bl.52 (zhi shu +), Ren.4 (qi hui +), Ren.6 (guan yuan +), 
Kid.3 (tai xi +), Bl.60 (kua i luo), hua tuo jia ji (M-BW-35) when tender.
* add moxa in yang deficiency

Clinical notes

* The lower back pain in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as chronic back ache, lumbago, chronic nephritis, osteoporosis, chronic disc disorder, ankylosing spondylitis and ostearthritis of the spine.
* Satisfactory results in these patterns generally take time to achieve and a combination of acupuncture and herbs achieves the best outcome.

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Kidney

12. Painful Urination Syndrome

Heat painful urination
Damp Heat
Liver Fire
Heart Fire

Stone painful urination
asymptomatic stones
with Damp Heat
with Blood stagnation
with Kidney deficiency

Qi painful urination
Qi stagnation
Qi deficiency

Blood painful urination
Heat, Damp Heat
Blood stagnation
Kidney yin deficiency

Cloudy painful urination
Damp Heat
Kidney qi deficiency

Exhaustion painful urination
Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
Kidney yin deficiency
Heart and Kidney qi and yin deficiency
PAINFUL URINATION SYNDROME

Painful urination syndrome includes a variety of disorders characterised by pain associated with urination. The key feature in painful urination syndrome is pain, and it is the presence of pain that differentiates this group of disorders from other urinary disorders. Blood in the urine with no pain is classified as haematuria, while blood in the urine with pain is classified as Blood painful urination syndrome.

Painful urination is a very common clinical presentation, and may include a variety of symptoms associated with the passage of urine, including suprapubic discomfort and pain, frequency, tenesmus and urinary difficulty. Painful urination syndrome is most common in women.

BOX 12.1 TCM CLASSIFICATION OF PAINFUL URINATION

- **Heat** painful urination is clinically the most common variety, and is characterised by being acute and by rather intense burning pain upon urination. It is thought that in all acute cases of painful urination syndrome there is some degree of Heat. It is further divided into two types, Damp Heat and Fire. Damp Heat may occur alone or be found as a contributing feature in stone, Blood and cloudy painful urination syndrome.

- **Stone** (or sand ış) painful urination is characterised by the presence of urinary calculi or gravel, and, depending on the location of the stones, intense radiating pain and/or obstructed urination.

- **Qi** painful urination is traditionally divided into two types, deficiency (of qi) and excess (qi stagnation). The deficiency type is associated with Spleen qi deficiency and often follows recurrent Heat types that have not been treated or treated with antibiotics or excessively cold natured herbs. It is characterised by a dragging discomfort which is relieved by pressure, or a feeling of burning that improves with warmth and pressure. It is traditionally placed in this category, although it overlaps with the Exhauation types. The excess type is characterised by painful urination aggravated or initiated by stress and emotional upset.

- **Blood** painful urination is painful urination with bleeding.

- **Cloudy** painful urination is painful urination with cloudy or milky urine.

- **Exhaustion** painful urination is chronic and recurrent, and is initiated or aggravated by sex, overexertion and when fatigued. It is characterised by incomplete or dribbling urination, lumbar pain and weakness, and mild pain, which is often worse following urination.

AETIOLOGY

Heat and Damp Heat in the Bladder

**External Heat**

Damp Heat causing painful urination syndrome is most commonly due to an external Damp Heat pathogen that invades through the tai yang (Urinary Bladder) channel, the leg yin channels or the local luo channels. The local luo channels are small branches of the major channels that spread through the genitourinary system. They can be conduits for infection during sexual intercourse or after bowel movements. In practice, transmission of Damp Heat through the luo channels is probably the most common mode of entry, (especially in sexually active individuals).

**Internal Heat**

Internally generated Heat or Damp Heat can also cause painful urination. Heat affecting the Heart or Liver can be transmitted through their associated channels to the lower jiao. Damp Heat generated in the middle jiao by overconsumption of rich, greasy or spicy foods and alcohol can simply sink and settle in the lower jiao. Damp Heat can also be generated in the lower jiao by any prolonged Heat in the system, such as the Heat arising from yin deficiency, qi stagnation, or by prolonged stagnation of Dampness. Internal Heat can also be caused by stress and emotional turmoil, which disrupt the
circulation of Heart and Liver qi, giving rise to Heart or Liver Fire. When Heat is generated internally, the symptoms tend to be more systemic, reflecting the original source of the Heat. Heat of external origin, however, tends to produce a more localized pattern, with the focus of symptoms in the bladder and urethra.

Once the Heat/Dampness cycle is established it can give rise to other types of painful urination syndrome (Fig 12.1). For example, long term Damp Heat in the lower jiao may congeal into urinary stones. The Heat can injure the Blood vessels of the urinary system causing bleeding. The murky nature of Damp Heat can give rise to opaque or turbid urine—cloudy painful urination syndrome. The Heat types all tend to be more common in women than in men.

Liver qi stagnation, Blood stagnation
Frustration, anger, resentment, sexual tension, repressed emotion and stress can disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, and because the Liver channel passes through the lower jiao, the movement of lower jiao qi is obstructed. When lower jiao qi is obstructed, pain and distension may occur and the movement of fluids may be impaired resulting in urinary difficulty.

Liver qi stagnation may be complicated by other pathologies. The emotions that give rise to stagnant qi (particularly anger and resentment) 'smoulder' in the Liver and create stagnant Heat, which can be transmitted through the Liver channel to the lower jiao, to the Heart and then to the Small Intestine. Obstructed qi may fail to lead the Blood, resulting in qi and Blood stagnation. Stagnant qi can invade the Spleen, causing deficiency and either contributing to exhaustion painful urination or leading to the development of Dampness which sinks into the lower jiao, potentially generating Heat and establishing the Damp Heat cycle.

Pre-existing stagnation (of qi and/or Blood) can be transferred from another pelvic organ to the Bladder. This is occasionally observed in women following hysterectomy, myomectomy or removal of ovarian cysts. The organ first affected by the stagnation is removed or repaired, but the qi and/or Blood stagnation that gave rise to the initial problem persists. The focus of pelvic symptoms then shifts from the initial site of the stagnation to the Bladder.

Kidney deficiency
Kidney deficiency can be either yang or yin deficiency. It may be inherited, or it may develop as a result of age, chronic illness or excessive sexual activity. It can also develop in women who have many pregnancies close together, regardless of whether these result in live birth, miscarriage or termination.

Kidney yang or qi is particularly affected by prolonged exposure to cold conditions or excessive lifting or standing (particularly if this occurs in a cold environment or on cold floors or at night). In some cases, particularly in younger people, Kidney qi may be weakened while Kidney yang remains intact, in which case the cold symptoms are not seen.

Kidney yin is damaged through overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep, febrile diseases, insufficient hydration and the use of some prescription and recreational drugs. The Kidney and Bladder are closely related, so weakness of the Kidney can affect the Bladder. When Kidney qi is weak, the Bladder is vulnerable to pathogenic invasion (through the tai yang, leg yin channels or local jiao channels), especially by Damp Heat.

---

**BOX 12.2 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF PAINFUL URINATION**

- urinary infection, cystitis, urethritis
- severe infections like gonorrhoea, pyelonephritis and herpes
- urethral syndrome
- vaginitis
- neoplasms of the bladder, prostate and urethra
- Reiter's disease
- urinary calculi
- menopausal syndrome
- prostatitis
- foreign body in the lower urinary tract
- acidic urine
- interstitial cystitis
- vaginal prolapse
- urethral stricture
- chyluria
- albuminuria

**BOX 12.3 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Colour of urine**
- dark, concentrated urine - Heat, Damp Heat or yin deficiency
- pale - Kidney yang deficiency, Spleen qi deficiency or qi stagnation
- cloudy and murky - Dampness or Damp Heat
- pale pink to bright red or purple - bleeding due to Fire, Damp Heat, stagnant Blood, Kidney yin deficiency or stones

**Pain**
- burning - Heat or Damp Heat (severe, like 'passing glass'), or yin deficiency (mild)
- stabbing and localised, with or without flecks of blood - Blood stagnation or urinary stones
- mild or draggy, or 'empty discomfort' following urination - qi deficiency

**Frequency**
- frequent, urgent and concentrated - Heat or Damp Heat
- frequent and pale - Kidney yang or qi deficiency
- frequent and pale with a weak or broken stream - Kidney yang deficiency

**Timing of the pain**
- during urination - excess conditions
- before urination - qi stagnation
- after urination - deficient conditions
Spleen deficiency

Spleen deficiency patterns may result from frequent use of antibiotics of bitter cold herbs (both of which easily weaken the Spleen) in the treatment of recurrent Damp Heat or Heat types of painful urination. This pattern may also follow lower abdominal surgery or be associated with prolapse of the bladder or uterus. In these latter cases the sensation is generally one of pressure and discomfort in the suprapubic region rather than urethral pain with urination.

TREATMENT

Personal hygiene is very important. In particular, correct wiping after bowel movements (front to back) is important for girls and women to avoid contamination of the urethra and bladder with intestinal bacteria. Synthetic and tight underwear should be avoided. Some women are prone to bladder infection or irritation after sexual intercourse—these women should be advised to empty the bladder immediately after sex and to experiment with different positions. Partners should also be examined so as to eliminate them as a chronic carrier, who may be the source of reinfection. Plenty of fluid is essential, approximately 1.5-2 litres per day and more during an episode of painful urination syndrome.

Acute cases of Damp Heat type painful urination (clinically the most common) are often accompanied by apparent external symptoms, especially fever and chills. It was noted however, as early as the Han Dynasty by Zhang Zhongjing, that diaphoresis is contraindicated. The rationale is that the fever and chills are the result of the 'steam' produced by the struggle between Damp Heat and zheng qi in the Bladder, and because of the Heat, yin fluids have already been damaged. Causing a sweat will only damage fluids further and aggravate the condition.

All patients with recurrent urinary tract disorder or persistent haematuria should be referred to a urologist for appropriate investigations, for example cystoscopy or intravenous pyelography (IVP) to exclude neoplasm.
12.1 HEAT PAINFUL URINATION SYNDROME

- Damp Heat
- Heart Fire
- Liver Fire

12.1.1 DAMP HEAT IN THE URINARY BLADDER

Pathophysiology
- Damp Heat painful urination is most commonly due to invasion of pathogenic Heat (or Cold, which turns to Heat once inside) through the tai yang channels (Bladder and Small Intestine), leg jin channels or the local jin channels into the urethra and Bladder. Invasion by external pathogens may be facilitated by a pre-existing Kidney deficiency.
- When transmission of Damp Heat is direct (i.e. external Damp Heat that enters through the local jin channels, tai yang or leg jin channels), quite often the systemic symptoms listed below (nausea, fever, epigastric fullness etc.) are not experienced. Systemic symptoms may be more numerous in cases of painful urination due to internally generated Damp Heat.

Clinical features
- Painful, frequent and urgent urination; the pain is often described as burning or like ‘passing glass’, and may radiate to the umbilical area, and is generally worse when pressure is applied. The urine is dark, concentrated and strong smelling and may be accompanied by a feeling of incomplete emptying or dripping.
- Suprapubic fullness and discomfort
- Lower back pain
- Fullness or discomfort in the chest and epigastrium
- Nausea, loss of appetite
- Bitter taste in the mouth
- Thirst with little desire to drink
- A tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
- Maybe fever (especially afternoon fever), or alternating fever and chills
- Greasy yellow coat, especially on the root
- Slippery and rapid or soft and rapid

Treatment principle
Ease painful urination, eliminate Dampness
Clear Heat and promote urination

Prescription
BA ZHENG SAN 八正散
(Diaphthus Formula)

- che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 ........................................ 12g
- hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ......................................................... 12g
- bian xu (Herba Polygoni Avicularis) 篇蓄 .................................. 9g
- qu mai (Herba Dianthi) 瞿麦 .................................................. 9g
- shan zhi zhi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山桅子 .................. 6g
- mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ............................................... 6g
- zhi da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄 ......................... 6g
- gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 ......................... 3g
- deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Fissust) 灯心草 ................................. 2g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is usually cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎). This is a useful prescription to also have handy in powder form for those prone to recurrent Hot painful urination syndrome. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With severe abdominal distension and constipation, increase the dose of zhi da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄 to 9g and add zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 柿蒂 9g.
- With abdominal fullness and loose stools, delete zhi da huang.
- With lower abdominal pain, add chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 3-9g and wu yao (Radix Linderae Styrchnifoliae) 乌药 3-9g.
- With mild bleeding, add xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 9g and bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 12g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
With shaoyang involvement
- Alternating fever and chills, nausea and dizziness indicate that Damp Heat is obstructing the shao yang level. Add chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g, huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g and ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 6g to harmonise shao yang, or use CHAI LING TANG (Bupleurum and Hoshin Combination) modified.
  - chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................................. 12g
  - ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .............................. 12g
  - huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .......................... 9g
  - ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .................................................. 9g
  - ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泻泽 .................................. 15g
  - fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 ....................................... 12g
  - zhu ling (Sclerotium Polyperi Umbellati) 猪苓 ............................ 12g
  - bai zhu (Rhizomatractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ........................ 12g
**Pattern 12.1 Comparison of Heat Painful Urination patterns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Aetiology</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding Prescription</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Damp Heat</td>
<td>internal invasion of Damp Heat,</td>
<td>suprapubic fullness, loss of appetite, nausea,</td>
<td>Main Rx: BA ZHENG SAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or less commonly internally</td>
<td>constipation or alternating loose stools,</td>
<td>- with mild yin deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>generated Damp Heat</td>
<td>thirst with little desire to drink,</td>
<td>ZHU LING TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>greasy yellow tongue coat, slippery rapid pulse</td>
<td>- during pregnancy or with Blood deficit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WU LIN SAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- with shaoyang symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHAI LING TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- with Toxic Heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart Heat</td>
<td>emotional turmoil, particularly</td>
<td>red complexion, palpitations, insomnia</td>
<td>DAO CHI SAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prolonged anxiety and worry</td>
<td>dream disturbed sleep, anxiety, irritability,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>thirst, mouth ulcers, red tongue with a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>redder tip, rapid big pulse, especially in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the distal position</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver Heat</td>
<td>emotional turmoil, particularly</td>
<td>extreme irritability</td>
<td>LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>severe or repressed frustration,</td>
<td>or temper, dizziness, sore bloodshot eyes,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>resentment and anger</td>
<td>temporal headache, hypochondriac discomfort,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>red tongue with redder edges and a dry yellow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>coat, wiry, rapid pulse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**With yin deficiency**

- With mild yin deficiency, either from the Heat damaging yin or a Damp Heat episode on a background of yin deficiency, the correct treatment is to promote urination, clear Heat and nourish yin with ZHU LING TANG (Polyporus Combination 猪苓汤). See also Kidney yin deficiency, p.390.

- **Zhu ling** (Sclerotium Polyponi Umbellati) 猪苓 9g
- **Fu ling** (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 9g
- **Ze xie** (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 9g
- **Hua shi** (Talcum) 滑石 9g
- **E jiao** (Ox Blood Gelatin) 阿胶 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Fu Ke Xue) 五苓散

**During pregnancy**

- During pregnancy, the use of qu mai, da huang, che qian zi and hua shi is contraindicated. WU LIN SAN (Gardenia and Hoelen Formula 五淋散) modified, may be used instead of BA ZHENG SAN.

- **Chu an shi** 五淋散 (Caulis Scrophulariae Chinensis) 五淋散 9g
- **Zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 9g
- **Lian qiao** (Fruites Forsythiae Suspensae) 连翘 9g
- **Pu gong ying** (Herba Taraxaci MongolicI) 蒲公英 12g
- **Ye ju hua** (Flos Chrysanthesmi Indici) 野菊花 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Fu Ke Xue) 五淋散

**Heat in the Blood**

- With severe systemic Heat, from Heat penetrating into the Blood, with skin rashes, bleeding, manic behaviour, a red tongue and a rapid slippery
Heart Fire is usually the result of a significant emotional shock, trauma or persistent anxiety and worry. These emotions can impede the circulation of Heart qi and over time generate Heat, which can be transmitted to the Small Intestine (the yang partner organ of the Heart) and then to the Bladder, resulting in painful urination.

Clinical features
- Urination that is burning, painful, concentrated, urgent and frequent
- Red complexion
- Mouth and tongue ulcers, particularly on the tip of the tongue
- Thirst with a desire for cold drinks
- Sensation of heat in the chest
- Irritability, restlessness, agitation, anxiety
- Palpitations
- Insomnia, dream disturbed sleep
- Tongue red with a redder tip. The tongue may be ulcerated, especially on the tip. The coat is dry and yellow.
- Rapid and big, especially in the distal position

Treatment principle
Clear Heat from the Heart and promote urination

Preparation
DAO CHI SAN 导赤散
(Rehmannia and Akebia formula) modified

- Sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ... 15g
- Dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 ... 9g
- Mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ... 6g
- Huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 ... 6g
- Gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 ... 3g
- Deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Effusii) 灯心草 ... 2g

Method: Decoction.

Modifications
- With yin deficiency, add shi hu (Herba Dendrobii) 石斛 6-12g and zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 6-12g.
- With traces of blood in the urine, add bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 9-15g and han lian cao (Herba Echiptae longifoliae) 桔梗 6-15g.
12.1.3 LIVER FIRE

**Pathophysiology**
- The Liver channel passes through the lower jiao. Heat in the Liver is mostly produced by chronic Liver qi stagnation, and, like the Heart Fire pattern, is frequently emotional in origin. In addition to the emotional aspect, development of Liver Fire is promoted by excessive consumption of hot foods and alcohol. In contrast to the Heart Fire pattern, the emotions most likely to give rise to Liver qi stagnation and Fire are repressed or severe anger, frustration and resentment. Liver Fire can be transmitted in either direction— to the lower jiao or head (or both).

**Clinical features**
- burning, painful, concentrated, urgent and/or frequent urination
- extreme irritability, anger outbursts
- dizziness
- tinnitus
- bloodshot, painful eyes
- temporal headaches
- thirst, dry throat
- constipation
- hypochondriac tension, discomfort or pain
- in some patients ulcerations, a tendency to herpes genitalia or eczema in the groin and on the genitals

T red or with red edges and a thick, dry, yellow coat
P wiry, rapid and strong

**Treatment principle**
Drain Fire from the Liver and promote urination

**Prescription**

**LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG** 龙胆泻肝汤
*(Gentiana Combination)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jiu long dan cao (wine fried Gentiana root)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae glutinosae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis orientalis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Formation of urinary tract stones

- Calculi or gravel may form in the urinary system due to a variety of factors, including excess dietary calcium (dairy foods) or oxalates (some fruit and vegetables), urates (organ meat) or the overuse of vitamin D preparations. Medical conditions, such as hyperparathyroidism, gout or Cushing's syndrome, can predispose to stone formation, as does prolonged immobilisation. Insufficient consumption of water or excessive loss through sweat (causing increased concentration of salts in the blood and their precipitation out of solution) may also contribute.

- Western medical diagnosis of stones is usually made according to their appearance in the urine, or the nature, location and radiation of the pain. Kidney stones however, may be present for years without giving rise to symptoms, and are sometimes discovered during radiological examination for another disorder. Knowing that stones are present (even in asymptomatic patients) enables the addition of a number of very specific stone dissolving herbs to any suitable prescription. X-rays and ultrasound diagnosis will reveal the size and extent of the stones. Large staghorn or renal medulla stones are not readily amenable to TCM treatment and require lithotripsy or surgery. Small stones (<5mm) and gravel are amenable to treatment.

- Stones may appear as fine sandy sediment in the urine, or as larger particles that lodge in the ureter during their passage from the kidney, causing broken urine stream or urinary retention, and acute pain.

- Once stones are dislodged and begin to move, the pain is often severe, and may radiate down to the inner thighs, genitals, lower back or lower abdomen. If a calculus damages the urinary tract endothelium, there may be blood in the urine.

12.2 ASYMPTOMATIC STONES

Treatment principle

The basic treatment for urinary gravel and sand in otherwise asymptomatic patients (usually those with accidentally discovered stones) is to dissolve stones and gravel and promote urination. Symptomatic patients with small stones are differentiated and treated according to the three categories on the following pages.
Prescription

SHI WEI SAN 石苇散
(Pyrosia Powder) modified

shen (Folium Pyrrosiae) 石苇 .................. 6g
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 .......... 9g
qu mai (Herba Dianthi) 崖麦 .................. 6g
hua shi (Talcum) 菱石 .......................... 9g
don g kui zi (Semen Abutili seu Malvae) 冬葵子 ....... 6g
jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae) 金钱草 .... 30-120g
hai jin sha (Spora Lygodii Japonici) 海金砂 ........ 30g
ji nei ji n* (Endothelium Corneum Gigeriae Galli) 鸡内金 .... 15g

Method: Decoction. Ji nei jin is powdered and added to the strained decoction (chong fa 冲服). Hai jin sha and che qian zi are usually decocted in a cloth bag (bao jian 包煎). This prescription should be taken for a minimum of one month and is often required for several months to be effective. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Alternative formula

Although probably less effective than the main prescription, a popular approach (more convenient and cost effective given the length of time required for success) is to simply brew jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae) 金钱草 60-120g as tea several times daily.

Patent medicines

Te Xiao Pai Shi Wan 特效排石丸 (Specific Drug Passwan)
Shi Lin Tong Pian 石淋通片 (Shi Lin Tong Pian)

Acupuncture

Asymptomatic patients

In asymptomatic patients, acupuncture may be applied to strengthen the Kidneys, improve urinary function and promote urination, in conjunction with herbs (noted above) to dissolve the stones. Points may be selected primarily from the Kidney, Spleen, Liver and Urinary Bladder channels.

The electro-acupuncture protocol outlined below is reserved for cases of acute pain, i.e. when urinary tract stones are moving.

Electro-acupuncture for patients with acute pain

The following electro-acupuncture point prescriptions are suitable for all types of small urinary stones with pain. Electro-acupuncture is generally applied only when the patient is experiencing pain as the stones move in the urinary tract. In asymptomatic patients, the use of electro-acupuncture may dislodge a large stone causing obstruction and pain. Use a high frequency (reducing) current on the main points connected (−). The negative electrode (−) is usually attached to the proximal point. Auxiliary points should be needled with a strong reducing method. Treatment may be given once or twice daily in severe cases.

Kidney stones

- BL23 (shen shu -ve) ~ Sp.9 (yin ling quan +ve) on the same side of the body.
- Auxiliary points: Bl.28 (pang guang shu -), Kid.6 (zhao hai -), St.25 (tian shu -), GB.25 (jing men -)

Ureter stones

1. Upper ureter: BL23 (shen shu -ve) ~ BL.28 (pang guang shu +ve) on the same side of the body.
- Auxiliary points: Ren.6 (qi hai -), Bl.22 (san jiao -)
2. Lower ureter: BL23 (shen shu -ve) ~ St.28 (shui dao +ve) on the same side of the body.
- Auxiliary points: Ren.3 (zhong ji -), Bl.32 (ci liao -)

Bladder or urethra stones

- Ren.4 (guan yuan -ve) or Ren.3 (zhong ji -ve) ~ St.28 (shui dao +ve) or Sp.6 (san yin jiao +ve).
- Auxiliary points: Kid.8 (jiao xin -), Sp.14 (jin jue -), PC.6 (nei guan -)

Ear points (suitable for all locations): kidney, urinary bladder, shen men, subcortex. Strong manual or electro-stimulation.

Clinical notes

* Success in getting rid of urinary tract stones depends on several factors. The higher in the urinary tract the stones are, the more difficult they are to shift. Staghorn stones in the renal pelvis are generally not amenable to TCM treatment. The size and shape of the stone are also important. Rounded stones are easier to move than irregular or angular stones. Stones larger than 5mm are difficult. The prognosis is good for small rounded stones with persistent treatment. A course of at least several months is generally recommended before judgement is made on the success (or otherwise) of the treatment.
* Maintaining adequate (or increasing) fluid intake is useful with small stones.
* Depending on the type of stone, certain foods should be avoided and others are beneficial. In the case of oxalate stones foods to avoid or restrict are those with oxalic acid—rhubarb, spinach, swiss chard, beet greens, potatoes, plums, cranberries and chocolate.
12.2.2 STONES WITH DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Persistent Damp Heat in the lower jiao is the most common aetiological factor for stones in the urinary tract. The drying and congealing nature of Heat can condense the Dampness into stones.
- A rich diet and excess alcohol consumption is usually the source of the Damp Heat in this pattern.

Clinical features
- acute, chronic or recurrent lower back or loin pain, or pain that radiates to the inner thigh, lower abdomen or genitals
- difficult urination
- concentrated, burning urine
- thirst with no desire to drink
- alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- red body with a thick, greasy, yellow coat, especially on the root
- rapid, slippery or wiry

Treatment principle
Clear Heat and alleviate Dampness
Ease painful urination and expel stones

Prescription
NIAO LU PAI SHI TANG #2 尿路排石汤二号
(Expel Urinary Stones #2 Decoction)

This is a strong cooling formula for Damp Heat with urinary tract stones. Once Damp Heat has subsided, the previous prescription (for asymptomatic stones) may be more appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae)</td>
<td>30-120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hua shi (Talcum)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi wei (Folium Pyrrosiae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bian xu (Herba Polygoni Avicularis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

zhidahuang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄 .......................... 6g
gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is usually cooked in a muslin bag (bao jio). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

SAN JIN TANG 三金汤
(Three Golden Herbs Decoction) modified

This formula is milder than the primary prescription and most suited to urinary tract stones with mild Damp Heat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guang jin qian cao (Herba Desmodii Styracifoli)</td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jin sha teng (Herba Lygodii Japonici)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dong kui zi (Semen Abutili seu Malvae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu mai (Herba Dianthi)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ji nei jin' (Endothelium Cornum Gigeriae Galli)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi wei (Folium Pyrrosiae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Ji nei jin is powdered and added to the strained decoction (zhong fu 冲服). (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Patent medicines
Te Xiao Pai Shi Wan 特效排石丸 (Specific Drug Passwan)
Shi Lin Tong Pian 石淋通片 (Shi Lin Tong Pian)

Acupuncture
During episodes of pain use the electro-acupuncture treatment outlined on p.352. Points to clear Damp Heat from the Bladder can also be selected:
Liv.5 (li gong ), Ht.8 (shao fu ), Liv.2 (xing jian ), Sj.5 (wai guan), GB.39 (xuan zhong)

Clinical notes
- The Damp Heat pattern often occurs as an acute inflammatory exacerbation of asymptomatic urinary tract stones, often provoked by excess consumption of alcohol and rich food.
- In general, herbs are used to dissolve urinary stones and acupuncture used to manage pain. Both are useful for clearing Damp Heat. Reduction or avoidance of alcohol and Damp Heat generating foods is essential for long term results.
12.2.3 STONES WITH BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
• Blood stagnation in the urinary tract can be the result of the long term presence of urinary tract stones, trauma (including surgery) or the result of long term Damp Heat, qi stagnation or deficiency.

Clinical features
• acute or chronic lower back or loin pain which is fixed and stabbing
• flecks of purplish blood, or copious dark blood in the urine
T purplish body with stasis spots
P wiry and tight or moderate and choppy

Treatment principle
Dissolve stones and promote urination
Move qi and eliminate stagnant Blood

Prescription
NIAO LU PAI SHI TANG #1 尿路排石汤一号
(Expel Urinary Stones #1 Decoction)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae) 金钱草</td>
<td>30-120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hai jin sha (Spora Lygodii Japonici) 海金砂</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hua shi (Talcum) 滑石</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan lian zi (Fruitus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Hai jin sha and che qian zi are usually decocted in a muslin bag (kan jian 袋煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
Te Xiao Pai Shi Wan 特效排石丸 (Specific Drug Passwan)
Shi Lin Tong Pian 石淋通片 (Shi Lin Tong Pian)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Baiyao)
- this medicine is specific for stopping bleeding and can be taken in addition to the main formula. The red pill is reserved for severe cases.

Acupuncture
During episodes of pain use the electro-acupuncture treatment outlined on p.368-369. Points to move stagnant Blood from the urinary tract are also selected: Sp.10 (xue hui), St.29 (que lai), Bl.32 (ci hao)
• In general, herbs are used to dissolve urinary stones and acupuncture used to manage pain.

Clinical notes
• This pattern corresponds to conditions such as damage to urinary tract endothelium by stones, obstruction of urinary tract, history of renal tuberculosis or congenital malformation of urinary tract.
• If there is severe damage caused to the urinary tract by the stones manifesting as persistent bleeding, then surgery and antibiotic therapy should be considered.

12.2.4 STONES WITH KIDNEY DEFICIENCY

12.2.4.1 Kidney qi deficiency
Pathophysiology
• Kidney qi is weakened by prolonged disease, the long term presence of stones or by inappropriate or excessive use of bitter cold herbs in the treatment of Damp Heat stone disorders.

Clinical features
• long history of recurrent colicky low back or loin pain, with aching lower back in between episodes
• aching, empty feeling in the lower abdomen
• waxy pale complexion
• shortness of breath
• weakness and fatigue
T pale and swollen, with toothmarks
P thready, small and forceless

Treatment principle
Dissolve stones and tonify Kidney qi

Prescription
NIAO LU PAI SHI TANG #3 尿路排石汤三号
(Expel Urinary Stones #3 Decoction)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae) 金钱草</td>
<td>30-120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hai jin sha (Spora Lygodii Japonici) 海金砂</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kidney Pathophysiology

- Kidney yin deficiency may follow long term Damp Heat that has gradually consumed yin, or may be a result of overwork, excessive sex, prolonged or severe illness or constitutional factors. When Kidney yin is deficient, body fluids may be concentrated to such a point that crystals and salts precipitate out of solution.

Clinical features

- long history of colicky low back or loin pain
- aching, empty feeling in the lower abdomen
- dull low back ache
- dark concentrated urine
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- night sweats
- insomnia
- dry mouth and throat

Patent medicines

jin kui shen qi wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexton Pills) plus either
Te Xiaodi Shi Wan 特效排石丸 (Specific Drug Passwoman) or
Shi Lin Tong Pian 石淋通片 (Shi Lin Tong Pian)

Acupuncture

During episodes of pain use the electro-acupuncture treatment outlined on p.368-369. Points to tonify Kidney qi are also selected: St.36 (zhi san li + ) and Ren.4 (guan yu + )

12.2.4.2 Kidney yin deficiency

Pathophysiology

- Kidney yin deficiency may follow long term Damp Heat that has gradually consumed yin, or may be a result of overwork, excessive sex, prolonged or severe illness or constitutional factors. When Kidney yin is deficient, body fluids may be concentrated to such a point that crystals and salts precipitate out of solution.

Clinical features

- long history of colicky low back or loin pain
- aching, empty feeling in the lower abdomen
- dull low back ache
- dark concentrated urine
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- night sweats
- insomnia
- dry mouth and throat

T red, dry, with little or no coat
P thready and rapid

Treatment principle

Dissolve stones and tonify Kidney yin

Prescription

ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八味丸
(Anemarrhenae, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula) modified

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita) 熟地 ... 24g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药 ... 12g
shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ... 12g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ... 9g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ... 9g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ... 9g
zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 ... 9g
yan huang bai (salt fried Cortex Phellodendri) 盐黄柏 ... 9g
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 ... 15g
yi ren (Semen Coicos Lachryma-jobi) 芸仁 ... 12g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ... 9g

Method: Decoction or pills. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎).

Patent medicines

Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan) plus either
Te Xiao Pao Shi Wan 特效排石丸 (Specific Drug Passwoman) or
Shi Lin Tong Pian 石淋通片 (Shi Lin Tong Pian)

Acupuncture

During episodes of pain use the electro-acupuncture treatment outlined on p.369-369. Points to strengthen Kidney yin are also selected: Kid.6 (zhao hai) and Kid.3 (tai xi)

- Care must be taken with very deficient patients as strong electro-acupuncture may disperse qi. Gentle treatment may be better tolerated.

Clinical notes

- In cases of stones with significant underlying deficiency, there are usually elements of both Kidney qi and yin deficiency.
- Long term therapy will usually be required.
12.3 Qi PAINFUL URINATION SYNDROME

- Liver qi stagnation
- Spleen qi deficiency, which is traditionally included in this category, overlaps with the Spleen pattern of exhaustion painful urination syndrome and is described there (p.394).

12.3.1 LIVER QI STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- Liver qi stagnation painful urination is usually due to emotional factors like repressed emotion, anger, resentment and frustration that disrupt the smooth circulation of Liver qi generally, and as the Liver channel passes through the lower jiao, in this case the Bladder.

Clinical features
- Lower abdominal fullness and pain that may radiate to the tops of the thighs, is initiated or aggravated by emotions, and which eases with relaxation and urination
- Urination may feel uncomfortable, the stream may be weak or broken and may be hard to get started or feel incomplete
- Tightness or fullness in the chest, often described as difficulty in drawing a satisfying breath, temporarily relieved by frequent sighing
- Hypochondriac discomfort or tightness
- Dizziness
- Occasional fatigue (although the patient feels better for exercise)
- Irritability or depression
- Abdominal distension, flatulence, alternating constipation and diarrhea
- Women may experience irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- All symptoms tend to be aggravated by stress
- T normal or darkish
- P deep and wiry

Treatment principle
Soothe and regulate Liver qi
Ease painful urination and disperse stagnant qi

Prescription
CHEN XIANG SAN 沉香散
(Aquillaria Powder) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae)</td>
<td>1.5g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi wei (Folium Pyrrosiae)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shen gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifications
- With severe lower abdominal distension and fullness, add mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 6g, qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 6g, and tang xia yan yang (Radix Paeoniae Pervarietatis) 6g.
- With stagnant Blood (very chronic cases, occasional stabbing pain, purplish spots on the tongue, venous congestion around the inner ankles and Sp.9 yin ling quan), add hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 6g, chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 9g, chuan mu xiang (Chuanxiong) 15g, and chuan bian hua (Bianfenghua) 15g.
- With Damp Heat, add shan zhi zhi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 9g.
- With Spleen deficiency, add bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephala) 12g, huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 15g, and dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 12g.
- If there is yin deficiency, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 9g, and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 9g.

Patent medicines
- Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸
- Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸
- Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸
- Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan 加味逍遥丸

Acupuncture
PC.6 (nei guan), BL.18 (gan shu -), BL.23 (san jiao shu -), BL.25 (li jiao -), BL.28 (pang guang shu -), ST.6 (shi men), ST.3 (fengchi -), ST.45 (liangmenshui -)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Liver qi stagnation type...
Painful Urination include stress related dysuria.
- Liver qi stagnation can appear alone or complicate other pathogenic entities like Dampness, Damp Heat, Spleen deficiency or yin deficiency.
- Acupuncture is especially effective in qi stagnation patterns.
- Stress management and relaxation techniques (or psychotherapy in severe cases) may be very useful.

12.4. BLOOD PAINFUL URINATION SYNDROME

Blood painful urination syndrome is defined by the quantity of blood expelled in the urine, that is, the urine should look pink or red. In cases where a patient complains of painful urination and a urine test reveals small traces of blood (although the urine colour is normal), then another category of painful urination (Heat, qi, stone painful urination etc.), should be selected according to the prominent symptoms present. The appropriate formula could then be modified by the addition of styptic herbs. Substantial urinary bleeding with minimal or no pain is diagnosed as haematuria (p.458).
- Heavy exercise (especially the repetitive pounding of long distance running) and drug induced (warfarin, cyclophosphamide) Blood painful urination should be excluded. Urinary tract stones can cause Blood painful urination.
- There are three general patterns of Blood painful urination:
  - Heat or Damp Heat
  - Blood stagnation
  - Kidney yin deficiency

12.4.1 HEAT, DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Heat or Damp Heat causing Blood painful urination is basically the same as the Damp Heat (p.358) or Fire varieties of Heat painful urination (pp.363, 365), but accompanied by significant bleeding. Once Damp Heat, Heat (or Fire) are present, Blood is quickened and it may be forced from the luoh channels of the Bladder.

Clinical features
- Painful, frequent, urgent urination (like ‘passing glass’) with urine that is fresh red or purplish red with blood. The intensity of the colour will depend on the degree of bleeding, which, if copious, makes it seem as if pure blood is being passed. In some cases there may be clotted threads, or small blood clots.
- fever, or alternating fever and chills
- lower back pain
- nausea, vomiting
- bitter taste in the mouth
- constipation
- thirst
T yellow greasy coat and a red tip
P slippery or soft, rapid and strong
Treatment principle
Stop bleeding
Clear Heat and Dampness

Prescription
XIAO JI YIN ZI 小蓟饮子
(Cephalanoplos Decoction) modified

This prescription is suitable for all excess Heat types of Blood painful urination. After bleeding stops, the underlying pattern should be identified and treated.

- xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 ................................. 30g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .................. 30g
- hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ........................................ 30g
- bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 ....... 30g
- xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 .................. 25g
- ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatosis) 藻节 ....... 15g
- dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 竹叶 ....................... 12g
- chao pu huang (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄 .............. 10g
- shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 ............. 10g
- mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 .................................. 6g
- gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 .......... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chiang Shaw Ce)

Modifications
• With mild Blood stasis, add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 6g, hu po fen (powdered Succinum) 琥珀粉 1g and chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 6g.
• With severe Heat, add pu gong ying (Herba Taraxaci Mongolici) 蒲公英 15g, huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g and jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 15g.

Patent medicines
Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Pills)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine is specific for stopping bleeding and can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill is reserved for severe cases.

Acupuncture
Ren. 3 (zhong ji -), Sp. 6 (san yin jiao -), Bl. 17 (ge shu -),BL. 28 (pang guang shu -), Ht. 8 (shao fu -), Sp. 10 (xue bai -)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as Heat type Blood Painful Urination include urinary tract infection, renal calculi, bladder tumours, renal tuberculosis, Goodpasture's syndrome, glomerulonephritis, Henoch Schönlein purpura, prostatitis and interstitial cystitis.
• Once treatment has stopped the bleeding, a clearer picture should emerge and other underlying patterns may need to be addressed.
12.4.2 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- Blood stagnation type Blood painful urination may follow an acute trauma to the groin, lower back or pelvis. Other long term genitourinary pathology, such as qi deficiency or qi stagnation, recurrent Damp Heat or yin deficiency can also lead to stagnant Blood.
- Stagnant Blood is a physical obstruction that blocks Blood circulation. Blood behind the obstruction is forced from the vessels and causes bleeding.

Clinical features

- sharp, stabbing, rough pain during urination, without burning
- urine that is purple or may have purplish clots
- fixed, stabbing lower abdominal pain
- there may be palpable masses, which may or may not be painful
- dark or purplish spider naevi or broken vessels on the trunk and around the inner ankle and knee
- dark, ashen, sallow or purplish complexion, dark or purplish lips and conjunctiva, dark ring under the eyes

- T purple or with brown or purple stasis spots, sublingual veins dark and distended
- P threadly and choppy

Treatment principle

Invigorate Blood circulation, eliminate stagnant Blood
Warm yang and break through painful obstruction

Prescription

SHAO FU ZHU YU TANG 少腹逐瘀汤
(Offend Against Blood Stasis in the Lower Abdomen Decoction)

This formula is designed for Blood stagnation with Cold.

dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 9g
sheng pu huang (Pollen Typhae) 生蒲黄 9g
chao wu ling zhi (dry fried Excrementum Trogopteri seu Pteromii) 炒五灵脂 9g
yan hu su (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g
chuan xiong (Radix Lisigustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g
xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香 6g
mo yao (Myrrha) 没药 4.5g
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g

pat jiang (quick fried Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 炮姜 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine)

Modifications

- If there are post surgical adhesions with pain, add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 3g, hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 9g and ze lan (Herba Lycopi Lucidi) 泽兰 9g.
- If the pain follows a traumatic injury, add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 3g and wu bu liu xing (Semen Vaccariae Setevalis) 五不留行 9g.

Patent medicines

Sheng Tian Qi Pian 生田七片 (Raw Tian Qi Ginseng Pills)
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 如坤乌金丸 (Woo Garm Yuen Medical Pills)
Yan Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)

- this medicine is specific for stopping bleeding and can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill is reserved for severe cases.

Acupuncture

Bl.28 (pang guang shu - ), Ren.3 (zhong ji - ), Sp.10 (xue hai - ), Sp.1 (yin bai - ), St.29 ( gui liao - ), Ren.4 (guan yuan - ), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), Bl.17 (ge shu - )

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Blood stagnation type Blood Painful Urination include urethral stricture, bladder or prostatic cancer, bladder polyps, nephrotic syndrome and bladder stones.
- Patients presenting with this pattern should be assumed to have a potentially dangerous condition and referred accordingly for appropriate investigations.
- This pattern is generally difficult to treat, especially when chronic bladder disease has caused Blood stasis. Blood stagnation from trauma responds better, and the prognosis is usually good (depending on the extent of the trauma). Tumours of the genitourinary tract should be treated with a combination of Western medicine and TCM. If bladder stones are present refer to Stone painful urination with Blood stagnation, p.372.
12.4.3 KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
Kidney yin deficiency type Blood painful urination is a chronic condition that occurs when damaged Kidney yin fails to maintain the integrity of the ilio channels of the lower jiao. Heat generated by the deficiency can force Blood from the vessels. The disease course is prolonged and usually recurrent.

Clinical features
- pale or occasionally bright red blood in the urine with mild urinary pain
- bleeding is mild and recurrent
- weakness or soreness of the lower back, weak, sore knees and heel pain
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- facial flushing, malar flush
- night sweats
- insomnia
- dry mouth and throat
- all symptoms tend to be worse in the afternoon and evening
- T pale red, or red and dry with little coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish yin, clear Heat, stop bleeding

Prescription
ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八味丸 (Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbal Medicine</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Porta Cocos)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han lian cao (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiao jie (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e jiao (Gelatinum Corii Asini)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction, powder or pills. Usually a decoction will be used until the bleeding has stopped and then pills or powder will be administered. In decoction, e jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (jeng hua shi). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)

Modifications
- If there is Liver qi stagnation with hypochondriac tightness, tenderness or fullness and abdominal distension, add bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 12g and chai hu (Radix Bupleurii) 柴胡 9g.

Patent medicines
- Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- Yunnan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)

This medicine is specific for stopping bleeding and can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill is reserved for severe cases.

Acupuncture
Bl.23 (shen shu +), Ren.3 (zhong ji +), Ren.4 (guan yuan +),
Kid.6 (zhao hai +), Kid.10 (yin gu +), Sp.6 (san jin jiao), I.v.1 (da dan ▲),
Sp.1 (yin hai ▲)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yin deficiency type Blood Painful Urination include urinary tract infection, menopausal vaginitis and bladder or prostatic cancer
- This pattern can be difficult to treat successfully and prolonged therapy is needed for satisfactory results. Resistant or recurrent cases should be referred for investigation to exclude neoplasm.
- Urinary alkalising agents like barley water or alfalfa tea are useful for reducing the discomfort.
12.5 CLOUDY PAINFUL URINATION SYNDROME

* Damp Heat
* Kidney qi deficiency

12.5.1 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology

- Damp Heat cloudy painful urination occurs when Damp Heat disrupts the transformation of Bladder qi and the separation of clear and turbid fluids.
- In contrast to other Damp Heat conditions where Heat may predominate, in this case the relative preponderance of Dampness causes cloudiness of the urine.

Clinical features

- Urine that is either scanty and cloudy (like rice water or diluted milk) or cloudy and yellow, and that may contain globules of fatty material
- Burning and painful urination
- Fullness and discomfort in the chest and epigastrium
- Bitter taste in the mouth, thirst or dry mouth with no desire to drink
- Tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
- T red body with greasy yellow coat
- P rapid and slippery or soft

Treatment principle

Clear Heat and Dampness
Alleviate cloudiness and turbidity

Prescription

BEI XIE FEN QING YIN 草解分清饮
(Tokoro Combination) modified

bei xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 草解 .................... 15g
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 ......................... 30g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ......................... 30g
shi wei (Folium Pterosae) 石苇 ......................... 20g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acon Graminei) 石菖蒲 ............... 6g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 ......................... 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 甘草 .................... 6g
lian zi xin (Plumula Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子心 .......... 3g
deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Effusii) 灯心草 ............... 3g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎).
(Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Liu Chuang She Gu)

Modifications

- With significant Heat and pain, add long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdanca) 龙胆草 6g, mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 6g and shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 9g.
- With lower abdominal fullness and pain, add wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifolii) 乌药 9g and yi zhi ren (Fructus Alpiniae Oxyphyllae) 益智仁 6g.
- With mild bleeding, add xiao ji (Herba Cephalaanoplos) 小蓟 9g, bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatiae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 9g and ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhzomatosis) 藕节 9g.

Patent medicines

Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Dao Chi Pian 导赤片 (Tao Chih Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Yang Pian 穿心莲清热片
(Chan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
Qian Jin Zi Dai Wan 千金止带丸 (Chien Chin Chih Tai Wan)
- Recurrent or chronic cases
Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan 碧解分清丸 (Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan)
- Mild recurrent or chronic cases

Acupuncture

Bl.28 (pang guan shu -), Bl.22 (san jiao shu -), Ren.3 (zhong ji -),
Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), St.28 (shui dao -),
GB.34 (yang ling quan -), St.40 (feng long -), Kid.7 (fei liu

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat type cloudy Painful Urination include urethritis, cystitis, pyelonephritis, chyluria, prostatitis, gonorrhoea, nephrotic syndrome, myeloma and amyloidosis.
- Herbs are often best at leaching out Dampness. Depending on the associated biomedical disease, this pattern can respond well to TCM treatment. Amyloidosis and myeloma are difficult to treat with TCM alone and TCM treatment is probably best as a supportive treatment with Western medicine.
12.5.2 KIDNEY Qi DEFICIENCY

**Pathophysiology**
- Kidney qi deficiency cloudy painful urination may occur when recurrent or chronic Damp Heat cloudy painful urination gradually weakens Kidney energy. Kidney qi is drained and so fails to separate the clear and turbid fluids, which then appear as cloudiness associated with uncomfortable urination.

**Clinical features**
- the urine is cloudy or oily; the cloudiness may be intermittent
- urination may be difficult, painful or uncomfortable as well as frequent, perhaps to the point of incontinence
- lower back pain, weak sore knees
- dizziness
- weakness and fatigue
- emaciation and pallor
- pale with a greasy coat
- threadly and weak

**Treatment principle**
- Tonify and consolidate Kidney qi
- Leach out residual Dampness

**Prescription**

| LIU WEI DI HUANG WAN 六味地黄丸  | (Rehmannia Six Formula) plus |
| JIN SUO GU JING WAN 金锁固精丸  | (Metal Lock Pill to Stabilize the Essence) modified |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>herb</th>
<th>每味</th>
<th>药量</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquittae) 熟地</td>
<td></td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸</td>
<td></td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药</td>
<td></td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Portia Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td></td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻</td>
<td></td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duan long gu (calcined Os Draconis 炮龙骨</td>
<td></td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duan mu li (calcined Concha Ostreae 炮牡蛎</td>
<td></td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha yuan ji li (Semen Astragali Complanati) 沙苑蒺藜</td>
<td></td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian shi (Semen Euryales Ferocis) 房关</td>
<td></td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian xu (Stamen Nelumbinis Nucifera) 连须</td>
<td></td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs into powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Patent medicines**
- Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills) plus
- Jin Suo Gu Jing Wan 金锁固精丸 (Chin So Ku Ching Wan)

**Acupuncture**
- BI.28 (pang guang shu), Ren.3 (zhong jie), Ren.4 (guan yuan +)
- Sp.9 (yun ling quan), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Ren.6 (qi hui ▲), Du.20 (bai hui ▲),
- si feng (M-UE-9), St.40 (feng long)

**Clinical notes**
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney qi deficiency type cloudy Painful Urination include albuminuria, chyluria, chronic nephritis, incontinence and weakness of bladder musculature.
- While acupuncture is useful to ease the discomfort associated with urination and to strengthen Kidney function, prolonged treatment with herbs may be necessary to fully address the Kidney deficiency.
12.6 EXHAUSTION PAINFUL URINATION SYNDROME

Pathophysiology
This group of patterns develops when a urinary disorder of any origin persists for long enough to cause damage to other organ systems. As well as the general features of a deficient type urinary disorder, there will be symptoms reflecting damage to the Kidney, Spleen or Heart. Patients with one (or more) of these patterns will generally be found to have presented repeatedly to their physician with ‘cystitis’, and probably have had numerous courses of antibiotics. The three main patterns are:
- Kidney yin, qi or yang deficiency
- Spleen qi deficiency (traditionally grouped in the qi painful urination category, this pattern is more consistent with this group)
- Heart and Kidney qi and yin deficiency

General clinical features
- chronic and recurrent, mild urinary discomfort that is aggravated or initiated by exertion, fatigue and sexual activity
- the urine is generally pale
- there may be urinary difficulty, dripping or mild incontinence

12.6.1 KIDNEY DEFICIENCY

Kidney yin deficiency
- mild lower back ache, frequent urination that feels hot but may or may not be concentrated, occasional urinary irritation or mild discomfort, sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- red with little or no coat
- p thready and rapid

Kidney qi deficiency
- lower abdominal discomfort that may be relieved by warmth, lower back soreness and weakness, clear urine, pale lustreless complexion, oedema of the lower extremities
- pale with a thin white coat
- p deep and thready

Kidney yang deficiency
- same as for Kidney qi deficiency, with the addition of Cold signs, such as lower abdominal discomfort that is relieved by warmth, cold extremities, cold intolerance
- pale and swollen with toothmarks
- p slow

Treatment principle
Tonify the Kidney and ease painful urination

Prescription 12.6.1.1 Kidney yin deficiency

LIU WEI DI HUANG WAN 六味地黄丸
(Rehmannia Six Formula)

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 ........ 240g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 .................. 120g
shan zhu yu (Fructus Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山茱萸 ................ 120g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ....................... 90g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ...................... 90g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ...................... 90g

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.
(Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With significant Heat, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhena Asphodeloidis) 知母 90g and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 90g
- With lower back pain, add xu duan (Radix Dipsaci Asperi) 续断 90g, gou ji (Rhizoma Cibotii Barometz) 狗脊 90g and sang ji sheng (Ramus Sangisheng) 桑寄生 120g.
- With some Damp Heat, causing relatively more pain or burning upon urination, add che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 90g and ren dong teng (Ramus Lonicerae Japonicae) 忍冬藤 120g.

Patent medicines
- Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
- Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)

Acupuncture
- BL.23 (shen shu +), BL.28 (pang guang shu +), Ren.2 (qu gu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Kid.2 (ran gu -), Kid.6 (zhao bai +)

Prescription 12.6.1.2 Kidney qi deficiency

WU BI SHAN YAO WAN 无比山药丸
(Incomparable Dioscorea Pill) modified

shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 .................. 30g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ....................... 20g
shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 ........ 20g
**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat type cloudy Painful Urination include chronic glomerular disease, end stage kidney disease, diabetic nephropathy and uraemic syndrome.
- In all the exhaustion patterns, treatment needs to be long term to achieve a satisfactory result. Depending on the severity of the deficiency, one or two years may not be excessive.
- Rest is essential for success, and bladder training programs may be useful in some patients. Stress management and reduction of irritants or diuretic drinks like tea and coffee will also help. Urinary alkaliising agents like barley water or alfalfa tea are useful.
- Urine cultures will usually fail to find any pathogen.

**Prescription**

12.6.1.3 Kidney yang deficiency

JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN 金匮肾气丸
(Rehmannia Eight Formula)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria cocos)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata)</td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>40g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with the doses as given.

(Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Niu Ke Xue)

**Patent medicines**

Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills)

**Acupunture**

Du.4 (ming men + △), Bl.23 (shen shu + △), Bl.28 (pang guang shu +),
Kid.3 (tai xi + △), Kid.7 (fu liu + △), Ren.4 (guan yuan + △),
Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Lu.7 (lie que), Kid.6 (zhao hai)
12.6.2 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Spleen qi deficiency type chronic dysuria is usually found in the elderly, post menopausal women and in patients who have had recurrent urinary tract disorders that have been treated with many courses of antibiotics or bitter cold herbs. This pattern is sometimes associated with prolapse of pelvic organs and poor muscle tone generally.
- This pattern is traditionally placed with qi stagnation pattern in the qi painful urination section.

Clinical features

- suprapubic pain, fullness or discomfort—the pain is vague or dull and dragging and is relieved by pressure and warmth over the bladder area
- frequent clear urine with a dull or ‘empty’ pain following voiding
- urinary dribbling or mild incontinence
- all symptoms are worse for overexertion and when fatigued
- there may be a history of prolapses or lower abdominal surgery
- pale complexion
- puffy eyelids and oedema of the extremities, particularly the fingers
- abdominal distension
- poor appetite
- loose stools
- fatigue
- shortness of breath

T pale
P deficient, thready and weak

Treatment principle

Tonify Spleen and Stomach
Benefit and raise qi

Prescription

BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This formula is particularly good when prolapses are part of the pattern.

Method: Decoction or powdered and taken in doses of 9-grams as a draft.
(Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications

- This pattern is frequently associated with Kidney qi deficiency; if so, combine with WU BI SHAN YAO WAN (Incomparable Dioscorea Pill 无比山药丸, p.391).
- If Lung qi is weak, add mai dong (Luber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 9g and wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis) 五味子 6g.
- If Heart qi is weak and there are no signs of Damp Heat, GU1 PI TANG (Ginseng and Longan Combination 归脾汤, p.554) may be used.
- If the dripping and incontinence are severe, add sang piao xiao (Ootheca Mantidis) 桑螵蛸 9g and sha yuan ji li (Semen Astragali Complani) 沙苑蒺藜 12g.

Patent medicines

Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan 博解分清丸 (Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan)

Acupuncture

Ren.4 (guan yuan ▲), St.36 (zu san li +), L1.4 (he gu +),
Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Ren.6 (qi hai +), Bl.32 (ci hai +), Du.20 (bai hai ▲),
Liu.7 (tie que), Kid.6 (zhao hai)

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Spleen qi deficiency type cloudy Painful Urination include interstitial cystitis, chronic nephritis, and bladder, vaginal or uterine prolapse
- In all the exhaustion patterns, treatment needs to be long term to achieve a satisfactory result. Depending on the severity of the deficiency, one or two years may not be excessive.
- Rest is essential for success, and bladder training programs may be useful in some patients. Stress management and reduction of irritants or diuretic drinks like tea and coffee will also help. Urinary alkalisng agents like barley water or alfalfa tea are useful.
- In some patients, the dysuria will not improve until prolapses are surgically repaired.
### 12.6.3 Heart and Kidney Qi and Yin Deficiency

**Pathophysiology**
- Heart and Kidney qi and yin deficiency is a variation of the Kidney deficiency type. This type is characterised by being worse for anxiety, overexcitement and excessive stimulation.

**Clinical features**
- Chronic intermittent urinary discomfort or pain with a feeling of incomplete voiding, aggravated or initiated by overexertion, anxiety or overexcitement
- Mild lower abdominal fullness
- Palpitations, shortness of breath
- Insomnia with much dreaming
- Dry mouth and tongue
- Fatigue and tiredness
- Pink or only slightly red and swollen with numerous surface cracks, or the tip of the tongue is red; the coating is absent or thin and white
- Threaded and weak and possibly slightly rapid

**Treatment principle**
- Nourish and strengthen qi and yin
- Re-establish communication between the Heart and Kidney

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fu ling (Sclerotium Porta Cocos)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Radicis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lian zi xin (Plumula Nelumbinis Nuciferae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction or powdered and taken as a draft. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Modifications**
- If there is significant intermittent pain upon urination combine (during painful episodes) with DAO CHI SAN (Rehmannia and Akebia Formula)

---

**Patent medicines**
- Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan 天王补心丹 (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan)
- Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸 (Zuo Gui Wan)

**Acupuncture**
- BL.23 (shen shu +), BL.28 (pang guang shu +), Ren.2 (gu gu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Kid.2 (ran gu +), Ren.4 (guan yuan +), Ren.6 (qi bai +), Ht.7 (shen men), Kid.9 (shu bai)

**Clinical notes**
- In all the exhaustion patterns treatment needs to be long term to achieve a satisfactory result. Depending on the severity of the deficiency, one or two years may not be excessive
- Rest is essential for success, and bladder training programs may be useful in some patients. Stress management and reduction of irritants or diuretic drinks like tea and coffee will also help. Urinary alkalisising agents like barley water or alfalfa tea are useful.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR PAINFUL URINATION

Heat painful urination
- Damp Heat - Ba Zheng San 八正散
- Heart Fire - Dao Chi San 导赤散
- Liver Fire - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤

Stone painful urination
- In otherwise asymptomatic patients - Shi Wei San 石苇散
- with Damp Heat - Niao Lu Pai Shi Tang #2 尿路排石汤二号 or San Jin Tang 三金汤
- with Blood stagnation - Niao Lu Pai Shi Tang #1 尿路排石汤一号
- with Kidney deficiency
  - qi deficiency - Niao Lu Pai Shi Tang #3 尿路排石汤三号
  - yin deficiency - Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸

Liver qi stagnation painful urination
- Chen Xiang San 沉香散

Blood painful urination
- Heat - Xiao Ji Yin Zi 小蓟饮子
- Kidney yin deficiency - Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸

Cloudy painful urination
- Damp Heat - Bei Xie Fen Qing Yin 葆解分清饮
- Kidney qi deficiency - Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 plus Jin Suo Gu Jin Wan 金锁固精丸

Exhaustion painful urination
- Kidney yin deficiency - Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸
- Kidney qi deficiency - Wu Bi Shan Yao Wan 无比山药丸
- Kidney yang deficiency - Jin Gui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸
- Spleen qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤
- Heart and Kidney qi and yin deficiency - Qing Xin Lian Zi Yin 清心莲子饮

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk *, an open circle o or a hat †, see the tables on pp.944-952.
**13. CLOUDY URINATION**

*niao zhuo* 善浊

Cloudy urination refers to urine that appears milky or cloudy like rice water, or urine that may appear clear but precipitates sediment if allowed to stand. There is no, or only very mild pain associated with urination. If pain is predominant, see cloudy painful urination syndrome p.386.

**AETIOLOGY**

**Damp Heat**

This type of cloudy urine is most often a manifestation of lower *jiao* Damp Heat of internal origin. That is, the Damp Heat has been produced in the middle *jiao* by excessive consumption of rich food and alcohol and has then sunk into the lower *jiao*. The Damp Heat can also arise directly in the lower *jiao* by the condensing action of internal Heat on Fluids. Such internal Heat is produced by *yin* deficiency or long term *qi* or Damp stagnation.

Less often, Damp Heat type cloudy urine may be the result of external Damp Heat pathogen that invades through the *tai yang* (Bladder) channel, the leg *yin* channels or the local *luo* channels. External Damp Heat typically causes acute painful urination. However, if the Damp Heat is unresolved or lingering, the urine may become cloudy.

**Spleen deficiency**

Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen *qi*; Spleen *qi* naturally ascends creating the appropriate equilibrium for the descent of turbid waste materials, so it is said the Spleen governs ‘the raising of the clear and descent of the turbid’. If this activity fails, the ‘clear and turbid’ intermingle and sink, settling in the lower *jiao* and Bladder. Also, when the Spleen is weak, food and fluids are poorly processed and Dampness may accumulate.

**Kidney deficiency**

Kidney deficiency manifests as either *yang* or *yin* deficiency. A tendency to Kidney weakness can be inherited and it certainly increases with age. Chronic illness, excessive sexual activity and many pregnancies also weaken the Kidneys.  

*Kidney yang* or *qi* is particularly affected by prolonged exposure to cold conditions or excessive lifting or standing. In some cases, particularly in younger people, Kidney *qi* may be weakened while *Kidney yang* remains intact, in which case the cold symptoms are not seen.

Kidney *yin* is damaged through overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep, febrile diseases, insufficient hydration and the use of some prescription and recreational drugs.

The Kidney and Bladder are closely related, so weakness of the Kidney can affect the Bladder. When Kidney *qi* is weak, the Bladder is vulnerable to pathogenic invasion (through the *tai yang* leg *yin* channels or local *luo* channels), especially Damp Heat.

---

**BOX 13.1 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cloudy, concentrated, scanty</td>
<td>Damp Heat or <em>yin</em> deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milky, opaque, copious</td>
<td>Spleen or Kidney <em>qi</em> or <em>yang</em> deficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**BOX 13.2 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF CLOUDY URINE**

- chyluria
- nephrotic syndrome
- urinary tract infection
- inflammation of the genitourinary system
- filariasis
- tuberculosis of the kidneys
- toxaemia of pregnancy
- sarcoidosis
- amyloidosis
- tumours
- albuminuria
13.1 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- DAMP HEAT cloudy urination is most commonly due to overconsumption of rich and greasy foods and alcohol, which generate Dampness and Heat in the middle jiao. The DAMP HEAT sinks and settles in the lower jiao, disrupting Bladder qi and the separation of clear and turbid fluids. Cloudiness also occurs in acute attacks of external DAMP HEAT. However, in these cases painful urination is usually the main symptom and the clinical analysis proceeds from painful urination syndrome (p.386). Cloudy urine is more likely to follow an unresolved or subacute case of external DAMP HEAT.
- Depending on whether DAMPNESS or HEAT predominates, the pattern will vary. If DAMPNESS predominates the urine will be white and cloudy. If HEAT predominates the urine will still be cloudy, but more scanty and concentrated and there is more likely to be mild pain.

Clinical features
- cloudy, whitish urine, like the water after washing rice, or cloudy, yellow and scanty urine; in some cases there may be mild bleeding, in which case the urine is pink and opaque
- suprapubic fullness and discomfort
- lower back pain
- fullness in the chest and epigastrium
- poor appetite, nausea
- bitter taste in the mouth
- thirst with little desire to drink
- a tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
- some cases may have afternoon fever or alternating fever and chills
- greasy yellow coat
- P soft and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear and transform DAMPNESS and HEAT

Prescription
CHENG SHI BEI XIE FEN QING YIN 程氏萆薢分清饮
(Tokoro Formula from the Cheng Clan)
bei xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 草解 ........................ 12g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 福苓 ................................. 12g
tian qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 ............................. 12g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 .............. 9g
dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 .......................... 9g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 .................................. 6g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ..................... 6g
lian zi xin (Plumula Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子心 .................. 3g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (kao jian 包煎).
(Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If HEAT predominates, add mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 6g, shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 9g and hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 12-18g.
- If DAMPNESS predominates, add cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 白术 9g, hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 9g, ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g and chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g.

Patent medicines
Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Dao Chi Pian 导赤片 (Dao Chi Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

Acupuncture
Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), Sp.9 (xin ling guan -), Sp.4 (gong sun -),
BL.22 (san jiao shu -), Ren.3 (zhong ji -), BL.28 (pang guang shu -),
Liv.5 (liou -), Kid.7 (fu liu), GB.41 (zu hin qi -), SJ.5 (wai guan -)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as DAMP HEAT type cloudy urination include urinary tract infection, acute or chronic prostatitis, cystitis, urethritis, orchitis, nephrotic syndrome, chyluria and amyloidosis.
- This pattern can respond well to TCM treatment, although conditions like amyloidosis are best treated with combined Western and Chinese medicine.
- While acupuncture can be useful, herbs are particularly effective for leaching DAMP from the body.
13.2 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY WITH SINKING QI

Pathophysiology
- When the Spleen is weak, inefficient digestion can lead to an accumulation of Dampness or a failure to properly separate the ‘pure and turbid’, which may then sink and settle in the lower jiao and appear as cloudy urine.

Clinical features
- chronic and recurrent cloudy urine that is like rice water, or urine that precipitates a sediment; the condition is aggravated or initiated by fatigue and consumption of oily or rich foods
- dragging or sinking feeling in the lower abdomen
- oedema of the eyelids or upper extremities (especially the fingers) that is worse in the morning
- sallow or pale complexion
- lethargy
- shortness of breath
- poor appetite
- loose stools
- possibly prolapses of various structures, such as the uterus, bladder and rectum
- pale and swollen, with tooth marks
- deficient and soft

Treatment principle
Raise and strengthen Spleen qi

Prescription
BU ZHONG YI QI TANG (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotum Poria Cocos)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long gu (Os Draconis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan lian zi (Fructus Meliae Toosendan)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If there is some residual or co-existing Damp Heat, add huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g and bei xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 草薢 9g.

Patent medicines
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan (Shen Ling Bai Zhu Wan)
Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan (Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan)

Acupuncture
Ren.6 (qi hai +), Liv.13 (zhang men +), Bl.23 (shen shu +),
Kid.3 (tai xi +), Du.20 (hai hu +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Bl.20 (pi shu),
Du.4 (ming men +), Lu.7 (lie que)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Spleen qi deficiency type cloudy urination include chyluria, albuminuria, nephrotic syndrome, amyloidosis, sarcoidosis, prolonged bed rest, chronic nephritis and chronic renal failure.
- Conditions like amyloidosis and sarcoidosis are difficult to treat with TCM alone.
13.3 KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Kidney yin deficiency cloudy urine is due to the Heat generated by yin deficiency, which concentrates fluids and causes precipitation of solids from solution causing the urine to appear cloudy.

Clinical features
- chronic cloudy, scanty, yellow urine or recurrent milky, opaque urine like rice water
- sensations of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- facial flushing, malar flush
- night sweats
- dry mouth and throat
- restlessness
- insomnia
- dizziness
- tinnitus
- soreness or weakness of the lower back and knees, heel pain
- tendency to dry stools or constipation
- T red and dry with little or no coat
- P thread and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish Kidney yin, clear Heat

Prescription

ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八味丸
(Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medicine</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquiritae) 熟地</td>
<td>24g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bei xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 草解</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Portia Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian zi xin (Plumula Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子心</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yan huang bai (salt fried Cortex Phellodendri) 盐黄柏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily.

Patent medicines
- Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
- Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸 (Zuo Gui Wan)

Acupuncture
Bl.23 (shen shu +), Ren.4 (guan yuan +), St.28 (shui dao +), Kid.6 (zhao hai +), Kid.2 (ran gu -)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yin deficiency type cloudy urination include chronic nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, chronic glomerulonephritis, renal tuberculosis, toxemia of pregnancy, hypertension, myeloma, amyloidosis and sarcoidosis.
- Symptoms of Kidney yin deficiency often respond well to lengthy treatment. Conditions like amyloidosis, myeloma and sarcoidosis are difficult to treat with TCM alone.
13.4 KIDNEY YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
• When kidney yang is weak, there is a general failure of fluid transformation and metabolism—essentially, the ‘distillation’ fire (míng yín huǒ 门火) required for processing fluids for excretion and redistribution is inadequate. Excess of untransformed fluids gives rise to Damp in the Bladder, which appears as cloudiness.

Clinical features
• chronic and recurrent cloudy or opaque urine that is frequent and copious
• waxy pale complexion with dark rings under the eyes
• oedema, particularly below the waist and in the ankles
• listlessness, lethargy
• increased desire to sleep
• coldness and aching in the lower back and knees
• cold extremities
• low libido, impotence
• nocturia
• T pale and swollen with a white coat
• P deep, weak and thready

Treatment principle
Warm and consolidate the Kidneys
Tonify kidney yang

Prescription
LU RONG BU SE WAN  鹿茸补肾丸
(Deer Horn Pills to Tonify and Astringe)

- lu jiao jiao* (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum) 鹿角胶 .............. 120g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 120g
- huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 ........... 120g
- long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 .......................... 120g
- bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifoliae) 补骨脂 ...... 120g
- tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis) 苍术 ................. 120g
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......................... 120g
- zhi fu zhi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ... 60g
- sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 ........... 60g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .................. 60g
- lian zi (Semen Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子 ............... 60g
- sang piao xiao* (Ootheca Mantidis) 桑螵蛸 ................. 40g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis) 五味子 .......... 40g

Method: Powder the herbs and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted, zhi fu zhi is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xiang jian 先煎) and lu jiao jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua 憨化).
(Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

JIN KUT SHEN QI WAN 金匮肾气丸
(Rehmannia Eight Formula)

This is the basic Kidney yang strengthening formula, and is cheaper as a general yang tonic. While not as specific as the principal formula, it is cheaper and widely available in patent medicine form.

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquiae) 熟地 .......... 240g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 .................. 120g
- shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ............. 120g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 90g
- ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .................. 90g
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ................. 90g
- zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ... 60g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .................. 40g

Method: Grind the herbs and powder, and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted, zhi fu zhi is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xiang jian 先煎). rou gui is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
• If there is some blood in the urine, add pao jiang tan (roasted Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 炮姜炭 60g and ce bai ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 醋柏叶 90g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
• With less (or no) Cold and evidence of Heart involvement (frequent and cloudy urination, forgetfulness, disorientation, a pale tongue with a thin white coat and a thready weak pulse), the correct treatment is to regulate and tonify the Heart and Kidneys, stabilise jing and clear turbidity with SANG PIAO XIAO SAN (Mantis Egg Case Powder 卵蛸蛸散)

- sang piao xiao* (Ootheca Mantidis) 桑螵蛸 .................. 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .................. 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .................. 9g
- yuan zhi (Radix Polygonae Tenuifoliae) 远志 .............. 6g
- shi chang pu (Rhiza Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 .............. 6g
- duan long gu* (Calcined Os Draconis) 炙龙骨 ............ 12g
- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosa) 当参加 ............. 12g
Patent medicines

Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sechowan Pills)
You Gui Wan 右归丸 (You Gui Wan)
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
Jin Suo Gu Jing Wan 金锁固精丸 (Chin So Ku Ching Wan)
- added to one of the three patents above.

Acupuncture

Ren.6 (qi hai +▲), Ren.4 (guan yuan +▲), Kid.3 (tai xi +▲),
Bl.23 (shen shu +▲), Du.4 (ming men +▲), Kid.7 (ji liu), Sp.4 (gong sun)

Clinical notes

• Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yin deficiency type cloudy urination include chronic nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, amyloidosis and sarcoidosis.
• Yang deficiency patterns often respond well to treatment with moxa and warming herbs and cloudiness of the urine should resolve with treatment. However, if the kidney is severely structurally damaged or the disorder is very advanced the prognosis is poor. Conditions like amyloidosis and sarcoidosis are difficult to treat with TCM alone.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR CLOUDY URINATION

Damp Heat - Cheng Shi Bei Xie Fen Qing Yin 程氏草解分清饮

Spleen qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤

Kidney yin deficiency - Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸
- with deficient Heat - Da Bu Yin Wan 大补阴丸

Kidney yang deficiency
- Lu Rong Bu Se Wan 麻黄补涩丸 or Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸
- with Heart and Kidney qi deficiency - Sang Piao Xiao San 桑螵蛸散

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Kidney

14. Difficult Urination and Urinary Retention

**Excess patterns**
- Damp Heat
- Lung qi obstruction
- Liver qi stagnation
- Blood stagnation

**Deficient patterns**
- Spleen yang deficiency
- Kidney yang deficiency
- Kidney yin deficiency
14 DIFFICULT URINATION, URINARY RETENTION

long bi 瘸閉

Difficult urination (long bi) refers to reduced volume of urine with difficulty in voiding the bladder. The patient may experience difficulty in starting urination or have a weak or broken stream and a feeling of incomplete voiding.

Urinary retention (bi 闭) is severe difficulty urinating even though the bladder is full. Generally no urine at all or only a few drops are passed.

The term long bi, therefore, refers to a continuum of states from difficult urination to complete retention. Because bi can lead to serious kidney damage, it is a medical emergency and should be treated in a hospital.

In ancient times multiple treatment methods were recognised and used accordingly. Sun Si-miao of the Tang Dynasty (618-907 AD) applied a catheter composed of the tubal leaf of a spring onion in addition to herbal decoction.

AETIOLOGY

Damp Heat

External Heat

Damp Heat causing urinary difficulty or retention can result from an external Damp Heat pathogen that invades through the tai yang (Urinary Bladder) channel, the leg jin channels or the local luo channels. In practice, transmission of Damp Heat through the luo channels is probably the most common mode of entry (especially in sexually active individuals). The presence of Damp Heat blocks qi transformation in the bladder and obstructs the free passage of urine. When external Damp Heat is the cause of the urinary difficulty, the symptoms are frequently localised in the bladder and the systemic symptoms of Damp Heat diminished or absent.

Internal Heat

Internally generated Heat or Damp Heat can also cause urinary difficulty or retention. Heat affecting the Heart or Liver can be transmitted through their associated channels to the lower jiao. Damp Heat generated in the middle jiao by overconsumption of rich, greasy or spicy foods and alcohol can simply sink and settle in the lower jiao. Damp Heat can also be generated in the lower jiao by any prolonged Heat in the system, such as the Heat arising from jin deficiency, qi stagnation, or by prolonged stagnation of Dampness. When the Heat is generated internally, the symptoms tend to be more systemic, reflecting the original source of the Heat. Heat of external origin, however, tends to produce a more localised pattern, with the focus of symptoms in the bladder and urethra. An important cause of urinary difficulty in chronic Damp Heat patterns is the development of urinary tract stones which easily obstruct the passage of urine.

Spleen deficiency

Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen qi. Spleen qi naturally ascends, creating the appropriate equilibrium for the descent of turbid waste materials, so it is said the Spleen governs 'the raising of the clear and descent of the turbid'. If this activity fails, the 'clear and turbid' intermingle, and in this case neither descend or ascend (or if they do descend into the bladder they appear as cloudy urine). If Spleen qi deficiency persists, or there is overconsumption of cold raw foods, Spleen yang deficiency may develop. When Spleen yang is weak, fluid metabolism and movement is impaired and instead of going to the Bladder for processing, fluids congeal into Dampness or accumulate in the limbs and tissues as oedema. Weak yang is also responsible for general weakness of qi movement, and thus forceless expulsion of urine.

Kidney deficiency

Weak Kidney yang or qi may be an inherited condition, or may develop as a result of age, chronic illness, too much exposure to cold conditions or excessive lifting or standing (particularly if this occurs in a cold environment or on cold floors or at night). Kidney yang or qi may also be damaged by excessive sexual activity, or in women who have many pregnancies. In some cases, particularly in younger people, Kidney qi may be weakened while Kidney yang remains intact, in which case the cold symptoms are not seen.

Kidney jin becomes damaged through febrile disease, overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep, and the use of recreational drugs. Kidney jin may also be weakened by ageing and excessive sexual activity, or in women who have many pregnancies.

BOX 14.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF DIFFICULT URINATION OR URINARY RETENTION

- urinary tract infection
- tumours of the bladder, prostate or kidney
- urethral scarring
- prostatic hypertrophy
- pressure from gynaecological tumours like fibroids
- obstruction by urinary calculi
- transverse myelitis
- multiple sclerosis
- extreme cold
- alcohol
- faecal impaction
- foreign body
- anticholinergic drugs
Obstruction of Lung qi
The Lungs, as one of the organs involved in the fluid cycle, play a role in the smooth excretion of urine. The Lungs send a portion of the fluids (sent upwards by the Spleen) to the skin and a portion to the Kidneys for reprocessing. If the natural descent of Lung qi is obstructed by some pathogenic factor (usually Wind or Heat), fluids can fail to reach the lower jiao and will accumulate in the upper jiao.

Liver qi stagnation, Blood stagnation
Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions and stress can disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, and because the Liver channel passes through the lower jiao, Bladder qi can also be disrupted. Once Bladder qi is blocked, urine will not pass smoothly and the Blood stagnation that can eventuate may reflect serious disorders like stones or malignancy.

Liver qi stagnation can give rise to other complications. Prolonged Liver qi stagnation creates Heat which can travel through the Liver channel to the lower jiao condensing Bladder Fluids into Dampness or Damp Heat. Liver qi may also damage the Spleen, predisposing to Dampness which sinks to the lower jiao. This Damp can obstruct the Bladder or predispose to Damp Heat.

Pre-existing stagnation (of qi and Blood) can be transferred from another pelvic organ to the Bladder. This is most commonly observed in women following hysterectomy, myomectomy or removal of ovarian cysts. The organ primarily affected by the stagnation is removed or repaired, but the underlying qi and Blood stagnation that gave rise to the initial problem persists. The focus of pelvic symptoms then shifts from, for example the uterus, causing heavy periods and pain, to the Bladder.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS
Painful urination syndrome (lin zheng 漏证): Difficult urination frequently accompanies painful urination, the difference being the prominence and degree of dysuria. Difficult urination and retention are not painful or only minimally painful.
Guan Ge syndrome (guan ge 关格): A group of patterns characterised by simultaneous anuria, constipation and vomiting. Guan ge may include (with appropriate presentation) kidney disorders like uraemia, chronic renal failure, chronic pyelonephritis, glomerular sclerosis, renal tuberculosis and diabetic nephropathy, as well as conditions like shock, crush injuries, severe burns and severe infections.
Oedema (shui zhong 水肿): Oedema is fluid accumulation in subcutaneous tissues. When oedema is significant, there is a decrease in fluids being processed by the Kidney and smaller volumes excreted. However, there is usually no difficulty in urinating.

Ascites/Drum-like Abdominal distension (gu zheng 脾胀): Gu zheng is fluid accumulation in the abdominal cavity, with a decrease in urinary output. Gu zheng occurs in such conditions as hepatic cirrhosis, schistosomiasis, abdominal and liver cancer, chronic malaria and tuberculous peritonitis.

In addition, excessive fluid loss through diarrhoea, sweating and inadequate fluid replacement can cause reduced urination, though again, generally without difficulty:

TREATMENT
The two general approaches to treatment in urinary difficulty reflect the underlying pathology. In the excess patterns, Damp difficulty and Liver qi stagnation, removal of the pathogen or moving qi will usually quickly alleviate the condition. In the deficient patterns, gradual strengthening of the organs involved in fluid metabolism and propulsion is the therapeutic aim. In this case persistent treatment must be given, often for a number of months, to produce a lasting result.

In cases of acute retention, tui na or electro-acupuncture therapy may be applied. If this fails, hospitalisation and catheterisation will be required as kidney damage can occur quite quickly. In mild cases (especially in children) sitting in a warm bath or listening to a running tap can induce urination.

Tui na
Ren.6 (qi hai), Ren.5 (shen men), Ren.4 (guan yuan)
Press from above towards the pubic bone. Be sure to have some implement to contain the urine, as this technique may cause immediate release.

Electro-acupuncture
St.28 (shui dao) ~ Sp.6 (san yin jiao) or Sp.9 (yan ling guan) with high frequency stimulation. St.28 (shui dao) should be needled cautiously and superficially in those with very distended bladders. This technique may cause immediate release of urine.
14.1 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Damp Heat in the Bladder causes difficult urination in two ways. First, Damp, being a yin pathogen, obstructs the movement of fluid, and second, Heat burns the delicate tissues of the urethra causing pain. If pain is the prominent feature, see Painful Urination Syndrome, p.358.
• Chronic or unresolved Damp Heat can lurk in the Bladder and eventually congeal into urinary stones (see Stone Painful Urination Syndrome p.370) which will obstruct the passage of urine.

Clinical features
• acute, scanty, concentrated urine that is difficult to pass and comes in drips; urination may be hot or burning and in severe cases almost no urine is passed.
• suprapubic fullness and discomfort
• lower back pain
• fullness in the chest and epigastrium
• poor appetite, nausea
• bitter taste in the mouth
• thirst with little desire to drink
• tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
• in some cases there may be fever (especially in the afternoon), or alternating fever and chills
T red with a greasy yellow coat
P slippery and rapid or soft and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Damp Heat
Promote urination

Prescription
BA ZHENG SAN 八正散
(Dianthus Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qu mai (Herba Dianthi) 星麦</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hua shi (Talcum) 滑石</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bian xu (Herba Polygoni Avicularis) 碧玉散</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (hao bian 包煎).
(Source: Zhong Yi Ni Ke Lu Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications
• With severe difficulty urinating, or urinary retention, increase the dosage of mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通, hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 and bian xu (Herba Polygoni Avicularis) 碧玉散 by 30% and add huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g and rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g.
• If the bowels are loose, delete da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 藤黄.
• If the tongue coat is very thick, yellow and greasy, add huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 12g and cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 12g.
• Irritability, restlessness, insomnia, mouth and tongue ulcers and erosions indicate that Heat is affecting the Heart—add sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 15g and huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.
• Alternating fever and chills, nausea and dizziness indicate that Damp Heat is obstructing the shao yang level. Add chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 蔡胡 9g, huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g and ban xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 6g to harmonise shao yang.
• With mild bleeding, add xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 9g and bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 12g.
• In prolonged cases, Damp Heat can damage yin. If there are signs of Kidney yin deficiency in addition to Damp Heat (peeled tongue or peeled tongue root, night sweats, afternoon fever and heat in the palms and soles), add sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 20g, huai niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 怀牛膝 12g and mu zhen zi (Fructus Ligustri Lucidi) 女贞子 12g, or nourish yin and clear Damp Heat with ZI SHEN TONG GUAN WAN (Nourish Kidney, Open the Gate Pill 滋肾通关丸) modified.

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................ 15g
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 .............................................. 12g
niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 ......................................... 12g
zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 ............................ 12g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 .................................................. 9g
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 ............................................. 3g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (hao bian 包煎).
(Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Ni Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions
Toxic Damp
• If the Damp Heat obstructs and impedes the transformation of san jiao qi, leading to accumulation of Toxic Dampness, there will be symptoms of difficult urination or anuria, darkish complexion, no appetite, lethargy, listlessness, fullness in the chest, irritability, nausea, vomiting,
...
bad breath that smells of urine, and in severe cases delerium and confusion. In such cases, the correct treatment is to clear turbidity and harmonise the Stomach, clear Damp Heat, and open the bowels to drain Toxins with 

**HUANG LIAN WEN DAN TANG** (Coptis Decotion to Warm the Gall Bladder 黄连温胆汤) modified.

- **huang lian** (Rhizoma Coptidis 黄连) .......................... 6g
- **zhu ru** (Caulis Bambuseae in Taeniis 竹茹) .................. 9g
- **zhi shi** (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii 枳实) .......... 9g
- **ban xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae 茅豆) ................. 9g
- **chen pi** (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae 陈皮) .......... 9g
- **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos 禾苓) ....................... 12g
- **che qian zi** (Semen Plantaginis 车前子) ................... 12g
- **bai mao gen** (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindricae 白茅根) 30g
- **mu tong** (Caulis Mutong 木通) ............................. 6g
- **da huang** (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄) ................. 6g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralsis 甘草) .............. 3g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (bao jial). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Xu Ke Xue)

**Patent medicines**

- **Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian** 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
- **Long Dan Xie Gan Wan** 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- **Dao Chi Pian** 导赤片 (Tao Chih Pien)
- **Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian** 穿心连抗炎片
  (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
- **Qian Lie Xian Wan** 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
  - combined with one of the above formulae for prostate swelling

**Acupuncture**

- GB.41 (zun lin qi), SJ.5 (wai guan), Ren.3 (zhong ji -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -).
- Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Kid.6 (zhao hai), BL.28 (gang guang shu -).
- Bl.22 (san jiao shu -), Kid.7 (fu liu -), St.28 (shui dao -)

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat type difficult urination include urethritis, cystitis, the inflammatory stage of urinary calculi, pyelonephritis and prostatitis.
- Because this is an acute condition treatment needs to be prompt and frequent. Acupuncture can be applied twice a day or more if necessary and herbs the same. With acute retention, strong stimulation should be applied to acupuncture points on the abdomen so that de qi travels to the bladder. A useful way to approach treatment is to use acupuncture to move Bladder qi and relieve the retention, followed by herbs to clear Damp Heat.
- Sometimes this treatment can induce sudden emptying of the bladder. It should be remembered that complete retention of urine constitutes a medical emergency and catheterisation is necessary if other therapies fail.
- In cases with severe infection, especially that involving the kidneys, antibiotics may be necessary to quickly cool Heat. Once the infection is controlled, treatment may be given to clear Damp.
14.2 OBSTRUCTION OF LUNG QI

Pathophysiology
- This condition often (but not always) follows an acute febrile disease, usually a sore throat or upper respiratory tract infection. The pathogenic factor (generally Heat) obstructs the Lungs and prevents the normal descent of Lung qi. The fluids the Lungs should send to the Kidneys accumulate in the upper jiao. This pattern is also known as Wind oedema.

Clinical features
- difficult or scanty urination initially accompanied by orbital and facial oedema; this may be followed by oedema of the limbs or whole body; any urine that is passed tends to be pale
- fever and chills
- dry sore throat
- cough
- dyspnoea
- aching joints and muscles, heaviness in the limbs
- thin white coat
- floating and tight, or floating, slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Restore the descent of Lung qi
Open the water passages

Prescription
YUE BI JIA ZHU TANG 越婢加术汤
(Atractylodes Combination)

This formula is selected when the exterior symptoms are obvious.

shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 .......................................................... 30g
ma huang* (Herba Ephedrae) 麻黄 ............................................... 12g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ...................... 12g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .......................... 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ............................... 6g
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ....................................... 5pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine)

Modifications
- Without obvious Heat, or with obvious Cold (i.e. chilliness, muscle aches, no sweating and a floating, tight pulse), delete shi gao.

QING FEI YIN 清肺饮
(Clear the Lungs Decoction)

This formula is selected if internal Heat affects the Lungs. The pattern is characterised by difficult urination or anuria, fullness or tightness in the chest, shortness of breath, rapid rough breathing, thirst, dry mouth and throat, cough, possible constipation, a yellow tongue coat and a slippery or soft and rapid pulse. The correct treatment is to clear Heat from the Lungs and aid the descent of Lung qi.

sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 桑白皮 .......................... 20g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria cocos) 茯苓 ..................................... 20g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ............................ 15g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 女主 .............................. 15g
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 千金子 ...................................... 15g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 ........................ 9g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 .............................................. 6g
dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 ............................ 3g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (bao jia). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Linn Chiang Shen Go)

Modifications
- With irritability, restlessness and a red tongue tip (indicating some Heat affecting the Heart), add lian zi xin (Plumula Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子心 2g and huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.
- If Lung yin has been damaged (red dry tongue with little or no coat), add sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 12g and bai he (Bulbus Lili) 百合 12g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 附子 9g and xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 9g.
- With nasal obstruction and headache, add bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 6g and jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 6g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

With qi deficiency
- If neither of the above treatments begin to increase urinary output and decrease the oedema within a few days, or if the patient is lethargic, feels heavy and is sweating freely, indications are that qi is too weak to move fluids correctly. The correct treatment is to bolster wei qi and promote urination with FANG JI HUANG QI TANG (Stephania and Astragalus Combination) modified.

huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranae) 黄芪 .................................. 30g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ...................... 12g
### 14.3 LIVER QI STAGNATION

**Pathophysiology**
- Difficulty with urination can be caused by disruptions to the circulation of Liver qi because the Liver channel passes through the genitals and Bladder area. Sudden rage (expressed or more likely unexpressed) may provoke an acute episode of urinary difficulty or retention. It may also occur as repeated difficulty in someone who is stressed or frustrated.

**Clinical features**
- Urinary difficulty or retention that is initiated or aggravated by anger or stress
- Sensation of tightness or fullness in the chest (often described as difficulty in drawing a satisfying breath)
- Hypochondriac discomfort or tightness
- Frequent sighing
- Dizziness
- Occasional fatigue (although the patient may feel better for exercise)
- Irritability or depression
- Abdominal distension, flatulence
- Alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- Women may experience irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- All symptoms are aggravated by stress
- T normal or dark (qing 青)

**Prescription**

**Regulate and invigorate Liver qi**

**Promote urination**

**CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN** 柴胡舒肝散

**(Bupleurum and Cyperus Formula) plus**

**WEI LING TANG** 胃苓汤

**(Magnolia and Hoelen Combination)**

This prescription is suitable for mild cases or recurrent urinary difficulty with stress.

- **chai hu** (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................................. 9g
- **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .................................. 12g
- **zhi ke** (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枸杞 ........................................... 9g
- **xiang fu** (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 香附 ...................................... 9g
**fu ling** (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 9g
**ze xie** (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .......................... 9g
**zhu ling** (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 猪苓 .......................... 9g
**bai zhu** (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 .......................... 9g
**cang zhu** (Rhizoma Atractylodes) 苍术 .......................... 9g
**chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chaunxiang) 川芎 .......................... 6g
**chen pi** (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .......................... 6g
**gui po** (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 .......................... 6g
**zhong kan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 党参 .......................... 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine)

**CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN** 柴胡舒肝散
**(Bupleurum and Cyperus Formula) plus**
**CHEN XIANG SAN** 沉香散
**(Aquilaria Powder)**

This prescription is selected for more severe or acute cases with significant urinary difficulty or retention.

**shi wei** (Folium Pyroside) 二至 .......................... 30g
**wang bu liu xing** (Semen Vaccariae Segetalis) 王不留行 .......................... 15g
**dong kui zi** (Semen Abutili seu Malvae) 冬葵子 .......................... 15g
**hua shi** (Talcum) 滑石 .......................... 15g
**bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .......................... 9g
**chai hu** (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .......................... 9g
**dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 9g
**zhi ke** (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枳壳 .......................... 9g
**xiang fu** (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundi) 香附 .......................... 9g
**chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chaunxiang) 川芎 .......................... 6g
**chen pi** (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .......................... 6g
**chen xiang** (Lignum Aquilariae) 沉香 .......................... 3g
**zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 党参 .......................... 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine)

**Modifications (apply to both prescriptions)**

- If the patient is robust, add **yu jin** (Tuber Curcuma) 郁金 9g and **wu yao** (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药 9g.
- If stagnant qi transforms into Heat, with facial flushing, temper outbursts, red edges on the tongue and a rapid wiry pulse, add **long dan cao** (Radix Gentianae Longdancaoa) 龙胆草 6g, **mu dan pi** (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g and **shan zhi zi** (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山楂子 9g.

**Patent medicines**

* **Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan** 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)
* **Shu Gan Wan** 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan)
* **Mu Xiang Shun Qi Wan** 木香顺气丸 (Aplotaxis Carminative Pills)
* **Xiao Yao Wan** 小消丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
* **Qian Lie Xian Wan** 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)

- combined with one of the above formulae for prostate swelling

**Acupuncture**

Ren.12 (zhong wan -), PC.6 (nei guan -), Ren.3 (zhong jie -), Liv.2 (xing jian -), St.30 (qi chong), Liv.14 (qi men), SJ.6 (zhi gong -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.3 (tai chong -)

**Clinical notes**

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Liver qi stagnation type difficult urination include stress related dysuria and hysterical anuria.
- Acupuncture can be very effective at relieving urinary difficulty caused by Liver qi stagnation. For recurrent cases herbs may be added. The origin of any emotional imbalance or stress must be addressed to prevent recurrence.
14.4 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- This pattern follows damage to the urinary tract by trauma, surgery, infection or urinary tract stones. Blood stagnation can also follow prolonged qi stagnation, Heat or Damp Heat. If there are urinary tract stones, see also Stone Painful Urination Syndrome, p.372.

Clinical features
- Urinary difficulty or periodic obstruction to the passage of urine
- The urinary stream is thin and there may be fixed stabbing pain upon voiding; the urine may be occasionally dark or purplish or contain blood clots
- Suprapubic fullness, distension and pain, the pain is localised and stabbing
- There may be lower abdominal masses, and women may experience dysmenorrhea
- Pain in the iliac fossae with palpation
- Thin purple vessels (spider naevi) on the abdomen, inner ankle and knee
- Darkish, purplish or with purplish or brown spots and a thin coat, sublingual vessels are distended and dark
- Choppy or wiry

Treatment principle
- Expel Blood stagnation and obstruction
- Promote urination

Prescription

DAI DI DANG WAN 代抵当丸
(Substituted Resistance Pill) modified

dang gui wei (tail of Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归尾 ........... 15g
chuan shan jia (Squama Manitis Pentactyldae) 穿山甲 ........... 15g
niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 .................. 15g
tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 .................................. 10g
da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 .......................... 10g
mang xiao (Mirabilimium) 芒硝 ................................ 10g
hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 .......................... 10g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 6-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted, in which case mang xiao is dissolved in the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服). (Source: Zheng Yi Niu Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications
- If the condition is very prolonged and accompanied by qi and Blood deficiency, use dang gui shen (main part of the root of Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归身 15g, and add dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 12g and huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 15g.
- With mild haematuria, add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 6g and hu po (Succinum) 琥珀 3g (add both to strained decoction).
- If there are small stones or gravel in the urine, add jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae) 金钱草 30-60g, hai jin sha (Spora Lygodii Japonici) 海金沙 30g, dong kui zi (Semen Abutili seu Malvae) 冬葵子 9g, qu mai (Herba Dianthi) 罂粟 9g and bian xu (Herba Polygoni Avicularis) 瞿麦 9g. See also Stone Painful Urination Syndrome, pp.367-375.

Patent medicines

Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消癥瘤丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)
Tao He Cheng Qi San 桃核承气散 (Persica and Rhubarb Combination)
Sheng Tian Qi Pian 生田七片 (Raw Tian Qi Ginseng Pills)
Dan Shen Pian 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 女科乌金丸 (Woo Garm Yuen Medical Pills)
Qian Lie Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)

- Combined with one of the above formulae for prostate swelling

Acupuncture

Ren.3 (zhong ji -), St.29 (gui hai -), St.30 (qi chong -), Sp.10 (xue hai -), Bl.17 (ge shu -), Bl.30 (hai bian shu -), Bl.47 (shi shi -), Liv.3 (tai chong -), GB.25 (jing men -), LI.4 (be gu -)

Clinical notes
- This pattern is the result of obstruction to the urinary tract. The cause may be structural (from stones, blood clots, tumours, post traumatic or infectious urethral stricture or stenosis, prostatic hypertrophy) or functional (congenital neuromuscular defects). It can also occur due to endometriosis (endometrial tissue affecting the ureter or bladder) or polyps in the bladder. Referral for full investigation is necessary to assess for malignancy.
- The prognosis in this pattern is variable depending on the underlying cause. Strictures and tumours of the prostate or bladder should be treated with a combination of Western medicine and TCM.
**14.5 SPLEEN YANG DEFICIENCY**

**Pathophysiology**
- In this pattern, there are several possible mechanisms that can give rise to difficult urination, each with its own distinctive features.
- First, fluid movement and metabolism in general are disturbed, and instead of going to the Bladder for processing, fluids congeal into Dampness or accumulate in the limbs and tissues. In this case there will be oedema and scanty urine. This is the most common mechanism by which Spleen deficiency causes difficult urination.
- Second, weak Spleen yang can fail to support the Lungs and wei qi. Fluids may be lost through the surface as sweat and not reach the Urinary Bladder at all. In this case there will be excessive sweating in addition to the Spleen yang deficiency signs.
- Third, when yang is weak the general movement of qi will be weak. In this case, the urine will not necessarily be scanty, but will be hard to push out; that is, there is not enough power behind the expulsion of urine. This pattern often occurs post surgically or postpartum and may be associated with bladder prolapse.

**Clinical features**
- scanty difficult urination, the patient feels the need to urinate but is unable to, or can only urinate a very small amount
- generalised oedema which is more noticeable in the limbs and below the waist, the oedema is usually pitting; in milder cases the patient may only notice puffiness of the hands and may complain that rings feel tight on the fingers
- waxy pale complexion
- fatigue and lethargy
- poor appetite
- abdominal distension
- loose stools with undigested food
- cold extremities
- dragging or sinking sensation in the lower abdomen
- bladder prolapse in some cases

T pale and swollen with a thin or thick white coat
P weak and thready

**Treatment principle**
Warm the Spleen to promote transformation and distribution of fluids

---

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**Spleen qi deficiency**
- With little or no oedema and no obvious Cold symptoms, Spleen qi deficiency is the main problem. The severity of the urinary difficulty varies with energy levels. When the patient is rested and relatively more energetic, the urine will be expelled more effectively, when tired the urine will slow or cease. The correct treatment is to ‘raise the clear to aid descent of the turbid’ by invigorating Spleen qi and assisting urination with BU ZHONG YI QI TANG (Ginseng and Astragalus Combination 本中益气汤) modified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meditation</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tong cao (Medulla Tetrapanacis Papyrifera)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (zhan jiang 先煎). (Source: Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine)
14.6 KIDNEY YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- When weak kidney yang fails to support the metabolism and transformation of fluids, these accumulate in the tissues (particularly of the lower body) as oedema and the volume of urine will be accordingly reduced.
- When yang is weak the general movement of qi will be weak. In this case, the urine will not necessarily be scanty, but will hard to push out, that is, there is not enough power behind the expulsion of urine. The same mechanism occurs in spleen yang deficiency, and these patterns often coexist, especially in chronic cases.

Clinical features
- difficult or forceless expulsion of urine, to the point of retention in severe cases; the urge to void may be frequent, but urination is unable to get started, or once started the stream is weak and broken; urination feels incomplete
- pitting oedema, which is worse below the waist
- waxy pale complexion
- listlessness and fatigue
- aversion to cold, cold extremities
- lower abdominal distension
- constipation or loose stools
- weak, cold and sore lower back and knees
- pale, wet and swollen
- T deep and thready or slow and weak, particularly in the proximal positions

Treatment principle
Warm yang, benefit qi
Tonify the Kidney and promote urination

Prescription

JI SHENG SHEN QI WAN 济生肾气丸  (Kidney Qi Pill from Formulas to Aid the Living)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae glutinosae Conquita)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Modifications

- If yuan qi is greatly depleted, add hong shen (steamed Radix Ginseng) 红参 15g, lu jiao pian* (Cornu Cervi 鹿角片 12g, xian mao (Rhizoma Curculiginis Orchidoidis) 仙茅 20g and xian ling pi (Herba Epimedi) 仙灵脾 20g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Acute, following a Wind attack

- Relatively acute urinary difficulty can follow an attack of pathogenic Wind Cold or Wind Heat in a patient with pre-existing Kidney yang deficiency. The features are sudden urinary difficulty, aversion to cold (especially on the back), generalised body aches, no sweating, a pale tongue with little coat and a deep, tight, or floating and tight pulse. The correct treatment is to support yang, clear the exterior and promote urination with MA HUANG FU ZI XI XIN TANG (Ma Hwang, Asarum and Prepared Aconite Decoction 麻黄附子细辛汤, p.24) plus niu xi (Radix Aichrysonthis Bidentateae) 牛膝 12g and che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 12g.

Water Toxin

- If Kidney yang is very weak, and the ‘qi transformation’ function of the san jiao and Bladder is failing, this may lead to accumulation of ‘Water Toxin’. The features are very scanty urine or anuria, dizziness, vomiting of clear fluids, loss of appetite, restlessness, and in severe cases, confusion. There may also be constipation. The correct treatment is to warm and tonify Kidney and Spleen yang and stop vomiting (and purge accumulation) with a mixture of FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN (Aconitae, Ginseng and Ginger Formula 附子理中丸, p.56) and WU ZHU YU TANG (Evodia Combination 吴茱萸汤, p.63). Herbs that promote urination and descend turbidity may also be added, for example che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 15g and mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 6g. With constipation da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g may be added.

Patent medicines

- Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills)
- Qian Lie Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
  - combined with the above formula for prostate swelling

Acupuncture

Du.26 (ren zhong), Du.4 (ming men ▲), Bl.23 (shen shu + ▲), Ren.3 (zhong ji), Kid.7 (ji lien -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), Ren.6 (qi hai + ▲), Bl.53 (wei yang + ▲), Ren.9 (shui fen ▲)

- A moxa-box over the lower abdomen may be useful.

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yang deficiency type difficult urination include chronic glomerular, interstitial or diffuse nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, benign prostatic hypertrophy, hypothyroidism and chronic prostatitis.
- This pattern can respond well to correct treatment, which will usually need to continue for some months. Conditions like hypothyroidism can be difficult and may require a combination of Western and Chinese medicine.
14.7 KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- In this pattern, lack of yin and fluids and the resulting deficient Heat applied to the remaining fluids in the Bladder, gives rise to scantiness and concentration of urine, and difficult urination.
- This pattern frequently co-exists with Liver qi stagnation, Damp Heat or stagnant Blood. Liver qi stasis can easily generate Heat which injures yin. Damp Heat may smoulder in the lower jiao and gradually damage yin.

Clinical features
- Scanty, concentrated urine with difficulty initiating a flow, or a frequent desire to urinate with only small amounts of urine expelled. There may also be with mild oedema.
- dry mouth and throat
- restlessness and irritability
- insomnia
- facial flushing, malar flush
- night sweats
- sensations of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- dizziness and tinnitus
- soreness or weakness of the lower back and knees, heel pain
- tendency to dry stools or constipation
T red and dry with little or no coat
P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish and tonify Kidney yin
Promote urination

Prescription
LIU WEI DI HUANG WAN 六味地黄丸
(Rehmannia Six Formula) plus
ZHU LING TANG 猪苓汤
(Polyergus Combination)

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitectae) 熟地 ........................................ 24g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药 .................................................. 12g
shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 .................................................. 12g
fu ling (Sclerotium Portia Cocos) 茯苓 ................................................................. 9g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ......................................................... 9g
ze xie (Rhizoma Allsmatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ........................................................ 9g
zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 猪苓 ..................................................... 9g
hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ......................................................................................... 9g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 ................................................................. 9g

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted before being added to the strained decoction (yang hua hua ren). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

Modifications
- With Damp Heat, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 9g and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g.
- With qi stagnation, add wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifolia) 乌药 6g, chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 6g and xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 香附 9g.

Patent medicines
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
Qian Lin Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
- combined with one of the above formulae for prostate swelling

Acupuncture
BL.23 (shen shu +), Ren.3 (zhong ji +), Ren.6 (qi hai +), Ren.4 (quan yun +),
HT.5 (tong li), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Kid.6 (zhao hai), Lu.7 (lie que),
Sp.6 (tai yin jiao +)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yin deficiency type difficult urination include menopausal syndrome, chronic interstitial cystitis and post febrile disease retention.
- Kidney yin deficiency patterns can respond well to correct treatment, although in most cases treatment needs to continue for prolonged periods. Interstitial cystitis is very difficult to treat successfully.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR DIFFICULT URINATION AND URINARY RETENTION

Damp Heat - *Ba Zheng San* 八正散
  • with Toxic Damp - *Huang Lian Wen Dan Tang* 黄连温胆汤

Obstruction of Lung *qi* (by Heat) - *Yue Bi Jia Zhu Tang* 越婢加术汤
  • with severe Heat - *Qing Fei Yin* 清肺饮
  • in stubborn cases - *Fang Ji Huang Qi Tang* 防己黄芪汤

Liver *qi* stagnation - *Chai Hu Shu Gan San* 柴胡疏肝散
  • plus, in mild cases - *Wei Ling Tang* 胃苓汤
  • plus, in severe cases - *Chen Xiang San* 沉香散

Blood stagnation - *Dai Di Dong Tang* 代抵当汤

Spleen *yang* deficiency - *Shi Pi Yin* 实牌饮
  • Spleen *qi* deficiency - *Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang* 补中益气汤

Kidney *yang* deficiency - *Ji Sheng Shen Qi Wan* 济生肾气丸
  • acute following a Wind attack - *Ma Huang Fu Zi Xi Xin Tang* 麻黄附子细辛汤

Kidney *yin* deficiency
  • *Liu Wei Di Huang Wan* 六味地黄丸 plus *Zhu Ling Tang* 猪苓汤

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
FREQUENT URINATION, INCONTINENCE

Frequent urination refers to an obvious increase, over a period of time in the urge to void urine. On average, most people with normal urinary function urinate several times daily, the frequency depending on the volume and (diuretic) nature of fluids consumed, and the weather. In general, however, an increase in frequency is judged subjectively by the patient, rather than by being compared with an objective average rate. Depending on the underlying cause, frequency may develop slowly, or become a problem quite suddenly. In severe cases the urge to void may occur four or five times per hour. The volume of urine may be profuse, normal or scanty.

Incontinence refers to lack of control over urination. Leakage of varying amounts of urine may occur without warning or immediately on perceiving the urge to urinate. The latter is called urge incontinence. Leakage which occurs as a result of the increased intra-abdominal pressure caused by sneezing, coughing or jumping is called stress incontinence. Incontinence is often a complication of long term frequency.

The mechanisms behind nocturia and nocturnal enuresis are the same as for frequency and incontinence. Nocturia refers to increased frequency and volume of urine at night. In general, needing to urinate more than once per night is deemed pathological. Nocturia should be carefully distinguished from situations where the patient sleeps poorly and gets up to urinate simply because they are awake. Nocturnal enuresis is urinary incontinence during sleep and is mostly seen in children.

In TCM terms, urinary frequency can be due to the irritating effects of Heat or Liver qi stagnation on the Bladder, or from failure of yang to fully process and metabolise Fluids. Similarly, nocturia represents a failure of yang within yin, that is, the essential yang urine concentrating function that continues at night (yin) to allow unbroken sleep. Nocturia is mostly associated with weak Kidney yang.

Urinary incontinence and nocturnal enuresis have similar mechanisms. As with frequency and nocturia, they may be associated with weakness of the yang in transforming fluids, but with the additional feature of weakness of the lower yin (in this cases the urethra), which simply cannot hold urine in. Weakness of either the Kidney or Spleen may contribute to this secondary mechanism as the Kidney controls the lower yin orifices and the Spleen both quality of muscle tone and the lifting of organs against gravity.

AETIOLOGY

Kidney deficiency

Weak Kidney yang or qi may be an inherited condition or may develop as a result of age, chronic illness, too much exposure to cold conditions or excessive lifting or standing (particularly if this occurs in a cold environment or on cold floors or at night). Kidney yang or qi may also be damaged by excessive sexual activity or in women who have many pregnancies. In some cases, particularly in younger people, Kidney qi may be weakened while Kidney yang remains intact, in which case the Cold symptoms are not seen.

Kidney yin becomes damaged through febrile disease, overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep and use of recreational drugs. Kidney yin may also be weakened by ageing and excessive sexual activity, or pregnancies. Kidney deficiency can lead to nocturia, frequency, enuresis (especially congenital Kidney deficiency) and incontinence.

Damp Heat

Frequency of the Damp Heat type is usually acute, and is due to an external Damp Heat pathogen that invades through the tai yang (Bladder) channel, the leg yang channels or the local luo channels. Clinically, this may be associated with poor genital hygiene or transmission from a sexual partner. The Damp Heat can also be chronic, generated in the middle jiao by excessive, irregular or poor diet. Damp Heat in the lower jiao can also come from any prolonged Heat in the system, such as the Heat generated by yang deficiency, qi stagnation, or prolonged stagnation of Dampness. The Damp Heat irritates the Bladder, leading to frequency or in severe cases, incontinence.

Liver qi stagnation

Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions and stress disrupt both the circulation of Liver qi, and, because the Liver channel passes through the lower jiao, Bladder qi is affected. Liver qi stagnation tends to cause irritation of the Bladder leading to frequency.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BOX 15.1 SOME BIO MEDICAL CAUSES OF FREQUENT URINATION/INCONTINENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- cystitis/UTI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- prostatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- diabetes mellitus/insipidus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- benign prostatic hypertrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- diuretics (including nightcap alcohol or caffeine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- essential enuresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- irritable bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- bladder stones/tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- neurogenic bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Parkinson's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- post surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- interstitial cystitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- post menopausal atrophic changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-in the bladder and urethral wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
without copious or otherwise unusual urine.

Pre-existing stagnation (of qi and Blood) can be transferred from another pelvic organ to the Bladder. This is most commonly observed in women following hysterectomy, myomectomy or removal of ovarian cysts. The organ primarily affected by the stagnation is removed or repaired, but the condition that gave rise to the initial problem (that is qi and/or Blood stagnation) persists. The focus of pelvic symptoms then shifts from, for example the uterus with heavy periods and pain, to the Bladder.

**Spleen (and Lung) qi deficiency**

If Spleen qi is weak, it will fail to distribute fluids to the extremities and Lungs. These fluids sink to the lower jiao, accumulate in the Bladder and cause frequent urination or incontinence. If Lung qi is weak (as a direct result of Spleen qi deficiency or otherwise), there may be a chronic cough. The repeated coughing increases the downward pressure on the already sinking fluids leading to stress incontinence. In elderly patients there will usually be Kidney deficiency as well.

The Lungs, one of the organs involved in fluid metabolism, also have an energetic connection to the Bladder. Lung qi descends and takes a portion of the fluid (sent up by the Spleen) to the Kidneys for reprocessing, and sends a portion to the skin as sweat. If one pathway is unavailable (for example, when the pores are shut during cold weather), fluids will increase along the other. This can be seen in the simple observation that most people tend to urinate more frequently in cold weather. Similarly, when Lung qi is weak, allowing excessive sweating, urinary output often decreases.

---

**BOX 15.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Colour of urine**
- concentrated and dark - Damp Heat or yin deficiency
- pale or normal - Liver qi stagnation, Spleen (and Lung) or Kidney deficiency

**Aggravation**
- with stress - Liver qi stagnation
- with cold - Kidney deficiency
- with cough - Spleen and Lung deficiency
- when fatigued - deficiency patterns

**Common patterns**
- frequent urination - Kidney deficiency, Lung and Spleen deficiency, Liver qi stagnation, Damp Heat
- incontinence - Kidney deficiency, Lung and Spleen deficiency, Damp Heat
- nocturia - Kidney deficiency
- nocturnal enuresis - Kidney deficiency, Liver qi stagnation with Heat or Fire

---

**Figure 15.1** Summary of urinary frequency and incontinence patterns.
15.1 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Damp Heat in the Bladder can be acute or chronic. The chronic variety is more likely due to internally generated Damp Heat (particularly from a rich diet and alcohol), or unresolved, lingering external Damp Heat. Chronic Damp Heat in the Bladder produces milder symptoms than acute Damp Heat. In acute cases the symptoms may be localized in the Bladder and there may be few of the systemic symptoms listed below.
- In either case, the mechanisms are the same. Damp obstructs the normal process of qi transformation in the Bladder, while the Heat irritates the Bladder and its expanding nature forces Fluids outward, causing a sense of urgency and frequency.
- Depending on the balance of Dampness and Heat, the features will differ. When Heat predominates, urgency and dark scanty urine result. When Damp predominates, suprapubic fullness, a feeling of incomplete voiding and gastrointestinal symptoms result.

Clinical features
- in acute cases frequent, urgent, burning, scanty urination, which feels incomplete or dripping; in chronic cases burning and urgency may be mild or absent, or there may be a sense of urethral irritation or a feeling of constantly needing to urinate
- if there is incontinence, the urine is scanty, strong smelling and dark or cloudy
- suprapubic fullness and discomfort, lower back pain
- fullness or discomfort in the chest and epigastrium
- poor appetite, nausea, bitter taste in the mouth
- thirst with little desire to drink
- a tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
- acute cases may have fever (especially in the afternoon), or alternating fever and chills.

Treatment principle
Clear and drain Dampness and Heat

Prescription
BA ZHENG SAN 八正散

che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 ................................. 12g
huan xu (Herba Polygoni Avicularia) 槲寄生 ......................... 9g
qu mai (Herba Dianthi) 藜麦 ................................. 9g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 .................. 6g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ................................. 6g
zhi da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄 ...................... 6g
gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 3g
deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Effussi) 灯心草 .......................... 2g

Method: Decocction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (hao jia 包煎).
(Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

Modifications
- Alternating fever and chills, nausea, fatigue and dizziness indicate that Damp Heat is obstructing the shao yang level. Add chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g, huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g and ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 6g to harmonise shao yang.
- With slight (or occult) haematuria add xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 9g and bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindraceae) 白茅根 12g.

Patent medicines
Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Dao Chi Pian 导赤片 (Tao Chi Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

Acupuncture
Ren.3 (zhong ji), Liv.5 (li gou), Ht.8 (shao fu), Sp.6 (san yin jiao),
Bl.28 (pang guang shu), Sp.9 (yin ling quan), J.liv.2 (xing jian)
* for alternating fever and chills add SJ.5 (wai guan) and
GB.39 (xuan zhong) or GB.41 (yu lin qi)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat type frequent urination include urinary tract infection, urethritis, cystitis, pyelonephritis, gonorrhoeal urethritis and prostatitis.
- Generally responds well. Following resolution of chronic cases, Kidney tonification is useful to prevent recurrence.
15.2 LIVER QI STagnation

Pathophysiology
- This pattern is usually due to emotional factors, such as repressed anger, resentment and frustration, which disrupt the smooth circulation of Liver qi in general, and in particular in the lower jiao. As the Liver channel passes through the lower jiao, constraint of Liver qi can disrupt the smooth flow of Bladder qi. The main feature of this pattern is the clear influence of emotions.
- Liver qi stagnation often complicates other pathogenic entities, such as Dampness, Damp Heat, Spleen deficiency or yin deficiency, in which case a combined approach to treatment is necessary. The relative degree of qi stagnation should be assessed from the degree of influence that emotion and stress has on the frequency.

Clinical features
- urinary frequency that is initiated or aggravated by stress or emotional upset, urination feels incomplete or is hesitant
- fullness in the lower abdomen
- tightness or fullness in the chest, difficulty getting a satisfying breath
- hypochondriac discomfort or tightness, frequent sighing
- dizziness
- occasional fatigue (although patients often feel better with exercise)
- irritability or depression
- abdominal distension
- flatulence and alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- women may experience irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- all symptoms tend to be aggravated by stress
- T normal or dark (qing 青)
- P wiry

Treatment principle
Move and spread Liver qi

Prescription
Xiao Yao San 逍遥散
(Bupleurum and Angelica Formula) modified
- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ........................................ 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 ..................... 9g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephala) 白术 .......... 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .................................. 9g
- pao jiang (roasted Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 炮姜 ...... 6g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ....................................................... 6g
- wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifolii) 乌药 .......................... 6g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 .......................... 3g

Method: Decoction or powder. When decocted bo he is added just before the end of cooking (lou xia 后下). (Source: Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine)

Modifications
- With severe lower abdominal distension and fullness add, mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 6g and qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮 6g.
- With stagnant Blood (purplish spots on the tongue, venous congestion around the inner ankles and Sp.9 jin ling quan), add hong hua (Ilos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 9g, chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 12g and chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 9g.
- In men with prostatic hypertrophy, add two or three herbs to 'soften hardness and disperse swelling' from the following list: mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 12g, zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillarii Thunbergii) 浙贝母 9g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 12g, chuan shan jia (Squama Manitis) 仙茅甲 9g, wa leng zhi (Concha Arcae) 瓦楞子 12g, wang bu liu xing (semen Vaccariae Setegalis) 王不留行 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- Enuresis in nervous, anxious, hyperactive or excitable children may be due to Liver qi stagnation with Heat or Fire. The features are frequent enuresis in an energetic child with a ruddy complexion, yellow urine, restlessness at night, insomnia, nightmares, irritability, tendency to constipation, may be a sore or inflamed urinary tract and a red tongue. The treatment is to clear Heat from the Liver with a formula like LONG DAN XIE GAN TAMG (Gentiana Combination, p.500) or CHAI HU JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG (Bupleurum and Dragon Bone Combination, p.816) and dietary regulation. Add astringents like jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae) 金樱子 and sang piao xiao (Ootheca Mantidis) 桑螵蛸.

Patent medicines
- Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)
- Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan)
- Xiao Yao Wan逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan 加味逍遥丸 (Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan)
**15.3 KIDNEY (QI) YANG DEFICIENCY**

Pathophysiology
- If the qi or yang of the Kidney is weak, the control of the lower yang orifices may be compromised leading to leakage of urine or incontinence. Kidney yang plays a very important role in fluid metabolism and transformation, thus weakness of yang will result in excess fluid accumulation in the Bladder necessitating frequent voiding of large quantities of urine.
- Kidney deficiency patterns are frequently complicated by Spleen deficiency. When the Spleen is also weak, the muscle tone of the urethral sphincter may be compromised, and urine cannot be held up against gravity. This dual deficiency often leads to incontinence of urine.
- Depending on the degree of deficiency, either qi or yang may be weak. In younger individuals, qi deficiency is more common and there are fewer (or none) cold symptoms.

Clinical features
- Frequent, copious or scanty, clear urine, incontinence or nocturia with profuse clear urine
- The urge to urinate may increase with exposure to cold and is worse with prolonged standing and lifting
- When urine is scanty there will be oedema
- Waxy pale complexion
- Listlessness and fatigue
- Aversion to cold, cold extremities
- Lower abdominal distension
- Constipation or loose stools
- Weak, cold and sore lower back and knees
- T pale, wet and swollen
- P deep and thready or slow and weak, particularly in the proximal positions

Treatment principle
Warm, strengthen and consolidate Kidney yang
Astringe fluids as necessary

Prescription
YOU GUI WAN 右归丸
*(Euphema and Rehmannia Formula)* modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu jiao jiao (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.3 KIDNEY (QI) YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- If the qi or yang of the Kidney is weak, the control of the lower jin orifices may be compromised leading to leakage of urine or incontinence. Kidney yang plays a very important role in fluid metabolism and transformation, thus weakness of yang will result in excess fluid accumulation in the Bladder necessitating frequent voiding of large quantities of urine.
- Kidney deficiency patterns are frequently complicated by Spleen deficiency. When the Spleen is also weak, the muscle tone of the urethral sphincter may be compromised, and urine cannot be held up against gravity. This dual deficiency often leads to incontinence of urine.
- Depending on the degree of deficiency, either qi or yang may be weak. In younger individuals, qi deficiency is more common and there are fewer (or none) cold symptoms.

Clinical features
- frequent, copious or scanty, clear urine, incontinence or nocturia with profuse clear urine
- the urge to urinate may increase with exposure to cold and is worse with prolonged standing and lifting
- when urine is scanty there will be oedema
- waxy pale complexion
- listlessness and fatigue
- aversion to cold, cold extremities
- lower abdominal distension
- constipation or loose stools
- weak, cold and sore lower back and knees
- T pale, wet and swollen
- P deep and thready or slow and weak, particularly in the proximal positions

Treatment principle
Warm, strengthen and consolidate Kidney yang
Astringe fluids as necessary

Prescription
YOU GUI WAN 右归丸
(Eisooema and Rehmannia Formula) modified

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate) 熟地 240g
- lu jiao jiao* (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum) 鹿角胶 120g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 120g
- gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 120g
tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis) 蒿子.......................... 120g
du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲.......................... 120g
shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸.......................... 90g
dang gu (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归............................... 90g
sha yuan ji li (Semen Astragali Complanati) 沙苑蒺藜............. 90g
fu pen zi (Fructus Rubi Chinig) 复盆子................................. 90g
chao sang piao xiao (dry fried Ootheca Mantidis) 炒桑螵蛸......... 60g
zhi fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子............. 60-180g
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂.............................. 60-120g

Method: Grind herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with an 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted zhi fu zi is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xian jian 先煎).

SANG PIAO XIA SAN 桑螵蛸散
(Mantis Egg Case Powder)

This formula is selected when Kidney and Heart qi deficiency is the main problem. This pattern is common in children or young people (often a congenital weakness). The features are frequent urination or nocturnal enuresis with dream-disturbed sleep, occasional cloudy urine, forgetfulness, disorientation, a pink or pale tongue with a thin white coat and a thready weak pulse.

sang piao xiao (Ootheca Mantidis) 桑螵蛸.......................... 9g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓................................. 9g
dang gu (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归............................... 9g
yuan zhixi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志......................... 6g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲...................... 6g
duan long gu (Calcined Os Draconis) 炙龙骨......................... 12g
dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参......................... 12g
zhi gui ban (honey fried Piastrum Testudinis) 炙龟板............. 15g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications (apply to both formulas, where not already included)

- In stubborn cases, add yi zhi ren (Fructus Alpiniae Oxyphyllae) 益智仁 90(9)g and bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoralae Cotylifoliae) 补骨脂 90(9)g.
- With Spleen deficiency (diarrhea with undigested food, abdominal distension, poor appetite, indigestion, daytime frequency and nocturia or incontinence), add two or three of the following herbs: huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 180(18)g, sha yuan ji li (Semen Astragali Complanati) 沙苑蒺藜 90(9)g, sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 升麻 60(6)g, dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 120(12)g, bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 90(9)g and gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 60(6)g, or combine with BU ZHONG YI QI TANG (Ginseng and Astragalus Combination 补中益气汤 modified, p.454).
- In men with prostatic hypertrophy, add two or three herbs to ‘soften hardness and disperse swelling’ from the following: mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 120(12)g, zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 浙贝母 90(9)g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 120(12)g, chuan shan jia (Squama Manitis) 蛤蚧甲 90(9)g, wa leng zi (Concha Arciae) 瓦楞子 120(12)g, wu bu liu xing (semem Vaccariae Segetalis) 五不留行 90(9)g.

Patent medicines

Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills)
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
Ning Xin Bu Shen Wan 宁心补肾丸 (Bo San Yuen Medical Pills)
Jin Sui Gu Jing Wan 金银固精丸 (Chin So Ku Ching Wan)
- this last formula (which is primarily astringent) and one of the above patent formulae are generally taken together
Qian Liu Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
- combined with one of the above formulae for prostate swelling

Acupuncture

Bl.23 (shen shu + △), Du.4 (ming men + △), Ren.4 (quan yuan + △), Kid.3 (Tai xi +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), SI.3 (hui xi), Du.26 (ren zong), Kid.11 (heng ge)
- for enuresis of a Kidney deficiency type in children, SI.3 (hui xi) is often enough to strengthen the du mai and stop the leakage

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yang deficiency type frequent urination include chronic glomerular, interstitial or diffuse nephritis, nephrological syndrome, benign prostatic hypertrophy, hypothyroidism, diabetes insipidus and nocturnal enuresis.
- Kidney yang deficiency frequent urination often responds well to correct TCM treatment. Conditions like hypothyroidism can be difficult and may require a combination of Western and Chinese medicine.
- Bladder training programs have a high degree of success in improving incontinence, and are appropriate for chronic syndromes. This approach involves strengthening the muscles of the pelvic floor and desensitising the detrusor muscle. In addition, abstaining from diuretic substances and irritants, like coffee and tea, is important.
15.4 KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Heat (from Kidney yin deficiency) concentrates Fluids in the Bladder, and at the same time, the expanding nature of Heat forces urine out. The weakness of Kidney yin also means the ‘lower yin’ orifices are not consolidated, allowing leakage of urine. This pattern is most common in middle aged and elderly women.

Clinical features
- frequent, scanty yellow urine, possibly with a sensation of heat or irritation, incontinence may occur as the deficiency progresses
- dry mouth and throat
- restlessness
- insomnia
- sensations of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- facial flushing, malar flush, night sweats
- dizziness
- tinnitus
- soreness or weakness of the lower back and knees, heel pain
- tendency to dry stools or constipation
- red and dry with little or no coat
- thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish and tonify Kidney yin
Clear deficient Heat

Prescription

ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八味丸
(Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquiae) 熟地</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Cori Officinalis) 山茱萸</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria cocos) 苡苓</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Radix Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.

(Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If the urine is very frequent, add two or three of the following astrigent herbs: mu li (Concha Ostreae 粉蛤) 90g, wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis 乌药) 50g, jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae 金樱子) 50g, or qian shi (Semen Euryales Fericis 金实) 90g.
- In men with prostatic hypertrophy, add two or three herbs to ‘soften hardness and disperse swelling’ from the following list: mu li (Concha Ostreae 粉蛤) 120g, zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii 眼珠母) 90g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae 玄参) 120g, chuan shan jia (Squama Manitis 穿山甲) 90g, and wu wei zi (Concha Arcae) 120g.

Patent medicines

Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
Qian Lie Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
- combined with one of the above formulae for prostate swelling

Acupuncture

BL.23 (shen shu +), Ren.4 (guan yuan +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), Kid.2 (run gu -), BL.53 (wei yang), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Kid.6 (zhao bai)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yin deficiency type frequent urination include chronic nephritis, atrophic vaginitis, diabetes mellitus, chronic urinary tract infection, interstitial cystitis and benign prostatic hypertrophy.
- Kidney yin deficiency is a common pattern of urinary frequency or incontinence in menopausal women. The urethra suffers from the decline of oestrogen in much the same way as the vagina does, that is, it becomes thinner and drier and more prone to irritation. This can cause frequent urges to urinate even when the bladder is not full. If the tissue thins and loses elasticity too much, incontinence of urine can result. Herbs that clear Heat and tonify yin improve this condition over time. In severe or distressing cases a small amount of oestrogen cream can be applied (usually vaginally) for a short time while the herbs take effect.
- Bladder training programs have a high degree of success, and are very useful in chronic patterns. This approach involves strengthening the muscles of the pelvic floor and desensitising the detrusor muscle. In addition abstaining from diuretic substances and irritants, like coffee and tea, is important.
15.5 SPLEEN (AND LUNG) QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- This pattern can be due to failure of Spleen and Lung qi to metabolise and distribute fluids properly so that they accumulate in the Bladder (and Lung). The Lung involvement is usually secondary to the Spleen weakness.
- It can also be associated with loss of the Spleen's ascending action, that is, the aspect of Spleen function that holds structures in place against the force of gravity. When combined with the hypotonicity of muscles (in this case the urethral sphincter or bladder) so characteristic of a weak Spleen, urine cannot be held in properly and frequency or incontinence results.

Clinical features
- frequent, copious, clear urine or incontinence, which is worse with exertion and when fatigued, or with sneezing or coughing
- shortness of breath
- cough with thin watery sputum
- soft, low voice, or reluctance to speak
- fatigue
- poor appetite, abdominal distension with eating, loose stools
- pale complexion and lips
- mild oedema of the eyelids or fingers, worse in the morning
- T pale with a white coat
- P weak

Treatment principle
Warm and tonify Spleen and Lung qi

Aid the ascent of yang

Prescription
BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified

huang qi (Radix Astra gal i Membranacei) 黄芪 ............. 15g
mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ..................... 15g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephala) 白术 .......... 12g
ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ................. 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .................. 6g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ............ 6g
sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 升麻 .................. 6g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ....................... 6g
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 ............ 6g
yi zhi ren (Fructus Alpiniae Oxyphyllae) 益智仁 ...... 6g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ....... 6g

zhì gàn cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
炙甘草 ............................................. 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

Modifications
- Incontinence following a difficult childbirth usually indicates that the Spleen has been weakened, the Bladder damaged and there is residual stagnation of Blood. Add tao ren (Semen Persicariae) 桃仁 9g and hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- Sudden increase in urine output in an individual with a pre-existing Spleen and Lung deficiency may indicate that the patient has been influenced by an external pathogen (like Wind Cold). The Cold shuts the pores, causing an increase in the descent of fluids. The correct treatment is to use a diaphoretic formula to expel Wind Cold. The appropriate formula is SHEN SU YIN (Ginseng and Perilla Combination 参苏饮, p.21).

Patent medicines
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Yu Ping Feng Wan 玉屏风丸 (Yu Ping Feng Wan)
Jin Suo Gu Jing Wan 金锁固精丸 (Chin So Ku Ching Wan)
- added to one of the above patent formulae

Acupuncture
Du.20 (bai hai ▲), Ren.6 (qi hai +▲), Ren.4 (guan yuan +▲),
Lu.7 (lie que), Bl.24 (qi hai shu +), St.36 (zu san li +p), Sp.6 (san jin jiao +),
Ren.12 (zhong wan +▲), Bl.20 (pi shu)
- a useful technique for lower abdominal prolapses in general is to thread a 3-inch needle from Ren.6 (qi hai) to Ren.3 (zhong jiao). The needle is twisted to anchor it, then raised towards the sternum creating a lifting sensation in the lower abdomen. It can be taped (in its lifted position) in place for the duration of the treatment.

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Spleen qi deficiency type frequent urination include prolapsed uterus exerting pressure on the bladder, prolapsed bladder and stress incontinence.
- Prolapses sometimes occur following lower abdominal surgery, like hysterectomy, if the ligaments supporting the bladder are damaged.
- Bladder training programs have a high degree of success in controlling incontinence, and are particularly useful in patterns characterised by muscular hypotonicity. In addition, abstaining from diuretic substances and irritants, like coffee and tea, is important.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR FREQUENT URINATION AND INCONTINENCE OF URINE

Damp Heat - *Ba Zheng San* 八正散

Liver qi stagnation - *Xiao Yao San* 逍遥散
• nocturnal enuresis due to Liver Heat - *Long Dan Xie Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤

Kidney yang (qi) deficiency - *You Gui Wan* 右归丸
• with Heart and Kidney qi deficiency - *Sang Piao Xiao San* 桑螵蛸散

Kidney yin deficiency - *Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan* 知柏八昧丸

Spleen (and Lung) qi deficiency - *Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang* 补中益气汤

---

Disorders of the Kidney

16. Haematuria

**Excess patterns**
- Damp Heat
- Heart Fire
- Liver Fire
- Blood stagnation

**Deficient patterns**
- Spleen and Kidney qi deficiency
- Kidney yin deficiency with deficient Fire

---

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
HAEMATURIA

Haematuria is the presence of blood or blood clots in the urine without any pain. The appearance of the urine varies with the amount of blood and can be pale pink, smoky, fresh red or dark red. In severe cases there may be blood clots. For haematuria with pain, see Blood Painful Urination Syndrome, p.379.

Traditionally, haematuria implied visible blood in the urine. With more sensitive testing methods, however, non-visible traces of blood ('occult blood') can be detected. As these traces are often picked up on a routine urine test in otherwise healthy individuals, it is questionable whether treatment for haematuria is indicated. If blood traces are detected in a patient with some other problem, styptic herbs may be added to whatever prescription is appropriate.

AETIOLOGY

There are three general mechanisms underlying haematuria, and indeed all forms of bleeding.

The first and most common is Heat, which quickens the Blood causing it to spill from the vessels, and which can scorch and damage the delicate vessels of urinary system. Heat may be associated with external invasion, Toxins, Dampness, qi stagnation or yin deficiency.

The second is failure of the Spleen qi to hold Blood in the vessels. One of Spleen qi's primary functions is to exert an external 'pressure' on the walls of blood vessels, holding the Blood in. When this function is weakened or fails, Blood seeps out of the vessels and the bleeding that results is usually mild and recurrent. When weakness of Spleen qi is responsible for bleeding, there will often be multiple sites of bleeding, typically easy bruising, uterine bleeding and so on.

The third is stagnant Blood. If stagnant Blood obstructs the circulation of qi and Blood, pressure will build up behind the obstruction, and eventually Blood overflows and spills from the vessels.

Heat (Damp Heat) in the Urinary Bladder

External Heat

External pathogenic Heat or Damp Heat (or other external pathogens, like Dampness or Cold, that generate Heat once trapped internally) can invade through the tai yang (Urinary Bladder) channel, the leg yin channels or the local luo channels. The local luo channels are small branches of the major channels that spread through the genitourinary system. They can be conduits for infection during sexual intercourse or after bowel movements. Heat of external origin, however, tends to produce a more localised pattern, with the focus of symptoms in the bladder and urethra. Clinically, patients with an external Heat or Damp Heat pattern are in fact more likely to complain of bleeding and pain, in which case Blood Painful Urination Syndrome (p.379) should be the starting point for diagnosis. Invasion by external pathogens occurs more easily in someone who has a pre-existing Kidney deficiency.

Internal Heat

When the cause is internal, haematuria can be due to Damp Heat, Heart or Liver Fire or Heat arising from yin deficiency. Damp Heat can arise in the middle jiao from overconsumption of rich, greasy or spicy foods and alcohol. Because Damp is heavy, it sinks and settles in the lower jiao. It may also be generated in the lower jiao directly if any Heat arising from yin deficiency or qi stagnation combines with Dampness already present. Damp Heat, when prolonged, can congeal into stones, which can damage the urinary tract and cause bleeding.

Stress and emotional turmoil, which cause stagnation of Heart and Liver qi, can cause Heart or Liver Fire. It generally requires extreme stress or emotional trauma to cause sufficient internal Heat to cause bleeding. If the Heat is internal in origin, the symptoms tend to be more systemic, reflecting the original source of the Heat.

Kidney yin deficiency (with deficient Heat)

Kidney yin becomes damaged through overwork (especially while under stress), late nights, shift work, insufficient sleep and use of recreational drugs.

BOX 16.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF HAEMATURIA

**Common**
- local infection (cystitis, urethritis, prostatitis)
- urinary calculi
- trauma
- tumours (renal, prostate, bladder)

**Pre-rerenal**
- epidemic haemorrhagic diseases
- blackwater fever
- thrombocytopenia
- sickle cell anaemia
- systemic lupus erythematosus
- blood dyscrasia

**Renal**
- renal infarction
- polycystic kidneys
- renal calculi
- tumours
- Goodpasture's syndrome
- glomerulonephritis
- renal papillary necrosis
- tuberculosis of the kidneys

**Post-rerenal**
- foreign body
- prostatic varices
- prostatic hypertrophy
- following vigorous exercise
- radiation cystitis
- endometriosis
- anticoagulants
- haemophilia
Kidney yin may also be damaged by febrile disease, ageing and, in men by excessive ejaculation, and in women by having many pregnancies close together. Deficient kidney yin generates heat, which forces blood to behave recklessly, causing it to spill from the vessels. Fire can also scorch and damage the delicate hue vessels of the urinary system.

**Spleen and Kidney yang (qi) deficiency**

Spleen qi exerts a consolidating pressure on the walls of blood vessels. This pressure is responsible for preventing blood from leaking out. Although in this pattern there are usually signs of both Spleen and Kidney weakness, it is the Spleen's loss of control over Blood vessels that is the primary cause of bleeding.

The Spleen is weakened by overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw foods, prolonged illness or lack of support from the Kidneys.

The Kidney yang or qi weakness which may accompany this pattern, can be an inherited condition or may develop as a result of age, chronic illness, overexposure to cold conditions, or excessive lifting or standing (particularly if this occurs in a cold environment, on cold floors or at night). Kidney yang or qi can also be damaged in men by excessive ejaculation, or in women by having many pregnancies close together. In some cases, in particular younger people, Kidney qi may be weakened while Kidney yang remains intact, in which case the cold symptoms are not seen.

**Qi and Blood stagnation**

Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions and stress can disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, and, because the Liver channel passes through the lower jiao, Bladder qi can also be disrupted.

Once qi is obstructed, it fails to lead the Blood resulting in qi and Blood stagnation.

In addition, qi stagnation can give rise to heat—the emotions that give rise to stagnant qi (particularly anger and resentment) 'shoulder' in the Liver and create heat (or fire), which can be transmitted to the Heart or can travel through the Liver channel to the lower jiao. Stagnant Liver qi can also disrupt the function of the Spleen, weakening it and leading to the development of Dampness. This Dampness can sink into the lower jiao, potentially generating heat and establishing the Damp Heat cycle.

Pre-existing stagnation (of qi and Blood), can be transferred from another pelvic organ to the Bladder. This may be observed in women following hysterectomy, myomectomy or removal of ovarian cysts. The organ primarily affected by the stagnation is removed or repaired, but the condition that gave rise to the initial problem (that is, qi and/or Blood stagnation) persists.

### 16.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS

**Colour of the urine**

- The colour of the urine is largely due to the quantity of blood present. In excess cases, bleeding is usually significant and the urine can appear quite red, to the point where it seems pure blood.
- Pale or pink urine signifies mild bleeding, usually from deficiency.
- Bright red and copious - heat, usually excess, less frequently from deficiency.
- Dark or purplish and clotty - stagnant blood.

#### Location of bleeding

- bleeding at the beginning of urination - from the urethra or prostate.
- at the end of urination - from the bladder.
- if the bleeding is evenly distributed in the urine stream - possibly from the kidney.
- bleeding from other sites as well (bruising etc.) - mostly spleen deficiency.

#### Caution

- Note that red coloured urine can be due to pigments from red food colourings, beets or berries. Vitamin B12 injections and some drugs can colour the urine, and, in some rare cases, can cause some metabolic disorders which allow excessive excretion of porphyrins.
- Certain medications, such as anticoagulants, may cause occult haematuria.
- Occult haematuria often occurs in joggers and athletes who exercise vigorously.

The focus of pelvic symptoms then shifts, for example, from the uterus (which was removed because of heavy periods and pain) to the Bladder.

### TREATMENT

In general there are several steps to consider when treating a bleeding disorder. The first, and most important step, is to stop the bleeding. When the bleeding is severe, the initial focus of treatment is to use first aid or herbs to quickly staunch the bleeding. This can usually be achieved with the patent medicine Yun Nan Bai Yao (Yunnan Baiyao) or a suitable styptic formulae.

In practice an appropriate root treatment formula may be combined with Yun Nan Bai Yao for severe bleeding.

Once bleeding is under control, the underlying pattern can be dealt with more fully. There are two additional aspects to consider. First, any residual Blood outside the vessels is stagnant Blood and must be moved as it may become pathological if allowed to remain. Herbs to gently invigorate or regulate Blood should be incorporated into the appropriate formula. This is especially important in heat types of bleeding, as the herbs used to stop bleeding will likely be cold natured and astringent. These herbs congeal Blood. Second, any qi or Blood deficiency that exists as a direct result of Blood loss should be supplemented with qi and Blood tonic herbs.
16.1 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- DAMP HEAT causes haematuria in two ways: first by quickening the Blood and second, by damaging the delicate hu vessels of the Bladder.
- This syndrome is differentiated from 'Damp Heat Painful Urination Syndrome', p.358, by the predominance of the bleeding relative to the pain (if there is any).

Clinical features
- scanty, concentrated, strong smelling urine with fresh red or darkish blood
- possible very mild burning with urination and a feeling of incomplete bladder emptying
- suprapubic fullness and discomfort, lower back pain
- fullness or discomfort in the chest and epigastrium
- poor appetite, nausea
- bitter taste in the mouth, thirst with little desire to drink
- a tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
- some cases may have afternoon fever, or alternating fever and chills
- T greasy yellow coat
- P slippery and rapid or soft and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Dampness and Heat, promote urination
Cool the Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription

XIAO JI YIN ZI 小蓟饮子
(Cephalanoplos Decoction)

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ............... 24g
hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ................................................. 20g
xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 ......................... 15g
ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatosis) 鬼节 .......... 10g
chao pu huang (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄 ....... 10g
dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Graecilis) 淡竹叶 .......... 10g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 .......... 9g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ............... 12g
jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 ......... 12g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ............. 9g
xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 ......................... 12g
ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatosis) 鬼节 .......... 10g
qing dai (Indigo Pulverata Levi) 青黛 ..................... 3g

Method: Decoction. Qing dai is added to the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服).
(Source: Shi Yong Zhi Nu Ke Xue)

Patent medicines

Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Dao Chi Pian 导赤片 (Dao Chi Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
Yun Nan Bai Yao (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

**Acupuncture**
GB.41 (zu li), SJ.5 (wei guan), GB.26 (dai mai), GB.28 (wei dao), Ren.3 (zhong ji), Liv.5 (li guan), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), Li.11 (qu chi), Sp.9 (yin ling guan), Ren.5 (shi men)

**Clinical notes**
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat type haematuria include urinary tract infection, urethritis, cystitis, pyelonephritis, gonorrhoeal urethritis and prostatitis.
- Generally responds well to correct treatment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Aetiology</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Damp Heat</td>
<td>external invasion of Damp Heat, or less commonly internally generated Heat</td>
<td>suprapubic fullness, loss of appetite, nausea, constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools, thirst with little desire to drink, greasy yellow tongue coat, slippery rapid pulse</td>
<td>XIAO JI YIN ZI with Toxic Heat HUANG LIAN JIE DU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart Fire</td>
<td>emotional turmoil, particularly prolonged anxiety and worry</td>
<td>copious bright or dark red blood in the urine</td>
<td>DAO CHI SAN + XIAO JI YIN ZI with yin deficiency TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver Fire</td>
<td>emotional turmoil, particularly severe or repressed frustration, resentment and anger</td>
<td>extreme irritability, temper, dizziness, sore bloodshot eyes, temporal headache, hypochondriac discomfort, red tongue with redder edges and a dry yellow coat, wiry rapid pulse</td>
<td>LONG DAN XIE GAN WAN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.2 HEART FIRE

Pathophysiology

- Heart Fire is usually the result of a significant emotional shock or prolonged severe anxiety, which impedes the circulation of Heart qi. This stagnation can generate Heat, which can be transmitted to the Small Intestine (the yang partner organ of the Heart), and then to the Bladder.
- Fire quickens the Blood and damages the delicate luo vessels of the Bladder.

Clinical features

- hot, concentrated, urgent and frequent urine with fresh red blood
- red complexion
- ulceration of the mouth and tongue, particularly the tongue tip
- thirst with a desire for cold drinks
- sensation of heat in the chest
- irritability, restlessness, anxiety, agitation
- palpitations
- insomnia, dream disturbed sleep
- red with a redder tip and a dry, yellow coat; the tongue may be ulcerated
- rapid and big

Treatment principle

Clear Heart Fire, cool the Blood to stop bleeding

Prescription

DAO CHI SAN 导赤散
(Rehmannia and Akebia Formula) plus
XIAO JI YIN ZI 小蓟饮子
(Cephalanoplos Decoction) modified

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .................. 30g
xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟 .................. 20g
ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatis) 槐角 .................. 20g
hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 .................. 20g
qu mai (Herba Dianthi) 齢木 .................. 12g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 .................. 10g
dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 .................. 10g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 .................. 10g
chao pu huang (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄 ................. 6g
gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 ................. 6g
hu po fen (powdered Succinum) 珍珠粉 .................. 3g

Method: Decoction. Hu po powder is added to the strained decoction (zhuang jin 冲服).
(Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications

- With insomnia and irritability, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g, mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 10g and ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 叶茂藤 15g to clear Heart Fire and calm the shen.
- With severe bleeding, combine with YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yun Nan White Powder 云南白药).

Variations and additional prescriptions

With yin damage

- In recurrent cases of Heart Fire, yin is often damaged and the condition becomes a mixture of deficiency and excess, leading to a loss of communication between the Heart and Kidney. The features are recurrent mouth ulcers and occasional mild or occult haematuria, insomnia, palpitations, anxiety, heat in the palms and soles, flushing, a dry red tongue or red tipped tongue with little or no coat and a thready rapid pulse. The correct treatment is to restore communication between the Heart and Kidneys (and nourish Heart and Kidney yin) using TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN (Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula 天王补心丹, p. 852).

Patent medicines

Dao Chi Pian 岱赤片 (Tao Chi Pien)
Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 药胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Pills)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected.
  The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture

Ren.3 (zhong ji -), PC.8 (liao gong -), Liw.2 (xing jian -), Bl.15 (xin shu -),
Sp.10 (xue hui -), Hi.6 (yin xi -), Kid.6 (zhao hui +), SI.3 (hou xi -)

Clinical notes

- Biomedical conditions that may present as Heart Fire type haematuria include urinary tract infection, pyelonephritis, gonorrhoeal urethritis, prostatitis, Behcet's syndrome and Reiter's syndrome.
- The acute phase generally responds well to treatment to clear Heart Fire. Long term success of treatment, however, depends also on resolution or avoidance of external stressors.
- Heart and Liver Fire often overlap.
16.3 LIVER FIRE

Pathophysiology
• Ongoing obstruction of Liver qi by stress and emotional upsets will eventually give rise to Liver Fire. Since the Liver channel passes through the genitourinary area, Liver Fire can damage the delicate bao vessels in the urinary tract and quicken the Blood, forcing it from the vessels.

Clinical features
• scanty, dark, burning, urgent urination with fresh blood
• extreme irritability and a tendency to temper outbursts
• temporal headaches
• hypochondriac tightness or pain
• sore, bloodshot eyes
• bitter taste in the mouth
• dizziness
• tinnitus
• thirst
• constipation
• in some patients there may be ulcerations on the genitals, a tendency to herpes genitalis or eczema or rashes in the groin

Treatment principle
Drain Liver Fire, clear Dampness and Heat

Prescription
LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jiu long dan cao (wine fried Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 酒龙胆草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao pu huang (dry fried Pollen Typhae) 炒蒲黄</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is usually cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎).
(Source: Shi Yong Ping Ji Xue)

Modifications
• With severe bleeding, add qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 蒲黄根 9g and ce bai ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 剃柏叶 12g, or combine with YUN NAN BAI YAO (Yun Nan White Powder 云南白药).
• With severe Heat, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g, ling yang jiao fen (powdered Cornu Antelopis) 鞭羊角粉 3g
• With dryness, add mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonicus) 茅冬 12g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 草龙 18g and zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母 12g.

Patent medicines
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片
(Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Pills)
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula selected.
- The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
Liv.2 (xing jian -), Sp.6 (can yin jiao -), Sp.10 (xue hai -), Ren.3 (zhong ji -), Bl.28 (pang guang shu -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.8 (gu quan -), Sj.6 (zhi gon -), Liv.1 (da duan 1)

Clinical notes
• Biomedical conditions that may present as Liver Fire type haematuria include urinary tract infection, pyelonephritis, gonorrhoeal urethritis, prostatitis, Reiter's syndrome and Behcet's syndrome.
• Treatment with acupuncture and herbs is usually effective at clearing Liver Heat or Fire, however stress resolution or behavioural modification will be necessary for enduring results.
• Heart and Liver Fire often overlap.
16.4 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- Blood stagnation type haematuria may follow a trauma to the groin, lower back or pelvis, and warrants thorough investigation. Chronic qi deficiency, qi stagnation, Damp Heat, Cold accumulation or yin deficiency can all lead to stagnant Blood.
- Stagnant Blood is a physical obstruction that blocks Blood circulation. Blood behind the obstruction is forced from the vessels and causes bleeding into the Bladder.

Clinical features
- Intermittent haematuria with dark or brownish red blood and clots; there may be difficult urination or periodic obstruction to the passage of urine
- Lower back pain and suprapubic distension and pain, which tends to be worse at night; if there is pain, it is stabbing and fixed
- Dark complexion
- Dark rings under the eyes
- There may be lower abdominal masses
- Thin purple vessels (spider naevi) on the inner ankle and knee
- A darkish, purplish or with purplish or brown spots and a thin coat; sublingual vessels are distended and dark
- P choppy or wiry

Treatment principle
- Transform and expel stagnant Blood
- Stop bleeding

Prescription

SHAO FU ZHU YU TANG 少腹逐瘀汤
(Drive Out Blood Stasis in the Lower Abdomen Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paoniae Rubrae) 赤芍</td>
<td>25g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semem Persicae) 桃仁</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hong hua (Flos Carthami Tintorii) 红花</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pu huang (Pollen Typhae) 浮黄</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu ling zhi (Excrementum Trogopteri seu Pteromi)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hu po fen (powdered Succinum) 蠟珀粉</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Hu po fen and san qi fen are added to the strained decoction (zheng fu 冲服). (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xin’er)

Variations and additional prescriptions

With qi deficiency
- In the elderly or those with very weak qi, stagnant Blood may arise because there is insufficient motive force for good circulation—Blood slows and pools. The correct treatment in this case is not simply to disperse Blood stasis—this approach would likely aggravate the condition. Instead, tonifying qi to move and hold Blood is appropriate. This can be achieved using BU ZHONG YI QI TANG (Ginseng and Astragalus Combination 补中益气汤, p.394) plus san qi (Radix Notoginseng) 三七.
16.5 KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY WITH HEAT (FIRE)

Pathophysiology
- Like the other Heat patterns, the Heat generated by deficiency quickens the Blood and damages the |yuO vessels. However, the Heat here is the product of a deficient pattern and consequently is less intense and more prolonged.

Clinical features
- Episodic haematuria with fresh red blood. The urine may be concentrated
- Soreness or weakness of the lower back and knees, heel pain
- Sensations of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- Dry mouth and throat
- Irritability and restlessness
- Insomnia
- Facial flushing, malar flush
- Afternoon fever, bone steaming fever, night sweats
- Dizziness
- Tinnitus
- Tendency to dry stools or constipation
- Teased and dry with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish Kidney yin and clear Fire
Cool the Blood and stop bleeding

Prescription
ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八昧丸
(Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhena, Asphodeloidis) 知母</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 山药</td>
<td>25g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos) 小蓟</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da ji (Herba seu Radix Cirsii Japonici) 大蓟</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou jie (Nodus Nelumbinis Nuciferae Rhizomatis) 藓节</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han lian cao (Herba Heliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindrica) 白茅根</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)
16.6 SPLEEN AND KIDNEY YANG (QI) DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- When the Spleen is weak, it can fail in its function of holding Blood inside the vessels, thus allowing leakage of Blood into the Bladder. In addition, the Kidney deficiency, by providing insufficient physiological Heat to transform fluids, gives rise to the frequency and increased volume of urine.
- The urine is pale red or pink due to mixing of Blood with Dampness derived from the Spleen deficiency and from the dilution due to the volume of urine.

Clinical features
- frequent, copious pale red or pink urine
- poor appetite
- loose stools or diarrhoea with undigested food
- abdominal distension
- waxy pale or sallow complexion
- fatigue, lethargy, tiredness
- lower back and knee soreness and weakness
- cold intolerance and cold extremities
- dizziness and tinnitus
- easy bruising, bleeding haemorrhoids, melena, uterine bleeding
T pale with a thin white coat
P deficient and weak

Treatment principle
Strengthen the Spleen, benefit qi to hold Blood
Tonify and consolidate Kidney yang qi

Prescription
BU ZHONG YI QI TANG 补中益气汤
(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) plus
WU BI SHAN YAO WAN 无比山药丸
(Incomparable Dioscorea Pill) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis)</td>
<td>20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosula)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou cong rong (Herba Cistanches Deserticolae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
chao du zhong (dry fried Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chiang Shen Qi)

Modifications
- If the bleeding is persistent, add some astringent herbs, such as mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 10g and jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Lacvigatae) 金樱子 10g.
- With yang deficiency and Cold, add zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6g and rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g.

Follow up treatment
- Once the bleeding has stopped, a suitable formula to tonify Spleen and/or Kidney yang should be selected. For Kidney yang or qi deficiency, JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN (Rehmannia Eight Formula 金匮肾气丸, p.150) is suitable; for Spleen yang deficiency FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN (Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger Formula 附子理中丸, p.56). Combine the two formulae for mixtures of Spleen and Kidney deficiency.

Patent medicines

Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills)
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
- Spleen qi deficiency
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
- Spleen yang deficiency
Yun Nan Bai Yao 云南白药 (Yunnan Paiyao)
- this medicine can be taken in addition to the main formula. The red pill that accompanies the powder is only used in severe cases.

Acupuncture
Bl.23 (shen shu +▲), Bl.20 (pi shu +▲), Bl.17 (ge shu), Ren.4 (guan yuan ▲),
St.36 (zhu san li +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Du.4 (ming men ▲), Sp.10 (xue bai),
Sp.1 (yin bai ▲)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency type haematuria include thrombocytopenia and haemophilia.
- While treatment with herbs and acupuncture may not cure the disease with which the haematuria is associated (for example haemophilia), the bleeding can be effectively controlled.
**SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR HAEMATURIA**

**Damp Heat** - *Xiao Ji Yin Zi* 小蓟饮子
  - with Toxic Heat - *Huang Lian Jie Du Tang* 黄连解毒汤

**Heart Fire** - *Dao Chi San* 导赤散 plus *Xiao Ji Yin Zi* 小蓟饮子

**Liver Fire** - *Long Dan Xie Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤

**Blood stagnation** - *Shao Fu Zhu Yu Tang* 少腹逐瘀汤
  - with *yin* deficiency - *Qian Gen San* 茶根散
  - from *qi* deficiency - *Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang* 补中益气汤

**Kidney *yin* deficiency** - *Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan* 知柏八味丸

**Spleen and Kidney *yang qi* deficiency**
  - *Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang* 补中益气汤 plus * Wu Bi Shan Yao Wan* 无比山药丸

---

**Disorders of the Kidney**

**17. Impotence**

**Excess patterns**
- Liver *qi* stagnation
  - Damp Heat

**Deficient patterns**
- Kidney *yang* deficiency
- Kidney *yin* deficiency
- Heart Blood and Spleen *qi* deficiency
- Heart and Gall Bladder *qi* deficiency

**Appendix** - Nocturnal Seminal Emission

---

**Endnote**

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Impotence is the inability to achieve erection, ejaculation or both. Men presenting with impotence may have any of a number of complaints; loss of libido, inability to initiate or sustain an erection, ejaculatory failure, inability to achieve orgasm or infertility.

Impotence is often associated with vascular disease and may be complicated by social and emotional factors, like overwork and consequent fatigue, anxiety and depression, disinterest in the sexual partner, fear of sexual incompetence, marital discord or guilt about unconventional sexual impulses.

This chapter can be used to analyse low libido or male infertility even where impotence is not a feature. Low libido and infertility in women are covered elsewhere in the handbook series.

**AETIOLOGY**

In TCM terms, the ability to get and sustain an erection (and reproduce) is primarily the responsibility of the Kidney and the Liver. Kidney yang controls the functional aspect of an erection and Kidney jing the ability to reproduce, while the Liver channel passes through the external genitals. Weakness of the Kidney reduces the physiological ‘Fire of desire’, while stagnation of Liver qi reduces the physical ability.

Male sexual function depends not only on sound physiological health but also on the psychological state. Thus, the emotional aspects of the Heart, Liver and Kidney systems can all influence sexual ability. Specifically, mental stress can obstruct the flow of Liver qi, which as noted above, can have a very direct and dismal affect on the functioning of the ‘ancestral Tendon of the Liver’ (as the penis is sometimes known). Anxiety and extremes of emotion, which destabilise the Heart and the shen, can also play havoc with the ability to achieve and maintain an erection.

Another TCM category of impotence is related to Kidney dysfunction from fear or shock. In this case, severe fright damages the zhi zi (the aspect of consciousness associated with the Kidney) and the shen profoundly, such that timidity and nervousness become constant personality traits. Such traits do not lend themselves to confident and effective sexual encounters.

**Damp Heat**

The Damp Heat that causes impotence or male infertility is most commonly generated internally. In the Western world, Damp Heat type impotence is primarily a disorder of overconsumption of alcohol and rich foods. It may also be generated in the lower jiao by any long term Heat in the system, such as Heat generated by jin deficiency, qi stagnation or by prolonged stagnation of Dampness. In some cases it may be due to an unresolved or poorly treated external Damp Heat pathogen. In this case, the Damp Heat often lingers in the lower jiao as a low grade infection. Whether internal or external, impotence due to Damp Heat is a chronic disorder.

**Liver qi stagnation**

Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil and stress disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, and, because the Liver channel passes through the penis, insufficient qi arrives to enable an erection.

**Kidney deficiency**

Kidney deficiency is an important cause of impotence, loss of libido and male infertility and can involve either jing, yang, jin or a combination. It can be inherited or may develop as a result of overwork, age, chronic illness or excessive ejaculation.

Kidney yang or qi is particularly affected by prolonged exposure to cold conditions, or excessive lifting or standing. In some cases, particularly in younger men, Kidney qi may be weakened while Kidney yang remains intact, in which case the cold symptoms are not seen.

Kidney yin is damaged through overwork (especially while under stress), late nights, shift work, insufficient sleep, febrile diseases, insufficient hydration and the use of some prescription, recreational and in this case, tonic drugs. Kidney yin deficiency type impotence is fairly common in young (in their 30s and 40s) men, who consume large quantities of hot natured yang tonic herbs like red ginseng and deer horn in order to increase sexual potency.

**Spleen qi and Heart Blood deficiency**

Overwork, physical and mental exhaustion, worry, irregular diet and too much raw or sweet food can damage the Spleen, which then fails to generate

---

**BOX 17.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF IMPOTENCE & LOSS OF LIBIDO**

- loss of interest, boredom
- elderly
- excessive fatigue or stress
- anxiety (fear of disease, performance)
- vascular occlusion of the penis
- diabetes
- multiple sclerosis
- debilitating disease
- hyperprolactinaemia
- hypogonadism
- hypothyroidism
- hypopituitarism
- orchitis
- prostatitis
- spinal cord trauma/disease

**Drugs**

- anti-hypertensives
- antipsychotics
- antidepressants
- sedatives
- diuretics
- steroids
- alcohol
- methadone
- heroin
- cannabis
- tobacco
sufficient qi and Blood. Similarly, any situation that overwhims the Spleen's ability to replace qi and Blood, like a prolonged or severe illness, can lead to qi and Blood deficiency. The primary weakness in this pattern is in the Spleen, which is unable to generate enough Blood to nourish the Heart and stabilize the shen. Instability of the shen can then be the basis of impotence with psychological components.

**Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency**

This pattern describes an anxious or timid personality type, traits that may be congenital or acquired. When congenital, it can be the result of a significant shock or prolonged fearful situation experienced by the mother during pregnancy, or weakness of the parental Kidney jing. When acquired, it is the result of some sudden and violent or extreme shock or fright. Other, more insidious events, like emotional or physical abuse or trauma during childhood, may contribute. It may also sometimes follow other debilitating illnesses that plunder qi. This pattern, too, underlies impotence of psychogenic origin.

**Pathophysiology**

• This type of impotence or loss of libido is typically found in men stressed by overwork or facing the emotional conflicts of a midlife crisis. It is also seen in younger men or adolescents overwrought with sexual anxiety or frustration.

**Clinical features**

• inability to get or sustain an erection, loss of libido
• sensation of tightness or fullness in the chest (often described as difficulty in drawing a satisfying breath)
• hypochondriac discomfort or tightness
• vague aches and pains
• frequent sighing
• dizziness
• occasional fatigue (although patients often feel better for exercise)
• irritability or depression
• abdominal discomfort, flatulence
• alternating constipation and diarrhoea

**Treatment principle**

Regulate and soothe Liver qi  
Support yang

**Prescription**

**XIAO YAO SAN 迅速散**  
(Bupleurum and Dang Gui Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleurum)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis)</td>
<td>3pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae)</td>
<td>3pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinesis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Ke Ke Xue)
Modifications
- With Heat (red face, flushing, red eyes, a tongue with red edges and a yellow coat), add mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g and shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 9g.
- With depression or anxiety, add he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 9g and suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosisse) 酸枣仁 12g.
- With constipation and abdominal bloating, add zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 枣实 10g and hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 10g.
- If the patient is robust, with severe irritability, restlessness or insomnia and palpitations, use CHAI HU JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG (Bupleurum and Dragon Bone Combination) 柴胡加龙骨牡蛎汤 p.816.

Patent medicines
Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)
Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan)
Mu Xiang Shun Qi Wan 木香顺气丸 (Aplotaxis Carminative Pills)
Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- the above formulae are all suitable for general Liver qi stasis
Kang Wei Ling 抗痿灵 (Kang Wei Ling)
- powerfully invigorates qi and Blood. Usually given in short courses of several weeks at a time as an adjunct to other systemic treatment.

Clinical notes
- Acupuncture is usually very effective at regulating Liver qi and calming the shen.
- Much of the impotence experienced in middle age and later is due to vascular disease. The most recent generation of impotence drugs work by preventing the breakdown of chemicals that dilate penile arteries, thus enhancing the strength and longevity of erections. They are effective in helping two out of three men achieve erections but do not improve libido or address the root of the problem. For men who do not wish to use the drugs, encouraging circulation of Liver qi (and hence blood) with acupuncture and herbs provides a good alternative.

17.2 DAMP HEAT
Pathophysiology
- Prolonged stagnation of Damp Heat in the lower jiao weakens and softens the Tendons (which include the penis as the 'ancestral Tendon of the Liver'), leading to impotence.
- This is most likely due to excessive consumption of alcohol or to a chronic infection like prostatitis. Chronic Damp Heat in the male reproductive tract can predispose to the formation of antisperm antibodies and impaired fertility.

Clinical features
- inability to get or maintain a full erection
- possibly excessive sweating around the scrotum and groin, and itching or pain in the genitals
- there may also be occasional mucopurulent discharge from the urethra, or a history of genital herpes
- loose stools or alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- concentrated urine
- heaviness and aching in the lower limbs
- lethargy, afternoon fatigue
- there may be a poor sperm count or low motility and antisperm antibodies; thick or congealed ejaculate with retarded liquification of the semen, especially over the root
- P deep and slippery, or soft and slippery, possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Dampness and Heat

Prescription
ER MIAO SAN 二妙散
(Two Marvel Powder) modified
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 .......................... 30g
shi wu ci (Uolium Pyrocosiae) 石竹 ................................ 30g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 苦参 .......................... 30g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 .................. 30g
gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 ............................... 20g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ..................... 15g
bi xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 藜芦 .................. 15g
cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 ....................... 12g
zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 猪苓 .................. 12g
yan huang bai (salt fried Cortex Phellodendri) 盐黄柏 .......... 10g
yan zhi mu (salt fried Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 盐知母 .......................... 10g

gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........................................ 6g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is decocted in a muslin bag (hao jian 包煎).
(Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Liao Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications

• If Liver Heat or Fire complicates the Damp Heat, with hypochondriac fullness and discomfort, headaches, red sore eyes, irritability and a wiry pulse, add long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 9g and chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g, or use LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG (Gentiana Combination 龙胆泻肝汤, p.500).

• With antisperm antibodies, add Blood regulating herbs, such as dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15g, tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g or hong hua (Flor Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 6g.

• In men with prostatic swelling, add two or three herbs to ‘soften hardness and disperse swelling’ from the following list: xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris) 夏枯草 15g, mu li` (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 斑贝母 9g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15g, chuan shan jia` (Squamae Manitis) 穿山甲 12g, wa leng zi` (Concha Arcae) 瓦楞子 12g, wang bu liu xing (semen Vaccariae Segetalis) 王不留行 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

• For patients with low fertility, once the Damp Heat is cleared herbs are often prescribed to increase sperm count and motility (see Kidney patterns following).

Patent medicines

Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Qian Liu Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
Kang Wei Ling 抗萎缩 (Kang Wei Ling)
- see p.484

Acupuncture

Ren.3 (zhong ji), Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Liv.5 (li gou -), St.30 (qi chong),
GB.26 (dai mai -), GB.41 (zhi lin qi -), Kid.10 (yin gu), SJ.6 (zhi gou -),
BL.32 (ci liao -)

Clinical notes

• Biomedical conditions that may present as Damp Heat type impotence include acute and chronic prostatitis, excessive alcohol consumption and other genital infections.

• While modern drug therapy claims good success in increasing the ability to achieve erections it does nothing to address underlying causes. Damp Heat, causing inflammation or infection in the prostate, urethra or testicles, can be effectively treated with herbs. Treatment should persist until all signs of Damp Heat have cleared (especially the tongue coat).

• Infertility in this category is amenable to treatment, although successful results are often achieved more readily where antisperm antibodies are not present.

• Dietary changes and limiting alcohol intake are strongly advised.

• In some cases antibiotic or antifungal drug therapy may be needed in addition to Damp Heat dispersing TCM treatment.
17.3 KIDNEY YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- According to TCM, Kidney yang is the basis of sexual desire. Kidney yang also plays a pivotal role in the mechanics of getting and sustaining an erection. Male infertility frequently falls into this category, sometimes with few of the below mentioned accompanying symptoms.

Clinical features
- low libido, an inability to get an erection or sustain an erection, infertility
- low sperm motility and sperm count, thin watery ejaculate
- waxy pale complexion
- listlessness and fatigue
- cold intolerance, aversion to cold, cold extremities
- urinary frequency, nocturia or oedema of the lower limbs with scanty urine
- lower abdominal distension
- constipation or loose stools
- weak, cold and sore lower back and knees
- T pale, wet and swollen
- P deep and thready or slow and weak, particularly in the proximal positions

Treatment principle
Tonify the Kidneys, warm and support yang

Prescription

WU ZI YAN ZONG Wan 五子衍宗丸
(Five Seed Ancestral Qi Amplifying Pill) plus
ZAN YU DAN 贞育丹
(Special Pill to Aid Fertility) modified

Method:
Grind the herbs into powder and form into 9-g gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted, zhì fù zǐ is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xiàng jìan 先煎), lu ròng is taken separately or added to the strained decoction (zhòng jì 冲煎). Lu jiao jiao* (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum)鹿角胶 may be substituted for lu ròng with a fourfold increase in dosage.

Patent medicines

Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexoton Pills)
Nan Bao 男宝 (Nan Bao Capsules)
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
Cong Rong Bu Shen Wan 从容补肾丸 (Cong Rong Bu Shen Wan)
Wu Zi Yan Zong Wan 五子衍宗丸 (Wu Zi Yan Zong Wan)

Acupuncture

BL23 (shen shu +▲), Du4 (ming men +▲), Ren4 (guan yuan +▲), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Du20 (bai hui ▲), Lu7 (li que +), Kid7 (fu liu +).

Needle sensation (de qi) on Ren4 (guan yuan) should go to the tip of the penis. This can be achieved by needling 1½ cm deep angled inferiorly.

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Kidney yang deficiency type impotence include hypothyroidism, infertility, low sperm count, general debility and ageing.
- Persistent treatment will usually get satisfactory results in this pattern. Sometimes success is measured by the ability to impregnate a partner rather than the return of a rampant libido. During the first 2 or 3 months of treatment the patient should be advised to minimise or avoid ejaculation altogether. Modern drug therapy can be used in these patients to achieve erection, but an increase in fertility or return of libido will only be achieved by strengthening Kidney yang. Conditions like hypothyroidism can be difficult and may require a combination of Western medicine and TCM.
17.4 KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Deficiency of Kidney yin generates Heat. This false Heat can create the appearance of sexual desire but because the Kidneys are actually weak, the ability to sustain sexual activity is reduced. Increasingly, depletion of Kidney yin is becoming a major cause of infertility in overworked men.

Clinical features
- Impotence or premature ejaculation, which is worse when the patient is stressed and fatigued. There may be frequent desire for sex but an inability to initiate or maintain an erection, or there may be erotic dreams with spontaneous emission.
- There may be increased numbers of abnormal sperm or low sperm count, scanty ejaculate
- Soreness or weakness of the lower back and knees (which may be exacerbated by sex), heel pain
- Dry mouth and throat
- Insomnia, restlessness
- Facial flushing, malar flush, night sweats
- Sensations of heat in the palms and soles ("five hearts hot")
- Dizziness and tinnitus, more noticeable after sex
- Tendency to dry stools or constipation
- T red and dry with little or no coat
- Phlegm and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish and strengthen Kidney yin

Prescription
LIU WEI DI HUANG WAN 六味地黄丸
(Rehmannia Six Formula) modified

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glaucinis Conqueae) 熟地 ..... 240g
shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ..... 120g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 茯苓 ..... 120g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria cocos) 泽泻 ..... 90g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ..... 90g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 西洋参 ..... 90g
tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis) 苦参 ..... 90g

Method: Grind herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a dosage with a 90% reduction in dosage. (Source: Shi You Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With more severe Heat, add zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 主母 60g and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 60g.
- With yang deficiency as well (pink or flabby tongue, aversion to cold, skin and extremities warm but feels cold inside), add xian ling pi (Fruites Euphractis) 仙灵脾 60g and ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 60g.
- With night sweats, add mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 90g, ma huang gen (Radix Ephedra) 麻黄根 90g and wu wei zhi (Fruites Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 40g.
- With restless and insomnia, add long chi (Dens Dracunculi) 龙骨 90g and suan zao ren (Semen Ziziphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 90g.
- With increased number of abnormal sperm, add dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 90g and tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 90g.
- For low sperm count, add gou qi zhi (Fruites Lycii) 枸杞子 150g, nu zhen zhi (Fructus Ligustri Lucidi) 女贞子 120g, tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis) 葆子子 180g, wu wei zhi (Fruites Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 60g, he shou wu (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 何首乌 150g and dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 90g.
- For excessive sexual desire, add gui ban (Plastri Testudinis) 龟板 90g, mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 150g and bai zhi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 150g.

Patent medicines
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan 天王补心丹 (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan)
- Heart and Kidney yin deficiency
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- With more yin deficient Heat
Wu Zi Yan Zong Wan 五子衍宗丸 (Wu Zi Yan Zong Wan)

Acupuncture
Ren.4 (guan yuan), Ht.6 (yin xi), Kid.6 (zhao hai), Bl.23 (shen shu), Sp.6 (sang yin jiao), Ren.7 (yin jiao).
Needle sensation (de qi) on Ren.4 (guan yuan) should go to the tip of the penis. This can be achieved by needling 1½ cun deep angled inferiorly. Make sure the bladder is empty first.
- With night sweats add SI.3 (hou xie)
- With Heat add Kid.2 (ran gu), Ht.8 (shao fu), Du.4 (ming men)

Clinical notes
- This pattern can be constitutional or a complication of chronic Liver qi stagnation that generates Heat, or lingering Damp Heat, both of
which may consume yin. It may develop in men who work long hours under significant pressure, or in men who have (or have a history of) excessive sexual activity or drug abuse. Marijuana and cocaine are particularly dangerous to Kidney yin and are implicated in infertility.

- As with all yin deficiency patterns, treatment needs to persist for months. Sexual activity, including masturbation, should be avoided or limited.
- Drugs that enable impotent men to have erections can prove counterproductive for men in this category. The excessive sexual desire they experience combined with the drug assisted ability to have frequent sexual intercourse can lead to further exhaustion of yin.
- Men who have had vasectomies reversed will benefit from taking herbs to increase the number of sperm and the percentage of these that are morphologically normal and have good motility. Where there are antisperm antibodies (not uncommon after a vasectomy) or a high proportion of abnormal forms, Blood regulating herbs are important, particularly dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参, tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 and hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花. Other mild Blood movers are also suitable depending on the patient, for example yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 姜黄 with a tendency to Liver qi stagnation, hua niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 怀牛膝 with rising yang etc. These should be combined with herbs to tonify Kidney yin or yang depending on the constitution (see also previous pattern).

17.5 HEART BLOOD AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- In this pattern, there are two causes of impotence. The first is instability of the shen from Heart Blood deficiency—the weakened or scattered shen cannot lead qi to the penis, or if an erection occurs it can be easily lost. The second is simple insufficiency of qi and Blood to fill the penis.

Clinical features
- inability to get or maintain an erection, possibly associated with performance anxiety
- the impotence may also be worse with fatigue. These patients may be able to get erections during sleep or masturbation
- pale, lustreless complexion
- fatigue and low spirits
- abdominal distension, poor appetite
- insomnia, dream disturbed sleep
- palpitations with or without anxiety
- panic attacks, nervousness
- forgetfulness
- clammy palms
- T pale with a thin white coat
- P thready and weak

Treatment principle
Tonify and nourish Heart and Spleen
Support yang

Prescription
GUI PI TANG 归脾汤
(Ginseng and Longan Combination) modified

zhii huang qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei) 炙黄芪 ....................................................... 15g
dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 .......................... 12g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 9g
suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosa) 酸枣仁 .......................... 9g
yuan zhi (honey fried Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 .......................... 6g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ........................................ 9g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ....................... 9g
long yan rou (Arillus Euphoriae Longanae) 龙眼肉 .......................... 9g
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 ........................................ 6g
17.6 HEART AND GALL BLADDER QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency is also sometimes called ‘fear and shock injuring Kidney qi’ (the Chinese characters to the left), because it can reflect profound damage to the shen and Kidney zhi manifesting as a chronically timid and disturbed personality. Such psychological imbalance can manifest in numerous ways, sexual dysfunction being one of them.
- As in the previous pattern (Heart and Spleen deficiency) the shen is unstable and easily scattered. The shen is unable to lead qi to the penis, or is unable to remain firm and thus easily scattered once there.

Clinical features
- inability to get or maintain an erection
- the patient is anxious, timid, shy, easily startled and may appear very nervous, and may be very uneasy about intimate relationships
- palpitations
- insomnia
- T thin greasy coat
- P wiry and thready

Treatment principle
Benefit the Heart, Gall Bladder and Kidney, calm the shen
Support yang

Prescription

QI YANG YU XIN DAN 启阳娱心丹
(Arouse yang, Please the Heart Special Pill)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosa)</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai shao (Radix Paeonae Lactiflorae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shen qu (Massa Fermenta)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephala)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polypalae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha ren (Fructus Amomi)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix

**NOCTURNAL SEMINAL EMISSION (yi jìng 遺精)**

Nocturnal seminal emission (NSE) is the spontaneous ejaculation of semen in the absence of tactile or sensual stimulation. It generally occurs during sleep and is divided into two types, that associated with dreams (wet dreams) and that which occurs without dreaming. In severe cases spontaneous emissions may occur while awake.

NSE may be physiological or pathological. In young and adolescent boys, a spontaneous emission once or twice per month is considered physiological; more than this is considered pathological.

In the Western world, practitioners are extremely unlikely to ever encounter a patient presenting with this condition, indeed in isolation from a clearly defined pathology it is not considered to be harmful at all. The Chinese, however, with their cultural emphasis on the preservation of jìng, feel that excessive NSE requires treatment. This section can also be used for the analysis of premature ejaculation. Biomedically, NSE may be associated with disorders such as prostatitis and neurasthenia.

**AETIOLOGY**

The most common cause of NSE is an excess of Heat in the system, stimulating a kind of pseudo-arousal (the fire of míng men is the basis of normal physiological arousal). This Heat may be the result of chronic Damp Heat retention, stress and frustration giving rise to Liver Fire or yíng deficiency. Frequently, the Heat is derived from inappropriate or excessive use of stimulating yáng tonic herbs like red ginseng and deer horn.

Less frequently, Kidney yáng fails to contain jìng, which then 'leaks' out. In this case, there are usually no accompanying erotic dreams.
1. HEAT, DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- When Damp Heat is present in the lower jiao it can force jing out, in much the same way as sweat is pushed to the surface by internal Heat.
- This pattern may occur as the result of prostatic irritation from an unresolved urinary tract infection.

Clinical features
- frequent NSE
- poor appetite, nausea
- bitter taste in the mouth
- thirst with little desire to drink
- irritability and restlessness
- tendency to constipation or alternating loose and sluggish stools
- concentrated urine
- heaviness and aching in the lower limbs
- lethargy, afternoon fatigue
- T greasy yellow coat, especially over the root
- P deep and slippery or soft and slippery, possibly rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Dampness and Heat

Prescription
CHENG SHI BEI XIE FEN QING YIN 程氏革解分清饮
(Tokoro Formula from the Cheng Clan) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bei xie</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai jiang cao</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan shen</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yan huang bai</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian zi xin</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)

Patent medicines
- Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
- Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- Qian Lie Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Pills)
- Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片

Acupuncture
- Ren.3 (zhong ji -), Sp.9 (yin lin quan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), Bl.22 (san jiao shu -), Lu.7 (he que), GB.26 (dai mai)

2. LIVER FIRE

Pathophysiology
- This pattern occurs primarily in generally healthy young men who consume large or inappropriate quantities of yang tonic herbs, in a misguided effort to increase strength and virility. They are usually already hot headed individuals, often martial artists or competitive sportsmen. Therapy, in the case of tonic induced Heat, is purely educational and the Heat will quickly subside once the herbs are discontinued. If it continues, however, the Heat will deplete Kidney yin.
- As the Liver channel passes through the penis (the penis is considered the 'ancestral Tendon of the Liver'), Heat in the Liver can stimulate it and force the release of semen.

Clinical features
- frequent NSE
- quick temper, irritability
- hypochondriac tightness or pain
- red complexion
- distension, redness and pain in the eyes
- bitter taste in the mouth
- thirst, dry throat
- constipation
- scanty concentrated urine.
- T red or with red edges and a thick dry yellow coat
- P wiry, rapid and strong

Treatment principle
Clear the Liver and purge Liver Fire
Prescription

LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination)

- jiu long dan cao (wine fried Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 酒龙胆草 6-9g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
- shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山桅子 9g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 9g
- ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 9g
- che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 6g
- mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 12g
- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 6g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhone Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If this condition has persisted for a period of time, the Fire may consume Liver and Kidney yin. If there is Liver Fire against a background of yin deficiency, delete mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通, ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻, che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 and chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡, and add he shou wu (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 何首乌 9g, mu zhen zi (Fructus Ligustri Lucidi) 女贞子 12g and bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 12g.

Patent medicines
- Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- Ming Mu Shang Qing Pian 明目上清片 (Ming Mu Shang Ching Pien)
- Qian Li Xian Wan 前列腺丸 (Prostate Gland Tablets)
- Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Wan 穿心莲抗炎片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Pills)

Acupuncture
- Liv.2 (xue jian -), Liv.5 (shen -), BL.18 (gan shu -), GB.34 (yang long quan -), Liv.14 (qi men -), SJ.5 (wei guan -), GB.39 (xuan zhang -), Kid.6 (zhao hui +)
- with headaches, add GB.20 (feng chi), Liv.3 (tai zhong)
- with constipation, substitute SJ.6 (zhi gong) for SJ.5 (wei guan)

3. KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY WITH FIRE

Pathophysiology
- In addition to the usual things that damage Kidney yin, this pattern can be generated by excessive masturbation and fantasising. Frequent ejaculation easily depletes yin and fantasising excessively is thought to create internal Heat, which can further damage yin.
- It can also follow any other pattern characterised by excess Heat, like the previous pattern, Liver Fire.

Clinical features
- Prolific dreaming, with erotic dreams culminating in NSE
- Soreness or weakness of the lower back and knees, heel pain
- Sensations of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- Dry mouth and throat
- Irritability and restlessness
- Insomnia
- Facial flushing, malar flush
- Afternoon fever, night sweats
- Dizziness
- Tinnitus
- Tendency to dry stools or constipation
- Scanty concentrated urine
- Red and dry with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle
- Nourish yin, clear Fire
- Calm the shen, consolidate jing

Prescription

ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN 知柏八味丸 (Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula) modified

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Quinquae) 蒲地 18g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 12g
- shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 12g
- zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 9g
- huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Pororia Cocos) 茯苓 9g
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g
- ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 9g
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g
4. KIDNEY YANG (AND YIN) DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- In this pattern the Kidney has lost its capacity to store and retain jing. This is a dual deficiency of the yin aspect (storage of jing) and the yang aspect (control of the urethra) of the Kidney, with the primary feature being yang deficiency.

Clinical features
- frequent NSE
- waxy pale complexion
- listlessness and fatigue
- aversion to cold, cold extremities
- lower abdominal distension
- urinary frequency or nocturia
- constipation or loose stools
- weak, cold and sore lower back and knees
- T pale, wet and swollen
- P deep and thready or slow and weak, particularly in the proximal positions

Treatment principle
Tonify the Kidney and consolidate jing

Prescription
YU GU WANG 右归丸
(Eucommia and Rehmannia Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>officinal</th>
<th>amount (g)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae)</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu jiao jiao* (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jin ying zi (Fructus Rosae Laevigatae)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long gu* (Os Draconis)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu li* (Concha Ostreae)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeaparata)</td>
<td>60-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>60-120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This last formula (which is primarily astrigent) and one of the first three are generally taken together

Method: Grind the herbs into powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage, in which case zhi fu zi is cooked for 30 minutes prior to adding the other herbs (xian jian 先煎), and rou gui is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Co)

Patent medicines
JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN 犀角地黄丸 (Sexotom Pills)
BA JI YIN YANG WAN 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
YOU GUI WAN 右归丸 (You Gui Wan)
JIN SHUO GU JING WAN 金锁固精丸 (Chin So Ku Ching Wan)

Acupuncture
Du.20 (bai hui +), Ren.12 (zhong wan +), Ren.6 (qi hui +), Ren.4 (guan yuan + △), Bl.23 (shen shu + △), Bl.30 (bai huan shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +) Du.4 (ming men + △)
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR IMPOTENCE AND NOCTURNAL SEMINAL EMISSION

Impotence
Liver qi stagnation - *Xiao Yao San* 逍遥散
• In robust patients with restlessness and palpitations - *Chai Hu Jia Long Gu Mu Li Tang* 柴胡加龙骨牡蛎汤

Damp Heat - *Er Miao San* 二妙散
• with Liver Fire - *Long Dan Xie Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤

Kidney yang deficiency
- *Wu Zi Yan Zong Wan* 五子衍宗丸 plus *Zan Yu Dan* 贞育丹

Kidney yin deficiency - *Liu Wei Di Huang Wan* 六味地黄丸

Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency - *Gui Pi Tang* 归脾汤

Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency - *Qi Yang Yu Xin Dan* 启阳娱心丹

Involuntary Seminal Emission
Damp Heat - *Cheng Shi Bei Xie Yin Qing Yin* 程氏萆薢分清饮

Liver Fire - *Long Dan Xie Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤

Kidney yin deficiency - *Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan* 知柏八味丸

Kidney yang (and yin) deficiency - *You Gui Wan* 右归丸

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat†, see the tables on pp.944-952.

Disorders of the Kidney

18. Tinnitus and Deafness

Excess patterns
Wind Heat
Liver qi stagnation
Liver Fire
Phlegm Heat
Stagnant Blood

Deficient patterns
Kidney deficiency
Spleen qi deficiency (with Phlegm Damp)
Qi and Blood deficiency
TINNITUS AND DEAFNESS

Tinnitus is the subjective experience of hearing a buzzing or ringing sound in one or both ears. Patients often describe it as ‘ringing in the ears’ though the sound described can vary considerably, from the sound of surf to a high pitched buzzing, or the sound of cicadas.

Deafness or loss of hearing may or may not be associated with tinnitus. The aetiology and pathophysiology of both tinnitus and hearing loss are essentially the same, although some patterns are more likely to cause one or the other. Tinnitus and deafness are traditionally included in the Kidney section because the ear is the sense organ associated with the Kidney. However, tinnitus and deafness can be the result not only of Kidney weakness but also of disorders of the Liver, Gall Bladder or Spleen, as well as trauma to the head and ears.

Tinnitus and deafness are common disorders and may be part of numerous biomedically defined conditions (see box). In cases where the cause is not obvious, referral to a specialist for investigation to exclude tumours and vascular malformations is recommended.

Some of the patterns described in this chapter cause ‘earache’ with tinnitus. Children (who are very prone to Wind Heat, Phlegm Heat and Spleen deficiency with Phlegm Damp patterns) will rarely complain of tinnitus, but often of earache. Similarly, children will not tend to notice loss of hearing. This deficit is usually detected by parents or teachers.

AEOTIOLOGY

Kidney deficiency

This is a common cause of chronic tinnitus and hearing loss, and some degree of pre-existing Kidney deficiency may also be involved in the excess categories of tinnitus and deafness. The Kidney ‘opens into the ear’, and intact Kidney qi is necessary for both the process of hearing and to protect the ear from pathogenic influence.

Tinnitus and deafness from Kidney deficiency is most frequently due to ageing, although other factors like stimulant drug use (which tends to damage Kidney jin), overwork (especially while under stress) and insufficient sleep may contribute. The Kidneys may also be damaged by excessive ejaculation or pregnancies close together. Kidney weakness may be the result of a congenital weakness or some prolonged or serious illness which has depleted jing. It seems Kidney jin deficiency is more likely to give rise to tinnitus, while Kidney yang deficiency is more likely to cause hearing loss.

External pathogens

Wind or Wind Heat can enter and disrupt the channels that surround and enter the ear (san jiao, Gall Bladder and Small Intestine), particularly in someone with a Kidney deficiency. As the Kidney and Urinary Bladder are internally/externally related, pathogenic Wind or Wind Heat penetrating the tai yang (Urinary Bladder and Small Intestine) channels can affect the Kidney.

Liver qi stagnation, Liver Fire

Anger, frustration, resentment and bitterness are all emotions that can damage the Liver and impede the free flowing nature of its qi. As the qi stagnates and the pressure increases, stagnant Heat is generated. At a certain point, the Heat is intense enough to become Fire which rises through the Gall Bladder channel to affect the ears. Liver Fire is exacerbated by a diet rich in fats and alcohol. Chronic Liver Fire will eventually consume Liver and Kidney jin, leading to a deeper and more recalcitrant type of tinnitus and hearing loss.

In the pure form, Liver qi stagnation and Fire are excess conditions. However, if persistent, Fire will eventually damage jin, and the condition will change to a mixed deficiency and excess condition. In the initial stages Liver Fire is more likely to cause tinnitus. As the condition progresses, the nature of the tinnitus may change from occasional loud tinnitus set off by emotions, to the softer, more persistent tinnitus and loss of hearing characteristic of Kidney deficiency.

BOX 18.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF TINNITUS AND HEARING LOSS

External

- foreign body
- wax buildup

Middle ear

- otitis media (acute and chronic)
- eustachian catarrh
- glue ear
- perforated drum

Inner ear

- Meniere’s disease
- cochlear degeneration
- post infectious (meningitis, measles, mumps, encephalitis and scarlet fever)
- labyrinthitis
- sound and physical trauma
- tumours

Drugs

- cannabis
- sodium salicylate
- kanamycin
- streptomycin
- gentamycin
- vancomycin
- quinine
- alcohol
- tobacco

Other

- anaemia
- hypertension
- altitude sickness
- temporomandibular joint dysfunction
- atherosclerosis
- aneurysm
**BOX 18.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

- firstly always examine the inner ear for signs of infection, perforation or impacted wax
- repeated courses of antibiotics (for ear infections) point to Spleen deficiency with Phlegm Damp
- a history of head trauma (including exposure to loud noise) points to Blood stagnation
- with exterior symptoms - Wind Heat (usually middle ear infection)

**Aggravation**
- with stress or anger - Liver qi stagnation or Liver Fire
- with tobacco and alcohol - Liver Fire, Phlegm Heat

**Amelioration**
- with relaxation - Liver qi stagnation, Fire
- with rest - Kidney or Spleen deficiency

**Onset**
- sudden - Wind Heat, Liver Fire, Phlegm Fire
- gradual - Kidney deficiency, Spleen deficiency with Phlegm Damp

**Phlegm Damp**

Tinnitus and hearing loss may be caused by chronic stasis of Phlegm Damp in the channels around the ear, and within the ear itself. Phlegm Damp accumulates in those who have an excessively rich and oily diet, for example the typical Western diet heavy in dairy products and fried foods. Phlegm Damp can also be a product of the inefficient digestion that characterises Spleen deficiency. Repeated courses of antibiotics (often for recurrent middle ear or sinus infections) can, due to their cold nature, easily damage Spleen qi, allowing the generation and accumulation of Dampness and Phlegm.

Chronic stasis of Phlegm Damp can also generate Heat, which assists in elevating the Phlegm to the ear.

**Stagnant Blood**

Trauma, head injuries or long term stasis of qi can lead to Blood stagnation, which can prevent adequate circulation of qi to the ears. Exposure to loud noises may disrupt the channels of the ear sufficiently to cause stagnant qi and Blood, which in turn can damage the structures of the inner ear.

**TREATMENT**

Tinnitus is a common disorder and unfortunately one that is often difficult to treat successfully. Chronic cases are more difficult than acute or recent cases, and those due to exposure to loud noise generally do not respond very well. Having said this, prolonged therapy can be successful and results are sometimes casually noted by patients being treated for some other condition—'now that I think about it I notice the buzzing in my ears is gone'. What this suggests is that a minimum of one or two courses of acupuncture (10-20 treatments), or several months of herbs should be given before making a judgement on whether the treatment is working or not.

Hearing loss is similar, and results of treatment in deficiency types are often subtle. In excess patterns the prognosis is better, especially the Phlegm type, where simple removal of the Phlegm can produce marked results.
18.1 WIND HEAT

Pathophysiology
The pattern corresponds to an acute invasion of Wind Heat into the channels that surround the ear, and is associated with an infection of the inner ear.

Clinical features
- Unilateral tinnitus and/or hearing loss that is sudden and generally mild.
- It is often associated with a sensation of fullness, distension, blockage or persistent itching in the ear. There may also be pain in the ears or mastoid area, sometimes radiating into the jaw.
- Possible purulent or bloody exudate from the ear
- Headache
- Fever
- Muscle and joint aches
- Cough
- Thirst
- Aversion to wind
- T unremarkable or with thin white or yellow coat
- P floating and rapid

Treatment principle
Disperse Wind and clear Heat
Open the ears

Prescription
YIN QIAO SAN (Lonicer and Forsythia Formula) modified

This prescription is selected if there is no suppuration or exudate from the ears.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jing jie (Herba Schizonepetae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qing hao (Herba Artemisiae Annuae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappa)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Praeparatum)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......... 3g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 .......... 6g

Method: Decoction. Cook for 15-20 minutes maximum. Qing hao is added 5 minutes before the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). Bo he is added 1-2 minutes before the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi 1 Han Ke Xue)

MAN JING ZI SAN 藿子散
(Vitex Powder)

This formula is selected if there is suppuration or exudate from the ears in addition to signs of Wind Heat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man jing zi (Fructus Viticis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi (Cortex Mori Albae Radicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi fu ling (Scerotium Porta Cocos Rubrae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qian hu (Radix Peucedani)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 薏甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi 1 Han Ke Xue)

FANG FENG TONG SHENG TANG 防风通圣汤
(Siler and Platycodon Formula)

This formula is selected if the Heat is relatively severe or the patient has pre-existing internal Heat, with constipation, strong fever and chills, red, sore eyes, bitter taste in the mouth, dark urine, a rapid pulse and a yellow tongue coat. The correct treatment is to dispel Wind and Heat, drain internal Heat and unblock the bowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hua shi (Talcum)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi gao (Gypsum)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma huang* (Herba Ephedrae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiu da huang (wine fried Radix et Rhizoma Rhei)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mang xiao (Mirabilium)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jing jie (Herba Schizonepetae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.2 LIVER QI STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- Liver qi stagnation, qi stagnation with stagnant Heat and Liver Heat are conditions with similar etiology and of escalating severity. Typically, Liver qi stagnation precedes the development of Heat, which at a certain intensity is redefined as Fire. All stages involve emotional turmoil, especially anger, resentment and frustration as common aetiological features, with Liver inflammation by a diet rich in alcohol and heating foods. Liver qi stagnation without Heat is less likely to cause hearing problems than that with Heat.
- Liver qi stagnation tends to give rise to tinnitus rather than hearing loss. The obstructed qi seeks an alternate pathway and 'rebels' along the Gall Bladder channel disrupting the function of the ears.

Clinical features

- Mild intermittent tinnitus that is aggravated or initiated by emotional stress and improved with rest and relaxation. In women the tinnitus may be noticed premenstrually. There may be a sensation of pressure or fullness in the ears, but generally no pain or discharge.
- Fullness in the chest, often described as difficulty getting a full breath, frequent sighing
- Tension or discomfort beneath the ribs and in the neck or jaw
- Headaches, tooth grinding
- Mild dizziness
- Loss of appetite or churning stomach
- Irritability, depression
- Occasional fatigue, which may be improved with exercise
- Alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- Irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- T normal or dark (qing 青)
- P wiry and thready, or wiry and strong

Treatment principle

Soothe and invigorate the movement of Liver qi

Prescription

XIAO YAO SAN 道遥散

(Bupleurum and Dang Gui Formula) modified

- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri 柴胡) .......................... 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归) ............ 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae 白芍) ........... 9g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 茅术 .......... 9g
**18.3 LIVER FIRE**

**Pathophysiology**
- Liver Fire may progress from Liver qi stagnation if the stagnation creates sufficient Heat to engender Fire. When chronic Liver qi stasis together with diet are responsible for the development of Fire, the course is more prolonged. This appears in conditions such as hypertension and alcohol abuse. Liver Fire may also appear as an acute episode if external Heat penetrates through the *shao yang* channels, in which case an acute ear infection is the presenting symptom. In either case, Fire ascends through the Gall Bladder channel to the ear.
- Liver Fire tends to affect younger individuals. When prolonged, Liver *jin* is damaged and the pattern becomes one of mixed deficiency and excess (common in middle age), and ultimately deficiency (in the elderly).

**Clinical features**
- Sudden tinnitus and/or hearing loss, generally of short duration and clearly related to emotional upset, stress or overindulgence in alcohol, tobacco or Heat producing foods. The tinnitus is usually a high pitched buzzing. There may be ear pain and/or discharge.
- violent headaches or migraines, usually temporal, dizziness
- red complexion and eyes
- dry mouth and throat
- bitter taste in the mouth
- restlessness, extreme irritability
- insomnia
- hypochondriac pain
- constipation
- concentrated urine
- T red or with red edges and a yellow coat
- P wiry, rapid and strong

**Treatment principle**
Clear Heat from the Liver and Gall Bladder

**Prescription**

LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG  龙胆泻肝汤  
(*Gentiana Combination*) modified

- *long dan cao* (Radix Gentianae Longdanca) 龙胆草  9g
- *sheng di huang* (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地黄  15g
- *huang qin* (Radix Scutellariae) 黄芩  12g
- *shan zhi zi* (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子  12g
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 12 g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 9 g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9 g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 6 g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 6 g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Cori Grami nei) 石菖蒲 6 g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6 g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎).
(Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With severe tinnitus, add ci shi (Magneti tum) 磁石 15 g.
- With Phlegm or Phlegm Heat, add one or two of the following herbs:
  quan gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 全栝楼 15 g, tian hua fen (Radix
  Trichosanthis Kirilowii) 天花粉 12 g, zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae
  Thunbergii) 浙贝母 9 g or zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹 9 g
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9 g
- With purulent discharge, add da qing ye (Folium Daqingye) 大青叶
  12 g and ban lan gen (Radix Isatisidis) 板蓝根 12 g.
- With severe headache and sore red eyes, add ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi
  Morifolii) 菊花 9 g and sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 9 g.
- If there are symptoms of Wind (tics, facial spasms, severe dizziness),
  add gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 12 g, shi jue ming
  (Concha Halotidis) 石决明 15 g and ci shi (Magneti tum) 磁石 15 g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- In chronic or recurrent cases (with internal causes), Liver (and Kidney)
  yin are gradually consumed, and the pattern changes. When yin
  deficiency is primary, see p.523. In many cases, there will be a mixture
  of yin deficiency and Liver yang rising. This is commonly seen in middle-
  aged patients with hypertension. The correct approach is to nourish yin
  and restrain yang. Suitable formulae include TIAN MA GOU TENG
  YIN (Gastrodia and Gambir Formula 天麻钩藤饮, p.670) and ZHEN
  GAN XI FENG TANG (Sedate the Liver and Extinguish Wind Decoction
  镇肝熄风汤, p.655).

Patent medicines
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Ji Gu Cao Wan 鸡骨草丸 (Jigucao Pills)
Niu Huang Jie Du Pian 牛黄解毒片 (Peking Niu Huang Chich Tu Pien)
- with purulent discharge
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心连抗炎片
  (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

Acupuncture
S.17 (yi feng -), S.3 (zhong zhu -), S.5 (mai guan -), GB.40 (qiu xu -),
GB.20 (feng chi -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.3 (tai chong -),
Liv.2 (xing jian -), LI.5 (yang xi -)
- with yin deficiency and rising yang add Bl.18 (gan shu +),
  Bl.23 (shen shu +), Kid. 3 (tai xi +), Kid.1 (yong quan)

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Liver Fire type tinnitus
  include hypertension, acute and chronic otitis media, alcohol toxicity,
  transient ischaemic attack and stress.
- Tinnitus from Liver Fire, especially with a short history, can often have
  a reasonably good prognosis if treatment and lifestyle changes can
  extinguish the Fire. Stimulating substances like coffee, alcohol, hot and
  spicy foods, cocaine and amphetamines should be strictly avoided.
  Stress management or relaxation techniques will be useful for some
  patients.
18.4 PHLEGM HEAT (FIRE)

Pathophysiology

- Phlegm Heat tinnitus often begins as an acute episode in patients who already have some Phlegm Damp accumulation in the ear. Such accumulation is usually seen in patients with rich, greasy or overly sweet diets, or in those with weak Spleen and Stomach function. Phlegm Damp easily causes stasis and the generation of Heat.
- Acute Phlegm Heat episodes are frequently treated with antibiotics which can weaken the Spleen, predisposing to more Phlegm Damp and the chronic tinnitus or hearing loss of Spleen deficiency with Phlegm Damp (p.526).
- This pattern often co-exists with Liver Fire.

Clinical features

- Tinnitus in one or both ears (with a sound like cicadas). There may be a feeling of blockage or pressure in the ears. This condition is often long term and deteriorates with time, with gradual loss of hearing.
- In some cases there will be a yellow purulent discharge, usually from one ear only and associated with earache.
- Fullness and heaviness in the head, woolly headedness.
- Fullness in the chest and epigastrium, nausea.
- Poor appetite, poor sense of taste or bitter taste in the mouth.
- Loose or sluggish stools.
- Recurrent clearing of the throat or coughing with yellow sputum.

T: Red, with a thick greasy white or yellow coat.
P: Wiry and slippery or slippery and rapid.

Treatment principle

Clear Heat and transform Phlegm.
Harmonise the Stomach and redirect turbidity downwards.

Prescription

WEN DAN TANG 温胆汤
(“Bamboo and Hoelen Combination”) modified

zhù ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeinis) 茯荷 12g
bān xiá* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g
zhí shí (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 朴实 9g
fù líng (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 9g
huáng qín (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
chái hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g
chén pí (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g
huáng lián (Rhzoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g

shi cháng pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g
tóng cáo (Medulla Tetrapanacis Papyrifera) 通草 6g
shèng qiáng (Rhizoma Zingiberis officinalis) 生姜 3pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Lü Bi Hua Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With Heat in the Liver or rising Liver Jang, add one or two of the following herbs: gou tèng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 12g, shì jué míng* (Concha Haliouidis) 石决明 15g and ci shí (Magnesium) 硫剂 12g or jú huà (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 9g.
- With a purulent discharge, add dà qíng ye (Folium Daqingye) 大青叶 12g and bān lān gèn (Radix Isatidis) 板蓝根 12g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

Phlegm Fire

- In severe cases of tinnitus, accompanied by vertigo, a very thick yellow tongue coat, possible disturbances of consciousness and constipation, the correct treatment is to drain Fire and drive out Phlegm with GUN TAN WAN (Vaporize Phlegm Pill 滚痰丸).

duān ménɡ shí (calcined Lapis Micae seu Chloritii) 猫星石 30g
jiù dà huànɡ (wine fried Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 酒大黄 240g
huánɡ qín (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 240g
chén xiānɡ (Linum Aquilariae) 沉香 15g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into small pills with water. The dose is 6-9 grams once or twice daily, with ginger tea. (Source: Shi You Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Residual Phlegm in the ear

- Following resolution of the Heat signs, or in between episodes of Phlegm Heat, there is usually residual or persistent Phlegm Damp. If there is little or no evidence of Heat, a formula such as ER CHEN TANG (Citrus and Pinellia Combination 二陈汤) modified, may be used for a lengthy period to dry the ear out and prevent recurrence.

bān xiá* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g
fǔ líng (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 12g
chén pí (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 9g
zhì gàn cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 6g
shì cháng pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g
tóng cáo (Medulla Tetrapanacis Papyrifera) 通草 6g
chái hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 6g

Method: Decoction.
18.5 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- Tinnitus and/or hearing loss due to stagnant Blood usually follows some traumatic head injury or injury to the ear, like exposure to loud noise or sudden pressure changes during flying or scuba diving. Alternatively, tinnitus from Blood stagnation may develop if other types of tinnitus become chronic or are unresolved.

Clinical features

- Persistent tinnitus and/or hearing loss, possibly associated with a dark or black discharge from the ear, or dark matter mixed in with the ear wax
- Possible earache or sharp pains
- Dark complexion, dark rings under the eyes
- Spider naevii on the face, neck and trunk
- Chronic headaches
- Hair loss, dizziness

Treatment principle

Invigorate Blood, eliminate Blood stasis
Clear and open the ear

Prescription

TONG QIAO HUO XUE TANG 通窍活血汤
(Unblock the Orifices and Invigorate Blood Decoction)

This formula is designed for Blood stagnation affecting the senses, and is probably best when the stasis is largely confined to the head.

- chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 6g
- chuan xiong (Radix Liguistici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g
- tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g
- hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 9g
- cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 藿白 3g
- da zao (Fructus Ziziphii Jujubae) 大枣 7pce
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 9g
- she xiang (Secretio Moschus) 麝香 0.15g

Method: Decoction. She xiang is usually taken separately or added to the strained decoction (chong fu 沸服). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- If there are signs of Phlegm, add zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 渣贝母 9g, hai zao (Herba Sargassii) 海藻 12g and kun bu
Clinical features
- gradual and progressive onset of tinnitus and/or hearing loss that is generally mild and constant, tending to be worse at night and when fatigued or after exertion (and ejaculation)
- the sound of the tinnitus is variable, sometimes high pitched, sometimes like holding a shell over the ear
- dizziness
- lower back weakness and pain
- poor memory
- loss of libido
- yin deficiency: flushing, insomnia, sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot'), night sweats, red, dry tongue with little or no coat, thready and rapid pulse
- yang deficiency: impotence, cold extremities, pale complexion, oedema or frequent urine or nocturia, pale swollen wet tongue, deep slow and thready pulse
- qi (jing) deficiency: if neither tending to yin or yang deficiency (that is, qi or jing deficiency) the tongue may be normal or pinkish and soft. The Kidney position on the pulse is deep and weak.

Pathophysiology
- Kidney deficiency tinnitus and/or hearing loss is typically seen in older patients. It may, however, occur in younger people if the Kidneys have been weakened by lifestyle factors or illness. Kidney yin deficiency tends to cause tinnitus, while Kidney yang deficiency tends to lead to hearing loss. The Kidneys influence hearing acuity, and some type of Kidney deficiency is thought to be at the root of most hearing disorders.

Patent medicines
XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐瘀汤 (Achyranthes and Persica Combination)
This formula is perhaps the most popular for all purpose removal of Blood stagnation. It is selected if there are more systemic signs of Blood stagnation.

- tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................................ 12g
- hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 .............................. 9g
- chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 .................... 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ................................ 12g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .......................... 9g
- chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ................................ 6g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .......................... 6g
- jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 板蓝根 ......................... 6g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .......................... 6g
- zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 橘核 ..................................... 6g
- gai cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ............................. 3g

Method: Decoction.

Acupuncture
Local treatment is most important. Choose two or three of SJ.21 (er men) - , SL.19 (ting gong) - , SJ.17 (yi feng) - , GB.2 (ting hui) - plus Sp.10 (xue hai) - , BL.17 (ge shu) - , GB.20 (feng chi) - , Kid.3 (tan xi) - , GB.39 (xuan zong) - , SP.6 (san yin jiao) - as appropriate.

Clinical notes
- Biomedical conditions that may present as Blood stagnation type tinnitus or hearing loss include auditory or cerebral tumours, traumatic head injury, inner ear damage, post concussion syndrome, migraine and TMJ problems.
- Can be difficult to treat, especially if long term or where there is structural damage to the inner ear.
- Patients exposed to loud noise (for example rock musicians, roadworkers and owners of walkmen) often fall into this pattern, but may have few (or none) of the classical signs and symptoms of Blood stagnation.

Treatment principle
Tonify and strengthen the Kidney (and Liver)
Benefit yin (or yang)

Prescription
18.6.1 Kidney yin deficiency
ER LONG ZUO CI WAN 耳聋左慈丸
(Pill for Deafness that is Kind to the Left)

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita) 熟地 ............ 240g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae) 山药 .......................... 120g
- shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ........................ 120g
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ............................. 90g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 90g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .......................... 90g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ........................................ 90g
ci shi (Magnetitum) 磁石 ........................................... 90g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ......................... 60g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinesis) 五味子 ................... 60g
clai (Magneutum) ........................................................... 90g
shu chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ......................... 60g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinesis) 五味子 ................... 60g
shu chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ......................... 60g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinesis) 五味子 ................... 60g

Method: Grind herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.
(Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Modifications
* With Liver yin deficiency (dry eyes with blurring vision, irritability etc.), add gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 90g, nu zhen zi (Fructus Ligustri Lucidi) 女贞子 90g and han lian cao (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草 90g.

Patent medicines
Er Long Zuo Ci Wan 耳聋左磁丸 (Er Long Zuo Ci Wan)
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)

18.6.2 Kidney yang (qi) deficiency

BU GU ZHI WAN 补骨脂丸
(Psoraleae Pills)

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitas) 熟地 .................. 180g
du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲 .......................... 120g
tu si zi (Semem Cuscutae Chinensis) 葫芦子 .......................... 120g
bu gu zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corylifolae) 补骨脂 ....................... 90g
hu lu ba (Semem Trigonellae Foeni-graeci) 葫芦巴 ..................... 90g
bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 .............................. 90g
bai ji li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris) 白朮 ................................ 90g
ci shi (Magnetitum) 磁石 ........................................... 90g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ............................... 90g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .......................... 60g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ......................... 60g
chuan jiao (Pericarpium Zanthoxyli Bungeani) 川椒 .................... 50g
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .............................. 40g

Method: Grind herbs to powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.
(Source: Zhong Yi Er Bi Hou Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotone Pills)
You Gui Wan 右归丸 (You Gui Wan)
### 18.7 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY (WITH PHLEGM DAMP)

#### Pathophysiology
- Spleen qi deficient tinnitus and/or hearing loss occurs most commonly in those who have damaged the Spleen through overwork or poor dietary habits.
- This type may also be seen in people who have had repeated courses of antibiotics to treat middle ear or sinus infections. Frequent antibiotic use can damage Spleen yang predisposing to the buildup of fluids, Phlegm and Damp in the ear. This commonly happens in children, who often eventually need surgical implantation of grommets to drain the inner ear.

#### Clinical features
- Tinnitus and/or loss of hearing that is worse with fatigue and exertion, or on rising from sitting or lying. The sound is likened to cicadas or rushing water, and has a relatively low pitch. Occasionally the ear feels empty, cold, or wet. There may be recurrent or persistent sinus or eustachian tube congestion.
- Fatigue and weakness
- Poor appetite, picky eating
- Abdominal distention after eating
- Loose stools
- Pale complexion and lips
- Pale, with tooth marks and a thin white coat

#### Treatment principle
- Strengthen and tonify Spleen and Stomach qi
- Raise yang and open the ears

#### Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>脾气虚加痰湿</th>
<th>18.7 SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY (WITH PHLEGM DAMP)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BU ZhONG YI QI TANG</strong> (补中益气汤)</td>
<td><strong>LIU JUN ZI TANG</strong> 六君子汤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified</td>
<td>(Six Major Herbs Combination) modified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This formula is selected when Phlegm is not copious. The patient may also have chronic sinus congestion, throat clearing and prominent digestive symptoms.

- **SHI CHANG PU** (Rhizoma Acori Graminei): 石菖蒲 6g
- **ZHI GAN CAO** (Honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis):炙甘草 3g

**Method:** Decoction. (Source: Zhang Yi Li Bi Hou Ke Xin)

#### Modifications
- With weak Heart qi (palpitations, insomnia and anxiety), add **WU WEI ZI** (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis):五味子 6g, **SUAN ZAO REN** (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae):酸枣仁 12g and **BAI ZI REN** (Semen Biotae Orientalis):柏子仁 12g.
- With digestive weakness, loose stools and fluid retention, add **SHAN YAO** (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae):山药 12g and **ZE XIE** (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis):泽泻 9g.
- With Spleen yang deficiency, add **GAN JIANG** (Rhizoma Zingiber Officinalis):干姜 6g, or use **FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN** (Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger Formula):附子理中丸, p.56 as guiding formula.

#### Patent medicines

- **Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan** 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan): with frequent colds and easy sweating
- **Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan** 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan): particularly good for children
- **Ren Shen Yang Ying Wan** 人参养营丸 (Ginseng Tonic Pills): with watery exudate from the ear and loose stools
Clinical features

- Chronic tinnitus and/or hearing loss that tend to be intermittent and worse with fatigue. In some cases, the tinnitus may be loud enough to impair hearing.
- Pale or sallow complexion, pale lips and nails
- Fatigue and weakness
- Dry skin and hair
- Easily tired limbs
- Light headedness or postural dizziness
- Spots before the eyes
- Poor appetite
- Shortness of breath
- Palpitations with anxiety and insomnia

T: Pale with a thin white coat
P: Thready and weak

Treatment principle

To tonify and nourish qi and Blood
Strengthen the Spleen

Prescription

SHI QUAN DA BU TANG 十全大补汤
(Ginseng and Dang Gui Ten Combination)

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita) 熟地 .......... 15g
- huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ............... 15g
- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 .................. 12g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 .......... 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotum Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ......................... 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 ................. 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ....................... 9g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ............. 6g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .................. 3g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .............. 3g

Method: Decoction.
Modifications

• For a stronger Blood and yin generating action, add lu jiao jiao* (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum) 鹿角胶 12g and gui ban jiao° (Plastrum Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟板胶 12g.
• With weak Heart Blood (insomnia, anxiety, palpitations), add long yan rou (Arillus Euphorbiæ Longanae) 龙眼肉 9g, yi zhi ren (Fructus Alpiniæ Oxyphyllæ) 益智仁 6g, suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosæ) 酸枣仁 12g and mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 9g.
• With weak Liver Blood (muscular tics and spasms, blurred vision, pale conjunctive), add mu gua (Fructus Chaenomelis) 木瓜 6g, nu zhen zi (Fructus Ligustri Lucidi) 女贞子 12g and han lian cao (Herba Ecliptæ Prostratae) 旱莲草 12g.
• If the Blood deficiency generates some Heat (flushing, heat at night, red complexion), add chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g and shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 9g.

Patent medicines

Shi Quan Da Bu Wan 十全大补丸 (Shi Quan Da Bu Wan)
Ba Zhen Wan 八珍丸 (Ba Zhen Wan)

Acupuncture

SJ.17 (yi feng +), GB.2 (ting hui +), St.36 (zu san li + ▲), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Ren.4 (guan yuan + ▲), BL.20 (pi shu +), BL.23 (shen shu + ▲), BL.15 (xin shu +), BL.17 (ge shu)

Clinical notes

• Biomedical conditions that may present as qi and Blood deficiency type tinnitus and hearing loss include anaemia, fatigue and overwork and neurosis.
• This pattern is generally difficult to treat, requiring lengthy treatment for any satisfactory result.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR TINNITUS AND DEAFNESS

Excess patterns

Wind Heat - Yin Qiao San 银翘散
  • with purulent exudate - Man Jing Zi San 茂荆子散
  • with strong internal Heat - Yang Shen Tong Sheng Tang 防风通圣汤

Liver qi stagnation - Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸

Liver Fire - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤

Phlegm Heat - Wen Dan Tang 温胆汤
  • After the acute episode with residual Phlegm - Er Chen Tang 二陈汤，
    or Ban Xia Bai Zhu Tian Ma Tang 半夏白术天麻汤

Blood stagnation - Tong Qiao Hua Xue Tang 通窍活血汤
  • with systemic symptoms - Xue Liu Zhu Yu Tang 血府逐瘀汤

Deficient patterns

Kidney deficiency
  • yin deficiency - Er Long Zuo Ci Wan 耳聋左慈丸
  • yang deficiency - Bu Gu Zhi Wan 补骨脂丸

Spleen qi deficiency (with Phlegm Damp) - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤
  • with copious sticky Phlegm - Lin Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤

Qi and Blood deficiency - Shi Quan Da Bu Tang 十全大补汤

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
19. Dizziness and Vertigo

**Excess patterns**
- Liver *qi* stagnation
- Liver *yang* rising, Liver Fire
- Phlegm Damp
- Blood stagnation

**Deficient patterns**
- Liver and Kidney *yin* deficiency with *yang* rising
- *Qi* and Blood deficiency
- Kidney deficiency
DIZZINESS, VERTIGO

The term "xuan yun" is used in Traditional Chinese Medicine to describe both dizziness and vertigo (Fig. 19.1), and is characterised by symptoms ranging from mild lightheadedness or giddiness, to severe loss of balance and equilibrium disturbance.

The mild end of the range, termed dizziness, may only occur on moving and last a few seconds. Occasionally, fainting may occur. It is frequently accompanied by blurring vision or spots in the visual field.

Vertigo is generally more severe, and is characterised by a sudden sensation of spinning, or the surroundings rotating. It may be described as 'head spinning', 'the room spinning', 'bedspins' or 'everything rocking and swaying'. Vertigo may or may not be precipitated by movement of the head, and may last for minutes or hours. Patients occasionally awake from sleep with vertigo. During episodes they usually become frightened and tend to remain immobile. Nausea, vomiting and tinnitus are often associated with vertigo.

In TCM, dizziness and vertigo are primarily due to either excess or deficiency affecting the head. In excess patterns, there is too much of some pathological entity in the head (yang, Wind, Phlegm, stagnant qi, Blood stasis), which hinders the normal flow of yin, yang, qi, and Blood. In the deficient patterns, there is too little of some physiological substance (Blood, qi, yang, jing) getting to the head.

AETIOLOGY

Liver qi stagnation, Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat, Liver Fire and Liver yin deficiency with yang rising

Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions and stress disrupt the circulation of Liver qi. When qi stagnates for any length of time, the resulting pressure can generate Heat. Depending on the intensity of the aetiological conditions, this can cause stagnant Heat, the more severe Fire or the eventual generation of internal Wind. Qi stagnation can give rise to Phlegm by damaging the Spleen and retarding the movement of fluids.

Qi stagnation, stagnant Heat and Fire are excess patterns. Once there is Heat, it can deplete and scorch the yin, giving rise to the more chronic yin deficiency with yang rising, or Liver Wind. The Wind that gives rise to dizziness is most frequently associated with Liver yang deficiency, although dizziness may be a symptom of all the patterns that can cause internal Wind (Box 19.2). The dizziness associated with Liver qi stagnation is generally quite mild (may be described as 'light-headedness') and due to poor distribution of qi and Blood. Dizziness severe enough to cause loss of balance or collapse is associated with rising Liver yang or Wind. See also Wind stroke, p.646.

Phlegm Damp

Phlegm Damp is generated by overindulgence in Phlegm or Damp producing foods and associated eating habits that weaken Spleen qi. Repeated courses of antibiotics can also damage Spleen qi, allowing the generation and accumulation of Dampness. Foods that can weaken the Spleen if consumed in excess include dairy products, fatty, sweet or raw foods, and alcohol. Once the Spleen is weak, inefficient digestion allows accumulation of Dampness, which over time congeals into Phlegm. In the presence of Heat, Damp may be condensed to form Phlegm in a shorter time.

**Box 19.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF DIZZINESS AND VERTIGO**

- motion sickness
- anxiety
- postural hypotension
- alcohol intoxication
- vertebrobasilar insufficiency
- benign positional vertigo
- ear infection, labyrinthitis
- vestibular neuritis
- following head injury
- hyperventilation
- hypotension
- multiple sclerosis
- cardiac arrhythmia
- anaemia
- menopausal syndrome
- Meniere's disease
- epilepsy
- cerebellar degeneration
- ischaemia or infarction affecting the brain stem
- tumours, acoustic neuroma
- sternocleidomastoid trigger points

**Drugs (vestibular nerve toxins)**

- streptomycin
- kanamycin
- alcohol
- barbiturates
- opiates
- nicotine
- caffeine
- salicylates
- quinine
- carbon monoxide

**Others**

- diuretics in large doses
- tranquillisers
- antihypertensive agents
- antidepressants
Poor fluid metabolism (due to Spleen, Lung or Kidney dysfunction) may cause stagnation, accumulation and thickening of physiological fluids into Phlegm. In addition, prolonged Liver qi stagnation can contribute, by weakening the Spleen and by retarding the movement of fluids, which gradually condense into Phlegm. Phlegm can fill the head, obstructing the 'clear yang' of the senses, and also obstruct the passage of qi and Blood to the head, causing relatively severe dizziness.

**Stagnant Blood**
Stagnant Blood type dizziness usually follows an injury to the head. It can also follow other long term pathologies, particularly stagnant qi, yin deficiency or Phlegm, all of which obstruct the circulation of qi and Blood.

Stagnant Blood type dizziness also appears to occur postpartum if the birth products and lochia are not completely expelled. If the complete downward discharge of chong mai is obstructed by stagnant Blood, chong mai qi will accumulate and rebel upwards to the head.

**Qi and Blood deficiency**
Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold raw foods or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen qi.

---

**BOX 19.2 MECHANISMS OF INTERNAL WIND**

**Yin deficiency**
The body's yin is the anchor that secures yang and provides a counterweight to its active and rising nature. At some critical point of deficiency, yin is unable to restrain Liver yang, which at a certain point of volatility and movement becomes Wind. This type of Wind can be sudden and catastrophic - it is the type of Wind that can cause severe dizziness, to the point of Wind stroke, leading to hemiplegia or death. It typically follows years of yin depletion.

**Blood deficiency**
This type of Wind is similar in astiology to the previous type in that the Wind is generated by failure of the Blood to anchor qi - when qi moves without the grounding control of Blood, a mild form of Wind is generated. Blood deficient Wind is more likely to cause mild rhythmic tics, tremors and spasms. The dizziness associated with Blood deficiency is more likely to be mild and postural, and due to failure of Blood to reach the head.

**Heat**
Because Heat and movement are closely related physiologically, at a certain level of intensity, Internal Heat can generate sufficient movement to become Wind. This most frequently manifests as the convulsions of a high fever.

---

**BOX 19.3 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Aggravation**
- with rising - qi and Blood deficiency
- with stress or emotion - Liver qi stagnation, yang rising or Wind
- with sexual activity - Kidney deficiency

**Amelioration**
- with rest - deficiency

**Associated symptoms**
- nausea or vomiting - Phlegm Damp
- headache, blurring vision and facial flushing - yin deficiency with rising yang or Wind

**Nature**
- severe, as if the room is spinning - Phlegm Damp
- mild dizziness or lightheadedness - deficiency

---

The Spleen (and Lungs) are the source of the body's qi and Blood, so weakness of these organs will inevitably lead to a decrease in production of qi and Blood. Other causes are acute or chronic haemorrhage, extended breast feeding and malnutrition (seen for example in vegetarians who consume too little protein). Qi and Blood are so closely related that deficiency of one often leads to deficiency of the other.

**Kidney deficiency**
Kidney deficiency can be either jing, yang or yin deficiency. Kidney deficiency may be inherited or may develop as a result of age, chronic illness or excessive sexual activity. Kidney yang or qi is particularly affected by prolonged exposure to cold conditions or excessive lifting or standing (particularly if this occurs in a cold environment). In younger people, Kidney qi may be weakened while Kidney yang remains intact, in which case the cold symptoms are not seen.

Kidney jin is damaged through overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep, febrile disease, insufficient fluid replacement and by the use of some prescription and recreational drugs. Kidney jin may also be damaged by pregnancy or haemorrhage following childbirth.

**DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS**
Dizziness should be distinguished from the following disorders:
- **Jue syndrome** (jue zheng 截證): Jue syndrome is characterised by sudden loss of consciousness accompanied by cold extremities, then a gradual regaining of consciousness with no residual paralysis, speech difficulties or sequelae. When dizziness is very severe, patients may fall over, however
there is no loss of consciousness. The sorts of disorders that are categorized as \textit{fei} syndrome include hypoglycaemic coma, hysterical syncope, haemorrhagic or allergic shock.

- **Wind stroke** (zhong feng 中风): Wind stroke involves partial or total loss of consciousness with residual hemiplegia, slurring speech and/or facial paralysis. Patients suffering from Wind stroke will often feel dizzy, however the sequelae distinguishes Wind stroke from the TCM diagnosis of dizziness.

- **Epilepsy** (xian zheng 病症): Epilepsy involves partial or total loss of consciousness, collapse and convulsions. Epileptic patients may experience dizziness as part of their aura or partial seizure, but the accompanying pattern makes discrimination clear. Upon regaining consciousness, epileptic patients are generally asymptomatic.
19.1 LIVER QI STAGNATION

**Pathophysiology**
- The Liver channel travels to the vertex of the head, so any obstruction of Liver qi may disrupt the distribution of qi and Blood to the head and cause dizziness. Liver qi stagnation can lead to an accumulation of qi in the head (and an excess type of dizziness), or the qi may be obstructed before it gets to the head, accumulating in the throat (causing ‘plum stone qi’) or in the chest. When qi fails to reach the head the dizziness is of a deficient type and usually mild.
- If Liver qi obstruction is persistent or severe, then Heat can be generated. Heat in the Liver causes Liver yang or Fire to rise. Over time the Heat can damage jin. The progression between Liver qi stagnation, yang rising, and jin deficiency is commonly observed clinically.

**Clinical features**
- dizziness that is worse with stress and generally not related to postural changes
- tightness or fullness in the chest, often described as difficulty in drawing a satisfying breath
- hypochondriac discomfort or tightness, frequent sighing
- headache or head distension
- occasional fatigue (although may feel better for activity or exercise)
- irritability or depression
- abdominal distension, flatulence and alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- women may experience irregular menstruation, pre-menstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- all symptoms tend to be aggravated by stress
- T normal or dark (qing 青) with a thin white or yellow coat
- P wiry

**Treatment principle**
Soothe the Liver and regulate qi

**Prescription**

XIAO YAO SAN 逍遥散
(Bupleurum and Dang Gui Formula) modified

- chái hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .......................... 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ...................... 9g
- bái shào (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .................. 9g
- bái zhú (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 .......... 9g
- fu líng (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ......................... 9g
- wèi jiàng (roasted Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 姜黴 .... 6g
- bo hé (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 ......................... 3g
- sán guó (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 ............................ 15g
- ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 ................... 12g
- zhí gàn cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ......... 6g

Method: Decoction or pills. In decoction, bo hé is added a few minutes before the end of cooking.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**
- Dizziness following an unresolved Wind attack, and accompanied by loss of appetite, fatigue, alternating fever and chills, bitter taste in the mouth, dry throat and wiry pulse, is shao yang syndrome. The correct treatment is to harmonise shao yang with XIAO CHAI HU TANG (Minor Bupleurum Combination 小柴胡汤, p.54).
- Filled or distended abdomen, flatulence and alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- women may experience irregular menstruation, pre-menstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- all symptoms tend to be aggravated by stress
- T normal or dark (qing 青) with a thin white or yellow coat
- P wiry

**Patent medicines**
- Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan 加味逍遥丸 (Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan)
- Chái Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chái Hu Shu Gan Wan)

**Acupuncture**
- GB.20 (zàng chéng), BL.18 (shān yì), Liv.3 (tài yáng), GB.43 (xì xi)
- PC.6 (wéi guān), GB.34 (yáng líng guǎn), shēn zhì points on the upper back, neck and superior sternocleidomastoid muscle

**Clinical notes**
- The dizziness in this pattern may be associated with the stress response, neurasthenia, hepatitis, anaemia or Meniere’s disease.
- The dizziness of this pattern, particularly when it is due to stress, often has its origin in muscle spasm in the neck which constricts blood supply to the head. Needling the shēn zhì points on these muscles can relieve spasm and re-establish better blood flow.
19.2 LIVER YANG RISING, LIVER FIRE

Pathophysiology

- In their pure form these are excess patterns, and in younger individuals Liver yang rising or Liver Fire are a common cause of dizziness. However, the relationship between qi stagnation, rising Liver yang or Fire and Liver yin deficiency with rising yang is such that in many patients there are elements of all three.
- In this pattern, Liver yang rises when stagnant qi is suddenly released (like popping a cork). The relationship between yang rising and Fire in this pattern is one of degree. Both are the result of a sudden release of pent up qi, but Fire is hotter and drier and may cause haemorrhage. Liver Fire is more likely to develop if there is pre-existing internal Heat or severe aetiological conditions. Fire is exacerbated by a diet rich in heating foods and alcohol.

Clinical features

- Dizziness and vertigo, which may be severe and initiated or aggravated by stress, anger or emotional upset.
- Headache or fullness and distension in the head and eyes.
- Blurring vision, red, sore, gritty eyes.
- Irritability, tempestuous outbursts.
- Red complexion or facial flushing.
- Insomnia with much dreaming.
- T red edges with a thin yellow coat.
- P wiry and rapid.

Treatment principle

Calm the Liver and subdue yang.
Clear Heat and extinguish Wind.

Prescription

TIAN MA GOU TENG YIN 天麻钩藤饮  
Gastrodia and Gambir Formula modified

- tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻 ........................................ 9g
- gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 ........................................ 9g
- shi jue ming” (Concha Haliotidis) 蒜灸明 ........................................ 15g
- xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris) 夏枯草 ........................................ 15g
- fu shen (Sclerotium Portae Cocos Paradacis) 茯神 ........................................ 15g
- ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 ........................................ 15g
- sang ji sheng (Ramulus Sangjisheng) 独寄生 ........................................ 15g
- du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲 ........................................ 15g
- niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 ........................................ 12g
- ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 ........................................ 12g
- shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 ........................................ 12g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ........................................ 9g

Method: Decoction. Shi jue ming should be cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added. Gou teng is added near the end of cooking.

Modifications

- With Liver Fire, causing severe headache, red, sore, distended eyes, dark urine, severe irascibility, a red tongue with a thick, dry, yellow tongue coat and a wiry, rapid pulse, add long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancaoo) 龙胆草 9g and mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 12g, or use LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG (Gentiana Combination 龙胆泻肝汤, p.500) to clear the Liver and drain Fire.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g and mang xiao (Mirabilitum) 苓硝 6g, or combine with DANG GUI LONG HUI WAN (Dang Gui, Gentiana Longdancaoo and Aloe Pill 当归龙胆丸, p.771-772) to clear the Liver and bowels.
- With mild yin deficiency, add 2 or 3 of the following herbs: mu li” (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, gui ban” (Plastri Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟板 12g, bai jia” (Carapax Amydae Sinensis) 甲乙 12g, he shou wu (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 何首乌 12g or sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 15g.
- With Liver Wind (severe dizziness and tinnitus, vomiting, numbness in the extremities, tics, tremors, fasciculations and spasms), add long gu” (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15g, mu li” (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g and zhen zhu mu” (Concha Margaritaeferae) 珍珠母 15g to calm the Liver and suppress Wind.

Variations and additional prescriptions

- If the Wind becomes the main concern, LING YANG JIAO TANG (Antelope Horn Decoction 龙角汤) modified, can be used to clear Liver Heat and extinguish Wind. See also Wind Strokes, p.661.

LING YANG JIAO FEN” (powdered Cornu Antelopis)

- long yao jiao .................................................. 4g
- gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 ........................................ 12g
- shi jue ming” (Concha Haliotidis) 蒜灸明 ........................................ 15g
- gui ban” (Plastri Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟板 ........................................ 12g
- xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris) 夏枯草 ........................................ 15g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................ 15g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ........................................ 9g
- niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 ........................................ 15g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 ........................................ 15g

19. DIZZINESS, VERTIGO
**Liver and Kidney Yin Deficiency with Yang Rising**

**Pathophysiology**
- Dizziness due to Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with rising yang is a mixed pattern of deficient yin leading to excess yang. The Liver and Kidney deficiency is the predominant pattern. Liver yin deficiency often follows chronic conditions involving rising Liver yang or Fire, or stagnant Heat. This pattern is more common in older individuals.

- The mechanism of rising yang in this category is different to that in the previous one. In simple yang rising, pent up qi eventually creates enough pressure to ‘pop the cork’. In this pattern Liver and Kidney yin are deficient, and insufficient to anchor yang and provide a counterweight to its active and rising nature. When the anchoring yin reaches a critical point of deficiency, the yang loses its mooring and becomes excessively mobile, rising to the head. When rising yang reaches a certain level of intensity (sufficient to cause loss of balance or collapse), it may be redefined as Wind.

**Clinical features**
- Dizziness which is generally mild, with occasional exacerbations in severity that may be triggered or aggravated by stress, overexertion, emotional upset, sexual activity or heating foods and alcohol
- Blurring vision or visual disturbances, pressure behind the eyes
- Irritability and restlessness
- Headache, often temporal
- Insomnia, or restless sleep with much dreaming
- Facial flushing or malar flushing, night sweats
- Sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- Tinnitus
- Weakness, fatigue
- Lower backache
- T red and dry with little or no coat
- P wiry, thready and rapid

**Treatment principle**
- Nourish yin, sedate the Liver, anchor yang (subdue Wind)

**Prescription**

ZHEN GAN XI FENG TANG 樟肝熄风汤  
(Sedate the Liver and Extinguish Wind Decoction)

This is an important formula for Liver and Kidney deficiency with yang rising hypertension and pre-stroke conditions. It is suitable for long term...
Dizziness, Vertigo

Use, although a more specific Liver and Kidney yin tonic may be selected when the rising yang is sedated.

- **huai niu xi** (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 拱牛膝 30g
- **dai zhe shi** (Haematitum) 代赭石 30g
- **long gu** (Os Draconi) 光骨 15g
- **mu li** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g
- **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 15g
- **gui ban** (Plastry Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟板 15g
- **tian dong** (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchenensis) 天冬 15g
- **xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15g
- **mai ya** (Fructus Hordei Germinatus) 麦芽 12g
- **chuan lian zi** (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 6g
- **qing hao** (Herba Artemisiae Annuae) 青蒿 6g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 5g

**Method**: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Xie Ke Xue)

**Modifications**

- For chronic headaches, add **dan shen** (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15g and **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g.
- With hypertension, add **xia ku cao** (Spica Prunella Vulgaris) 夏枯草 15g, **gou teng** (Ramulus Uncarum cum Uncis) 钩藤 12g, **ju hua** (Flos Chrysanthemi Monfoliit) 菊花 9g and **di long** (Lumbricus) 地龙 9g.
- With significant Kidney deficiency, add **shu di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquistae) 熟地 18g and **shan zhu yu** (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 12g.
- With constipation, delete **dai zhe shi** and add **chi shi zhi** (Halloysitum Rubrum) 赤石脂 15g.

**Follow up treatment**

- When the symptoms are under control, a yin nourishing patent formula like **QI JU DI HUANG WAN** (Lycium, Chrysanthemum and Rehmannia Formula) 杞菊地黄丸, p.574 or **ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN** (Amorphae, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula) 柏八味丸, p.452 may be used to nourish Liver and Kidney yin.

**Patent medicines**

- **QI JU DI HUANG WAN**杞菊地黄丸 (Lycium-Rehmannia Pills)
- **ZHI BAI BA WEI WAN**柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- **Ming Mu Di Huang Wan**明目地黄丸 (Ming Mu Di Huang Wan)
- **Er Long Zuo Ci Wan**耳聋左慈丸 (Er Long Zuo Ci Wan)
- **Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan** 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)
- **Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan** 阴阳降压丸 (Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan)

**Acupuncture**

- Bl.23 (shen shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Liv.3 (tai chong), Bl.15 (xue shu), Kid.1 (yong quan), PC.6 (wei quan), GB.2 (ting hui)

**Clinical notes**

- The dizziness of this pattern may be associated with hypertension, menopausal syndrome or transitory ischaemic attacks.
- May respond well to correct and prolonged treatment, however unresponsive or persistent high blood pressure requires further investigation.
19.4 PHLEGM DAMP

Pathophysiology

Phlegm can cause dizziness by obstructing the passage of qi and 'clear yang' to the head, or by accumulating in the head and settling over the senses like a 'mist'. In the latter case, the Phlegm is often carried to the head with rising yang or Wind (Wind Phlegm), and indeed Phlegm frequently occurs with Liver yang. The pent up yang may be pre-existing, or the presence of Phlegm can cause stagnation and obstruct the qi, which at some point of critical intensity escapes and ascends as rising yang. In the head, Phlegm obstructs the ascent of 'clear yang' and the descent of 'turbid yin' leading to an imbalance in distribution of jin and yang, and relatively severe dizziness or vertigo.

Clinical features

- Dizziness or vertigo, sometimes enough to make the patient fall over
- The dizziness may be triggered by movement of the head or strong smells, or have no obvious trigger; the sensation is sometimes likened to being on a ship, or having the world spin around— even in bed, there may be "bedspins"
- Tinnitus, usually during episodes of dizziness
- Nausea or vomiting
- Poor appetite
- Poor concentration, woolly headedness, or a sensation of the head being "wrapped in a wet cloth"
- Frontal headaches
- Fullness and discomfort in the chest and epigastrium
- Lightness in the body, lethargy
- Frequent desire to sleep
- Pale and swollen, with a greasy white coat
- Slippery or soft and soggy

Treatment principle

- Dry Dampness, transform Phlegm
- Strengthen the Spleen and harmonise the Stomach

Prescription

BAN XIA BAI ZHU TIAN MA TANG 半夏白术天麻汤  
(Pinellia and Gastrodia Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotum Poria Cocos) 禹苓</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingibers Officinalis) 生姜</td>
<td>3pce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣</td>
<td>3pce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Ling Ji Xue)

Modifications

- With severe dizziness and nausea, increase the dose of tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻 to 9g, and add one or two of the following herbs: dai zhe shi (Haematitum) 代赭石 15g, xuan fu hua (Flos Liniulac) 茵花 9g, ji an can (Bonabux Batryticatus) 旋覆 9g or dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Borwi) 赤南星 6g.
- If the tongue coat is very thick, wet and greasy (indicating severe Dampness and fluid metabolism dysfunction), combine with WU LING SAN (Hosien Five Formula). (Source: p.50)
- With frontal headache, add bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 9g
- With qi deficiency (shortness of breath, low voice, sweating during the day) add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 15g and huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 15g.
- With epigastric fullness and loss of appetite, add bai dou kou (Fructus Amomi Kravanh) 白豆蔻 6g and sha ren (Fructus Amomi) 沙仁 6g.
- If tinnitus is severe and persistent, add shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g

Variations and additional prescriptions

Phlegm Heat

- Hot Phlegm is a frequent complication of Phlegm Damp, as the resulting obstruction easily generates Heat. The main features are flushing during episodes of dizziness, anxiety, palpitations, nausea, a slippery rapid pulse and greasy yellow tongue coat. The correct treatment is to resolve Hot Phlegm with WEN DAN TANG (Bamboo and Hosien Combination) modified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zh u ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taenias) 竹茹</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zh i sh i (Fructus Inmaturus Citri Auranti) 枳实</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Spleen deficiency with Phlegm Fluids

- If Spleen deficiency is the source of the Phlegm, the correct treatment is to strengthen the Spleen to resolve Phlegm with LIU JUN ZI TANG (Six Major Herbs Combination) modified.

  - chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 炒白术 12g
  - zhi huang qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei) 炙黄芪 12g
  - fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 猪苓 12g
  - ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 9g
  - ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternateae) 半夏 9g
  - chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g

  Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xi)

Patent medicines

Er Chen Wan 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan)
Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan)
- Spleen deficiency with Phlegm

Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture

St.8 (tou we), Ren.12 (zhong wan), Sp.5 (shang qin), PC.6 (wei guan), PC.5 (jian shi), GB.40 (qiu xue), St.40 (feng long -), St.41 (jing zhen -)
- with Spleen deficiency add Bl.20 (pi shen +) and St.36 (yu san li +)

Clinical notes

- The dizziness or vertigo of this pattern may be associated with Meniere's disease, benign positional vertigo, hypertension or chronic congestion of the middle ear.
- This pattern can respond well to correct treatment and dietary modification.
19.5 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- Dizziness due to Blood stagnation may be acute or chronic. When acute, there will be a history of head trauma; when chronic, there is often a long history of Liver qi stagnation (and frequently depression). The presence of stagnant Blood obstructs the free movement of qi and Blood and the distribution of yin and yang.

Clinical features

- dizziness
- stubborn headache that is fixed and boring
- forgetfulness
- insomnia, restless sleep
- palpitations
- depression, low spirits, irritability, mood swings
- dark or purplish lips, complexion or sclera, dark rings under the eyes, or spider naevi on the cheeks and nose
- purplish or dark with brown or purple petichial spots
- wavy, choppy or thready

Treatment principle

Invigorate Blood, eliminate Blood stasis
Regulate qi and clear the channels

Prescription

XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐瘀汤

(Adiantum and Persica Combination)

- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 12g
- tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 12g
- hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 12g
- chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川芎 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
- chi shao (Radix Peoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 9g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 9g
- zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantium) 枳壳 6g
- jie geng (Radix Platycoeli Grandiflora) 桔梗 6g
- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 6g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Ne Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With qi deficiency (tiredness, easy sweating and shortness of breath), add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 24-30g to tonify qi and move Blood.
- With Cold, add zhi fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carthameli Praeparata) 桂枝子 6g cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs and gui zhi (Cinnamomum Cassia) 桂枝 9g.
- With bone steaming fever, delete chai hu, jie geng and zhi ke, and add mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g, zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 9g and huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

- Dizziness that occurs post partum (with signs of Blood stagnation) may be the result of obstruction of zhong mai qi downwards by retained birth products, causing the obstructed qi that accumulates in the lower jiao to rebel upwards towards the head. The correct approach is to gently move stagnant Blood and regulate qi with QING HUN SAN (Clear the Hun Powder) modified.

Patent medicines

Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)

Acupuncture

Points of pain on the head (ah shi), BL17 (ge zhe), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), LI4 (he gu -), Liv4 (zhong du -), Liv3 (tai chong -), SL6 (yang liao -)

Clinical notes

- The dizziness of this pattern may be associated with post traumatic shock syndrome, post concussion syndrome, tumours, chronic depression or chronic migraines.
- Acute cases generally respond well depending on the severity of the trauma; chronic cases can be difficult to treat successfully.
19.6 Qi AND BLOOD DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- There are two mechanisms that may contribute to dizziness in this pattern.
  First, Qi and Blood can be weak or of poor quality, and thus unable to properly nourish the brain. Second, Qi and Blood may fail to reach the head at all due to functional weakness of the Heart and Spleen—the zang primarily responsible for correct distribution of Qi and Blood.

Clinical features
- Dizziness that is usually mild and postural, worse with rising from sitting or bending down, or when fatigued
- Palpitations with or without anxiety
- Anxiety, phobias, panic attacks
- Forgetfulness, poor memory
- Blurring vision, spots before the eyes
- Insomnia
- Fatigue and lethargy
- Low spirits or depression
- Pale, sallow complexion, pale lips and nails
- Poor appetite
- Dry skin and hair
- Heavy or prolonged menstrual periods, easy bruising
- T pale and maybe swollen with little coat
- P thready and weak

Treatment principle
- Tonify Qi and Blood
- Strengthen the Spleen and Stomach

Prescription

GUI PI TANG 归脾汤
(Ginseng and Longan Combination)

- zhi huang qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei) 炙黄芪 15g
- suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 12g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 12g
- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 当参 12g
- chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephala) 炒白术 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
- long yan rou (Arillus Euphorbiae Longanae) 龙眼肉 9g

Modifications
- If the Spleen is particularly weak, with loose stools, abdominal bloating and loss of appetite, use chao dang gui (dry fried Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 炒当归, increase the dose of mu xiang to 9g, and add shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposites) 山药 12g and shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 9g.
- With Spleen yin deficiency (cold extremities, cold abdomen on palpation and a desire for warm drinks), add rou gui ( Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g and gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 6g or use FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN (Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger Formula) 附子理中丸, p.56) as guiding formula.
- With easy sweating and frequent colds, increase the dosage of huang qi to 24g, and add ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9g and wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g, or use BU ZHONG YI QI TANG (Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) 补中益气汤, p.394)
- With Blood deficiency (palpitations and shortness of breath, frequent dizziness, insomnia with anxiety and palpitations), add shu di (Radix Rhamnus Glutinosus Conikut) 熟地 15g and jiao mu (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 9g the latter dissolved in the strained decoction.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- Other applicable formulae, depending on the mixture of deficiency, include BA ZHEN TANG (Ginseng and Dong Gui Light Combination 十全大补汤, p.726) and SHI QUAN DA BU TANG (Ginseng and Dong Gui Ten Combination 十全大补汤, p.529), the latter if there are cold signs.

Following a haemorrhage
- If the dizziness follows a haemorrhage (either postpartum or post traumatic), the correct approach is to first powerfully tonify Qi and Blood with DANG GUI BU XUE TANG (Tangkuei Decoction to Tonify the Blood 当归补血汤).
  - huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 30g
  - dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 6g
- Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Patent medicines
- Gui Pi Wan 归脾丸 (Gui Pi Wan)
- Heart and Spleen deficiency
  * Ba Zhen Wan 八珍丸 (Ba Zhen Wan)
  * qi and Blood deficiency
  * Shi Quan Da Bu Wan 十全大补丸 (Shi Quan Da Bu Wan)
  * qi and Blood deficiency with Cold
  * Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
  * Spleen qi sinking
  * Bu Nao Wan 补脑丸 (Cerebral Tonic Pills)
  * Heart and Kidney deficiency with shen disturbance
  * Dang Gui Ji Jing 当归鸡精 (Tang Kuei Essence of Chicken)
- a liquid extract that is especially good postpartum

**Acupuncture**
Sp.6 (san yin jiao +▲), BL.20 (pi shu +), St.36 (zhi san li +▲),
Ren.6 (qi hai +▲), Du.20 (bai hai +▲)
* with palpitations, add PC.6 (nei guan) and BL.15 (xin shu +)
* with insomnia, add Ht.7 (shen men +) and an xian (N-HN-54)

**Clinical notes**
- The dizziness of this pattern may be associated with anaemia,
thrombocytopenia, hypotension and post-partum convalescence.
- In general, this pattern takes longer to treat satisfactorily than the
  excess patterns, but does respond well to correct and prolonged
treatment.

**19.7 KIDNEY DEFICIENCY**

**19.7.1 Kidney yin deficiency**

**Pathophysiology**
- Dizziness due to Kidney yin deficiency is a pure deficient pattern. In contrast
to the previous pattern of Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with yang rising,
characterised by severe episodic dizziness, Kidney yin deficiency dizziness
is mild and occurs with exertion and fatigue.
- The type of dizziness described here is either a manifestation of deficient
Heat rising to the head and disturbing the sensory orifices, or of inadequate
Kidney jing. When jing is weak or insufficient, its function of producing
Marrow is weakened, and this weakness leads to malnourishment of the
'sea of marrow', that is, the brain.

**Clinical features**
- mild dizziness that is worse with sex, overexertion and late nights
- low grade fever, afternoon feverishness
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- malar or facial flushing
- forgetfulness and poor memory
- tiredness, fatigue
- insomnia
- tinnitus
- lower back soreness and weakness, heel pain
- tendency to constipation
- T red with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

**Treatment principle**
Tonify and nourish Kidney yin

**Prescription**
**ZUO GUI WAN 右归丸** *(Achyranthes and Rehmannia Formula) modified*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Rhizoma)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae tuber)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Cornus Officinalis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Capsaicinum officinarium)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu jiao jiao (Cervi cornu)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui ban jiao (Plastrum Tectum Glandulare)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.7.2 Kidney yang deficiency
Pathophysiology
Kidney yang deficiency causes dizziness less frequently than yin deficiency. When Kidney yang is weak, the ‘clear mind’ (of consciousness) is unable to ascend fully to the head and invigorate the sensory orifices.

Clinical features
- dizziness that is generally mild and aggravated or initiated by exertion
- poor memory
- mental and physical fatigue
- loss of hearing acuity
- cold extremities, cold intolerance
- low libido
- fluid retention
- nocturia
- lower back and knees cold, sore and weak
T swollen and pale
P deep and thready

Treatment principle
Warm the Kidneys and support yang

Prescription
YOU GUI WAN 右归丸
(Eucommia and Rehmannia Formula)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rhei)</td>
<td>240g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao shan yao (dry fried Radix Dioscoreae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu si zi (Sem'en Cuscutae Chinensis)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu jiao jiao (Cornu Cervi Gelatinum)</td>
<td>120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>90g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnaemoni Cassiae)</td>
<td>60-120g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carminaheli Praeparata)</td>
<td>60-180g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs to a powder and form into 8-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted lu jiao jiao and gui bai jiao are melted before being added to the strained decoction (yin hua 湜化). (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Niu Ke Xue)

Modifications
- If the yang is very weak, add two or three of the following herbs: xian ling pi (Herba Epimedi) 仙灵脾 90g, xian mao (Rhizoma Curculiginis Orchidios) 仙茅 90g, ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 90g, or rou cong rong (Cistanches Deserticolae) 肉苁蓉 120g.
- If the dizziness is relatively severe, add long gu (Os Draconis) 龙骨 60g, mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 60g and ci shi (Magnetitum) 磁石 60g.

Patent medicines

Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotonic Pills)
You Gui Wan 右归丸 (You Gui Wan)
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
Zhuang Yao Jie Shen Pian 庄腰健骨片 (Zhuang Yao Jian Shen)

Acupuncture
Kidney yin deficiency
Bl.23 (shen shu +), Ren.4 (gwan yuan +), Kid.3 (taixi +), Kid.6 (zhao hai), Lu.7 (lu que), tai yang (M-HN-9), Bl.15 (xue shu +)
Kidney yang deficiency
Du.20 (bai bai ▲), Bl.23 (shen shu +▲), Ren.4 (guan yuan +▲),
Du.4 (ming men +▲), SI.3 (hui xi), Bl.62 (shen mai), Kid.3 (tai xi +▲)

Clinical notes
• The dizziness of this pattern may be associated with chronic nephritis,
diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hyperaldosteronism,
pituitary hypofunction, hypertension or hypotension
• Dizziness related to Kidney deficiency patterns can respond well to
treatment, although in general Kidney yin deficiency patterns require
more prolonged treatment than yang deficiency patterns.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR DIZZINESS

Excess patterns
Liver qi stagnation - Xiao Yao Wan 小柴胡汤
• following unresolved Wind invasion (shao yang syndrome) -
  Xiao Chai Hu Tang 小柴胡汤
Liver yang rising - Tian Ma Gou Teng Yin 天麻钩藤饮
• Liver Fire - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤
• Liver Wind - Ling Yang Jiao Tang 青羊角汤
Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with yang rising
  - Zhen Gan Xi Fong Tang 镇肝熄风汤
Phlegm Damp - Ban Xia Bai Zhu Tian Ma Tang 半夏白术天麻汤
• with fluid metabolism dysfunction plus Wu Ling San 五苓散
• Phlegm Heat - Wen Dan Tang 温胆汤
• with predominant Spleen deficiency - Lin Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤
• with thin fluids - Ling Gui Zhu Gan Tang 候桂术甘汤
Blood stagnation - Xue Fu Zhu Yu Tang 血府逐瘀汤
• post partum - Qing Hun San 清魂散

Deficient patterns
Qi and Blood deficiency - Gui Pi Tang 归脾汤
• with cold - Li Zhong Wan 理中丸
• predominant qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 归中益气汤
• following haemorrhage - Dang Gui Bu Xue Tang 当归补血汤
Kidney deficiency
• yin deficiency - Zhuo Gui Wan 左归丸
• yang deficiency - You Gui Wan 右归丸

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open
circle○ or a hat^, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Liver

20. Hypochondriac Pain

Liver qi stagnation
Liver and Gall Bladder Damp Heat
Liver yin (Blood) deficiency
Blood stagnation

Appendix – Gallstones
HYPOCHONDRIAC PAIN

Hypochondriac pain describes pain, aching or discomfort over and beneath the costal margin (Fig. 20.1). The area is primarily influenced by the Liver and Gall Bladder and their channels.

AETIOLOGY

Liver qi stagnation

Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions and stress disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, which accumulates in the Liver causing pain. Qi stagnation is frequently complicated by a variety of other disorders that can also cause pain. Chronic qi stagnation can generate Heat, which, depending on duration and the intensity of the aetiological conditions, can develop into stagnant Heat or the more severe Fire. Long term qi stagnation can also lead to Blood stagnation. Stagnant Liver qi can disrupt the Spleen, weakening it and leading to the development of Dampness, which may then combine with any Heat in the system causing Damp Heat.

Damp Heat

There are two types of Damp Heat that cause hypochondriac pain - external and internal. The external variety of Damp Heat is a common seasonal pathogen in hot humid climates. Damp Heat has an affinity with several systems, particularly the Liver and Gall Bladder, Urinary Bladder and Intestines. In this case, the Liver and Gall Bladder are primarily affected, the presence of Damp Heat interrupting the circulation of qi and Blood at the level of the hypochondrium, causing pain. This type is usually acute and often follows symptoms of an external (tai yang) Wind attack.

Damp Heat is generated internally by simple overeating, or overconsumption of rich, greasy or spicy foods and especially alcohol, or by the accumulation of Dampness, which occurs if the Spleen is already weakened. Prolonged stagnation of Dampness easily produces Heat. This type is chronic and develops slowly.

Liver yin and Blood deficiency

Liver yin deficiency may be primary or, perhaps more commonly, secondary to Kidney yin deficiency. Liver yin deficiency may be an extension of Liver Blood deficiency, or follow any Liver Heat pattern, especially Liver Fire. Liver Blood deficiency can result from decreased production of Blood (due to Spleen qi deficiency), blood loss following trauma or childbirth, or overuse of the eyes. Long term stagnation of Liver qi can also damage Liver Blood, or, if stagnant Heat is generated, Liver yin.

Stagnant Blood

The stagnant Blood type hypochondriac pain may be acute or chronic. When acute, it is due to traumatic injury. When chronic, it is usually due to other prolonged Liver diseases such as Liver qi stagnation or Damp Heat that can secondarily lead to Blood stasis. Stagnant Blood is a common complicating feature of other prolonged Liver pathology.

CAUSES OF HYPOCHONDRIAC PAIN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BOX 20.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF HYPOCHONDRIAC PAIN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• acute and chronic hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• cirrhosis of the liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• cholecystitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• gallstones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• intercostal neuralgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• shingles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• parasitic diseases of the liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• liver cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• gastric ulcer disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• alcoholic liver disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• leaking duodenal ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• acute pancreatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• coronary thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• pyelonephritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• renal colic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• trauma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pain

• intermittent aching or distending pain, difficult to localise and clearly related to emotions - Liver qi stagnation

• fixed, stabbing pain that is easy to localise and is worse with pressure and at night - Blood stagnation

• dull ache, which is relieved by pressure and worse when stressed or fatigued - Liver yin deficiency

• continuous severe pain and fullness, worse for pressure - Damp Heat

Aggravation

• emotions and stress - Liver qi stagnation, yin (Blood) deficiency

• with palpation - Blood stagnation, Damp Heat, qi stagnation (up to a
20.1 LIVER QI STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- In this pattern Liver qi stagnation affects the distribution of qi and Blood through the hypochondriac region. Qi accumulates at the level of the Liver beneath the ribs, giving rise to the typical ache, fullness and distension associated with stagnant Liver qi.
- Liver qi stagnation is often complicated by Blood or yin deficiency. Prolonged qi stagnation can damage Liver Blood, first by weakening the source of Blood, namely the Spleen, and second by direct damage. The excess, in the form of stagnant qi, upsets the balance between the yin (that is the Blood) and yang (qi) of the Liver, with an excess of yang relative to yin and thus a relative deficiency of Liver Blood.
- Long term qi stagnation can generate Heat, which over time can damage Liver yin. The progression between Liver qi stagnation, stagnant Heat, and yin deficiency is commonly observed in the clinic.

Clinical features
- hypochondriac pain, ache, fullness or discomfort, usually on the right side, clearly related to the emotional state
- frequent sighing and belching
- fullness or tightness in the chest
- depression, irritability, moodiness
- dizziness
- headaches
- irregular menstruation, pre-menstrual breast tenderness
- shoulder and neck tension
- alternating constipation and loose stools, poor appetite
- T normal or dark (qing 青)
- P wiry

Treatment principle
Soothe the Liver and regulate qi

Prescription

CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN 柴胡疏肝散
(Bupleurum and Cypere Formula)

This is an excellent formula for regulating and moving Liver qi, particularly when associated with muscular tension and pain. Its primary focus in this pattern is to 'soften' the Liver and relieve constraint.

chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .............................................. 9g
cu bai shao (vinegar fried Radix Paconiae Lactiflora) 曲白芍 .............................................. 9g

xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 香附 ......................... 9g
zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantium) 枳壳 ......................... 6g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .................. 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .................. 3g

Method: Decoction or as powder. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)

YUE JU WAN 越鞠丸
(Escape Restraint Pill)

This elegant formula is particularly good for qi stagnation with depression. It is classically indicated for the six stagations' (liu yu 六郁)—qi, Blood, Fire, food, Phlegm and Dampness. The base formula is altered depending on which of the six stagations is prominent (see modifications below).

- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .................. 100g
- xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 香附 .................. 100g
- chang zhui (Rhizoma Atractylodis 苓术) .................. 100g
- shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 .................. 100g
- shan zhi zi (Fruit of Gardenia Jasminoides 山栀子) ........ 100g

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 6 gram pills with water. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Ji Xue)

Modifications (applicable to YUE JU WAN).

All doses 100g unless otherwise stated

- If general qi stagnation is predominant, add yu jin (Tuber Curcumae 郁金), mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 and yao yao (Radix Lindermesch Nymphoides) 鳖药.
- With Liver qi stagnation, add chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 and bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍.
- With Blood stagnation, add tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 and hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花.
- With Damp stagnation, add hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 and fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 伏苓.
- With Fire, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 60g and qing dai (Pulverata Indigo) 青黛 20g.
- With food stagnation, add shan zha (Fructus Crataegi) 山楂 and mai ya (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinatus) 大麦芽 150g.
- With fluid retention, add ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻, che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 and fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 伏苓.
- With Phlegm, add ban xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏, dan nan xing (Pulvis Atissemiae cum Felle Bovis) 胆南星 60g and gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 瓜蒌.
- With Cold, add wu zhu yu (Fructus Evodiae Rutacearum) 吴茱萸 60g
and gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 千姜 60g.

- With severe fullness and distension, add hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴, bing lang (Semen Arecae Catechu) 槟榔, zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枳壳 and qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮.

**XIAO YAO SAN**道遁数
(Bupleurum and Dang Gui Formula) modified

This very popular formula is used for cases of Liver qi stagnation with Spleen qi and Blood deficiency. It is a mild formula and, in contrast to the previous two (with no tonifying aspects), it is suitable for prolonged use. Particularly good for patterns characterised by hypochondriac and breast pain, dizziness, irregular periods and a tongue with pale edges.

chái hu (Radix Bupleuri) 藁胡................................. 9g
dáng gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归............................. 9g
bài shào (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍.............................. 9g
bái zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术..................... 9g
fu líng (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓.............................. 9g
xiáng fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundus) 香附............................. 9g
fú shòu (Fructus Citri Sarcodactylis) 佛手........................... 9g
dàn shèn (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参.......................... 12g
dáng shèn (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参....................... 12g
zhí gān cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草............................. 6g

Method: Decoction or pills. (Source: Formula and Strategies)

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**With Liver Fire**

- Liver Fire can complicate long standing or severe Liver qi stagnation, causing intense hypochondriac pain, headache, constipation, concentrated urine, diarrhoea, thirst, a rapid, full, wiry pulse and a red tongue. The correct treatment is to clear Liver Fire with **LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG** (Genista Combination 龙胆泻肝汤 p.571).

**Following and unresolved Wind attack**

- Hypochondriac pain following an unresolved Wind Cold invasion and accompanied by alternating fever and chills, dry throat, dizziness, irritability, nausea, anorexia and a wiry pulse is shaoyang syndrome. The correct treatment is to harmonise shaoyang with **XIAO CHAI HU TANG** (Minor Bupleurum Combination 小柴胡汤, p.54). This is also a very useful liver protecting formula for asymptomatic hepatitis, particularly Hepatitis C.

**With gallstones**

- If there are gallstones, combine with **SAN JIN TANG** (Three Golden Herbs Decoction 三金汤, p.583).

**With Blood stagnation**

- If there is some Blood stagnation (secondary to qi stagnation) and Spleen deficiency with intense hypochondriac pain, irritability, insomnia, fatigue, poor appetite, loose stools and epigastric fullness, the correct treatment is to spread Liver qi, regulate the Spleen, nourish and invaginate Blood with **SHU GAN LI P I TANG** (Spread the Liver and Regulate the Spleen Decoction 舒肝理脾汤).

dáng shèn (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参.......................... 15g
chái hu (Radix Bupleuri) 藁胡................................. 12g
bái zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术.................. 12g
bái fú wú (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 白佛手........................ 12g
dàn shèn (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参........................ 12g
xiáng fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundus) 香附........................ 9g
zé xìe (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 温肝............................ 9g
sàn qì fèn (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉........................ 3g

- When qi stagnation generates stagnant Heat with increased hypochondriac pain, irritability, facial flushing, dry mouth, red, sore eyes, a yellow tongue coat and a wiry, rapid pulse, add two or three of the following herbs: mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g, shàn zhì zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 9g, yú jīn (Tuber Curculorum) 原金 9g, chuan lián zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 9g, jū huá (Floris Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 9g or gòu tèng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 9g.
20.2 LIVER AND GALL BLADDER DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Hypochondriac pain due to Damp Heat in the Liver and Gall Bladder may be due to an external or internally generated pathogen. The external pattern is mostly acute and due to invasion by pathogenic Damp Heat. In biomedical terms, it frequently corresponds to viral hepatitis. Invasion of Damp Heat may be associated with humid climates, but also describes transmission of Damp Heat through contaminated food and water, sexual intercourse, blood transfusion, and intravenous drug use.
- Internal Damp Heat may be acute, but is much more likely to be chronic and is usually the result of overindulgence in alcohol and rich heating foods. Whatever the origin of the Damp Heat, it lodges in the Liver/Gall Bladder, disrupting the circulation of qi and Blood.

Clinical features
- hypochondriac pain, usually right-sided and worse for pressure
- fever, or fever and chills, or alternating fever and chills
- irritable, easily angered
- thirst, poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, bitter taste in the mouth
- fullness or stuffiness in the chest and abdomen
- possibly mild jaundice
- dark, concentrated or painful urination
- constipation or loose stools
T red with a thick, greasy yellow coat
P floating and rapid, or wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear and drain Dampness and Heat, stop pain

Prescription
LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination)

jie long dan cao (wine fried Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 酒龙胆草 ........................................... 6-9g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ........................................... 9g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 ................................. 9g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ................................. 9g
di qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 ................................. 9g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ................................. 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ................................. 6g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ................................. 6g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................. 6g
20.3 LIVER YIN (BLOOD) DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- The hypochondriac pain due to Liver yin (Blood) deficiency is generally mild, and reflects a lack of nourishment of the Liver and Tendons. In addition, when Liver yin and Blood are deficient, Liver qi is relatively predominant and prone to stagnation. This causes two types of pain—a dull, achy background pain (from yin and Blood deficiency), and one that is occasionally severe and provoked by stress (qi stagnation).

Clinical features
- mild, dull, right sided hypochondriac pain aggravated or provoked by stress and relieved by pressure
- dry mouth and throat, thirst
- irritability and restlessness
- dizziness
- insomnia
- blurring vision; dry, red, sore eyes
- acid reflux
- T red with little or no coat
- Ptready, wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish Liver yin, soothe the Liver

Prescription
YI GUAN JIAN —shi win
(Linking Decoction) modified

This is a particularly good formula for Liver yin deficiency with qi stagnation. Note that the qi moving herbs are mild and not very dispersing to either qi or yin.

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .......................... 18-45g
gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 .......................... 9-18g
sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 .......................... 9g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis japonici) 毛冬 .......................... 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 9g
chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 .......................... 9g
he huan hua (Flos Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢花 .......................... 9g
bai ji li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris) 白蒺藜 .......................... 9g
mei gui hua (Flos Rosae Rugosae) 玫瑰花 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)
QI JU DI HUANG WAN 杞菊地黄丸
(Lycium, Chrysanthemum and Rehmannia Formula)

This formula is used when the Liver and Kidney yin deficiency is prominent, with little or no stagnation. The hypochondriac pain is mild, dull and in the background, and there will generally be deeper yin deficiency signs—night sweating, flushing, heat in the palms and soles, red dry eyes, lower back pain.

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquae) 240g
shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposita) 120g
shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 120g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 90g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 90g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 90g
gou qi zhi (Fructus Lycii) 90g
ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 90g

Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 9 gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage.

Modifications
- With severe pain, add bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 15g and gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 6g.
- With irritability, add suan zao ron (Semem Zizyphi Spinossae) 12g and dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 12g.
- With dizziness and blurred vision, add sang zhi (Ramulus Mori Albae) 15g and nu zhen zi (Fructus Ligustri Lucidi) 15g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- If Blood deficiency is prominent (usually with Liver qi stagnation), the signs and symptoms are mild hypochondriac pain, dizziness, insomnia, depression, blurring vision, numbness in the extremities, fatigue, irregular menstruation, a pale tongue and thready, possibly wiry pulse. The correct treatment is to nourish Blood, strengthen the Spleen and move Liver qi with XIAO YAO SAN (Bupleurum and Dang Gui Formula 逍遥散, p.568).

Patent medicines
Qi Ju Di Huang Wan 杞菊地黄丸 (Lycium-Rehmannia Pills)
Ming Mu Di Huang Wan 明目地黄丸 (Ming Mu Di Huang Wan)
Er Long Zuo Ci Wan 耳聋左慈丸 (Er Long Zuo Ci Wan)

Acupuncture
Bl.23 (shen shu +), Bl.18 (gan shu +), Bl.17 (ge shu +), Liv.8 (gu quan), Liv.14 (qi men -), GB.43 (xia xie -), Liv.3 (tai chong), Kid.3 (tai xi)

Clinical notes
- The hypochondriac pain of this pattern may be associated with disorders like chronic hepatitis, chronic cholecystitis, cirrhosis, intercostal neuralgia or gastric ulcers.
- Care must be taken in this pattern (especially yin deficiency) to avoid using strong qi moving herbs as they can easily disperse qi and yin and cause aggravation of the symptoms.
20.4 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
• Hypochondriac pain from Blood stagnation can be acute or chronic. The acute pattern is the direct result of a traumatic injury. The chronic pattern typically follows some other long term Liver pathology, such as prolonged Liver qi stagnation or Damp Heat. When chronic, it usually involves a fairly serious stage of Liver pathology, like liver cirrhosis or cancer.

Clinical features
• fixed, stabbing hypochondriac pain that is worse at night and with pressure
• dark or purplish spider naevi or broken vessels over the ribs, on the face and around the inner ankle and knee, especially around the Kid.3 (tao xie) and Sp.9 (jin ling guan) area
• mild feverishness at night, without sweating
• pain in the iliac fossae with palpation
• palpable masses under the ribs
• dry mouth and throat with no desire to drink
• dry, scaly skin
• dull, sallow or darkish complexion
• dark ring around the eyes
• dark or purplish lips and conjunctiva

Treatment Principle
Invigorate Blood, eliminate Blood stagnation
Regulate qi, stop pain

Prescription
XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐瘀汤
(Askyranthes and Persica Combination)

This formula is excellent for general Blood (and qi) stagnation, especially in the chest and head. It is best for Blood stasis with signs of Heat.

tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................................... 12g

chao guai (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ........................................... 9g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................... 9g
hong hua (Flor Carthami Tinctori) 红花 ........................................... 9g
chuan nui xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 ........................................... 9g
zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枝壳 ........................................... 6g
chi shao (Radix Paonia Rubrae) 赤芍 ........................................... 6g

ji geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 ........................................... 6g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........................................... 6g
chao hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ........................................... 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........................................... 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Feng Ji Xue)

GE XIA ZHU YU TANG 脍下逐瘀汤
(Drive Out Blood Stasis Below the Diaphragm Decoction)

This formula is specific for qi and Blood stagnation in the area below the diaphragm, especially with severe pain and palpable masses.

chao wu ling zhi (dry fried Excementum Trogopteri seu Pteromii) 炒五灵脂 ........................................... 9g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ........................................... 9g
tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................................... 9g
hong hua (Flor Carthami Tinctori) 红花 ........................................... 9g
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ........................................... 9g
xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 香附 ........................................... 9g
wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药 ........................................... 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ........................................... 9g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........................................... 9g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ........................................... 6g
zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枝壳 ........................................... 6g
cu yan hu suo (vinegar fried Rhizoma Corydis Yanshusuo) 醋延胡索 ........................................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Feng Ji Xue)

Modifications (apply to the two previous formulae)
• With severe pain, add two or three of the following herbs: yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g, chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 9g, mo yao (Myrrha) 没药 9g, ru xiang (Gummi Olibanum) 乳香 9g or xie bai (Bulbus Allii) 薑白 6g.
• With palpable masses beneath the ribs, or if the liver is enlarged and nodular, add san leng (Rhizoma Spargani Stoloniferi) 三棱 9g, e zhu (Rhizoma Curcumae Ezhu) 艾术 9g and di bie chong (Eupolyphaga seu Opisthoplatia) 地鳖虫 3g, or for severe cases combine with DA HUANG ZHE CHONG WAN (Rhubarb and Eupolyphaga Pill)

大黄蛰虫丸, p.612) or BIE JIA WAN (乌头属丸, p.612).

zhi bie jia* (honey fried Carapax Amydai Sinensis) 炒鳖甲 ........................................... 120g
duan wa leng zi* (calcined Concha Arcae) 瘴瓦楞子 ........................................... 120g
chao mai ya (dry fried Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germananus) 炒麦芽 ........................................... 60g
**Hypochondriac Pain**

**Method:** Grind herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. This is a useful formula for hepatosplenomegaly following hepatitis, cirrhosis and malaria. It may be combined with an appropriate tonic formula to protect qi (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yao Xin)

**FU YUAN HUO XUE TANG 复元活血汤** (Revive Health by Invigorating the Blood Decoction)

This formula is selected for Blood stagnation hypochondriac pain following a traumatic injury. It is usually only used for a couple of weeks, depending on how acute the trauma is. Initially, the patient should experience loose stools or diarrhoea as the bruising and pain resolve.

- **jiu da huang** (wine fried Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 ........ 6-10g
- **chai hu** (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ....................... 12g
- **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ............... 9g
- **tao ren** (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................ 9g
- **tian hua fen** (Radix Trichosanthes Kurilowii) 天花粉 .......... 9g
- **hong hua** (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 ................ 6g
- **chuan shan jia** (Squama Manitis) 穿山甲 ............... 6g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .............. 3g

**Method:** Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xin)

**Patent medicines**

- **Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸** (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
- **Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消癥丸** (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)
- **Gui Zhi Fu Ling Wan 桂枝茯苓丸** (Gui Zhi Fu Ling Wan)

**Acupuncture**

- Liv.14 (qi men -), Liv.13 (zhang men -), Sp.21 (da bao -), SJ.6 (qhi gsu -).
- GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.3 (tai chong -), Bl.17 (ge shu -), Bl.18 (gan shu -)
  - If post-traumatic, add points of tenderness (ab 19b)
  - With severe pain, add Li.14 (be gu -) and Liv.6 (zhong du -)

**Clinical notes**

- The hypochondriac pain of the pattern may be associated with disorders like cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis, liver cancer, trauma, intercostal neuralgia, costochondritis, gastric ulcers, post herpetic neuralgia, chronic malaria, hepatosplenomegaly and post surgical pain (i.e. cholecystectomy, splenectomy etc.)
- Acute pain from trauma responds quickly to TCM treatment; chronic Blood stagnation pain can be difficult to treat successfully and prolonged and persistent treatment will be necessary. In cases of cancer, TCM should be combined with Western medicine.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR HYPOCHONDRIAC PAIN

Liver qi stagnation - Chai Hu Shu Gan San 柴胡疏肝散
- with gallstones, plus San Jin Tang 三金汤
- Liver Fire - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤
- with Spleen deficiency and Blood stasis
  - Shu Gan Li Pi Tang 疏肝理脾汤
- following unresolved Wind invasion (shao yang syndrome)
  - Xiao Chai Hu Tang 小柴胡汤
- predominant Spleen deficiency - Si Jun Zi Tang 四君子汤

Damp Heat in the Liver and Gall Bladder - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤
- with roundworms - Dan Dao Qu Hui Tang 驱虫驱蛔汤
- with gallstones, plus San Jin Tang 三金汤
- with jaundice plus Yin Chen Hao Tang 茵陈蒿汤

Liver jin deficiency - Yi Guan jian 一贯煎

Blood stagnation - Xin Fu Zhu Yu Tang 血府逐瘀汤 or Ge Xiu Zhu Yu Tang 膈下逐瘀汤
- with palpable masses plus Da Huang Zhe Chong Wan 大黄鳖虫丸 or
  Bie Jia Wan 破甲丸
- following trauma - Fu Yuan Hua Xue Tang 复元活血汤

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.

Appendix

GALLSTONES (dan shi bing 胆石病)

Gallstones are a common cause of hypochondriac and epigastric pain, and Chinese medicine describes some specific measures that can be applied to treat the stones directly. Gallstones may sit quietly in the gall bladder without causing any symptoms. They are often picked up during a routine ultrasound, and as many as 90% of such cases are asymptomatic, even with large or numerous gallstones.

However, once a stone moves and gets lodged in the neck of the gall bladder, the cystic duct or the common bile duct, it can cause pain and inflammation (Fig 20.2). Inflammation of the neck of the gall bladder or cystic duct, which can develop some hours after obstruction by a stone, is called cholecystitis. The pain is usually of sudden onset (typically after a big meal or at night) and is sustained for several hours. The person is restless, cannot get comfortable, may feel nauseous or vomit. The pain can be felt in the epigastrum or right hypochondrium, and may radiate to the tip of the shoulder. After the pain subsides there is tenderness in the right hypochondrium.

There are two common types of gallstones, classified according to their composition—cholesterol and pigment. Cholesterol stones account for...
approximately 75% of gallstones in the Western world. The pathophysiology of gallstone development is not clearly understood, but several factors seem to predispose people to stone formation. Gallstones are more common in patients of European origin, women, the obese and those over 40, hence 'fair, fat, female and forty - think gallstones'. Both types of stone appear to be amenable to TCM treatment, but some sources suggest cholesterol stones are easier to break down.

In TCM terms, the development of gallstones is due to prolonged Liver and Gall Bladder qi stagnation that causes poor excretion of bile from the gall bladder. The bile eventually condenses into stones. This process is facilitated by the presence of Heat and Dampness, either from a dietary source or from Spleen deficiency.

Acute or recurrent attacks of pain and inflammation from gallstones is usually due to Damp Heat. Less commonly the patient presents with a shao yang syndrome, or Liver qi stagnation. The qi stagnation pattern is seen in those with asymptomatic stones (those detected during routine screening) or in those with only vague and non specific symptoms.

**GENERAL TREATMENT**

The basic approach, once gallstones have been identified, is to break up the stones (if large), and encourage their expulsion from the gall bladder. A treatment that is popular amongst the physicians of the Red Cross Hospital in Hangzhou, Zhejiang, is a two step program, first reducing the size of the stone or stones, then relaxing the bile duct and promoting contraction of the gall bladder. This treatment is done with the assistance of ultrasound measurement, as the second part of the treatment (the expulsion) should not proceed if the stones are too large (generally larger than 1 cm). Once the stone or stones are estimated to be small enough, the risk of impaction in the common bile duct is reduced and the second part of the treatment can proceed.

**First stage**

In asymptomatic cases, only the following formula (which dissolves stones) is necessary. Where there is an accompanying pattern (usually either Damp Heat or qi stagnation), one of the constitutional formulae may be added to the stone dissolving formula. Ideally, the patient should have an ultrasound weekly, and as soon as the stones are small enough the second stage of the treatment can begin. Results can usually be expected within a few weeks.

**Prescription**

**SAN JIN TANG 三金汤**  
(Three Golden Herbs Decoction)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae) 金银花</td>
<td>30-60g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hai jin sha (Spora Lygodii Japonici) 海金沙</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ji nei jin fen (powdered Endothelium Corneum Gigeriae Galli) 鸠内金粉</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Ji nei jin powder is added to the strained decoction for stronger effect (sheng jin 赖金), hai jin sha is decocted in a muslin bag (bo jian 包煎). (Source: Zhang Yi Ke Lin Ching Shen Cao)

**Second stage**

Once the stones are small enough (preferably smaller than 5mm) the second stage of the treatment can proceed. This stage uses herbs with three different actions. Acupuncture can assist at this stage (see below). Clinically, the three groups of herbs are combined and added to whatever other formula (if any) is applicable. If none is applicable they may be used alone. The patient should expect diarrhoea during the treatment, usually a maximum of a few days or until the stones are expelled and observed in the stools. The three groups of herbs are:

1. wei ling xian (Radix Clematidis) 威灵仙 12g to relax the bile duct.
2. di long* (Lumbricus) 地龙 12g to stimulate gall bladder contraction.
3. zhi da huang (prepared Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄 10g, mang xiao (Mirabilium) 芒硝 12g and gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 栀子 30g to open and purge the fa (Gall Bladder and Intestines) to facilitate the passage of stones and clear the excess.

Acupuncture
This treatment stimulates the contraction of the gall bladder and relaxes the cystic duct. It is useful in cases of acute biliary pain where the stone or stones are already lodged in the cystic duct. In asymptomatic cases this treatment should only be attempted once the stones are shown to be small enough (smaller than 1cm diameter, ideally less than 0.5 cm) to be expelled safely, and without impaction. Ultrasound can be used to ensure the patient has no other stricture or obstruction further down the biliary tree.

Main points
dan nang xue (M-LE-23) - 1-2 cm below GB.34 (yang li n g quan), GB.24 (ri yue), Bl.19 (dan shu), Liv.14 (qi men), Liv.13 (zhong men).
Generally two points are connected to an electrical stimulator, for example, GB.24 (ri yue) and dan nang xue (M-LE-23) on the right side, and treated with a dense dispersive wave. The other points may be selected on the basis of tenderness.
• with severe pain, add LI.4 (he gu).
• with jaundice, add Du.9 (zhong yang).
• with fever, add LI.11 (qi chi).
• with vomiting, add PC.6 (wei guan).
Ear points: shan men, sympathetic, endocrine, liver, gall bladder, duodenum.

1. Damp Heat
Pathophysiology
• The Damp Heat pattern is associated with gallstones accompanied by inflammation or infection in the gall bladder or bile duct. The Damp Heat is often accompanied by disruption of the shao yang level, characterised by alternating fever and chills. This often occurs in the early stages of inflammation.

Clinical features
• persistent hypochondriac or epigastric pain or fullness, worse with pressure.
• bitter taste in the mouth, nausea, vomiting, aversion to fats, poor appetite.

Treatment principle
Clear Damp Heat from the Gall Bladder
Promote expulsion of gallstones, clear the Intestines.

Prescription
QING DAN XIE HUO TANG 清胆泻火汤
(Clear the Gall Bladder and Drain Fire Decoction) modified

This formula is excellent for clearing Damp Heat from the Gall Bladder. If the stones are still too large to attempt the second stage, delete the second stage herbs (the first five), and combine this formula with SAN JIN TANG (Three Golden Herbs Decoction 三金汤, p.583).

- zhi da huang (prepared Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 制大黄 ...... 10g
- mang xiao (Mirabilium) 芒硝 ........................................... 12g
- gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 栀子 .......................... 30g
- wei ling xian* (Radix Clematidis) 威灵仙 .................. 12g
- di long* (Lumbricus) 地龙 ....................................... 12g
- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .................................. 15g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .......... 15g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ................ 9g
- yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 青蒿 ............. 30g
- shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山桅子 .... 9g
- long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 ...... 9g
- yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 .................................. 9g
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 艾香 .......... 6g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .................. 15g
- jin yin hua (Flos Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘 ............. 15g
- lian qiao (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 ...... 30g

Method: Decoction. For a stronger purge, da huang is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). Mang xiao is added to the strained decoction (chao fn 沸胆).

DA CHAI HU TANG 大柴胡汤
(Major Bupleurum Combination) modified

This formula can be used for patients with mixed patterns—some Dampness, some qi stagnation and a tendency to constipation.

- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .................................. 9g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .................. 9g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .................. 9g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .................. 9g
zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranthi) 柴实 .................. 9g
da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 .................. 6-9g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜 .... 9g
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .................. 9g
Method: Decocotion. (Source: Zhuo Xiu Fang Ji Shao Ci)

Modifications
* If there is already diarrhoea, a smaller dose of da huang - 3g and mang xiao - 3-6g should be used.
* With severe pain, add chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 12g and yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡素 12g.

Patent medicines
Ji Gu Cao Wan 鸡骨草丸 (Jigucao Wan) or
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan) plus
Li Dan Pian 利胆片 (Lidan Tablets)

Clinical notes
* The is pattern corresponds to disorders such as acute cholecystitis, pancreatitis and biliary colic due to gallstone obstruction.
* Dietary modification is important (see over).

2. Liver qi stagnation

Pathophysiology
* The Liver qi stagnation pattern involves gallstones without inflammation or infection. The function of the Gall Bladder is impaired and bile has stagnated and accumulated, forming gallstones. The following formula can be used to treat asymptomatic stones.

Clinical features
* If there are symptoms, they tend to be intermittent and mild. There will often be a history of indigestion, flatulence, belching and abdominal discomfort, hypochondriac ache or distension. There may be occasional upper right quadrant pain, which may radiate to the right shoulder.
* Aversion to fats and oily food, occasional nausea, poor appetite, irregular bowel movements
* T: dark or slightly red with a thin white or yellow coat
* P: wiry, or deep and wiry

Treatment principle
Soothe the Liver, benefit the Gall Bladder
Regulate qi, move stagnation, dissolve stones

Prescription
CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN 柴胡疏肝散
(Bupleurum and Cypers Formula) modified
If treating large stones (first stage) combine with SAN JIN TANG (Three Golden Herbs Decoction 三金汤, p.583). For second stage treatment combine with second stage herbs, p.584.

dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 .................. 15-30g
mai ya (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinantis) 麦芽 .................. 12g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .................. 9g
yu jin (Tuber Curculigae) 郁金 .................. 9g
zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 柿壳 .................. 9g
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 甘草 .................. 9g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephala) 白术 .................. 9g
xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 香附 .................. 6g
qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Virginale) 佛皮 .................. 6g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .................. 6g

Method: Decocotion. (Source: Zhuo Yi Xin Ke Liu Chuang Shao Ci)

Modifications
* If there is Heat, with a bitter taste in the mouth, dry throat and thirst, delete ze xie and bai zhu, and add long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdanca) 龙胆草 6-9g, dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 漏竹叶 6g, tian hu fen (Radix Trichosanthes Kirilowii) 天花粉 15g and tai zhi shen (Radix Pseudostellariae Heterophyllae) 太子参 15g.
* If there is Spleen deficiency, with fatigue, abdominal distension, loose stools and anorexia, delete xiang fu and add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 15g, fu ling (Sclerotium Porta Cocos) 茯苓 15g and shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 10g.

Follow up treatment
* Once the stones have resolved, a qi regulating formula such as XIAO YAO SAN (Bupleurum and Dang Gui San Formula 逍遥散, p.139) should be given to consolidate the treatment and harmonise the Liver and Gall Bladder.
PATENT MEDICINES

Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan) or
Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan) plus
Li Gan Pian 利肝片 (Liver Strengthening Tablets)

CLINICAL NOTES

- This pattern corresponds to disorders such as asymptomatic gallstones or chronic cholecystitis.
- In all patients with gallstones, regulation of the diet is important. Foods to avoid or restrict are those richest in saturated fats and cholesterol-rich meat, dairy products, fried foods, eggs, peanuts and other nuts and seeds. Food items that are beneficial in softening gallstones and aiding the gallbladder are light and easily digested—grains, vegetables, fruits and pulses. Radish, apples, lemons and limes, seaweed, parsnip and turmeric are thought to be especially beneficial.  


Disorders of the Liver

21. JAUNDICE

**Yang jaundice**

Damp Heat
Liver and Gall Bladder stagnant Heat
Toxic Heat

**Yin jaundice**

Cold Damp
Spleen *qi* and Blood deficiency
Blood stagnation
Jaundice

Jaundice is the yellow discolouration of the sclera, skin and mucous membranes resulting from increased concentration of bilirubin in body fluids. In mild cases, jaundice is most apparent in the sclera; in severe cases it can involve the whole body. True jaundice can be distinguished from yellowing of the skin due to other causes, like hypercarotenaemia, by the involvement of the sclera.

In TCM, there are a couple of theoretical mechanisms to account for jaundice, both involving Dampness. The first invokes the Five Phase (wu xing, 五行) correspondence between earth, the colour yellow, and Dampness. Following this logic, simple accumulation of Dampness in the eyes and skin can lead to varying degrees of yellowing, depending on accompanying pathogenic factors. Dampness plus Heat causes a brighter or orangey tinge to the yellowness, whereas Damp plus Cold causes a duller or 'dirtier' yellow. Cheng Ying-mao observes that "When Heat and Dampness intermingle and cannot find a way out, they will vapourise into yellowishness (jaundice)"...

The second mechanism involves the bile, the 'pure' fluid stored in and excreted from the Gall Bladder. The relationship between bile and the Gall Bladder is very similar to that described in Western medicine, so it has been noted that "Damp Heat steams the Liver and Gall Bladder and forces bile to the surface and eyes, leading to jaundice in these areas"...

The biomedical mechanisms of jaundice are summarised in Table 21.1.

AETIOLOGY

Acute jaundice is mostly due to Dampness and Heat, or in severe or epidemic cases Toxic Heat. The relative proportions of Dampness and Heat can vary, presenting with different clinical features and requiring different treatments. The source of the Damp Heat can be external (most common in acute cases) or internal. Acute jaundice is often described as yang jaundice.

If jaundice persists and becomes chronic, the patient is weakened and the pattern will change to one of deficiency or mixed excess and deficiency, usually Cold Damp, Spleen deficiency, qi and Blood stagnation or a mixture of all three. This is described as yin jaundice.

BOX 21.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF JAUNDICE

- acute and chronic hepatitis
- cirrhosis of the liver
- cholecystitis
- gallstones
- systemic lupus erythematosus
- tumours of the bile duct
- parasitic diseases of the liver
- septicaemia
- leptospirosis
- alcoholic liver disease
- malignancy (pancreatic carcinoma, biliary, hepatocellular, metastasis)
- biliary atresia
- haemolytic anaemia
- sickle cell anaemia
- pernicious anaemia
- thalassaemia
- malaria
- syphilis
- cytomegalovirus
- Gilbert's disease
- haemochromatosis
- drug toxicity

Damp Heat

Damp Heat jaundice can be externally or internally generated. The external variety is due to invasion of Damp Heat that lodges in the Liver and Gall Bladder. Some commentators suggest that the Damp Heat 'steams' bile to the surface and eyes, others that Dampness and Heat alone are sufficient to produce jaundice. In either case, the end result is jaundice that develops quickly and exhibits a quite intense bright yellow or orange tinge. When external Damp Heat is very intense or epidemic, producing disturbances of consciousness or Wind, it is reclassified as Toxic Heat (see below).

Damp Heat can also be generated internally by overeating, or by overconsumption of alcohol and rich, greasy or spicy foods. Dampness may also develop as a result of Spleen deficiency. When Damp accumulates and stagnates, it can over time generate Heat, or combine with the Heat created by Liver qi stagnation to produce Damp Heat. This pattern is more insidious and slower to develop than external Damp Heat, sometimes taking years of steady overconsumption before becoming apparent. Prolonged Damp Heat (usually in combination with Liver qi stagnation) can congeal with bile into stones, which cause obstruction and the generation of more Heat.

Toxic Heat

Toxic Heat is an intense and concentrated variety of Heat or Damp Heat of external origin. It occasionally occurs in epidemics. Toxic Heat is characterised by the severity of the disease, the intense degree of Heat, disturbances of consciousness and the rapid deterioration of the patient.

Spleen deficiency

Deficient types of jaundice often occur if the excess patterns are unresolved or incorrectly treated. In this case, Spleen qi can be damaged by the unresolved and persistent Dampness lodged in the middle jiao. Spleen qi can also be damaged if the bitter cold herbs used to treat Damp Heat are applied over-
enthusiastically or inappropriately. If this occurs, in addition to the Spleen damage, Cold Dampness may be left obstructing the middle jiao, further damaging the body's yang.

**Qi and Blood stagnation**

Qi and Blood stagnation occur late in chronic Liver disease, and usually follow prolonged stasis of an unresolved pathogen, usually Damp Heat. At this point significant structural changes have occurred in the Liver and associated organs, with the development of masses and swelling.

**TREATMENT**

Jaundice is always associated with Dampness, so the main therapeutic principle is to eliminate Dampness through diuresis. Herbs that clear Heat, or warm Spleen yang, are combined with the bland diuretic herbs. When urination increases, the Damp will be discharged downwards carrying Heat or Cold along with it. Clearing Toxic Heat is required in severe cases. Care must be taken when diagnosing acute Damp Heat jaundice to determine the relative degree of Dampness and Heat, so as to balance the mix of cooling and diuretic herbs correctly. Excessive Heat clearing can damage Spleen ying and lead to the development of jin jaundice; excessive diuresis can damage fluids. Once the Dampness and Heat are clearing, and the jaundice begins to subside, bitter cold herbs should be reduced and replaced by bitter warm parching and Spleen strengthening herbs. The treatment of chronic jaundice requires the Spleen to be strengthened to resolve Dampness, the qi and Blood to be tonified, and moving qi and Blood stasis.

**Table 21.1. Biomedical mechanisms of jaundice**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of jaundice</th>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>Representative diseases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haemolytic</td>
<td>Results from the destruction of red blood cells &amp; consequent liberation of haemoglobin into the plasma. The catabolic pathways for degradation of haemoglobin are overloaded &amp; unconjugated bilirubin accumulates in the blood.</td>
<td>Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE), haemytic anaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic</td>
<td>Results from failure of bilirubin transport into the bile due to liver cell damage. When liver cells are damaged, by viral insult, drugs or alcohol, transport of bilirubin across cell membranes may be impaired, or the resulting inflammatory oedema may obstruct biliary canaliculi. Bilirubin backs up &amp; accumulates in the blood.</td>
<td>hepatitis, alcohol toxicity, CCl4 poisoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholestatic, Post hepatic</td>
<td>Due to obstruction to the passage of bile between the liver hepatocytes &amp; the duodenum. Cholestasis leads to dark urine &amp; pale stools, as bile does not reach the intestine.</td>
<td>hepatitis, cirrhosis, or physical obstruction of the bile duct by gallstones, tumours, parasites, post surgical stricture or inflammation of surrounding structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
21.1 DAMP HEAT (HEAT GREATER THAN DAMPNESS)

Pathophysiology
- Jaundice due to Damp Heat may be external or internal. The external pattern is generally acute and due to invasion of pathogenic Damp Heat. In biomedical terms it often relates to viral hepatitis. Invasion of Damp Heat may be associated with humid climates, but also describes transmission of Damp Heat through contaminated food and water, sexual intercourse, blood transfusion, and intravenous drug use.
- Internal Damp Heat may be acute or have acute exacerbations, but is much more likely to be chronic and is usually the result of overindulgence in alcohol and rich heating foods. This pattern is also encountered in conditions like gallstones, cholecystitis, pancreatitis and alcoholism. Whatever the origin of the Damp Heat, it lodges in the Liver and Gall Bladder, 'steaming' bile out to the skin and eyes.

Clinical features
- Jaundice that is a bright or orangey yellow, apparent in the sclera, mucous membranes or skin
- Fever, or alternating fever and chills
- Thirst (with desire to drink cold fluids)
- Irritability and malaise
- An uncomfortable burning sensation in the chest and epigastrium
- Concentrated scanty urination
- Constipation or loose stools
- Loss of appetite or indeterminate gnawing hunger
- Nausea and vomiting
- Aversion to cigarette smoke

TREATMENT PRINCIPLE
Clear Heat, eliminate Dampness (through the urine and stools)

PRESCRIPTION

YIN CHEN HAO TANG (Capsfull Combinations) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai jiang cao (Herba cum Radice Patrinciae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifications
- With nausea and vomiting, add zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taenis) 15g and ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 10g.
- With epigastric and abdominal distension and fullness, add zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantium) 12g and hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 9g.
- With hypochondriac pain, add hai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 10g, yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 9g and chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 10g.
- With severe Heat (bitter taste in the mouth, severe thirst for cold fluids and rough dry yellow tongue coat, sore dry eyes and a flooding rapid pulse), add long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 9g, ban lan gen (Radix Isatidis seu Baphicacanthi) 蓼蓝根 15g and hu zhang (Radix et Rhizoma Polygoni Cuspidati) 虎杖 9g, or combine with LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG (Gentiana Combination 龙胆泻肝汤, p.571).
- With gallstones, combine with SAN JIN TANG (Three Golden Herbs Deoction 三金汤, p.583).
- Once the bowels have opened, the Heat has started to subside and the tongue coat has begun to thin, add some herbs to strengthen the Spleen and transform dampness, such as bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloidis Macrocephalae) 白术 12g, fu ling (Sclerotium Porta Cocos) 茯苓 12g and yi ren (Semen Cocos Lachryma-jobi) 18g. At the same time decrease the dosages (or eliminate some entirely) of the bitter cold herbs so as to protect Spleen yang and prevent the development of yin jaundice.

PATENT MEDICINES

Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Ji Gu Cao Wan 鸡骨草丸 (Jigucao Wan)
Li Dan Pian 利胆片 (Lidan Tablets)
Xi Huang Cao 溪黄草 (Xi Huang Cao Chong Ji)
Ji Gu Cao Chong Ji 鸡骨草冲剂 (Ji Gu Cao Infusion)
21.2 DAMP HEAT (DAMP GREATER THAN HEAT)

Pathophysiology
- This type of Damp Heat jaundice is similar to the previous Damp Heat pattern, however here the Dampness predominates. The Heat is 'wrapped' by the Damp and the hot manifestations are subdued. The predominance of Dampness also weakens the Spleen and Stomach, or occurs when there is pre-existing Spleen deficiency with internal Damp. Either way, this pattern exhibits a larger number of digestive symptoms than the previous one.

Clinical features
- jaundice
- usually there is no fever, or only mild fever
- the head is heavy and full ('like being wrapped in a wet cloth')
- a sensation of obstruction, fullness or discomfort in the chest and epigastrium
- loss of appetite
- nausea and vomiting
- abdominal distension, loose stools
- thirst with no desire to drink
- scanty concentrated urine
- aversion to cigarette smoke
T flabby with a thick yellow or whitish greasy coat
P soggy and moderate or wiry and slippery

Treatment principle
Eliminate Dampness and turbidity
Promote urination, clear Heat, reduce jaundice

Prescription
YIN CHEN WU LING SAN 茵陈五苓散
(Capillaris and Hoelen Five Formula) modified

- **yin chen** (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈 ......................... 30g
- **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .............................. 15g
- **zhu ling** (Sclerotium Polyporti Umbellati) 猪苓 ...................... 12g
- **ze xie** (Rhzoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .......................... 12g
- **bai zhu** (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 ................ 12g
- **huo xiang** (Herba Agastachies seu Pogostemi) 厚香 ..................... 10g
- **bai dou kou** (Fructus Amomi Kravanhi) 白豆蔻 ........................ 6g
- **gui zhi** (Ramuulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. **Yin chen** is added towards the end of cooking (**hao xia 后下**). (Source: Zhong Yi Nai Ke Lin Chuang Shu Chi)
Modifications
• With nausea and vomiting, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 番薑 9g and chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 9g.
• With food stagnation, add shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 10g, shan zha (Fruccus Crataegi) 山楂 10g and mai ya (Fruccus Hordei Vulgaris Germinantis) 麦芽 10g.
• If abdominal distension is relatively severe, add da fu pi (Pericarpium Arecae Catechu) 大腹皮 10g and mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 6g.
• With gallstones, combine with SAN JIN TANG (Three Golden Herbs Decotion 三金汤, p.583).

Patent medicines
Li Dan Pian 利胆片 (Lidan Tablets)
Ji Gu Cao Wan 神曲丸 (Jigucao Wan)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Xiu Huang Cao 槲黄草 (Xinhuangcao)
Ji Gu Cao Chong Ji 神曲冲剂 (Jigucao Infusion)
Xing Jun San 行军散 (Xingjun San, Five Pagodas Brand)

- This is a generic formula for acute Damp Heat in the digestive system. While not designed for jaundice, it is excellent for the nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea associated with this condition.

Acupuncture
Du.9 (zhizi zhong), Bl.19 (dan shu), GB.34 (yanglingquan), Liv.3 (tai zhong), Sp.9 (yunlingquan), Ren.12 (zhuangmen), St.36 (zusanli), Bl.39 (weizhang)
• with nausea, add PC.6 (wei guan)
• with hypochondriac pain, add Liv.14 (qimen), St.6 (zhigou) and Liv.13 (zhongmen)

Clinical notes
• This type of jaundice may be associated with conditions such as acute infectious hepatitis, liver cirrhosis, alcoholic or drug induced hepatitis, pancreatitis, chronic hepatitis.
• Generally responds well to correct treatment, especially those cases due to viral infection.
• Patients must avoid all alcohol, rich food and liver irritants, such as caffeine and non essential drugs.

21.3 DAMP HEAT WITH EXTERIOR SYMPTOMS
( EARLY STAGE EXTERNAL DAMP HEAT)

Pathophysiology
• In this pattern the jaundice is mild or may not yet be evident. Nevertheless, it is included in this chapter because early application of this treatment at times of hepatitis outbreaks may prevent the disease from becoming full blown.

Clinical features
• mild jaundice or no jaundice
• simultaneous fever and chills
• distension and heaviness of the head
• generalised myalgia
• fatigue and lethargy
• poor appetite
• epigastric fullness and discomfort
• concentrated urine
• aversion to cigarette smoke
• thin greasy coat
• P floating and rapid or floating and wiry

Treatment principle
Clear Heat, eliminate Dampness
Clear the exterior, promote urination

Prescription
MA HUANG LIAN QIAO CHI XIAO DOU TANG
麻黄连翘赤小豆汤 (Ma Huang, Forsythia and Aduki Bean Decotion) plus
GAN LU XIAO DU DAN 甘露消毒丹
(Sweet Dew Special Pill to Eliminate Toxic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yin chen</td>
<td>24g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hua shi</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lian qiao</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi xiao dou</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huanqin</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang bai pi</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xing ren*</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huo xiang</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she gan</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo he</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai dou kou</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
21.4 LIVER AND GALL BLADDER STAGNANT HEAT
(BILE DUCT OBSTRUCTION WITH HEAT)

Pathophysiology
- Jaundice caused by Liver and Gall Bladder stagnant heat typically involves gallstones, cholecystitis or infestation by round worms (ascariasis). The typical presentation is an acute episode of a chronic or recurrent illness. Usually the patient will have been unwell for some time. See also Gallstones, p.581.

Clinical features
- The jaundice develops relatively quickly and is accompanied by severe, colicky, right sided, hypochondriac pain which may radiate to the right shoulder and upper back; the painful episodes are likely to be recurrent
- Fever and chills, or alternating fever and chills
- Bitter taste in the mouth
- Dry throat and mouth
- Nausea and poor appetite
- Aversion to fats and oils
- Abdominal distension
- Pale sticky stools
- Scanty concentrated urine, dysuria
- T red with a thick yellow coat
- P wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
Soothe the Liver and drain the Gall Bladder
Clear Heat and relieve fullness

Prescription
QING DAN XIE HUO TANG 清胆泻火汤
(Clear the Gall Bladder and Drain Fire Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jin qian cao (Herba Lysimachiae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long dan cao (Radix Gentianae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu jin (Tuber Curcumae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note: This ingredient is used as a substitute for the original prescription ingredients.

Modifications
- For infectious hepatitis, increase the dose of yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) to 30g, and add shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae) 9g, huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 9g, and da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 6g. Once the obvious exterior symptoms have gone delete ma huang and bo he.

Patent medicines
- Ji Gu Cao Wan 鸡骨草丸 (Jigucao Wan)
- Li Dan Pian 利胆片 (Lidan Tablets)
- Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- Xi Huang Cao 活黄草 (Xi Huang Cao Chong Ji)
- Ji Gu Cao Chong Ji 鸡骨草冲剂 (Ji Gu Cao Infusion)
- Huo Xiang Zheng Qi Pian 香正气片 (Huo Hsiang Cheng Chi Pien)

Acupuncture
- Lu.6 (kong xue -), Li.4 (he gu -), Ren.12 (zhong wan -), St.36 (yi wan li -), St.6 (chi guo -)
- If Dampness is severe, add Sp.9 (xin ting quan -)
- With fever, add Du.14 (da zhai -) and LI.11 (gu chi -)
- With diarrhoea, add St.25 (tian shu -) and zhi xie (N.CA-3)

Clinical notes
- This type of jaundice may be associated with conditions such as early stage of acute infectious hepatitis and leptospirosis.
mang xiao (Mirabilis) 芒硝
Method: Decoction. Da huang is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 猴下) and mang xiao is dissolved in the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服).
(Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Modifications
- With Blood stasis (fixed sharp pain, spider naevi over the abdomen and hypochondrium), add dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 20g and use chi shao (Radix Paeonie Rubrae) 赤芍 10g instead of bai shao.
- With severe Heat, add jin yin hua (Hos Lonicerae Japonicaceae) 金银花 15g, lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae) 连翘 9g and pu gong ying (Herba Taraxaci Mongolici) 蒲公英 15g.
- With severe pain, add yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g and chuan lian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 9g.
- Sudden jaundice, with alternating fever and chills, intermittent boring upper right quadrant pain, and possible vomiting of worms suggests roundworm infestation and bile duct obstruction. Look for ascarid eggs in the stools. Combine with DAN DAO QU HUI TANG (Decoction for Expelling Roundworms from the Bileduct 胆道驱蛔汤).

- shi jun zi (Fructus Quisqualis Indicae) 使君子 12g
- ku lian pi (Cortex Meliae Radicis) 苦楝皮 9g
- wu mei (Fructus Pruni Mume) 乌梅 9g
- bing lang (Semen Arecae Carechu) 槟榔 9g
- zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枳壳 6g
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 6g
Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xue).

Patent medicines
Ji Gu Cao Wan 鸡骨草丸 (Jigucao Wan)
Li Dan Pian 厚黄片 (Lidan Tablets)
Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
Da Chai Hu Wan 大柴胡丸 (Da Chai Hu Wan)
Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian 穿心莲抗炎片
(Chuang Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
- with severe Heat

Acupuncture
Bl.19 (dan shu -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), GB.24 (ni yue -),
Liv.14 (qi men -), Du.9 (zhi ying -), S.14 (wen gu -), Liv.3 (tai zhong -)
• worms in the bile duct, needle LI.20 (jing xiang) through to St.2 (si bai)
• with fever, add Du.14 (da zhui -) and LI.11 (gu chi -)

- with alternating fever and chills, add SJ.5 (wai guan) and GB.41 (gu lin qi)
- with nausea, add PC.6 (wei guan -)

Clinical notes
- This type of jaundice may be associated with conditions such as acute cholecystitis, ascariasis and gallstones.
21.5 TOXIC HEAT

Pathophysiology

- Jaundice due to Toxic Heat is severe and most commonly caused by powerful external Damp Heat pathogens that quickly overwhelm the body's defenses. It typically affects many people and may be epidemic. Toxic Heat may also be seen in late stage liver failure.

Clinical features

- rapidly developing jaundice that quickly deepens in colour to orange or gold
- high fever
- restlessness and irritability
- thirst
- foul breath
- frequent vomiting
- abdominal distension and pain that is worse with pressure
- constipation
- scanty urine or anuria
- in severe cases there may be skin rashes, ecchymosis, epistaxis, haematemesis, bleeding gums, subcutaneous haemorrhages, confusion, delirium, muscular spasms or convulsions

T: red or scarlet, or with red edges and a rough, dry, dirty coat
P: wiry and rapid, or flooding and big, or wiry, thready and rapid (depending on the degree of damage to body fluids)

Treatment principle

Clear Heat and Toxins
Cool the Blood, support xie

Prescription

WU WEI XIAO DU YIN
(Five Ingredient Decoction to Eliminate Toxins)

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions

- If there is delirium, impaired consciousness and confusion, and the patient medicines AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN (Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstones 安宫牛黄丸, p.914) or ZHI BAO DAN (Greatest Treasure Special Pill 至宝丹, p.660) are used to open the orifices and clear Heat. If the patient is unable to ingest the medicine, the dose is forced

shang zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 9g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 6g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 3g
jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 15g
pu gong ying (Herba Taraxaci Mongolici) 蒲公英 15g
zi hua di ding (Herba cum Radice Violae Yedoensis) 花地丁 15g
ye ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Indici) 野菊花 12g
zi bei tian kui (Herba Begoniae Fimbriatulae) 椪天葵

XI JIAO SAN
(Rhinoceros Horn Powder) modified

This prescription is suitable for severe cases with bleeding, confusion, convulsions or disturbances of consciousness.

xi jiao (Cornu Rhinoceri) 角 3g
yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈 30g
da qing ye (Folium Daqingye) 大青叶 30g
jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 30g
lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘 30g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 30g
shang zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 15g
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 15g
xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15g
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 15g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 9g
sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 升麻 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6g

Method: Decoction. Shui niu jiao (Cornu Bubali) 水牛角 is usually substituted for xi jiao, with a tenfold increase in dose and cooked for 30 minutes prior to adding the other herbs (xi jiao 先煎). If the patient is confused or unable to ingest the medicine, the formula can be delivered via a nasogastric tube, or a resuscitation medicine can be given until consciousness is restored (see below). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuan Shou Ce)
into the mouth, blown into the nose, or given via a nasogastric tube until consciousness is restored.

* If there is constipation and muscular spasms or convulsions use ZI XUE DAN (Purple Snow Special Pill, p.707). If the patient is unable to ingest the medicine, the dose is forced into the mouth or nose or given via a nasogastric tube until consciousness is restored. See also Convulsions, p.680.

**Patent medicines**

* **Huang Lian Jie Du Wan** 黄连解毒丸 (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan)
  * **Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian** 穿心连抗炎片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)
  * **Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan** 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)
  * **An Gong Niu Huang Wan** 安宫牛黄丸 (An Gong Niu Huang Wan)
  * **Zi Xue Dan** 芝雪丹 (Zi Xue Dan)
  * **Wan Shi Niu Huang Qing Xin Wan** 万氏牛黄清心丸 (Wan Shi Niu Huang Qing Xin Wan)

**Acupuncture**

* **Bl.19 (Dan shi -)**, **GB.34 (Yang ling quan -)**, **Du.20 (Bai hui -)**, **Du.26 (Ren zhong -)**, **LI.11 (Qu chi -)**, **Liv.3 (Tai chong -)**, **GB.40 (Qiu xu -)**, **Bl.40 (Wei zhong -)**
  * With impaired consciousness, add **Shi xuan** (M-UE-1)

**Clinical notes**

* This type of jaundice may be associated with conditions such as fulminant hepatitis, hepatic failure, hepatic encephalopathy or septicemia.
* This pattern is a medical emergency and should be treated in hospital.
* The prognosis for fulminant hepatitis and hepatic failure is generally not good.

---

**21.6 COLD DAMP**

**Pathophysiology**

* Cold Damp jaundice is chronic and follows untreated or improperly treated yang jaundice, or occurs when weakness of yang qi enables Cold Dampness to accumulate and lodge in the middle jiao, obstructing the flow of bile. The main problem is the excess Damp, although as the pattern develops, Spleen weakness will become more prominent. This pattern will often overlap with the Spleen deficiency pattern (p.609).

**Clinical features**

* jaundice that is dull, matt or darkish yellow, and which may be hard to see in artificial light; it may be noticeable in the palms and palmar creases
* fatigue, malaise, lethargy
* cold intolerance
* poor appetite, nausea
* epigastric and abdominal fullness and distension
* loose stools or diarrhoea
* generalised pruritis
* T pale and swollen with a greasy white coat
* P deep, thready and slow, or soggy and moderate

**Treatment principle**

Transform Dampness and promote urination
Warm the middle jiao and strengthen the Spleen

**Prescription**

YIN CHEN ZHU FU TANG 薄陈术附汤 (Capillaris, Atractylodis and Aconitum Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos)</td>
<td>25g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralsensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zi is cooked for 30 minutes prior to adding the other herbs (yin jian, etc). (Source: Zhang Yi Nü Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ca)

**Modifications**

* With abdominal distension and a thick tongue coat, delete bai zhu and gan cao, and add cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 苍术 10g and hou
21.7 SPLEEN QI AND BLOOD DEFICIENCY

**Pathophysiology**
- This type of jaundice occurs when there is pre-existing or constitutional weakness of Spleen qi, or if Spleen qi is damaged by a chronic or persistent Damp Heat or Cold Damp condition, or by inappropriate treatment with excessive bitter cold herbs. Once the Spleen is weak, it is unable to generate sufficient Blood or clear residual Damp. The resulting withering of the Blood and development of Damp stagnation leads to a characteristic sallowness and lustrelessness of the skin.

**Clinical features**
- the face, eyes and skin are dull, lustreless yellow, or very pale, sickly or sallow
- lethargy and fatigue
- weakness in the extremities
- poor muscle tone
- palpitations
- shortness of breath
- loose stools or diarrhoea
- poor appetite
- pale and swollen, with a thin white coat
- P soggy and thin

**Treatment principle**
- Strengthen the Spleen, warm the middle jiao
- Tonify qi and Blood

**Prescription**

**HUANG QI JIAN ZHONG TANG 黄芪健中汤**  **(Astragalus Combination)**

- **huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ................. 30g
- **yi tang** (Saccharum Granorum) 饴糖 ....................... 30g
- **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .................. 15g
- **gui zhi** (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 ................. 9g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ................. 6g
- **sheng jia nong** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .......... 3pce
- **da zao** (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ....................... 5pce

**Method:** Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

**Modifications**
- With severe qi deficiency, add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 30g
• With Blood deficiency, add **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 12g, **shou di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 30g, **zhi he** 9g, **shou wu** (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 制首乌 15g.

• With yang deficiency and Cold, add **zhi fu zi** (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) **ji** -T 9g.

• With severe generalised pruritis, add one or two of the following herbs: **ai ye** (Folium Artemisiae Argyi) 艾叶 9g, **cang er zi** (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子 9g or **di fu zi** (Fructus Kochiae Scopariae) 地肤子 15g.

**Patent medicines**
- **Wu Ji Bai Fen Wan 烏雞白鳳丸 (Wuchi Paifeng Wan)***
- **Shi Quan Da Bu Wan 十全大補丸 (Shi Quan Da Bu Wan)***
- **Dang Gui Ji Jing 当归鸡精 (Tang Kuei Essence of Chicken)***
- **Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 补中益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)***
  - if qi deficiency is prominent

**Acupuncture**
- Bl.19 (dan shu), Du.9 (zhi yang), Bl.20 (qi shu), Ren.12 (zhong wan), St.36 (zu san li), Du.4 (ming men + △), Ren.6 (qi hai + △),
  - RenA (gul an yu an + ..)

**Clinical notes**
- This type of jaundice may be associated with conditions such as biliary cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis or haemolytic anaemia.

---

### 21.8 BLOOD STAGNATION

**Pathophysiology**
- Blood stagnation type jaundice is usually very chronic and follows years of unresolved liver disease, alcohol abuse or chronic jaundice. See also Ascites, p.730.

**Clinical features**
- chronic, darkish or dull yellow jaundice
- fixed, stabbing hypochondriac pain, worse at night and with pressure
- hepatosplenomegaly
- dark or purplish spider naevi over the ribs, face and around the inner ankle and knee–Kid.3 (tui xi) and Sp.9 (yin ling quan) area
- dark, ashen, sallow or purplish complexion, dark or purplish lips and conjunctiva, dark rings under the eyes
- easy bruising, purpura
- mild feverishness that is worse at night
- pain in the iliac fossae with palpation
- dry mouth and throat with no desire to drink
- dry, scaly skin, emaciation
- T purplish or with purple or brown petechial spots with little or no coat
- P thready and choppy

**Treatment principle**
- Invigorate the circulation of Blood, eliminate stagnant Blood Alleviate jaundice and soothe the Liver

**Prescription**

**GE XIA ZHU YU TANG 膈下逐淤湯 (Drive Out Blood Stasis Below the Diaphragm Decoction) modified**

- **yin chen** (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈 30g
- **mu dan pi** (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 15g
- **chao wu ling zhi** (dry fried Picrotum Trogopteri seu Pterom) 炒五灵脂 15g
- **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 12g
- **chi shao** (Radix Paeonie Rubrae) 赤芍 12g
- **xiang fu** (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundi) 香附 12g
- **wu yao** (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 魚鉤 12g
- **cu yan hu suo** (vinegar fried Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 酥延胡索 9g
- **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 9g
- **tao ren** (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g
**Clinical notes**
- This type of jaundice may be associated with conditions such as hepatic cirrhosis, liver cancer and chronic hepatitis.
- Difficult to treat, requiring persistence over a long time for any result.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR JAUNDICE

**Yang jaundice**
Damp Heat
- Heat greater than Damp - *Yin Chen Hao Tang* 雲陈蒿汤
- Damp greater than Heat - *Yin Chen Wu Ling San* 雲陈五苓散
- Early stage with exterior symptoms - *Ma Huang Lian Qiao Chi Xiao Du Tang* 麻黄连翘赤小豆汤 + *Gan Lu Xiao Du Dan* 甘露消毒丹
- with Liver Fire - *Long Dan Xie Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤
- with gallstones, plus *San Jin Tang* 三金汤

Liver and Gall Bladder stagnant Heat - *Qing Dan Xie Huo Tang* 清胆泻火汤
- with roundworms, plus *Dan Dao Qu Hui Tang* 胆道驱蛔汤

Toxic Heat - *Huang Lian Jia Du Tang* 黄连解毒汤 + *Yin Chen Hao Tang* 雲陈蒿汤 and *Wu Wei Xiao Du Yin* 五味消毒饮
- in severe cases - *Xi jiao San* 西角散
- with delirium or impaired consciousness - *An Gong Niu Huang Wan* 安宫牛黄丸 or *Zhi Bao Wan* 至宝丸
- with spasms or convulsions - *Zi Xue Dan* 紫雪丹

**Yin jaundice**
Cold Damp - *Yin Chen Zhu Yu Tang* 雲陈术附汤

Spleen qi and Blood deficiency - *Huang Qi Jian Zhong Tang* 黄芪健中汤

Blood stagnation - *Ge Xia Zhu Yu Tang* 治下逐瘀汤
- with palpable masses, plus *Da Huang Zhe Cheng Wan* 大黄蛰虫丸 or *Bie Jia Wan* 鳖甲丸

---

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle○ or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
SHAN QI

Shan qi is a collective term describing pain and swelling affecting the lower abdominal, groin and external genitalia, particularly the testicles and scrotum, that is, those parts of the body traversed by the Liver channel and thus strongly influenced by the Liver. Shan qi disorders appear primarily in males due to the peculiarities of the male anatomy.

Shan qi disorders are generally equated with various types of hernias (the term shan qi is often translated as hernial disorder), however the term has broader connotations. While the shan qi category certainly describes true herniations, it also includes a number of other disorders exhibiting swelling and/or pain in the genital and groin region, such as varicocele, hydrocele, orchitis, testicular tumours, testicular torsion and filariasis.

There are five traditional categories of shan qi:
1. Cold (han shan 阴寒): characterised by coldness and firmness of the testicles.
2. Watery (shui shan 水瘀): an accumulation of fluid in the scrotum (hydrocele), or swollen veins in the scrotum (varicocele), or eczema.
3. Qi (qi shan 气瘀): distension and pain in the testicles and lower abdomen.
4. Foxy (hu shan 虚瘀): where a portion of the intestine is intermittently squeezed through an aperture or weakness in the abdominal wall, usually through the inguinal canal into the testicles.

AETIOLOGY

Cold Damp

This pattern is mostly due to prolonged exposure to external cold and damp, such as sitting on damp ground too long, wearing damp clothing or prolonged immersion in water. Cold Damp can also invade through the jin channels of the legs after prolonged standing on cold floors or exposure of the legs to cold and damp. People with underlying yang deficiency are especially vulnerable to such invasion.

Liver qi stagnation

Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions, sexual anxiety and stress disrupt the circulation of Liver qi. Because the Liver channel is so intimately associated with the groin and genital region, stagnant qi easily influences this area.

Damp Heat

Damp Heat causing shan qi can be due to an external Damp Heat pathogen that invades through the taiyang (Bladder) channel, the leg jin channels or the local luo channels.

Damp Heat can also be internally generated by excessive consumption of rich, greasy or spicy foods and alcohol, or by the interaction of jin deficiency, qi stagnation or Heat with any pre-existing Dampness. Damp Heat is heavy and tends to sink into the lower body.

Spleen qi deficiency

Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, sweet or raw foods or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen qi. When Spleen qi is weak, food and fluids are poorly processed, and Dampness may accumulate. These are jin pathogens and tend to sink into the lower jiao.

Weakness of Spleen qi can also lead to loss of muscle tone and prolapse of various structures—causing weakness of muscular apertures and consequent herniation of the intestines or other abdominal structures.

Phlegm and Blood stagnation

Phlegm and Blood stagnate as the result of other chronic disorders of the testicles. Fluid stagnation can eventually congeal into Phlegm. Cold easily obstructs the circulation of qi and Blood.
22.1 COLD SHAN QI

Pathophysiology

- In this pattern, Cold penetrates through the Liver channel, inhibiting the circulation of qi and Blood. The nature of Cold is to freeze and constrict, and exposed parts of the body are particularly vulnerable. Also known as Cold invading the Liver channel.
- There are two variants—excess Cold and deficient Cold. The excess Cold pattern most likely occurs in men with intact qi who are invaded by external Cold. The deficient pattern occurs in men with deficient yang and internal Cold.

22.1.1 Excess Cold

Clinical features

- Swollen, firm, cold and retracted scrotum or testicles; in severe cases there is a stone like hardness
- Testicular pain that is significantly improved with warmth
- Cold intolerance
- White coat
- Deep, thready, and slow

Treatment principle

Warm the Liver (channel) and disperse Cold

Regulate qi, stop pain

Prescription

JIAO GUI TANG 椒桂汤
(Sichuan Pepper and Cinnamon Decoction)

gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝.......................... 9g
chuan jiao (Perciparium Zanthoxyli Bungeani) 川椒...................... 6g
gao liang jiang (Rhizoma Alpiniae Officiani) 高良姜..................... 6g
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 蔚胡................................. 6g
xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香........................... 6g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮............................. 6g
wu zhu yu (Fructus Evodiae Rutacearum) 吴茱萸....................... 6g
qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮.......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

Modifications

- With severe pain, add li zhi he (Semen Litchi Chinensis) 12g
- With severe pain, add ju he (Semen Citri Reticulatae) 橘核 9g

22.1.2 Deficient Cold

Clinical features

- Testicular coldness and distension
- Lower abdominal coldness and pain which radiates through to the testicles, better for warmth
- Cold intolerance, cold or numb extremities
- Pale with a white coat
- P deep, thready and slow

Treatment principle

Warm the Liver and Kidneys, move qi
Disperse Cold and stop pain

Prescription

NUAN GAN JIAN 暖肝煎
(Warm the Liver Decoction)

- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂................................. 6g
- xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香.......................... 6g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 伏苓................................. 15g
- wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychinifoliae) 乌药.......................... 6g
- gou qi zhi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子................................. 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归................................. 9g
- chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae) 艾香................................. 3g
- shengjiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜.......................... 3pce

Method: Decoction.

Patent medicines

- Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan) - Excess Cold
- Shi Xiang Zhi Tong Wan 十香止痛丸 (Sap Heung Yuen Medical Pills) - Excess Cold
- Li Zhong Wan 熊中丸 (Li Zhong Wan) - Deficient Cold

Acupuncture (applicable to both types)

Liv.13 (zhang men + ▲), Ren.6 (qi hai ▲), Kid.6 (zhao hai ▲), Liv.1 (da dun ▲)

Clinical notes

- This pattern may correspond to testicular tumours or herniae.
- The pain of this pattern generally responds well to treatment.
22.2 WATERY SHAN QI

Pathophysiology
- There are two patterns associated with watery shan qi, Cold Damp and Damp Heat. The Cold Damp type is associated with fluid filled cysts or hydrocele. The Damp Heat type manifests as a moist eczema, or testicular inflammation or infection.

22.2.1 Cold Damp

Clinical features
- The scrotum is swollen and oedematous, or there is a unilateral, well defined fluid filled swelling which may or may not be painful
- Dragging discomfort in testes
- Watery splash when the lower abdomen is palpated
- Scanty urination
- Thin greasy coat
- P wiry

Treatment principle
- Expel pathogenic fluids and move qi
- Aid the transformation of qi

Prescription

WU LING SAN 五苓散
(Houen Five Formula) modified

fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓.......................... 25g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术............. 15g
ju he (Semem Citri Reticulatae) 嫩核........................... 15g
zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 莖苓........................ 12g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻.......................... 12g
gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝......................... 9g
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香.......................... 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zheng Yi Nai Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ci)

Modifications
- With Cold, add rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 6g, xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香 6g and wu zhi yu (Fructus Evodiae Rutaecarpae) 狼牙炙 6g.

Acupuncture

Liv.8 (gu qian ▲), St.28 (shui dian ▲), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), Liv.1 (da dun -)

Patent medicines

Hai Zao Wan 海藻丸 (Hai Zao Wan)

Clinical notes
- This pattern may be associated with conditions such as hydrocele, epididymal cyst, spermatocele, varicocele, haematocele and testicular torsion.

22.2.2 Damp Heat

Clinical features
- The scrotum is red, swollen, painful or itchy with a watery yellow exudate from the skin
- May be fever
- Scanty urine
- Irritability and restlessness
- T thin greasy yellow coat
- P wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
- Clear Damp Heat

Prescription

DA FEN QING YIN 大分清饮
(Major Distinguishing Decoction)

This formula is selected when the Damp Heat is localised, and there are few systemic signs.

fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓.......................... 12g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子.................. 9g
zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 莖苓........................ 9g
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻.......................... 9g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通................................. 6g
zhi ke (Fructus Ctris Aurantii) 枳壳......................... 6g
che qian zi (Semem Plantaginis) 车前子......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. Che qian zi is usually cooked in a muslin bag (ban jian 包煎).
(Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nai Ke Xue)

LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination) p.500

This formula is selected when Damp Heat is obviously affecting the Liver and sinking down through the Liver channel. There will be systemic symptoms reflecting the Liver's involvement--severe irritability, headaches,
fullness in the chest and abdomen, constipation, dysuria etc.

**Patent medicines**
- *Long Dan Xie Gan Wan* (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- *Qian Liu Xian Wan* (Prostate Gland Pills)
- *Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian* (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets)

**Acupuncture**
- Sp.9 (*yin ling quan*), Liv.5 (*ji guan*), Ren.3 (*zhong ji*), Kid.6 (*zhao hai*), Liv.1 (*da dan*)

**Clinical notes**
- This pattern may be associated with conditions such as scrotal eczema, orchitis, orchitis associated with mumps, filariasis or testicular torsion.

---

### 22.3 LIVER QI STAGNATION SHAN QI

**Pathophysiology**
- This pattern of *shan qi* is due to disruption of Liver *qi* in the Liver channel.
- Liver *qi* stagnation can be the result of anger, smouldering resentment, frustration, repressed emotions or sexual anxiety. The Liver channel circulates through the genitals, therefore stasis of Liver *qi* can result in testicular symptoms.

**Clinical features**
- The scrotum is bilaterally or unilaterally swollen and distended, with distension or pain radiating from or to the lower abdomen and/or the lumbar region; the condition is aggravated or initiated by anger, stress or emotional upset, and is alleviated by relaxation.
- There may be other signs of *qi* stagnation, such as depression, irritability, sighing, headaches, menstrual problems, and so on.

T pale or normal with a white coat. 
P wiry

**Treatment principle**
Soothe the Liver and regulate *qi*

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIAN TAI WU YAO SAN 天台乌药散 (Top Quality Lindera Powder) modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>wu yao</strong> (Radix Linderae Strychnifolae) 乌药 .............................. 15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>qing pi</strong> (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮 ........................ 15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gao liang jiang</strong> (Rhizoma Alpiniae Officinar) 高良姜 ..................... 15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mu xiang</strong> (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 ................................. 15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chao xiao hui xiang</strong> (dry fried Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 炒小茴香 ........................................... 15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>li zhi he</strong> (Semen Litchi Chinensis) 喜树楔 ............................... 12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chuan lian zi</strong> (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 .......................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ju he</strong> (Semen Citri Reticulatae) 橘核 ........................................ 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bing lang</strong> (Semen Arecae Catechu) 槟榔 .................................... 0g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Powder and take as a draft with yellow wine or sake. The dose is 3 grams, 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Modifications**
- With Cold, add *rou gui* (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 6g and *wu zhu yu* (Fructus Evodiae Rutaecarpaceae) 吴茱萸 6g.
22.4 **QI DEFICIENCY SHAN QI**

**Pathophysiology**
- Weakness of Spleen qi leads to sinking of various suspended structures, and a general loss of muscle tone causing weakened abdominal apertures. This encourages abdominal contents (usually portions of the small intestine) to extrude, usually through the inguinal canal, affecting the testicles and scrotum, or in women, the region around St.30 (qi chong). This pattern is most common in elderly men.

**Clinical features**
- the scrotum is swollen, dropped or distended, usually unilaterally, with mild pain, discomfort or a dragging sensation, aggravated or initiated by fatigue, overwork, long hours standing and coughing
- frequent urination
- there will usually be signs of Spleen weakness, like abdominal distension, fatigue, poor appetite, fluid retention and loose stools
- T pale and swollen with toothmarks and a thin coat
- P weak or wiry (if there is pain)

**Treatment principle**
- Tonify the Spleen to raise qi

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>BU ZHONG YI QI TANG</strong> (Ginseng and Astragalus Combination) modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>huang qi</strong> (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ........................ 15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bai zhuzhi</strong> (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 ............. 12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dang shen</strong> (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 当归 ........................ 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dang gui</strong> (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ju he</strong> (Semen Citri Reticulatae) 橘核 ............................ 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>li zhi he</strong> (Semen Litchi Chinensis) 火荔枝核 ........................ 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chen pi</strong> (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ...................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gan cao</strong> (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ...................... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chai hu</strong> (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ............................... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chao xiao hui xiang</strong> (dry fried Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 调小茴香 .................. 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sheng ma</strong> (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 丹麻 ............................ 6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Modifications**
- With Kidney qi deficiency, add **ba ji tian** (Radix Morindae Officinalis)
Liver

巴戟天 9g, 仙灵脾 12g and 肉桂 6g.

Patent medicines

Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 吕种益气丸 (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 巴戟阴阳丸 (Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan)
Zhuang Yao Jian Shen Pian 浮腰健肾片 (Zhuang Yao Jian Shen)

Acupuncture

Du.20 (bai hui), St.36 (gu san li), Ren.12 (zhong wan), Bl.20 (qi shu), Liv.8 (gu quan), Sp.6 (san yin jiao)
- A useful technique for this condition (and lower abdominal prolapses in general) is to thread a 3-inch needle from Ren.6 (qi hai) to Ren.3 (zhong ji). The needle is twisted to anchor it, then raised towards the sternum creating a lifting sensation in the lower abdomen. It can be taped (in its lifted position) in place for the duration of the treatment.

Clinical notes

- This pattern may be associated with conditions such as inguinal hernia, varicocele and hydrocele.

22.5 Foxy Shan Qi

Pathophysiology

- This is a subcategory of qi stagnation or deficiency shan qi, clearly describing an inguinal or inguinoscrotal hernia. 'Foxy' because it appears and disappears (unexpectedly?) like a fox.

Clinical features

- A part of the small intestine intermittently descends into the groin or scrotum through the inguinal canal, disappearing when the patient lies flat or when manually reduced; it reappears when the patient stands, coughs or sneezes.
- The hernia may be large or small, changing from time to time; when present there may or may not be distension and pain radiating into the testes.
- No specific tongue
- No specific pulse, however if there is pain the pulse may be wiry or tight

Treatment principle

Soothe the Liver and regulate qi

Prescription

DAO QI TANG 导气汤
(Conduct the Qi Decoction) modified

chuan lien zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 .......... 12g
xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香 .......... 10g
wu yao (Radix Linderae Strychnifoliae) 乌药 .......... 10g
yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 .......... 10g
ju he (Semen Citri Reticulatae) 橘核 .......... 12g
qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮 .......... 9g
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 .......... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications

- With qi deficiency, add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 当参 15g, huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 30g, chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 旋覆花 9g and sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae) 生麻 6g or combine with BU ZHONG YI QI TANG (Ginseng and Astragali Combination) mod, p.625.
- With Blood deficiency, add dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g and bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 12g.
- With Cold, add rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomii Cassiae) 肉桂 6g and zhi
fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6g.

Patent medicines
There are no specific patent medicines for this pattern, however, there are often signs of generalised qi deficiency, or sinking Spleen qi with poor muscle tone. Any of the qi and Blood tonics may be used, especially:
- Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan (Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan)
- Ren Shen Yang Ying Wan (Ginseng Tonic Pills)
- Ba Zhen Wan (Ba Zhen Wan)
- Shi Quan Da Bu Wan (Shi Quan Da Bu Wan)

Acupuncture
St.29 (yin lai), St.30 (qi zhong), Ren.4 (quen yuan), St.40 (feng long),
- Liv.12 (ji mai), Liv.1 (du dui), Liv.3 (tai zhong)
  - The vulnerable area (that is, the point of weakness in the abdominal wall) can be surrounded by needles inserted obliquely and shallowly, pointing towards the centre of the weakness.
  - Three corner moxa (**san jian jiu 三角灸**) is a technique recommended for this pattern. The points are the corners of an equilateral triangle with the apex at Ren.8 (chen que) and the other two points the length of the patients smile (usually about 3-4 cun) inferolaterally. The points are warmed with a moxa stick.

Clinical notes
- Small hernias respond well to acupuncture and herbal treatment but large or recurrent hernias may need to be surgically corrected.
- Hernias can be dangerous if they are irreducible, quickly leading to necrosis and serious complications.

22.6 PHLEGM AND BLOOD STAGNATION SHAN QI

Pathophysiology
- Chronic Cold Dampness, qi stagnation, or other persistent pathogens gradually congeal (or allows fluids to congeal) into Phlegm, obstructing the circulation of Blood.

Clinical features
- The scrotum or testicles are swollen and hard with loss of testicular sensation
  - T pale or slightly purplish with a thin or greasy white coat
  - P deep

Treatment principle
Move qi, transform Phlegm
- Soften hardness and disperse swelling

Prescription
JU HE WAN 橘核丸
(Tangerine Seed Pills)
- ju he (Semen Citri Reticulatae) 橘核 ........................................... 30g
- chuan hian zi* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川棌子 ........................................... 30g
- hai zao (Herba Sargassii) 海藻 ........................................... 30g
- kun bu (Thallus Algae) 昆布 ........................................... 30g
- hai dai (Herba Laminariae Japonicae) 海帶 ........................................... 30g
- tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................................... 30g
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 ........................................... 15g
- yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 ........................................... 15g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomum Cassiae) 肉桂 ........................................... 15g
- mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ........................................... 15g
- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ........................................... 15g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 橘核 ........................................... 15g

Method: Powder and form into 9-gram pills with yellow wine or sake. The dose is 1-2 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 30% reduction in dose. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- For severe Blood stasis and pain, add san leng (Rhizoma Sparganii Stoloniferi) 三棱 15g and e zhu (Rhizoma Curcumae Ezhu) 銀末 15g.
- For predominance of Phlegm (rubbery, firm swelling, numbness), add mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 30g, xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 30g and zhe bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 浙贝母 15g.
- If the stagnation generates Heat, causing redness and swelling of the scrotum, delete rou gui, and add tu fu ling (Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae) 土茯苓 15g, long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 15g, huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 15g and huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 15g.

**Acupuncture**
- Liv.4 (zhong du -), Liv.5 (ji guo -), Sp.9 (yin ling quán -), Ren.3 (zhong ji -), Liv.8 (qu quán -), St.29 (guai lai -), Bl.32 (zi hao -), Sp.6 (suan yin jiao -), LI.4 (he gu -)

**Patent medicines**
- Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消瘰疬丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)
- Hai Zao Wan 海藻丸 (Hai Zao Wan)
- Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
- Gui Zhi Fu Lin Wan 桂枝茯苓丸 (Gui Zhi Fu Lin Wan)

**Clinical notes**
- This pattern may be associated with conditions such as testicular cancer or chronic epididymo-orchitis.
- Any hard mass in the testicles should be thoroughly investigated.
- Acupuncture is of limited use in this pattern and in cases of cancer TCM treatment is generally supportive.

**SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR SHAN QI**

**Cold shan qi**
- Excess Cold - Jiao Gui Tang 稀桂汤
- Deficient Cold - Nuan Gan Jian 暖肝煎

**Watery shan qi**
- Cold Damp - Wu Ling San 吴苓散
- Damp Heat - Da Fen Qing Yin 大分清饮

**Liver qi stagnation - Tian Tai Wu Yao San 天台乌药散**

**Qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤**

**Foxy shan qi - Dao Qi Tang 导气汤**
- with Spleen qi deficiency - Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang 补中益气汤

**Phlegm and Blood stagnation - Ju He Tang 活血汤**

---

**Endnote**

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk *, an open circle ○ or a hat †, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Liver

23. Tremors

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency
Qi and Blood deficiency
Phlegm Heat with Wind
TREMORS

Tremors are involuntary muscular quivering or rhythmic movements of the extremities or head. In TCM, all such movement is due to the stirring of internal Wind. There are three main ways that internal Wind can be generated. Blood deficiency, yin deficiency and Heat (see also Box 19.2, p.536).

AETIOLOGY

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency
Liver and Kidney yin are damaged through ageing, excessive sexual activity, overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep and febrile diseases. Another common cause of yin depletion, especially in younger people, is abuse of recreational drugs. Liver yin deficiency can also be an extension of Liver Blood deficiency, or follow any Liver Heat pattern, especially Liver Fire. Prolonged Liver qi stagnation can also damage Liver yin by generating stagnant Heat. In tremor patterns, there are often mixtures of Phlegm Heat and yin deficiency.

Yin and Blood deficiency generate Wind in a similar way. Yin and Blood are the anchor that secures yang and provide a counterweight to its active and rising nature. When these stabilising elements reach a critical point of deficiency, yang (or qi) loses its mooring and becomes excessively mobile. This mobile and uncontrolled yang is Wind. Blood deficiency is relatively less severe than yin deficiency, and the resulting Wind tends to be milder and the tremors finer.

Yin deficiency can give rise to two degrees of Wind, the first milder and associated with the rhythmic tremors and spasms of diseases like Parkinson's disease or hyperthyroidism. The second, more severe, occurs when Liver yang suddenly (and disastrously) slips its mooring and becomes Wind, rushing towards the head to cause Wind stroke (see next chapter).

Phlegm Heat
Phlegm Heat can be generated in several ways. Excessive consumption of rich spicy foods and alcohol can directly generate Phlegm Heat. Any pre-existing Heat in the body (from Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat or Fire, yin deficiency or external invasion, etc.), can thicken and congeal fluids into Phlegm, and subsequently Phlegm Heat. A weakness of Spleen qi or inappropriate consumption of cold natured foods can allow accumulation of Dampness and Phlegm, which can eventually become hot.

Phlegm Heat, at a certain point of intensity, can generate sufficient movement to be redefined as Wind. The variety of Wind associated with Phlegm Heat type tremor is not severe enough to cause the convulsive Wind of extreme Heat or Fire. In this case the yin nature of the Phlegm restrains and modifies the intensity of the Heat's expression, and a milder form of Wind occurs. The Heat smothers at just the right intensity to promote ongoing Wind, but is not severe enough to cause convulsions.

QI and Blood deficiency
Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw foods or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen qi. As the Spleen (and Lungs) are the source of the qi and Blood of the body, weakness in these organs will inevitably lead to a decrease in production of qi and Blood. Other causes are acute or chronic haemorrhage, prolonged breast feeding and malnutrition (seen, for example in vegetarians who eat insufficient protein). Qi and Blood are so closely related that deficiency of one usually leads to deficiency of the other.

As noted previously, Blood deficiency can give rise to a mild form of Wind by failing to anchor yang qi securely. Qi (yang) deficiency may also contribute to the development of a type of Wind, one generated by the movement of qi to fill the vacuum formed by chronic deficiency. In the case of predominant qi deficiency, the Wind is more likely to manifest as chronic childhood convulsions (see Convulsions p.716).

BOX 23.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF TREMOR

Physiological
- excitement/anxiety
- cold
- tension
- senile
- benign essential (familial) tremor

Pathological
- Parkinson's disease
- Wilson's disease
- Friedreich's ataxia
- hyperthyroidism
- multiple sclerosis
- Tourette's syndrome
- cerebellar disease
- frontal lobe tumours
- peripheral neuropathy
- hypoglycaemia
- liver failure
- uraemia

Drugs
- alcohol/caffeine
- salbutamol
- phenytoin
- lithium
- narcotic withdrawal

BOX 23.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS

Tongue
- red and dry - yin deficiency
- pale - qi and Blood deficiency
- red with a thick yellow coat - Phlegm Heat
23.1 LIVER AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Tremors due to Liver and Kidney yin deficiency occur in two ways. First, when there is a lack of yin (and Blood), the tendons will become dry from lack of nourishment and lubrication. Such dryness leads to intention tremor or difficult, jerky or shuffling movement. Second, when the yin becomes too weak to secure it, the yang will move uncontrollably, creating Wind and causing tremors and spasms. This pattern is characterised by generalised dryness and heat.

Clinical features
- usually long-term tremor, typically of the hand, leg, jaw or tongue, usually in middle aged or elderly patients; in younger patients, however, it may manifest initially as a fine intention tremor
- some patients may be slow to initiate movement, with a slow and shuffling gait and blank stare
- poor memory, depression
- dizziness, tinnitus
- emaciation, dry skin, dried out look
- insomnia, dream disturbed sleep
- lower back soreness and weakness
- numbness or spasms in the extremities
- constipation
- night sweats, tidal fever, bone steaming fever
- red and dry or dark red and withered or moving, with little or no coat
- thready, wiry, rapid and deep

Treatment principle
Nourish and tonify the Liver and Kidney
Generate yin, extinguishing Wind

Precription
DA BU YIN WAN 大补阴丸
(Great Tonify the Yin Pill) plus
LIU WEI DI HUANG WAN 六味地黄丸
(Rehmannia Six Formula) modified

This formula is best when deficient Heat is strong, causing frequent night sweats, tidal fever and bone steaming.

shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 熟地 180g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 180g
gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis) 龟板 180g

DA DING FENG ZHU 大定风珠
(Major Arrest Wind Pearl)

This formula nourishes yin and extinguishes Wind. It is not as cooling as the previous formula and is recommended in stubborn cases and in cases with muscle spasm.

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 18g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 18g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 18g
mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 12g
bie jia (Carapax Amydae Sinensis) 贝甲 12g
gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis) 龟板 12g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 12g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Cordis Asini) 阿胶 9g
huo ma ren (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 9g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis) 五味子 6g
ji zi huang (egg yolk) 鸡子黄 2

Method: Decoction. The shells are decocted for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (zaijun jian 其制), e jiao and the eggs are added to the strained decoction (yang hua H4-6). (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications (apply to both prescriptions)
- With poor appetite or digestive weakness, add shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 9(90)g and shan zha (Fructus Crataegi) 山楂 9(90)g.
- For severe night sweats, add fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Lestivi Levii) 活小麦 12(120)g and ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9(90)g.
Variations and additional prescriptions

Tremor associated with drug use

- Patients who have consumed large amounts of recreational drugs often have damaged yin. In particular, long term marijuana, cocaine or amphetamine use severely depletes Heart and Kidney yin. These patients often have a withered or dried out look, memory lapses, sleep disturbance and intention tremor. The correct treatment (in addition to stopping the drugs) is to nourish Heart and Kidney yin and calm the shen with TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN (Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula 天王补心丹, p.806).

Patent medicines

Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸 (Zuo Gui Wan)

Qi Ju Di Huang Wan 枸菊地黄丸 (Lycium-Rehmannia Pills)

Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)

Ming Mu Di Huang Wan 明目地黄丸 (Ming Mu Di Huang Wan)

Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan 天王补心丹 (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan)

Acupuncture

BL23 (shen shu +), BL18 (guan yu +), Ren4 (yuan quan +), Kid3 (tai xi +), Liv3 (tai cong), Liv8 (guan yu), Kid6 (zhao hua), Lu7 (li que), Hu7 (shen men)

- with anxiety, add PC6 (wei guan) and xin ting (M-HN-3)
- Scalp acupuncture may be useful

Clinical notes

- The tremors in this pattern may be associated with conditions such as Parkinson’s disease, senile tremors, hyperthyroidism, anxiety and drug abuse.
- Tremors associated with drug abuse, anxiety and hyperthyroidism respond well to acupuncture and herbal treatment, although as always the degree of success depends on the degree of deficiency.
- Senile tremors and those associated with Parkinson’s disease will require lengthy treatment with acupuncture and herbs to secure a satisfactory result, although delay of further deterioration is often the best result that can realistically be gained.
- Stimulant drugs (including caffeine) should be gradually withdrawn.
- Regular and sufficient rest and a minimum of mental stress is essential to allow the regeneration of yin.

23.2 QI AND BLOOD DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Tremors due to qi and Blood deficiency tend to be a little milder than the tremors of the Liver and Kidney yin deficiency type, although there may be some overlap between the two. As with yin deficiency, Blood deficiency can cause tremors in two ways—by not lubricating and nourishing Tendons, and by not securing jang qi, thus generating Wind.

Clinical features

- mild tremor, head shaking, usually long term
- may be slow to initiate movement or has slow and shuffling gait
- numbness and weakness of the extremities
- sallow, lustreless complexion
- pale lips and nails
- dizziness
- blurring vision
- spontaneous sweating
- T pale or dark and swollen with tooth marks or purple stasis spots
- P thready and weak

Treatment principle

Tonify qi and Blood
Extinguish Wind

Prescription

BA ZHEN TANG 八珍汤 (Ginseng and Dang Gui Eight Combination) plus

TIAN MA GOU TENG YIN 天麻钩藤饮 (Gastrodia and Gambir Formula) modified

| shi jue ming’ (Concha Haliotidis) 石决明 | 18g |
| shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquites) 熟地 | 15g |
| fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 | 12g |
| dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 | 12g |
| bai shao (Radix Paonieae Lactiflorae) 白芍 | 12g |
| gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 | 12g |
| chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝 | 12g |
| dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 | 12g |
| bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术 | 9g |
| ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 | 9g |


**tian ma** (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae 天麻) .......................... 9g
**du zhong** (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis 杜仲) .......................... 9g
**sang ji sheng** (Ramulus Sangsheng 桑寄生) .......................... 9g
**yi mu cao** (Herba Leonuri Heterophylli 益母草) .......................... 9g

Method: Decoction. Shi jie ming is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xi an jian 先煎), gou teng is added near the end of cooking (hou xia 后下).

(Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Xu).

**Modifications**
- With Blood stagnation, add **tao ren** (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g, **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g and **hong hua** (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 9g.
- With severe sweating, add **huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 15g and **mu li** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g.
- With insomnias, add one or two of the following herbs: **wu wei zi** (Fructus Schizandrae Chinesis) 五味子 6g, **bai zi ren** (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 9g, **ye jiao teng** (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 30g, **he huan pi** (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 9g.
- If there is abdominal and epigastric fullness and poor appetite, add **ban xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 10g and **chen pi** (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 10g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**
- Liver qi stagnation often precedes or accompanies Blood deficiency. In this case, the correct treatment is to move Liver qi, nourish Blood and extinguish Wind with **XIAO YAO SAN** (Bupleurum and Dong Gui Formula 逍遥散 p.139) plus **tian ma** (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae 天麻 9g, **gou teng** (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 12g, **ban xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g and **hou po** (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 9g.

**Patent medicines**

- **Ba Zhen Wan** 八珍丸 (Ba Zhen Wan)
- **Bai Feng Wan** 白凤丸 (Pai Feng Wan)
- **Dang Gui Ji Jing** 当归鸡精 (Tang Kuei Essence of Chicken)
- **Shi Quan Da Bu Wan** 十全大补丸 (Shi Quan Da Bu Wan)
- **Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan** 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)

- combined with one of the patent medicines above

**Acupuncture**

- St.36 (zu san li +▲), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Bl.20 (pi shu +▲),
- Ren.12 (zhong wan +▲), Ren.4 (qi hai +▲), Bl.23 (shen shu +▲),
- Liv.3 (tai cang), L.I.10 (shou san li +▲)

- Scalp acupuncture may be useful

**Clinical notes**

- The tremors in this pattern may be associated with conditions such as Parkinson's disease, hyperthyroidism, benign familial tremors, anxiety and multiple sclerosis.
- Acupuncture can be useful to help control the Wind in this pattern but because it represents a profound deficiency of qi and Blood it will require long term treatment with herbs.
- A nourishing diet (with adequate protein) and sufficient rest are essential to rebuild Blood and qi.
23.3 PHLEGM HEAT GENERATING WIND

Pathophysiology
• Tremors due to Phlegm Heat with Wind can be mild to severe, yet do not result in the uncontrolled or convulsive tremors seen in the Wind stroke pattern (p.658). In this pattern, the yin congealing quality of the Phlegm restrains full expression of the yang Heat, which smoulders at an intensity sufficient to generate ongoing Wind, but insufficient to cause Wind stroke.

Clinical features
• mild or severe tremors of the head and extremities which can sometimes be stopped by conscious effort
• fullness and stiffness in the chest and epigastrium
• dizziness, vertigo
• dry mouth
• sweating
• yellow sputum
• tendency to obesity
• greasy yellow coat
• P iry, slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat and transform Phlegm
Extinguish Wind

Prescription
DAO TAN TANG 导痰汤
( Guide Out Phlegm Decoction) plus
TIAN MA GOU TENG YIN 天麻钩藤饮
(Gastrodia and Gambir Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shi jue ming* (Concha Haliotidis) 石决明</td>
<td>18g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 苍术</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山桅子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 胆南星</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Shi jue ming is usually cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xian jian 先煎). gou teng is added near the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

CUI GAN WAN 推肝丸
(Broken Liver Pill)

This formula is recommended in cases with severe Liver Heat, Phlegm Heat and tremors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 胆南星</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hua shi (Talcum) 滑石</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng tie lu (Frustra Ferri) 生铁落</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiang can* (Bombyx Batryticatus) 僵蚕</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qing dai (Indigo Pulverata Levis) 青黛</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang lian (Rhizoma Copidis) 黄连</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu sha* (Cinnabaris) 朱砂</td>
<td>5g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs (except zhu sha) to powder and form into 6-gram pills with ginger juice. Zhu sha is used to coat the pills. The dose is 1-2 pills daily. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Patent medicines

Hu Po Bao Long Wan 玻珀抱龙丸 (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills) plus
Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)

Acupuncture

St.40 (feng long -), Du.12 (zhon zhu -), GB.13 (ben zhen),
Ren.15 (jiu we), Liv.3 (tai chong -), St.25 (tian shi), PC.5 (juan shi)
* worse at night, add Kid.6 (zhao hat)
* worse during the day, add Bl.62 (zhon mai)

Clinical notes
- The tremors in this pattern may be associated with conditions such as Meniere’s disease, hypertension, epilepsy and multiple sclerosis.
- The tremors in this pattern, being excess rather than deficient, can resolve reasonably rapidly if the Phlegm can be cleared. Strong herbal treatment and dietary modifications are necessary to achieve this.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR TREMORS

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency
- Da Bu Yin Wan 大补阴丸 + Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸
  * in stubborn cases - Da Ding Feng Zhu 大定风珠

Qi and Blood deficiency
- Ba Zhen Tang 八珍汤 + Tian Ma Gen Teng Yin 天麻钩藤饮
  * with stagnant qi - Xiao Yao San 逍遥散

Phlegm Heat generating Wind
- Dao Tan Tang 导痰汤 + Tian Ma Gen Teng Yin 天麻钩藤饮
  * severe cases - Cui Gan Wan 推肝丸

Disorders of the Liver

24. Wind Stroke

Channel stroke
Channel emptiness with Wind invasion
Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with rising yang and Wind
Phlegm Heat with Wind Phlegm

Organ stroke
Closed syndrome
Flaccid collapse syndrome

Sequelae of Wind stroke
Hemiplegia
Dysphasia
Facial paralysis

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle○ or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
WIND STROKE
zhong jing 中风

The TCM classification of Wind stroke is closely analogous to the biomedically defined Cerebro-vascular accident (CVA). Brain damage as a result of a CVA is the third commonest cause of death in developed countries, and a significant contributor to morbidity, especially in those over 50 years.

About 50% of strokes are preceded by a transient ischaemic attack (TIA), which is a focal neurological dysfunction due to cerebral ischaemia lasting less than 24 hours, and in many cases only a few minutes. TIA’s are characterised by transient vertigo, monocular blindness and confusion, double vision or ataxia. TIA’s are important prognostic indicators for impending stroke. In TCM there are effective treatments for preventing stroke and alleviating the preconditions of hypertension, atherosclerosis and increased blood viscosity.

The mechanism of CVA is generally either haemorrhage from a burst aneurism, thrombosis due to partial or total atherosclerotic occlusion of vertebral or cerebral arteries, or embolism detached from a distant thrombus or atherosclerotic plaque. In all cases a portion of the brain is deprived of blood and oxygen and either dies or is damaged. The symptoms and extent of the condition depend on where in the brain the infarction occurs, and how extensive the damage is. Mild infarction or cerebral ischaemia is probably analogous to channel stroke (feng zhong jing 风中经), severe infarction to organ stroke (feng zhong zang 风中脏).

Wind stroke has long been thought to be one of the ‘four major problems in internal medicine’, and thus occupies a prominent place in traditional medical literature. Theories concerning Wind stroke have varied and developed over the centuries. Prior to the Tang dynasty (618-907AD), external Wind was thought to be the principle factor contributing to Wind stroke. Early physicians maintained that when zheng and wei qi were weak, the undefended channels were wide open to invasion by external Wind, and this Wind was sufficient to cause the characteristic symptoms of Wind stroke. The depth of Wind penetration could be determined by the severity of the symptoms and the level of the patient’s consciousness. Early prescriptions were largely diaphoretic, aimed at expelling external Wind from the channels.

Centuries of clinical experience, however, demonstrated the shortcomings of this approach. Routine application of diaphoretic prescriptions was observed to be detrimental in some types of Wind stroke, and the standard formulae began to disappear from clinical records. Once physicians of the Song (960-1279AD) and Yuan (1271-1368AD) dynasties recognised that the regular Wind treatment was insufficient, and indeed sometimes dangerous, they proposed the existence of an internal Wind, a product of physiological imbalances. The internal Wind theory is now so predominant that the primary Wind stroke prescription of the 8th century, Xiao Xu Ming Tang (Minor Prolong Life Decoction 小续命汤) barely rates a mention in modern TCM texts, and has much reduced (although still useful), therapeutic indications.

AETIOLOGY

The aetiology of Wind stroke is usually complex and, with the exception of some types of channel stroke, it may take many years before the conditions are right for Wind to develop to the point where it is aggressive enough to cause a catastrophe. There are, however, several reasonably consistent features. Years of overindulgence in heating or Phlegm Damp generating foods, alcohol and tobacco are known to predispose people to Wind stroke. The most common predisposing conditions are Liver yin deficiency with rising yang and Phlegm Heat, both of which can generate Wind under the right conditions. Wind stroke of internal origin is thus usually a combination of yin deficiency, Heat, Phlegm and Wind, with Blood stagnation intervening in the sequelae phase.

BOX 24.1 TCM CLASSIFICATION OF WIND STROKE

- Channel stroke: a milder type that affects the channels only and does not cause loss of consciousness. The main problems are facial paralysis, dysphasia and hemiplegia. The general prognosis is good, or at least better than when consciousness is lost. There are two general categories:
  1. Wind stroke with no internal predisposing factors: that is, sudden numbness, facial paralysis or motor dysfunction in an otherwise healthy individual. This is due to invasion of external Wind into the channels.
  2. Wind stroke with predisposing factors: usually in older people with the predisposing conditions of yin deficiency or Phlegm Heat. This is due to internal Wind, and is more common than the previous type.

- Organ (zang fu) stroke: a serious disorder thought to involve serious damage to the internal organs. This type causes loss of consciousness as well as hemiplegia, facial paralysis and dysphasia. This type frequently leads to permanent disability or death. Preventive treatment is strongly indicated for those at risk.

- Sequelae: both channel and organ stroke have the same outcome (if the patient survives) - hemiplegia, facial paralysis, loss of vision, dysphasia etc. With channel stroke the damage is usually not so severe and the prognosis is better. With organ stroke the level of disability is usually greater and the prognosis poorer.
Wind

As is clear from the chapter heading, Wind is implicated in all forms of Wind stroke. Regardless of the predisposing factors, it is Wind affecting the organs and lodging in the channels that ultimately does the damage. The evidence for this is the suddenness with which the symptoms appear, and the swift pathological change as a result, as if the patient has been 'hit by Wind' (zhong feng 風). In general the Wind is of internal origin, that is, the byproduct of some physiological dysfunction involving yin or Blood deficiency or Heat. The mechanisms of internal Wind are summarised in Box 24.2.

**BOX 24.2 MECHANISMS OF INTERNAL WIND**

**Yin deficiency**

The body's yin is the anchor that secures yang and provides a counter-weight to its active and rising nature. At some critical point of deficiency, yin is unable to restrain Liver yang, which at a certain point of volatility and movement becomes Wind. This type of Wind can be sudden and catastrophic—it is the type of Wind that can cause Wind stroke leading to hemiplegia or death. It typically follows years of yin depletion.

**Blood deficiency**

This type of Wind is similar in aetiology to the previous type in that the Wind is generated by failure of the Blood to anchor qi—when qi moves without the grounding control of Blood, a mild form of Wind is generated. Blood deficient Wind is more likely to cause mild rhythmic tics, tremors and spasms.

**Heat**

Because Heat and movement are closely related physiologically, at a certain level of intensity, internal Heat can turn into Wind. This can manifest as the convulsions of a high fever, or in the case of Wind stroke, as a smouldering Heat that combines with and is contained by Phlegm (or congeals fluids into Phlegm). At some point the Heat breaks out and becomes Wind, carrying the Phlegm towards the head.

Some types of Wind stroke, especially those known as channel stroke (with no consciousness disturbance), may be due to external Wind. Indeed, the formulae designed for these patterns contain diaphoretic herbs to disperse external Wind rather than herbs to extinguish internal Wind.

**Liver and Kidney yin deficiency**

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency is an important predisposing factor in Wind stroke and can give rise to two degrees of Wind. The first is a mild variety that appears sporadically in the pre-stroke phase (as TIA's), and the second when Liver yang suddenly (and disastrously) slips its mooring and rushes towards the head causing full blown Wind stroke.

Liver and Kidney yin are damaged through ageing, excessive sexual activity, overwork (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep, febrile diseases and use of recreational drugs. Liver yin deficiency can also be an extension of Liver Blood deficiency, or follow any Liver Heat pattern, especially Liver Fire. Prolonged Liver qi stagnation can also damage Liver yin by generating stagnant Heat. Very often there are elements of Phlegm Heat associated with the yin deficiency patterns.

**Phlegm Heat**

The Phlegm Heat responsible for Wind stroke is usually created by overindulgence, particularly in rich, fatty foods and alcohol, although a constitutional tendency to Phlegm may be present. Phlegm Heat may also accumulate over time in individuals with Spleen qi deficiency and Liver qi stagnation. Phlegm Heat frequently combines with rising Liver yang. There are probably two reasons that Phlegm Heat can generate sufficient activity to generate Wind—the stagnating quality of Phlegm, which blocks the circulation of qi raising the pressure behind the obstruction (which can blow at some point), and the stimulating effects of the Heat. The resultant uncontrolled movement of qi can transform to Wind (usually in combination with exploding yang) when a critical intensity is reached.

**Blood stagnation**

Blood stagnation is the end result of Wind invasion, and persists long after the Wind has resolved. In the sequelae of Wind stroke, it tends to be localised to specific areas—the extremities, face and tongue.

**TREATMENT**

The treatment of Wind stroke can be divided into several phases:

- **preventive**
- **during the acute phase (during a stroke or in the first couple of weeks following a stroke, until the patient is stable)**
- **post acute treatment of the sequelae of the Wind stroke**

Preventive treatment is applied to patients with the warning signs of an impending stroke or those in a high-risk group. High-risk patients include the obese, those who smoke, and patients with chronic hypertension and hyperlipidaemia. In general, treatment at this phase involves both constitutional therapy (to nourish Liver and Kidney yin, extinguish Wind and/or transform Phlegm) and lifestyle modification. Acupuncture and herbs, with a sensible diet and exercise program can produce good results in restoring the patient to balance.
During the acute phase, treatment is focused on restoring consciousness, stopping bleeding and stabilising the patient. During the acute phase of an evolving Wind stroke, it can be difficult to determine whether a stroke is from a thrombus, embolus or haemorrhage, so a conservative approach is applied. Acupuncture moves qi and Blood, and so other than for resuscitation purposes, it is generally not used during the acute phase, as it can prolong bleeding from a leaking aneurysm. Similarly, Blood invigorating herbs are avoided during this phase. The treatments that are applied at this time are directed towards relieving the vascular pressure in the head, usually through forcing the descent of qi through the ‘big exit’, (that is, the bowel, by purging) or by heavily weighing down yang. Ultimately, the main therapeutic principle is to allow the wild fluctuations in the patients yin and yang to settle, so they survive long enough and with the least disability to benefit from the final phase of treatment. During the acute phase patients should be managed in hospital.

The last phase is treatment of the sequelae of the Wind stroke. The treatment principle will vary somewhat depending on the chronicity of the disability. In general, the longer the paralysis the longer the treatment, but TCM really shines in the treatment of this phase. After the acute phase (about two weeks) acupuncture treatment can begin. After six months, treatment of hemiplegia and other paresis is difficult, although it is always worth a good go as different patients will respond (sometimes remarkably) differently. In the context of long term paralysis at least one course of acupuncture treatment (usually 10-12 sessions) or two months of herbal therapy should be attempted before making a judgement on whether the treatment is working or not.

**DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS**

- **Jue syndrome** (*jue zhe*): Jue syndrome is characterised by sudden loss of consciousness, then a gradual regaining of consciousness with no residual paralysis, speech difficulties or sequela. The sorts of disorders that are categorised as jue syndrome include hypoglycaemic coma, hysterical syncop, haemorrhagic or allergic shock.

- **Epilepsy** (*dian xian*): Epilepsy involves partial or total loss of consciousness, collapse, and convulsions. Upon regaining consciousness, epileptic patients are not left with any residual paralysis.

---

1. Acupuncture can be used, however, with complete safety for channel stroke patterns from external Wind (for example in conditions like Bell’s palsy).
24.1 Emptiness of the Channels with Wind Invasion

Pathophysiology

- There is still debate about the precise pathophysiology of this pattern, but the formulae recommended would suggest that the consensus falls in favour of external Wind. Therefore, this is most likely an invasion of external Wind into undefended channels. Once lodged in the channels, the circulation of qi and Blood is disrupted and the tissues are deprived of nourishment.

- The fundamental difference between this pattern and the patterns that follow is that here the predisposing factors for the development of internal Wind may be absent - it can occur in young and relatively healthy individuals.

Clinical features

- numbness or motor dysfunction of the extremities
- sudden facial paralysis
- dysphasia
- maybe fever and chills
- arthralgia
- no disturbance of consciousness
- T thin white coat
- P floating and wiry or wiry and thready

Treatment principle

Expel Wind (and Heat or Cold)
Nourish and invigorate qi and Blood and open the channels

Prescription

**DA QIN JIAO TANG 大秦艽汤**
(*Major Gentianae Qinjiao Decoction*)

This formula (and the next) are commonly used for acute facial paralysis, hemiplegia and Bell's Palsy where external Wind is the culprit. (The diaphoretic approach suggested here is not recommended, and in fact may be deleterious when the cause is internal Wind). This formula is suitable for the early and middle stages of channel stroke, and for cases with Heat.

- qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽 .......................... 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......................... 9g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .......................... 9g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .......................... 6g
- du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescens) 独活 .......................... 6g
- qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygi) 羌活 .......................... 6g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 .......................... 9g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩  ..................... 9g
- shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 .......................... 12g
- bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 .......................... 9g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 ..................... 9g
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地  ..................... 12g
- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae ConQUITae) 熟地  .......... 12g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cosos) 茯苓 .......................... 12g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Xue)

**XIAO XU MING TANG 小续命汤**
(*Minor Prolong Life Decoction*)

This formula is selected when there are signs of Cold, and like the previous one, clear indications of an external Wind attack.

- ma huang* (Herba Ephedrae) 麻黄 .......................... 3-6g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .......................... 3-6g
- guang fang ji* (Radix Aristolochiiae Fangchi) 广防已  .......... 6-12g
- xing ren* (Semen Prunii Armeniacae) 仙灵  ..................... 9-12g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风  .......... 9-12g
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......................... 3-6g
- zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 知附子  .......... 3-9g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .......................... 3-6g
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .......................... 6-12g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩  ............. 4.5-9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  ..................... 3-6g

Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zi is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xian ji). (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

**QIAN ZHENG SAN 前正散**
(*Lead to Symmetry Powder*) modified

This formula is used when facial paralysis is the main feature and there are few (if any) other signs of external Wind.
24.2 LIVER AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY WITH RISING LIVER YANG AND WIND

Pathophysiology

- Wind stroke due to Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with rising Liver yang has two aspects to it, the prodrome and the catastrophe. The first is the background yin deficiency, which is a chronic disorder and the pre-condition for the sudden surge of yang. At a critical point of deficiency, Liver yang suddenly slips its mooring and surges towards the head. At a high level of intensity and mobility, Liver yang is redefined as Wind, which in the prodrome stage may cause vertigo, monocular blindness, double vision, confusion or ataxia. Swiftly applied treatment may subdue the Wind and avert the catastrophe. If the Wind is not constrained, however, it can wreak havoc in the channels causing loss of motor control and paralysis, or even loss of consciousness (see organ stroke p.660).

Clinical features

- Dizziness, vertigo
- Headache, often temporal or vertical
- Tinnitus
- Pressure behind the eyes, blurring vision, sudden loss of vision in one eye
- Facial flushing
- Irritability and restlessness
- Insomnia or restless, dream disturbed sleep
- Lower back ache
- Progressive unilateral motor dysfunction, weakness, paralysis or numbness of the extremities, facial paralysis, dysphasia, which may develop over a period of a few hours to a few days
- Hypertension

T red with little or no coat
P thready, wavy and rapid

Treatment principle

Sedate Liver yang and extinguish Wind
Nourish yin to anchor yang

Prescription

ZHENGAN XI FENG TANG (镇肝熄风汤)  
(Sedate the Liver and Extinguish Wind Decoction)

This is an excellent formula for TIA’s and the immediate sequelae of a CVA due to yin deficiency with yang rising, as well as for prevention of Wind stroke in hypertensive patients.
Liver and Kidney yin deficiency and Phlegm Heat type stroke.

**huai niu xi** (Radix Achyrocline Serafetinae) 怀牛膝 30g
**dai zhe shi** (Haematitum) 代赭石 30g
**long gu** (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15g
**mu li** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g
**gui ban** (Pistacia Testudinaria) 龜板 15g
**bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 15g
**xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae) 元参 15g
**tian dong** (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchinensis) 天冬 15g
**chuan lien zi** (Fructus Melineae Toosendan) 川棗子 6g
**mai ya** (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinatus) 麦芽 6g
**yin chen** (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈 6g
**gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6g

Method: Decoction. The mineral and shell ingredients are decocted for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xian jian 先煎). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nai Ke Xue)

**Modifications**
- With copious Phlegm, delete gui ban and add dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 竹沥 6g.
- With severe irritability, add huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 12g and shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 18g.
- With severe headache, add shi jue ming* (Concha Haliotidis) 石决明 12g and xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris) 夏枯草 12g.
- If the tongue coat is greasy and yellow and the patient is constipated, add quan gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 全栝楼 20g, zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 9g and sheng da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rheum) 生大黃 6-9g.
- For slurred speech, add shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g, tian nan xing* (Rhizoma Arisaematis) 天南星 6g and jiang can* (Bombyx Batryticatus) 漏蛸 9g.
- For facial paralysis, add bai fu zi* (Rhizoma Typhonii Gigantei) 白附子 6g, jiang can* (Bombyx Batryticatus) 漏蛸 9g and quan xie* (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 3g.
- With numbness or paralysis of the limbs, add di bie chong* (Eupolyphaga seu OPisthoplatia) 地鳖虫 6g, quan xie* (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 3g and wu gong* (Scolopendra Subspinipes) 蜈蚣 3g.
- If the tongue has a thick greasy coat, reduce the dose of some of the yin nourishing herbs - xuan shen, tian dong, gui ban and bai shao.

**Patent medicines**
All following formulae are suitable for prevention and treatment of Liver and Kidney yin deficiency and Phlegm Heat type stroke.

**Yang Yin Jiang Yu Wan** 养阴降压丸 (Yang Yin Jiang Yu Wan)
**Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan** 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)
**Xiao Shuan Zai Zao Wan** 小旋再造丸 (Xiao Shuan Zai Zao Wan)

**Acupuncture**
There are two aspects to treatment—before a stroke (as preventative) and treatment of the sequela. Treatment of the sequela are dealt with individually at the end of this chapter. Preventative treatment is applied to those individuals with the various warning signs of impending catastrophe—hypertension, obesity, dizziness, plethora, headaches, TIA’s etc.

Appropriate points include Liv.3 (tai chong), LI.4 (he gu), LI.11 (gu chi), St.40 (feng long), GB.34 (yang ling quan), St.36 (sou yan li), Liv.2 (xing jian), GB.20 (feng chi), an mian (N-HN-54), PC.6 (nei guan), SJ.5 (mai guan), GB.39 (xuan zhong), GB.41 (zuo in qi), GB.31 (feng shi), GB.21 (jian jing), yin tang (M-HN-3) depending on the symptom picture. Take care not to overstimulate points in patients with very high blood pressure.

**Ear points:** ear apex, lowering blood pressure groove (4 to reduce blood pressure)

**Caution** In China acupuncture is generally not given (other than for resuscitation, see Organ syndromes) to acute stroke victims, as a bleeding aneurysm may continue to bleed with acupuncture stimulation. For the first two weeks following a stroke the treatment is with herbs until the patient is stable, then acupuncture is phased in.

**Clinical notes**
- This pattern may correspond to conditions such as hypertension, transient ischaemic attacks (TIA’s) and cerebro-vascular accident.
- Strokes of this type are much easier to prevent than to treat, so identification of the warning signs is the key to a successful outcome.
- Lifestyle changes are very important as many patients with this pattern will be overworking, stressed and have poor dietary habits. Stress management and reduction of dairy products, fats and oils and other Phlegm generating or Heat inducing substances is important.
24.3 PHLEGM HEAT WITH WIND PHLEGM

Pathophysiology
- Wind stroke due to Phlegm Heat with Wind has two aspects to it, like the previous Liver and Kidney deficiency pattern—the prodrome and the catastrophe. There may in fact be little to distinguish this from the previous pattern because Phlegm frequently combines with Liver yang in the genesis of Wind stroke. However, when Phlegm Heat is involved, treatment must quickly eliminate the accumulated Heat and Phlegm through the bowel, thereby reducing pressure in the head and increasing the prospects for survival.

Clinical features
- sudden heaviness, numbness or paralysis of the extremities on one side of the body, facial paralysis or dysphasia
- disordered consciousness
- dry stools or constipation
- may be dizziness, copious sputum and drooling
- T stiff, quivering or deviated to one side, with a greasy yellow coat
- P wiry and slippery

Treatment principle
Expel Phlegm and Heat through the bowels.

Prescription
XING WEI CHENG QI TANG 星萎承气汤

(Fading Star Order the Qi Decoction)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaeae cum Felle Bovis)</td>
<td>6-10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quan gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis)</td>
<td>30-40g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng da huang (Radix Rhizoma Rhei)</td>
<td>10-15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mang xiao (Mirabilitum)</td>
<td>10-15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Due to the large doses, the bowels should open vigorously within 10-15 minutes after which the symptoms should subside. (Source: Shu Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- After the bowels have vigorously opened, the dose of da huang and mang xiao should be reduced or deleted and the principle altered to clearing Phlegm Heat, invigorating the Blood and opening the channels with herbs like dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaeae cum Felle Bovis), gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) and shen (Radix Salviae).

Patent medicines
- If dizziness is severe, add gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 12g, ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Montifoli) 菊花 12g and zhen zhu mu (Concha Margaritiferae) 珍珠母 15g.

see 24.2 Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with yang rising, p.657

Acupuncture
see 24.2 Liver and Kidney yin deficiency with yang rising, p.657

Clinical notes
- This pattern may correspond to conditions such as acute cerebro-vascular accident, cerebral haemorrhage and cerebral thrombosis.
- The principle of swiftly eliminating Phlegm and Heat through the 'big exit' is popular in China as an emergency treatment for a variety of serious conditions with consciousness disturbances. This approach is most applicable when a full blown CVA has occurred, and should only be used for a short period of time to drastically reduce pressure in the head, until symptoms settle down (in contrast to the previous formula [Zhen Gan Xi Feng Tang], which is best used as a stroke preventative in hypertensive patients, and which can be used for lengthy periods of time).

ORGAN STROKE SYNDROMES more severe

These syndromes are characterised by partial or total loss of consciousness, preceded by, and in addition to, any of the symptoms listed for channel stroke. All are critical conditions and a high percentage of patients die or are left with serious debility. The main principle of treatment at this stage is the swift revival of the patient, as the sooner consciousness returns the less severe the aftermath.

24.4 CLOSED SYNDROMES

Closed syndrome is loss of consciousness characterised by pathogenic excess. The excess nature of this condition is reflected in the manifestations—the body being locked up tight and in spasm. The excess may be hot or cold. Differentiation of the closed and flaccid types is especially important because the therapeutic approaches are opposite. Closed (and Flaccid) syndromes are medical emergencies and management should include hospitalisation.

24.4.1 Yang Closed syndrome

Pathophysiology

• This syndrome is yang and hot, usually the progression of Phlegm Heat with Wind Phlegm channel stroke into full unconsciousness.

Clinical features

• loss of consciousness, coma
• clenched jaw and fists
• stiffness or spasm in the limbs
• no loss of bowel or bladder control
• laboured breathing
• red complexion
• greasy yellow coat
• P wiry, slippery and rapid

Treatment principle

Restore consciousness
Clear Liver Heat and extinguish Wind

Prescription

ZHI BAO DAN 至宝丹
(Greatest Treasure Special Pill)

an xi xiang (Benzoinum) 安息香 ........................................ 45g
xi jiao* (Cornu Rhinoceri) 鼻角 ........................................ 30g
da이 mao* (Carapax Eretmochelydis Imbricatae) 斧瑁 ......................... 30g

hu po (Succinum) 琥珀 ................................................. 30g
zhu sha* (Cinnabaris) 朱砂 ............................................ 30g
xiong huang (Realgar) 雄黄 ........................................... 30g
niu huang* (Calcus Bovis) 牛黄 ......................................... 15g
bing pian (Borneol) 冰片 ............................................... 3g
she xiang* (Secretio Moschus) 蔷香 ..................................... 3g

Method: Available in prepared form and a standard part of any TCM first aid kit, this pill is forced into the mouth or nose or given via a nasogastric tube until consciousness is restored. (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xue)

Follow up treatment

Once the patient is conscious, there are two general approaches. If Phlegm Heat is obvious, swift elimination through the bowel (see Phlegm Heat with Wind Phlegm, p.658) may be applied until some stability is restored. In the event of fluid depletion and Liver Heat (fever, deep red dry tongue with prickles, persistent spasm of the extremities), the alternative is to cool the Liver and extinguish Wind with LING JIAO GOU TENG TANG (Antelope Horn and Uncaria Decoction 羚角钩藤汤):

• ling yang jiao fen* (powdered Cornu Antelopis) 羚羊角粉 ... 3g
gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 ...................... 15g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .................. 15g
zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹 ........................ 15g
sang ye (Folium Morii Albae) 桑叶 .......................... 12g
chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 .......... 9g
ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 ..................... 9g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Albae) 白芍 ...................... 9g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .................................. 9g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ..................... 3g

Method: Decoction. Ling yang jiao powder is added to the strained decoction (3 grams in each dose, chong fu 冲服), gou teng is added towards the end of cooking (hou xi 后下). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xue)

Patent medicines

Zhi Bao Dan 至宝丹 (Zhi Bao Dan)
- this is the preferred medicine. In the event that it is unavailable, one of the following may be substituted, used only until consciousness is restored.
An Gong Niu Huang Wan 安宫牛黄丸 (An Gong Niu Huang Wan)
Zi Xue Dan 紫雪丹 (Zushehuang Tan)
Acupuncture
Du.26 (ren zhong -), shi xuan 1 (M-UE-1), Liv.3 (tai chong -),
St.40 (ging long -), PC.8 (zha gong -), Kid.1 (yong quan -). Treat frequently
until consciousness is restored.

24.4.2 Yin Closed syndrome
Pathophysiology
• The yin closed syndrome type Wind stroke is similar to the previous (yin
closed syndrome) in that it is characterised by excess (spasm and tension;
but differs by having signs of cold. It follows the same aetiological features
but may be the presentation of closed syndrome in a constitutionally yin
deficient and cold individual.

Clinical features
• loss of consciousness, coma
• clenched jaw and fists
• stiffness or spasm in the limbs
• no loss of bowel or bladder control
• pale or ashen complexion
• cold extremities
• copious sputum
T greasy white coat
P deep, slippery and moderate

Treatment principle
Restore consciousness, warm and aromatically open the orifices
Eliminate Phlegm and extinguish Wind

Prescription
SU HE XIANG WAN 苏合香丸
(Liquid Styrax Pill)

| su he xiang (Styrax Liquidus) 苏合香 | 30g |
| an xi xiang (Benzoinum) 安息香 | 60g |
| chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae) 沉香 | 60g |
| she xiang* (Secretio Moschus) 羊角 | 60g |
| ding xiang (Flos Caryophylli) 丁香 | 60g |
| qing mu xiang* (Radix Aristolochiae) 青木香 | 60g |
| bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 | 60g |
| xi jiao* (Cornu Rhinoceri) 角 | 60g |
| xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundi) 香附 | 60g |
| tan xiang (Lignum Santali Albi) 檀香 | 60g |
| zh u sha* (Cinnabaris) 朱砂 | 60g |

Follow up treatment
• Once the patient is conscious DI TAN TANG (Stour Phlegm Decoction
(涤痰汤) modified may be used to powerfully clear away Phlegm, open
the orifices and tonify qi.
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 | 9g |
fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 | 9g |
zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeenii) 竹茹 | 9g |
dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaeae cum Felle Bovis) 胆南星 | 6g |
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 | 6g |
zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 柿实 | 6g |
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 | 6g |
dang sh en (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 当参 | 12g |
di long* (Lumbricus) 地龙 | 9g |
gou t ceng (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 | 9g |
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 | 3g |
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Oficinalis) 生姜 | 3pce |
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 | 4pce |

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Yang Ji Xue)

Patent medicines
Su He Xiang Wan 苏合香丸 (Liquid Styrax Pill)

Acupuncture
Although the herbal approach differs between these two patterns, the same
acupuncture can be applied, with the addition of moxa in this pattern.
Treat frequently until consciousness is restored.
Du.26 (ren zhong -), shi xuan 1 (M-UE-1), Liv.3 (tai chong -),
St.40 (ging long -), PC.8 (zha gong -), Kid.1 (yong quan -)

Clinical notes
• Similar to shock, stroke, post cerebro-vascular accident or coma.
• Both these patterns are obvious medical emergencies and any TCM
emergency treatment must be combined with appropriate paramedic
attention and hospitalisation.
Table 24.1 Summary of acute phases of Wind stroke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Treatment principle</th>
<th>Guiding Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel stroke, with no loss of consciousness</td>
<td>sudden facial paralysis, numbness or motor dysfunction of the extremities, fever &amp; chills, arthralgia, floating pulse</td>
<td>Expel Wind &amp; open the channels</td>
<td>DA QIN JIAO TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver yin deficiency with yang rising &amp; Wind</td>
<td>dizziness, headache, tinnitus, blurring vision, facial flushing, progressive motor dysfunction &amp; paralysis, red tongue</td>
<td>Sedate Liver yang, extinguish Wind, nourish yin</td>
<td>ZHEN GAN XI FENG TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlegm Heat with Wind Phlegm</td>
<td>sudden heaviness, numbness or paralysis on one side of the body, constipation, copious sputum, drooling, thick yellow tongue coat</td>
<td>Eliminate Phlegm Heat through the bowel</td>
<td>XING WEI CHENG QI TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organ stroke, with loss of consciousness</td>
<td>loss of consciousness, clenched fist &amp; jaw, no incontinence, red face, yellow tongue coat</td>
<td>Restore consciousness, clear Heat &amp; Wind</td>
<td>ZHI BAO DAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed syndrome</td>
<td>loss of consciousness, clenched fist &amp; jaw, no incontinence, pale or ashen face, cold extremities</td>
<td>Restore consciousness, warm &amp; aromatically open orifices</td>
<td>SU HE XIANG WAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaccid syndrome</td>
<td>loss of consciousness, icy extremities, incontinence of urine &amp; stools, copious sweating, imperceptible pulse</td>
<td>Rescue yang from collapse</td>
<td>SHEN FU TANG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.5 FLACCID COLLAPSE SYNDROME

Pathophysiology
- This type of unconsciousness is due to sudden collapse of yang. This occurs when yin has been consumed to such an extent that physiological equilibrium is completely disrupted. Yin is unable to preserve and harness yang, which dissipates to the point of separation of yin and yang (that is, death). In contrast to the closed syndrome, where the yang qi is locked up tight in the body and needs to be vented, in this condition the yang is swiftly dissipating and has to be vigorously replaced.

Clinical features
- loss of consciousness, coma
- cold limbs
- incontinence of urine and stools
- pale or ashen complexion
- copious sweating
- flaccid extremities
- flaccid and pale
- P minute or imperceptible

Treatment principle
Rescue and resuscitate yang

Prescription
SHEN FU TANG (Ginseng and Prepared Aconite Decoction)
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ........................................ 10-15g
- zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 知附子 ........................................ 10-15g

Method: Decoction. The decocted herbs may be administered via a nasogastric tube, enema, intramuscular injection or intravenous drip. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Niu Ke Xue)

 Modifications
- With severe sweating, add two or three of the following herbs: huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 20g, long gu (Os Draconis) 龙骨 20g, mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 20g, wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 9g or shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 12g.

Acupuncture
1. Strong moxa on Ren.8 (shen que), usually on salt. Place a piece of thin
cloth over the navel and fill it with salt. Burn large cones of moxa on the salt. The cloth enables quick removal of the salt and prevents excessive burning. In addition, strong reinforcing needling on Ren.4 (yuan yuan +) and St.36 (zun san li +)

2. A modern method for shock is strong needling on Du.25 (wu lian), Kid.1 (yong quan -) and PC.6 (nei yuan -). Du.25 (wu lian) is needled to 0.5-1 cun and manipulated continuously for 30 minutes. If these points are insufficient to elevate blood pressure add Du.26 (ren zhong -), LI.4 (he gu +) and St.36 (zun san li).

Clinical notes
- cerebro-vascular accident, shock, hypovolemic shock, myocardial infarction
- The patient should be covered and have their legs elevated. This is a critical situation and paramedic attention should be sought immediately.

Table 24.2 Summary of Wind stroke sequelae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequele</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding prescription</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hemiplegia</td>
<td>Qi deficiency with Blood stagnation</td>
<td>motor impairment, paralysis, numbness or loss of sensation on one side of the body</td>
<td>BU YANG HUAN WU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver yang rising with Blood stagnation</td>
<td>hypertension, dizziness, headache, red face &amp; tongue, wiry slippery rapid pulse</td>
<td>ZHEN GAN XI FENG TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysphasia</td>
<td>Liver &amp; Kidney yin &amp; yang deficiency</td>
<td>stiffness or deviation of the tongue, slurred speech</td>
<td>DI HUANG YIN ZI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind Phlegm</td>
<td>weakness of the extremities, thready pulse, pale or red tongue</td>
<td>JIE YU DAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial paralysis</td>
<td>one sided facial paralysis, facial muscle spasms or tics</td>
<td>QIAN ZHENG SAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SEQUELAE OF WIND STROKE

24.6 HEMIPLEGIA

- Hemiplegia is paralysis or motor dysfunction affecting one side of the body. The primary aetiological factor is Blood stagnation in the channels subsequent to their attack by Wind. Depending on the initial conditions and the duration of the hemiplegia, two presentations occur, qi deficiency with Blood stagnation (the most common) and Liver yang rising with Blood stagnation.

24.6.1 Qi deficiency with Blood stagnation

This presentation is the most common pattern following a stroke.

Clinical features
- motor impairment, paralysis, numbness or complete loss of sensation on one side of the body
- deviation of the eyes and mouth
- frequent urination or incontinence of urine
- blood pressure is low, normal, or only slightly elevated
- white coat
- P moderate

Treatment principle
Tonify qi and invigorate Blood
Open the channels

Prescription

**BU YANG HUAN WU TANG 朴阳还五汤** *(Tonify the Yang to Restore Five Tenths Decoction)*

- **huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ……………30-120g
- **dang gui wei** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归尾 …………9g
- **chi shaо** (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 …………………9g
- **di long** (Lumbricus) 地龙 ……………………………9g
- **tao ren** (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 …………………………9g
- **chuan xiong** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 …………6g
- **hong hua** (Flores Carthami Tinctoriae) 红花 ……………..6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yao Xue)

Modifications
- Because **huang qi** may elevate blood pressure in patients with hypertension, some experts recommend the addition of a heavy mineral, like **shi gao** (Gypsum) 石膏 or **dai zhe shi** (Haematitum)
cloth over the navel and fill it with salt. Burn large cones of moxa on the salt. The cloth enables quick removal of the salt and prevents excessive burning. In addition, strong reinforcing needling on Ren.4 (guan yuan +) and St.36 (zu san li +)

2. A modern method for shock is strong needling on Du.25 (yu liao -), Kid.1 (yang guan -) and PC.6 (nei guan -). Du.25 (yu liao) is needled to 0.5-1 cun and manipulated continuously for 30 minutes. If these points are insufficient to elevate blood pressure add Du.26 (ren zhong -), LL4 (he gu -) and St.36 (zu san li).

Clinical notes
- cerebro-vascular accident, shock, hypovolaemic shock, myocardial infarction
- The patient should be covered and have their legs elevated. This is a critical situation and paramedic attention should be sought immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequelea</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Guiding prescription</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hemiplegia</td>
<td>Qi deficiency with Blood stagnation</td>
<td>motor impairment, paralysis, numbness or loss of sensation on one side of the body, normal or low blood pressure, white tongue coat, moderate pulse</td>
<td>BU YANG HUAN WU TANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver yang rising with Blood stagnation</td>
<td>hypertension, dizziness, headache, red face &amp; tongue, wiry slippery rapid pulse</td>
<td>ZHEN GAN XI FENG TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysphasia</td>
<td>Liver &amp; Kidney yin &amp; yang deficiency</td>
<td>stiffness or deviation of the tongue, slurred speech, weakness of the extremities, thready pulse, pale or red tongue</td>
<td>DI HUANG YIN ZI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind Phlegm</td>
<td>greasy white tongue coat, wiry &amp; slippery</td>
<td>JIE YU DAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial paralysis</td>
<td>one sided facial paralysis, facial muscle spasms or tics</td>
<td>QIAN ZHENH SAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 24.2 Summary of Wind stroke sequelae

24.6 HEMIPLEGIA
- Hemiplegia is paralysis or motor dysfunction affecting one side of the body. The primary aetiological factor is Blood stagnation in the channels subsequent to their attack by Wind. Depending on the initial conditions and the duration of the hemiplegia, two presentations occur, qi deficiency with Blood stagnation (the most common) and Liver yang rising with Blood stagnation.

24.6.1 Qi deficiency with Blood stagnation
This presentation is the most common pattern following a stroke.

Clinical features
- motor impairment, paralysis, numbness or complete loss of sensation on one side of the body
- deviation of the eyes and mouth
- frequent urination or incontinence of urine
- blood pressure is low, normal, or only slightly elevated
- T white coat
- P moderate

Treatment principle
Tonify qi and invigorate Blood
Open the channels

Prescription
BU YANG HUAN WU TANG (Tonify the Yang to Restore Five Tenths Decoction)
- huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 30-120g
- dang gui wei (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归尾 9g
- chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 9g
- di long (Lumbricus) 地龙 9g
- tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 9g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g
- hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctori) 红花 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zong Yan Xu)

Modifications
- Because huang qi may elevate blood pressure in patients with hypertension, some experts recommend the addition of a heavy mineral, like shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 or dai zhe shi (Haematitum)
Liver yang rising with Blood stagnation

The second clinical presentation of hemiplegia is less common and occurs in the early days after the stroke when the blood pressure may still be quite high.

Clinical features
- motor impairment, paralysis, numbness or complete loss of sensation on one side of the body
- headache
- dizziness
- tinnitus
- facial flushing
- irritability
- hypertension
- T red with little or no coat, or red and stiff or quivering
- P wiry and slippery or wiry, thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Sedate Liver yang and extinguish Wind
Nourish yin, open the channels

Prescription

**ZHEN GAN XI FENG TANG** 镇肝熄风汤
(Sedate the Liver and Extinguish Wind Decoction) modified

- **huai niu xi** (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 怀牛膝 30g
- **dai zhe sha** (Haematitum) 代赭石 30g
- **long gu** (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15g
- **mu li** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g
- **gui ban** (Plastrum Testudinis) 龟板 15g
- **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Albae) 白芍 15g
- **xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15g
- **tian dong** (Tuber Asparagi Rhizomatis) 天冬 15g
- **ji xue teng** (Radix et Caulis Jixuen) 鸡血藤 15g
- **di long** (Lumbricus) 地龙 9g
- **chuan lian zhi** (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 6g
- **mai ya** (Fructus Hordei Germinatus) 麦芽 6g
- **yin chen** (Herba Artemisiae Yunnanensis) 英陈 6g
- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. The mineral and shell ingredients are decocted for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs. (Source: Shi Yang Zong Yi Nai Xi Wu)
**Clinical notes**

- Combining acupuncture and herbs with physiotherapy, *tai na* or massage gives better results.
- Treatment is best given as soon as the patient is stable. After one month it becomes more difficult to treat, after six months results are often poor, nevertheless, treatment is always worth trying as some patients respond well even after long term disability.

---

**TIAN MA GOU TENG YIN 天麻钩藤饮**

*(Gastrodia and Camphor Formula)*

This is a popular formula for hypertension of a Liver yang rising type. It is similar to the primary formula, except it has less tonifying and anchoring elements and so is suitable for those with less underlying deficiency.

- *tian ma* (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻 .......................... 9g
- *gou teng* (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 .......................... 12g
- *shi jue ming* (Concha Haliotidis) 石决明 .......................... 15g
- *ye jiao teng* (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 ........................ 15g
- *sang ji sheng* (Ramulus Sangshisheng) 桑寄生 .......................... 12g
- *huang qin* (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .......................... 9g
- *shan zhi zi* (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 ........................ 9g
- *yi mu cao* (Herba Leonuri Officinalis) 益母草 .......................... 9g
- *fu shen* (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Parasadicis) 茯神 ........................ 9g
- *du zhong* (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲 .......................... 9g
- *niu xi* (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 .......................... 9g

Method: Decoction. *shi jue ming* should be cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added (*sang jian fang*). *gou teng* is added near the end of cooking (*hao xia fang*). (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xin)

**Patent medicines**

- *Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan* 养阴降压丸 (Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan)
- *Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan* 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)
- *Xiao Shuan Zai Zao Wan* 消栓再造丸 (Xiao Shuan Zai Zao Wan)

**Acupuncture**

The main points are selected from the *yin ming* channels (due to their 'abundance of *qi* and Blood'), *san jiao* and Gall Bladder channels. Gentle electro-stimulation may be used. Three or four points are selected for each treatment. In chronic hemiplegia (of more than a couple of months duration) points from the *yin* channels may be added.

**Upper limb**

- LI15 (jian yu), LI11 (qu chi), LI4 (he gu), SJ5 (wai guan), SJ14 (jian liu), SJ4 (yang chi), SI9 (jian erye)

**Lower limb**

- GB30 (bu ban tia), GB31 (feng shi), GB34 (yang ping guan), GB39 (xuan zhong)
- St36 (zou san b), St41 (jue xi), Bl60 (kun luan), Du3 (yao yang guan)
  - with *qi* deficiency add moxa
  - with Liver yang excess add Liv3 (tai chong)
Dysphasia is the difficulty with talking due to stiffness, paralysis or deviation of the tongue. Depending on the initial conditions, there are two main presentations, Wind Phlegm and *yin* deficiency with *yang* rising.

### 24.7.1 Wind Phlegm

**Clinical features**
- stiffness of the tongue, slurred speech
- numbness of the extremities

T greasy white coat
P wiry and slippery

**Treatment principle**
Extinguish Wind and eliminate Phlegm
Open the orifices

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bai fu zi * (Rhizoma Typhonii Gigantei)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Method:** Decocction. *(Source: Shi Yong Zhi Nei Ke Xu)*

### Modifications
- Both the Heart and Spleen channels have a strong influence on the tongue. If there are signs of Spleen involvement, add cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis) 9g and ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g.
- With signs of Heart involvement, add zhen zhu mu′ (Concha Margaritaeferae) 珍珠母 12g and hu po (Succinum) 瓜珀 3g.

### 24.7.2 Liver and Kidney *yin* and *yang* deficiency

- This pattern represents a chronic stage of stroke sequela, and involves decline of both *yin* and *yang*. It may present with signs of both *yin* or *yang* deficiency (in which case there are usually no obvious thermal disturbances), or with more heat (*yin* deficiency) or cold (*yang* deficiency) symptoms.

**Clinical features**
- slurred speech, stiffness or deviation of the tongue
- weakness, numbness or paralysis of the lower limbs
- weak, sore lower back and knees
- palpitations
- shortness of breath

T pale or red
P thready and weak, or deep, slow and thready

**Treatment principle**
Nourish and tonify Kidney *yin* and *yang*
Open the orifices, transform Phlegm

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Coniquae) 熟地</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou cong tong (Cistanches Deserticola) 肉苁蓉</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaelii Praeparata) 制附子</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂</td>
<td>4g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi hu (Herba Dendrobii) 石斛</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Method:** Grind equal amounts of all herbs into powder and take in 9-gram doses as a draft twice daily. *(Source: Formulas and Strategies)*
Modifications
- For predominance of yin deficiency, with little or no yang deficiency, delete fu zi* and rou gui.
- For predominance of yang deficiency, add xian ling pi (Herba Epimedii) 仙灵脾 and xian mao (Rhizoma Curculiginis Orchloidis) 仙茅.
- For severe dysphasia, add mu hu die (Semen Oroxyl Indici) 木蝴蝶 and jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 杰梗.

Acupuncture
Ht.5 (tong li), Ren.23 (lian quan), shang liang quan (M-HN-21), Kid.6 (zhao hai), Kid.3 (tai xi), Liv.3 (tai chong), Ren.4 (quen yuan), Bl.23 (shen shu), St.36 (zu san li)

Clinical notes
- These patterns are more difficult the longer they are left untreated.

24.8 FACIAL PARALYSIS
Facial paralysis may be the result of external Wind entering the channels, or internal Wind. In both cases treatment of the paralysis is the same. In the cases of internal Wind, lingering constitutional factors (yin deficiency or Phlegm) should also be addressed.

Clinical features
- one sided facial paralysis
- facial muscle spasms or tics

Treatment principle
Dispel Wind, transform Phlegm
Nourish and invigorate Blood, stop spasms

Prescription
QIAN ZHENG SAN 奄正散 (Lead to Symmetry Powder) modified

- jiang can* (Bombyx Batryticatus) 僵蚕 ........................................ 12g
- quan xie* (Buthus Martensi) 朮蝎 ........................................ 10g
- bai fu zi* (Rhizoma Typhonii Gigantei) 白附子 ..................... 6g
- qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 羌活 ..................... 10g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风 ..................... 10g
- hong hua (Fl o s Carthami Tinctori) 红花 ..................... 10g
- di long* (Lumbricus) 地龙 ..................... 10g
- chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ..................... 10g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ..................... 6g

Method: Decoction or powdered. When powdered, the dose is 3-grams 2-3 times daily with hot wine. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shuo Ce). See also 24.1, p.652.

Modifications
- Herbs to nourish and activate Blood are commonly added, like dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g and chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g because ‘to treat Wind, first nourish Blood’ and ‘when Blood moves Wind has no place’.
- With spontaneous sweating, delete qiang huo and fang feng, and add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 18g and gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g.
- With internal Heat, delete qiang huo, and add xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae vulgaris) 夏枯草 15g, huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g and ju hua (Flos Chrysanthemi Morifolii) 菊花 9g.
- With severe tics and spasms, add tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae)
天麻 9g, **gou teng** (Ramus Uncariae cum Uncis) 钩藤 12g, **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 12g and **shi jue ming** (Concha Halioitidis) 石决明 12g.

- If the paralysis has persisted longer than two months delete **fang feng** and **qiang huo** and add **shui zhi** (Hirudo seu Whitmania) 水蛭 3g, **chuan shan jia** (Equinae Manitis) 穿山甲 9g, **bai jie zi** (Semen Semen Sapindi) 白芥子 6g and **tian nan xing** (Rhizoma Arisaematis) 天南星 6g.

**Patent medicines**

Xiao Hua Luo Dan 小活络丹 (Xiao Hua Luo Dan)
- when chronic and cold

Kang Wei Ling 亢痿灵 (Kang Wei Ling)
Bu Yang Huan Wu Wan 补阳还五丸 (Bu Yang Huan Wu Wan)
Hua Tu Zai Zao Wan 华佗再造丸 (Hua Tu Zai Zao Wan)

**Acupuncture**

*Special method*

Threading technique with a 3-inch needle from St.6 (ji sui) to St.4 (di cui) and St.7 (xiao guan), and a 1.5-inch needle from St.2 (si bai) to St.4 (di cui) on the affected side. In addition, LI.4 (bai gu) or LU.7 (zhe que) may be connected to one of the facial points and treated with gentle electro-stimulation.

Other points are added depending on the affected part:
- eye - SJ.23 (si zhu kong)
- nose - LI.20 (yin xiang)
- tongue - Ren.23 (lian quan)
- lips - DU.26 (ren zhang) and Ren.24 (chen ji chang).
- In chronic cases moxa may be added.

**Clinical notes**

- Corresponds to Bell's palsy or the sequelae of stroke.
- If treatment is prompt (with a day or two of Bell's palsy or as soon as the patient has stabilised following a CVA) the results are good. A complete cure is often the effected after a course of acupuncture. Ideally, treatment is applied every day or every other day.

**SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR WIND STROKE**

**Channel stroke**

Emptiness of the channels with Wind invasion - **Da Qin Jiao Tang** 大秦艽汤
- with external Cold - **Xiao Xu Ming Tang** 小续命汤
- facial paralysis - **Qian Zheng San** 钱正散

Liver and Kidney *yin* deficiency with *yang* rising and Wind - **Zhen Gan Xi Feng Tang** 镇肝熄风汤

Phlegm Heat with Wind Phlegm - **Xing Wei Cheng Qi Tang** 星厥承气汤

**Organ syndromes**

Closed syndrome
- *yang* closed syndrome - **Zhi Bao Wan** 至宝丸
- *yin* closed syndrome - **Su He Xiang Wan** 苏合香丸

Flaccid Collapse syndrome - **Shen Fu Tang** 参附汤

**Sequelae of Wind stroke**

Hemiplegia
- *Qi* and Blood deficiency with stagnant Blood - **Bu Yang Huan Wu Tang** 补阳还五汤
- Liver *yang* rising with stagnant Blood - **Zhen Gan Xi Feng Tang** 镇肝熄风汤

Dysphasia
- Wind Phlegm - **Jie Yu Dan** 脉语丹
- Liver and Kidney *yin* and *yang* deficiency - **Di Huang Yin Zi** 地黄饮子

Facial paralysis
- **Qian Zheng San** 钱正散

**Endnote**

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Liver

25. Epilepsy

Seizure type
- Yang seizures
- Yin seizures

Underlying Pattern
- Spleen deficiency with Phlegm
- Liver Fire with Phlegm Heat
- Liver and Kidney yin deficiency
- Blood stagnation
EPILEPSY

Epilepsy is a disorder characterised by massive synchronous discharge of cerebral neurones. Seizures, hallucinations and incontinence occur as motor and sensory neurones discharge. Epilepsy is quite a common disease, affecting approximately 2 per cent of the population. There are two biomedical classifications of epilepsy, generalised and partial, defined by the type of seizure (Box 25.1).

The severity of epileptic seizures is highly variable. Some patients (mostly children) experience only mild 'absences' (petit mal)—brief lapses of awareness or sudden unresponsiveness lasting only a few seconds but sometimes recurring many times in one day. Other patients may be subject to frequent, violent and exhausting convulsive (grand mal, or 'tonic clonic') seizures. In between these two extremes there are varying degrees of partial seizure affecting a single limb, or sensory hallucinations. From a biomedical perspective, in many patients no cause can be found—this is primary or idiopathic epilepsy. There is some indication of a genetic link, as there is a family history in up to 40 per cent of patients with epilepsy. Secondary causes involve a variety of lesions of the brain—the sequelae of severe infections, head injury, tumours, abscesses and cysts, vascular malformations, aneurysms, infection, as well as damage from both prescription or illicit drug and alcohol abuse. Epilepsy that begins in adults is particularly suspect, and appropriate investigation for conditions that may be dealt with surgically is indicated.

In TCM, seizures are classified as yin or yang, depending on frequency, severity, duration and accompanying manifestations. Violent convulsive seizures in a young, hot or robust patient are generally yang seizures; weak, mild partial seizures or absences are yin. The severity of the seizures is related to the relative strength of the zheng qi and the responsible pathogens (usually Wind and Phlegm, and possibly Heat). Seizures may begin infrequently, being mild and of short duration, as the zheng qi is intact and the pathogen held in check. As resistance declines with repeated episodes, or Phlegm accumulation increases, the condition deteriorates. In practice yang seizures can become yin, as underlying deficiency becomes more prominent. Yang seizures can also become yang, for example the yin absences of childhood often develop into grand mal seizures in adulthood.

AETIOLOGY

Wind and Phlegm

Wind and Phlegm are the primary aetiological factors for epilepsy that is not

caused by brain injury or trauma. Indeed, TCM texts note that ‘without Phlegm there is no epilepsy’. Phlegm obstructs qi and pressure mounts behind the blockage. A sudden release of this pent up qi towards the head creates the Wind responsible for the seizure. If the Wind carries the Phlegm up with it, then the sensory orifices will be affected, causing altered perceptions and perhaps unconsciousness. The Phlegm in this disorder is frequently constitutional, or it may be produced by overconsumption of Phlegm.

BOX 25.1 BIOMEDICAL CLASSIFICATION OF SEIZURE TYPES

Partial (or focal) seizures

In this type of seizure the locus of neuronal activity is limited to one part of the brain. Partial seizures can present with a variety of motor, sensory or visual symptoms and alteration of mood.

- Motor symptoms depend on the part of the brain affected and may begin in one part of the body and spread gradually to other parts. This is commonly known as Jacksonian epilepsy. Attacks vary in duration from seconds to hours.
- Sensory symptoms include tingling or electric sensations in one or more parts of the body.
- Visual symptoms include hallucinations of various types, from colours to fully detailed faces or scenes. There may also be auditory hallucinations, and altered smell and taste.
- Mood changes occur, and the patient may be unresponsive to stimuli.

Generalised seizures

1. Grand Mal (or tonic clonic): this type of seizure involves large areas of both hemispheres of the brain, loss of consciousness and tonic-clonic seizures. Tonic-clonic seizures have several phases (although not all phases occur in every seizure):
   - the prodrome, with irritability and uneasiness hours or days prior to the seizure.
   - the aura, with visual or auditory hallucinations, jerking of a limb or déjà vu for seconds or minutes before the seizure.
   - the tonic phase with massive discharge of motor neurones causing tonic contraction of muscles, during which the arms are flexed and adducted and the legs extended. Spasm of the diaphragm and respiratory muscles causes a cry as air is expelled (the origin of the ancient name 'goat Wind') yáng xiān fēng 狐病风). The patient loses consciousness. This phase lasts for about 30 seconds.
   - the clonic phase, with spasmodic jerking of the limbs and incontinence lasting up to five minutes.
   - the recovery phase where the patient is deeply unconscious and flaccid. Lasts from minutes to hours.

2. Petit Mal (Absences): seen mostly in children, this form of epilepsy involves sudden lapse of consciousness—the child stops activity and stares, blinks or rolls up the eyes, drops something or is completely unresponsive. Each episode may only last a few seconds but may reoccur many times in one day.
producing foods, or foods that weaken the Spleen, allowing the generation of Damp. Phlegm can also accumulate as a result of qi stagnation, causing poor fluid metabolism.

While Phlegm and Wind are the primary aetiological features, Heat or deficiency may complicate the picture in some acute and chronic patterns. As patients age, the excess (Wind and Phlegm) begins to be complicated by deficiency or Heat and other patterns emerge. These patterns will always have a component of Phlegm, even those where deficiency is primary.

Liver Fire
Liver Fire may occur alongside Wind Phlegm, creating a more complicated pattern. The Fire has its basis in emotions like frustration, anger, resentment and prolonged stress. These emotional states disrupt the circulation of Liver qi, which over time can give rise to stagnant Heat. At a certain intensity, this Heat becomes Fire. The presence of constitutional Phlegm will also contribute to stagnation of qi and aid the development of Fire. Alternatively, if Liver Fire is primary, it can give rise to Phlegm by heating and congealing fluids and stirring up internal Wind. This type of epilepsy often has a strong emotional component, or is triggered by emotional upset.

Liver and Kidney yin (jing) deficiency
The prolonged presence of Phlegm and Heat eventually consumes yin and weakens the Liver and Kidneys. Liver and Kidney deficiency is a common complication of other chronic forms of epilepsy, and is frequently found in older or weaker patients.

There is also a familial component in many cases of epilepsy, and therefore some weakness of jing. This inherited tendency may involve elements of both jing deficiency and Phlegm excess, as both may be inherited. When weakness of jing is involved, it appears mainly as a Liver and Kidney jing deficiency.

Spleen deficiency with Phlegm
A Spleen deficiency pattern of epilepsy may be constitutional, the result of poor dietary habits, such as excessive consumption of cold, raw foods, or the result of prolonged illness and overexertion. In addition, the anti-convulsant medications used to treat epilepsy are usually cold in nature and prolonged use will often damage the Spleen and aggravate Phlegm accumulation. This pattern sometimes occurs in children following a febrile illness treated with antibiotics or a severe episode of vomiting or diarrhoea (see Convolusions p.716).

As the Spleen is the source of the qi and Blood of the body, weakness


BOX 25.2 MANAGEMENT DURING A SEIZURE
- Move the patient away from danger and possible injury while convulsing.
- After the convulsions cease, turn the patient on the side in the coma position and ensure the airway is clear.
- Paramedic aid should be summoned if the seizure continues longer than five minutes.

will inevitably lead to a decrease in production of qi and Blood. Blood deficiency can give rise to a mild form of Wind by failing to anchor yang qi securely. Qi (yang) deficiency may also contribute to the development of a type of Wind, one generated by the movement of qi to fill the vacuum formed by chronic deficiency.

Trauma
Birth trauma (such as forceps delivery or anoxia), head injury, cerebral infection, infarction or haemorrhage can trigger epilepsy. Trauma induced epilepsy can also result from any severe fright or shock the mother may have experienced during pregnancy. Trauma can damage jing, cause Blood stagnation, or both. This is the one type of epilepsy that does not necessarily involve Phlegm.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS
- Wind stroke (zhong jing): characterised by sudden or evolving facial paralysis, motor dysfunction, and in some cases unconsciousness. Following the episode, the patient may be left with residual disability. Wind stroke includes disorders like cerebro-vascular accident and Bell's palsy.
- Jue syndrome (syncpe): Jue syndrome is characterised by sudden loss of consciousness with cold extremities, then a gradual regaining of consciousness, with no residual paralysis, speech difficulties or sequelae. The sorts of disorders that are categorised as jue syndrome include hypoglycaemic coma, hysterical syncope and haemorrhagic or allergic shock.

TREATMENT
Little can or need be done for a person during a major seizure other than the simple measures listed above in Box 25.2.

There are several factors that are known to trigger seizures in some patients, and these should be avoided as much as possible. They include lack of sleep, emotional stress, physical and mental exhaustion, drug or alcohol use, fever and flickering lights, such as television, strobe lighting and fluorescent tubes.
25.1 **YANG SEIZURES**

**Pathophysiology**
- This pattern describes the classical grand mal seizure. The formula recommended is a strong treatment and is only suitable for periods where Phlegm has become predominant and has to be vigorously cleared. Most frequently this is a mixed deficiency and excess condition. There will often be signs of Heat in this pattern, and it may be the combination of Heat and Phlegm, both of which can cause Wind, that gives rise to the full blown tonic-clonic seizure.

**Clinical features**
- Hours or days before an attack begins there is often a prodrome, with irritability, mood alteration and a sense of unease.
- An ‘aura’ may occur just before an attack, with hallucinations, *déjà vu*, or jerking of a limb, followed by sudden collapse with tonic contraction of all the muscles of the body. The arms are flexed and adducted, legs extended and spasm of the diaphragm causes an animal like cry as the air is forced from the lungs. This phase generally lasts 10-30 seconds.
- The next (clonic) phase is characterised by spasmodic contractions of the muscles with jerking movements of the face, body and limbs. There may be incontinence of urine (often) or stools (rarely). This phase generally lasts 1-5 minutes.
- After the seizures have ceased, the patient is usually deeply unconscious. Following arousal there is drowsiness, headache, myalgia and weakness.
- not all phases occur in each episode

**Treatment principle**
- Clear and transform Phlegm
- Extinguish Wind and stop seizures

**Prescription**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCM Name</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadicis) 伏神</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 当南星</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Clinical notes**

- According to Chinese reports this pattern responds reasonably well to prolonged and correct TCM treatment.
- These formulae are used during periods of frequent or difficult to control seizures and it is recommended that they are gradually withdrawn one year after beginning therapy as the symptoms improve. Because of the harsh nature of these formulae, it may be appropriate to reduce the dose incrementally after there have been no seizures for one or two months (depending on how frequent the seizures were initially).
- The prescriptions described here must be used cautiously and monitored closely for possible side effects.

---

### Modifications

* With obvious Heat, add *shan zhi zi* (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山桅子 15g and *long dan cao* (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 12g.

---

### DIAN XIAN SAN 痫痫散
(Epilepsy Powder)

This is a strong formula with the same action as the primary formula, but without any tonifying herbs. *Ba dou shuang* is toxic and must be used with extra care. It is best reserved for severe and resistant cases.

- *yu jin* (Tuber Curcumae) 鬱金 90g
- *jiu xiang fu* (wine fried Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundii) 酒香附 30g
- *wu gong* (Scopolandra Subspinipes) 威松 12g
- *quan xie* (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 12g
- *ba dou shuang* (defatted Semen Croton Tiglii) 巴豆霜 4g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 3-gram pills with water or honey. The adult dose is one pill daily, half dose (1.5g) for children. In serious cases the dose may be increased to 3 pills daily. (Source: *Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xue*)

---

### Patent medicines

*Hu Po Bao Long Wan* 琥珀抱龙丸 (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills)

### Acupuncture

Du.12 (*shen zhu* -), GB.13 (*ben shen* -), Ren.14 (*jiu wei* -), St.40 (*feng long* -),

Liv.3 (*tai chong* -), Du.20 (*bai hui*)

- If the fits occur at night, add Kid.6 (*zhao bai*)
- If the fits occur during the day, add Bl.62 (*shen men*)
25.2 YIN SEIZURES

Pathophysiology
• This pattern describes partial or petit mal seizures, and chronic seizures in a weak or deficient patient. In children this pattern may appear as chronic convulsions following a cerebral or severe infection. In adults it follows frequent and long term yang seizures, which have significantly depleted Spleen and Kidney yang. It can present in a variety of ways, with or without loss of consciousness.

Clinical features
• during seizures the face is dark or sallow, with icy cold extremities, eyes half open, loss of consciousness with initial rigidity then quivering or twitching of the body or a limb, drooling, no cry, or weak cry
• May also present as an ‘absence’—sudden blank, expressionless stare, upwards rolling of the eyes, unresponsiveness to sound. This pattern usually only lasts a few seconds but may occur many times in one day.
  T pale with a thick greasy white coat
  P deep and thready or deep and slow

Treatment principle
Warm yang and eliminate Phlegm
Soothe qi and stop seizures

Prescription
DING XIAN WAN 定痫丸 (see yang seizures p.685)
(Arrest Seizures Pill)

This formula is suitable for both jin and yang seizures, as the prime pathogen in both cases is Phlegm, which must be cleared before any other treatment is applied. Suitable modifications should be made according to individual presentations, bearing in mind that there are significant elements of deficiency in jin seizures. Combining this formula with one of the representative deficiency formulae may be appropriate. As the formula contains some harsh ingredients, patients must be monitored closely during therapy.

Modifications
• With Liver Blood deficiency, add dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 15g and bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 15g.
• With Spleen deficiency, add bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 30g and dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 30g.

Patent medicines
Hu Po Bao Long Wan 璃珀抱龙丸 (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Du.12 (shen zhu -), GB.13 (ben shen -), Ren.14 (jiu wei -), St.40 (fei long -), Liv.3 (tai chong -), Du.20 (bai bai)
• If the fits occur at night, add Kid.6 (zhao bai)
• If the fits occur during the day, add Bl.62 (shen mai)

Clinical notes
• Yin seizures correspond to conditions such as petit mal seizures, partial seizures and complex partial seizures.
25.3 SPLEEN DEFICIENCY WITH PHLEGM

Pathophysiology

• Spleen deficiency with Phlegm type epilepsy is a chronic condition and reflects a particular constitutional state in a medicated patient or one who's epilepsy is largely in remission. The patient will usually not be having seizures, or only very infrequent yin type seizures.

Clinical features

• long history of seizures or medication for epilepsy
• lethargy and fatigue, emaciation
• poor appetite, nausea or vomiting
• loose stools or diarrhea
• pale or sallow complexion
• fullness and stuffiness in the chest and abdomen
• Pale with a greasy white coat (can be thin coat in wetty)
• P soft and slippery or thready, wiry and slippery

Treatment principle

Strengthen the Spleen and transform Phlegm

Prescription

LIU JUN ZI TANG 六君子汤 (Six Major Herbs Combination) modified

This formula is selected when Spleen deficiency and Phlegm are prominent.

- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ................. 10g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephala) 白术 .................. 12g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ..................... 12g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 .................. 10g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 10g
- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ............... 10g
- yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 ............... 10g
- dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 胆南星 ......... 10g
- jiang can* (Bombex Batryticatus) 僵蚕 .................. 10g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 .................. 10g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 .......... 10g

Method: Decoction. May also be prepared as a powder or pills. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lu Chung Shou Ching)

AN SHEN DING ZHI WAN 安神定志丸
(Calm the Shen, Settle the Emotions Pill)

This formula is selected when there are significant mental emotional aspects to the pattern, such as anxiety neurosis, fearfulness and inability to concentrate.

- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 .................... 15g
- yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 .................. 15g
- long chi* (Dens Dracunculus) 専齿 ......................... 15g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 ..................... 15g
- fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadici) 茯神 ........... 15g
- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 独参 .................. 30g
- zhu sha* (Cinnabar) 朱砂 .................. 5g

Method: Grind the herbs (except zhu sha) to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills; water or honey. The Zhu sha is used to coat the pills. The adult dose is 2 pills daily. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xu)

Modifications

• In severe cases, add quan xie fen* (powdered Burhus Martensis) 全蝎粉 2g and wu gong fen* (powdered Scaphodactyla Subspinipes) 蜈蚣粉 2g to the strained decoction (zhong ju 冲服).
• With nausea or vomiting, add zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taenias) 竹茹 12g and xuan fu hua (Flos Inulae) 细辛花 15g.
• With loose stools, add yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 萹仁 15g and bian dou (Semen Dolichos Lablab) 红豆 15g.
• If there is a history of trauma (with Spleen deficiency predominant), add Blood moving herbs, dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 18g, hong hua (Flos Carcharid Stigmae) 红花 9g, tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 12g and chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 9g.

Patent medicines

Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)

Acupuncture

Ht.5 (long li +), St.40 (feng long + △), Bl.23 (shen shu + △), Du.20 (bai luo △), si shen cong (M-HN-1), GB.34 (yang ling quan), Sp.6 (san yin jiao + △), Du.8 (jin suo + △), St.36 (yu san li + △), Ren.12 (zhong wan + △), Du.26 (ren zhang)

Clinical notes

• This pattern corresponds to chronic epilepsy.
• In some cases, this pattern may follow a severe febrile disease that has drained Spleen qi or yang (or was treated with powerful antibiotics that damaged yang). The anti-convulsant drugs that may be given to treat the resulting seizures are generally cold in nature and may further exacerbate the deficiency. See also Convulsions, p. 716.
• After several months of treatment as Spleen yang strengthens and the signs and symptoms of Spleen deficiency improve, epilepsy medication may be cautiously withdrawn. Treatment should continue for another 12 months or so to consolidate the result.

25.4 LIVER FIRE WITH PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Epilepsy due to Liver Fire with Phlegm Heat reflects a particular constitutional state of a medicated patient, or one who's epilepsy is largely in remission. This pattern has a significant emotional component. The patient will not be having seizures, or only very infrequent yang type seizures induced by intense excitement or emotional triggers.

Clinical features
• seizures induced by worry, anxiety, anger and emotional stress
• after the seizure has ceased, the patient is still irritable and restless
• insomnia
• bitter taste in the mouth
• dry mouth, thirst
• constipation
• T red with a yellow coat
• P wiry and rapid

Treatment principle
Purge Liver Fire, transform Phlegm

Prescription
LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination) plus
DI TAN TANG 活痰汤
(Your Phlegm Deaction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草</td>
<td>6-9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaeae cum Felle Bovis) 胆南星</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xu)

Modifications
• In severe cases, add quan xie fen* (powdered Buthus Martensi 全蝎粉) and wu gong fen* (powdered Scolopendra Subspinipes 蜈蚣粉) each to the strained decoction (chung fu 冲服).
• When Phlegm Heat and constipation are severe or prominent combine
with GUN TAN WAN (Vaporize Phlegm Pill 滚痰丸).
- duan meng shi (Lapis Micae seu Chloriti) 硼石 .......................... 30g
- jiu da huang (wine fried Rhizoma Rhei) 酒大黄 ....................... 240g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ........................ 240g
- chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae) 沉香 .............................. 15g

Method: Grind the herbs into powder and form into 9 gram pills with water. The
dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xue)

CHAI HU JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG 柴胡加龙骨牡蛎汤
(Bupleurum and Dragon Bone Combination) modified

This prescription may be useful in mild cases of Liver Fire with Phlegm
(type epilepsy). It is a very effective formula for shen disturbance in robust
patients with Heat. It is widely used for disorders due to fright or shock
and drug withdrawal, where palpitations, fullness in the chest and irritability
are prominent
- dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 ......................... 30g
- long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 ................................ 24g
- mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ................................ 24g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .............................. 12g
- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................ 15g
- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 ....................... 9g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ......................... 9g
- huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .................... 9g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 ......................... 6g
- da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 .......................... 6g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .................. 3pce
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ............................ 3pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies).

Patent medicines
- Hua Po Bao Long Wan 琉珀抱龙丸 (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills)
- Long Dan Xie Gan Wan 龙胆泻肝丸 (Long Dan Xie Gan Wan)
- Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)

Acupuncture
- Du.26 (ren zhi), Du.12 (she shen -), GB.13 (hen shen -), Du.20 (hai hui),
- PC.8 (lao gong), Ren.14 (jiu wei -), St.40 (feng long -), Li.03 (tai shen -),
- Liv.2 (xiong jian -), Bl.18 (gan shu -), si shen cong (M-HN-1)

Clinical notes
- Corresponds to conditions such as epilepsy, seizures, cerebral cysts or
tumours.

• If Liver Fire is well controlled with acupuncture and herbs, then the
  trigger for the seizures is largely removed and they should become a
  rare occurrence. Complete cure of the epilepsy requires removal of the
  internal Phlegm which may or may not be possible depending on the
  underlying physiological or neurological cause of the epilepsy (space
  occupying brain lesions are difficult to treat successfully with TCM
  alone).
25.5 LIVER AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Liver and Kidney yin deficiency type epilepsy is a chronic condition and reflects a particular constitutional state of a medicated patient or one who's epilepsy is largely in remission. The patient will not be having seizures, or only very infrequent seizures.

Clinical features

- Long history of seizures
- Vague or trance-like mental state
- Dark complexion
- Dizziness
- Tinnitus
- Dry, sore eyes
- Withered ears
- Insomnia and forgetfulness
- Lower back and leg soreness and weakness
- Dry stools or constipation
- T red with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle

Nourish and tonify the Liver and Kidney

Prescription

DA BU YUAN JIAN (Great Tonify the Basal Decoction) modified

- Shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitaet) 150-240g
- Chao shan yao (Dry fried Radix Dioscoreae Opppositae) 120g
- Shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 120g
- Du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 90g
- Gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 90g
- Lu jiao jiao* (Cornu Cervi Gelatium) 60g
- Gui ban jiao* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatineum) 60g
- E jiao* (Gelatium Corii Asini) 60g
- Mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 60g
- Bie jia* (Carapax Amydae Sinensis) 60g

Method: Grind the herbs into powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with an 80% reduction in dosage. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With severe irritability and restlessness, add dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracillis) 60g and deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Effusi) 30g.
- With constipation, add rou cong rong (Cistanche) 90g, dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 60g and huo ma ren (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 60g.
- In severe cases, add quan xie fen* (powdered Buthus Martensi) 20g and wu gong fen* (powdered Scolopendra Subspinosae) 20g to the powder, or if decocted, 2g each to the strained decoction.

Patent medicines

Ming Mu Di Huang Wan (Ming Mu Di Huang Wan)
Zuo Gui Wan (Zuo Gui Wan)
Qi Ju Di Huang Wan (Lycium-Remhannia Pill)
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan)

Acupuncture

BL23 (shen shu +), BL18 (gan shu +), Ki6.3 (tai zhi +), Liv3 (tai chong +), Ren4 (quan yuan), Ki6.3 (zhao hai), an mian (N-HN-54), si shen cong (M-HN-1)

Clinical notes

- Corresponds to a type of chronic epilepsy.
- Prolonged treatment is necessary to secure any improvement.
### 25.6 BLOOD STAGNATION

**Pathophysiology**

- Blood stagnation type epilepsy may follow a traumatic injury, like a blow to the head, birth trauma or forceps delivery. It may also happen as a result of cerebral space occupying lesions, or may gradually occur as the result of another chronic pattern. The treatment described here is used when the seizures are largely controlled, although it may be useful in frequent seizures as an alternative to DING XIAN WAN (Abstain Seizure Pill 定闲丸, see blood seizures, p.685) where there is a clear association with head trauma.

**Clinical features**

- Seizures with a clear relationship to some traumatic incident
- Persistent insomnia with much dreaming and restlessness
- Irritability, anger, depression, mood swings
- Low grade fever at night
- Fixed sharp pains, particularly in the head and upper body
- Dry, scaly skin
- Broken vessels or spider naevi on the face, trunk, inner knee and ankle
- Purplish lips, sclera, conjunctiva and nail beds
- Dark rings around the eyes
- T. Dark or purple with brown or purple stasis spots and a thin white coat

**Treatment principle**

Inivorrate the circulation of Blood
Eliminate stagnant Blood, soothe qi

**Prescription**

| XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐淤汤  
* (Achyranthes and Pericuta Combination) modified |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dan Shen</strong> (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhiza) 丹参 ................................................................. 20g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ShenDi</strong> (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ......................................................... 12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tao Ren</strong> (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 .......................................................... 12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dang Gui</strong> (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ......................................................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hong Hua</strong> (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 ......................................................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chai Hu</strong> (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 .......................................................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Niu Xi</strong> (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 ......................................................... 9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zhi Ke</strong> (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枳壳 ......................................................... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chi Shao</strong> (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ......................................................... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jie Geng</strong> (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 柘梗 ......................................................... 6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chuan Xiong</strong> (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ......................................................... 6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chiang Shou Ci 中医内科临床抄手抄)

### Modifications

- With Phlegm, add two or three of the following herbs: **tian nan xing** (Rhizoma Alpinum) 天南星 9g, **ban xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g, **shi chang pu** (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g, **yu an zhi** (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae 益智 6g, **zao jiao** (Fructus Gleditsiae Sinensis) 皂角 6g or **tian zhu huang** (Concretio Silicae Bambusae Textilis) 天竺黄 9g.
- With headache, add **tian ma** (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻 9g, **bai ji li** (Frutici Tribulius Terrestris) 白蒺藜 9g and **shi jie ming** (Concha Halotidis) 石决明 12g.
- With Cold, add **wu yao** (Radix Linderae Styrchnifoliae) 防风 9g, **xiao hui xiang** (Fructus Foeniculi Vulgaris) 小茴香 9g and **pao jiang** (quick fried Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 泡姜 6g.
- With yang deficiency, delete **chai hu**, and add **fu zi** (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6-9g and **gou zhi** (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g.
- Other herbs that are frequently added to the guiding prescription, depending on the severity of the condition, include **quan xie** (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 2g, **wu gong** (Scolopendra Subspinipes) 蜈蚣 2g, **jiang can** (Bombyx Batryticatus) 僵蚕 9g, **gou teng** (Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis) 勾藤 12g, **tian ma** (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻 9g and **di long** (Lumbricus) 地龙 6g.

**TONG QIAO HUO XUE TANG 通窍活血汤**

(Unblock the Orifices and Inivorate Blood Decoction) modified

This formula is recommended for Blood stagnation affecting the senses and head. It is stronger than the primary formula and suited to robust individuals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dang Gui</strong> (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .........................</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chi Shao</strong> (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 .........................</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tao Ren</strong> (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 .........................</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chuan Xiong</strong> (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .........................</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hong Hua</strong> (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 .........................</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bai Zhi</strong> (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 .........................</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wu Shao She</strong> (Zaoeys Dhumnades) 乌梢蛇 .........................</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quan Xie</strong> (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 .........................</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cong Bai</strong> (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 共白 .........................</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Da Zao</strong> (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .........................</td>
<td>7pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sheng Jiang</strong> (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .........................</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>She Xiang</strong> (Secretio Moschus) 糙香 .........................</td>
<td>0.15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. *She xiang* and *quan xie* are usually powdered and taken separately or added to the strained decoction (zheng jin 沸水). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chiang Shou Ci 中医内科临床抄手抄)
Patent medicines
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消癈瘀丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)
Dan Shen Pian 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)

Acupuncture
Points of pain on the head (ah zhi), BL.17 (ge shu -), L.I.4 (he gu -),
Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), Liv.4 (zhong du -), Liv.3 (tai chong), S.I.6 (yang luo),
i shen cong (M-HN-1)

Clinical notes
• Corresponds to either acute or chronic epilepsy.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR EPILEPSY
Uncontrolled or poorly controlled epilepsy
Yang seizures - Ding Xian Wan 定闲丸
Yin seizures - Ding Xian Wan 定闲丸

Constitutional patterns in controlled epileptics
Spleen deficiency with Phlegm - Liu Jun Zi Tang 六君子汤
Liver Fire with Phlegm Heat - Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤 + Di Tan Tang 泻肝汤
• with constipation + Gan Tan Tang 泻肝汤
• mild cases of Liver Fire with Phlegm - Chai Hu Jia Long Gu Mu Li Tang 柴胡加龙骨牡蛎汤
Liver and Kidney yin deficiency - Da Bu Yuan Jian 大补元煎
Blood stagnation - Xue Fu Zhu Yu Tang 血府逐瘀汤 or
Tong Qiiao Huo Xue Tang 通窍活血汤

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Liver

26. Spasms and Convulsions

Febrile Convulsions
Wind Toxin Tetany (Muscular Tetany)
External pathogens
Phlegm obstruction
Blood stagnation
Qi and Blood deficiency
SPASMS AND CONVULSIONS

jing bing痉病

The spasms and convulsions described in this chapter are the product of high fever, meningeal irritation, infection or cerebral space occupying lesions. They are characterised by the rhythmic or convulsive seizures accompanied by or following high fever, or muscular spasms of the extremities, neck and back, trismus or opisthotonos.

Convulsions are always due to the stirring of internal Wind, regardless of whether the Wind results from an excess or deficient pattern. Spasm of the muscles can be due to external or internal Wind, or from a lack of nutrition to the Tendons due to yin and/or Blood deficiency.

The patterns described in this chapter differ from epilepsy, in that jing bing usually have an immediate identifiable cause (like fever or a puncture wound), and once the basic cause is dealt with the patient gets better with no recurrence. Epilepsy on the other hand, is associated with deeply rooted Phlegm and often occurs without any identifiable precipitating event.

The disorders that fall into the jing bing category are a mixture of conditions characterised by muscular spasms or cramps and tetanic spasms or convulsions. The types of disorders that may be analysed using this chapter include febrile convulsions and numerous conditions that affect the central nervous system or irritate the meninges (like epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis or encephalitis, raised intracranial pressure, tumours and parasitic diseases of the brain), as well as tetanus and botulism. The most common reason for convulsions is high fever, usually related to diseases like meningitis or encephalitis, or in children a simple upper respiratory or urinary tract infection.

AETIOLOGY

Internal Wind

As with all involuntary body movement, internally generated Wind is the responsible pathogen. Wind can be generated in several ways, the common ones are summarised in Box 24.2 (p.648). Other mechanisms apply in certain unique situations, for example the Wind that results from Phlegm obstruction causing epilepsy (p.680), and the cold deficient Wind of chronic childhood convulsions. The latter is a mild form of Wind that occurs when qi moves to fill the vacuum formed by chronic deficiency.

The Wind that causes convulsions is most commonly derived from excess Heat, and manifests during a high fever. This excess type Wind can soon become Wind from deficiency as the Heat consumes yin and Blood—the nature of the convulsions changes from violent and convulsive, to milder jerking and muscle spasm.

External pathogens

External Wind, Cold Dampness or Heat can enter the channels and obstruct the circulation of qi and Blood, depriving the Tendons of nutrition. This affects the tai yang channels of the back and neck causing muscular spasm and pain. If a pathogen moves from the surface further into the body, it can become hot and, when severe, generate internal Wind giving rise to febrile convulsions with violent jerking of the limbs and body.

One exotic form of external Wind is that which combines with Toxins to cause muscular tetany (po shang feng破伤风—tetanus). In this case the Wind enters through a puncture wound or an infected umbilicus and invades the channels and internal organs.

Blood stagnation

Traumatic injury, particularly affecting the head, can cause Blood stagnation type spasms or convulsions. Any chronic pathology will also eventually inhibit Blood circulation; for example long term qi stagnation and Cold or Phlegm obstruction directly block Blood circulation, while yin and yang deficiency increase Blood viscosity and slow circulation respectively. In practice, Blood stagnation that causes spasms or convulsions is a serious disorder, most likely involving a space occupying cerebral lesion, like a tumour, abscess, cyst or haemorrhage.

Phlegm

Spasms and convulsions caused by Phlegm often indicate the presence of a space occupying cerebral lesion. In this way, Phlegm obstruction is similar to Blood stagnation. The difference, however, is seen in the clinical features and signs which are indicative of systemic or constitutional Phlegm. In practice, Phlegm and Blood stagnation frequently co-exist. The Phlegm itself can be the product of overeating, overindulgence in Phlegm producing foods, Spleen deficiency and prolonged Damp stagnation, or qi stagnation that retards movement of fluids.

Qi and Blood deficiency

The qi and Blood deficiency of this pattern may follow fluid loss through haemorrhage or excessive sweating. It may also occur post partum, or following heatstroke. Spleen deficiency or chronic illness will lead to qi and Blood deficiency.
26.1 FEBRILE CONVULSIONS

26.1.1 ACUTE PHASE

Pathophysiology
- The convulsions, spasms or opisthotonos that characterise febrile convulsions are due to the stirring of internal Wind by severe Heat. As one commentator noted, 'as the severe winds of Summer are generated by the hottest of days, so, in the body, severe internal Wind is generated by an excess of Heat'.
- Febrile convulsions are most common in children and can occur in numerous biomedically defined disorders if the fever is high enough. Keep in mind that many of the diseases that can cause febrile convulsions are dangerous (commonly diseases like meningitis or encephalitis) and in most cases should be managed in hospital if possible.
- The main principle of treatment (for both adults and children) is to reduce the fever and stop the convulsion so as to minimise the possibility of brain damage. In some cases the convulsions can become chronic if the qi, yang or yin have been seriously damaged.
- The TCM treatment is fairly straightforward—administer an appropriate emergency medicine, followed by an appropriate decoction once the patient is stable and can take a liquid. The follow-up prescription depends on the type of fever.

Clinical features
- stiff neck, muscle spasms, opisthotonos or convulsions accompanied by high fever, malaise, headache, drowsiness, vomiting

Treatment principle
Clear Heat, eliminate Toxins
Extinguish Wind and stop convulsions

Prescription
ZIXUE DAN (紫雪丹)
(Purple Snow Special Pill)

This is the standard formula for febrile convulsions and is widely available in patent medicine pill form for swift administration. It is one of the three treasures (san bao 三宝) of Chinese emergency medicine, the others being ZHI BAO DAN (Greatest Treasure Special Pill 至宝丹, p.660) and AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN (Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone 安宫牛黄丸, p.914). These formulae are suitable for short term use. Once the patient is stable and the convulsions have ceased, a suitable formula based on the patient's febrile pattern should be commenced.
Follow-up treatment

After the patient is stable one of the following formulae may be selected to treat the underlying pattern.

LING JIAO GOU TENG TANG 矾角钩藤汤

(Anelophe Horn and Uncaria Decoction) modified

This formula is selected when the pattern is Liver Heat stirring Wind. The main features are persistent high fever, irritability and restlessness, dizziness, vertigo, twitching, tics or spasms of the limbs, and in severe cases, clouding or loss of consciousness, a deep red, dry tongue with prickles and a wiry rapid pulse.

ling yang jiao fen* (powdered Cornu Antelopis)

羚羊角粉 4.5g

sang ye (Folium Mori Albae) 桑叶 12g

gou teng (Ramuclus Uncariae) 钩藤 12g

chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae) 川贝母 12g

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 15g

zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹 15g

ju hua (Flos Chrysanthem Moli folii) 菊花 9g

bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 9g

fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 9g

gan cai (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. Ling yang jiao fen is added as a powder to the strained decoction (sheng di, zhu ru, and gou teng) is added towards the end of cooking (mai xiao & feng). (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xue)

BAI HU TANG 白虎汤

(Anemarrhena and Gypsum Combination)

This formula is used when external pathogenic Cold or Heat lodge at the yang ming level (of the six divisions). The features are high fever, sweating, severe thirst and a flooding orbounding pulse.
BIAI DU YIN TANG 白虎汤
(Pulsatilla Decoction 白虎汤)

This formula is selected when a severe hot dysenteric disorder causes diarrhoea, high fever and muscle twitches and spasm. This is the guiding formula for bacterial and amoebic dysentery.

bai tou weng (Radix Pulsatillae Chinensis) 白头翁 ..... 12g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 ..... 9g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 ..... 9g
qin pi (Cortex Fraxini) 桑皮 ..... 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

QING YING TANG 清营汤
(Clear the Y in Decoction)

This formula is used when Heat enters the yin and Blood levels causing high fever, delirium and febrile rashes.

xi jiao⁰ (Cornu Rhinoceri) 角 ..... 3g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ..... 30g
xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) 玄参 ..... 9g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 ..... 1.5-3g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ..... 3g

Method: Decoction. Shi gao is cooked first for 15 minutes (xian jian 先煎). Shui diu jiao⁰ (Cornu Bubali) 水牛角 is usually substituted for xi jiao with a tenfold increase in dosage. It is usually powdered and decocted for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added (xian jian 先煎). (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xue)

WU WEI XIAO DU YIN 五味消毒饮
(Five Ingredient Decoction to Eliminate Toxin)

This formula is used when localised Toxic Heat causes abscesses or boils that penetrate into the Blood. An excellent formula for all types of superficial suppurative sores and disorders like mastitis, lymphangitis, erysipelas and septicaemia.

jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 金银花 ..... 15-30g
zi hua di ding (Herba cum Radice Violae Yedoensit its) 紫花地丁 ..... 15-30g

Method: Decoction. Shi gao is cooked first for 15 minutes (xian jian 先煎). Shui diu jiao⁰ (Cornu Bubali) 水牛角 is usually substituted for zi hua di ding with a tenfold increase in dosage. It is usually powdered and decocted for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added (xian jian 先煎).

Acupuncture

- shi xuan (M-UE-1), Du.14 (da zhui -), Bl.40 (wai zhong -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), LI.11 (gu chi -), Du.26 (re zhong)

Clinical notes
- This pattern may correspond with disorders such as meningitis, encephalitis, scarlet fever, pneumonia, septicemia, measles, eclampsia...
and puerperal convulsions.

- Many of these conditions require management in hospital. In these cases herbs and acupuncture can be used as additional therapy to antibiotics where appropriate, or may be applied as a first line measure until other medical treatments are instituted.

### 26.1.2 POST ACUTE PHASE (YIN AND BLOOD DEFICIENCY)

**Pathophysiology**

- Following a severe febrile disease (or in the late stages of a severe febrile disease), Yin and Blood may be significantly damaged. This can give rise to continuing muscle spasms, cramps or convulsions. Improper treatment (either excessive diaphoresis or purgation) during a fever may also cause Yin and Blood deficient spasms or convulsions. The pattern may also be associated with chronic Yin and Blood deficiency, or follow a haemorrhage or other significant loss of body fluids.

- The spasms (in severe cases convulsions) are the result of a combination of Wind with Yin and Blood deficiency (which cannot nourish and lubricate the Tendons).

**Clinical features**

- recurrent muscle spasms, cramps, twitches, quivering or alternating flexion and extension of the extremities
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles ("five hearts hot")
- low grade or relapsing fever, body feels hot to touch
- facial or malar flushing
- dry throat, thirst, parched lips
- emaciation
- irritability and fatigue
- dizziness, vertigo
- tinnitus, visual disturbances
- dry stools or constipation
- in severe cases disordered consciousness
- T deep red and dry, with a scant or peeled coat
- P thready, rapid and deficient

**Treatment principle**

Nourish Yin, clear Heat

Anchor Yang, extinguish Wind

**Prescription**

SAN JIA FU MAI TANG 三甲复脉汤

*Three Shells Decoction to Restore the Pulse*

This formula is selected when there is internal Wind and rising Yang from Yin and Blood deficiency, with the typical accompanying symptoms of relatively severe dizziness and tinnitus as well as spasms.
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) ........................................... 18g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................... 18g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ........................................... 18g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ........................................... 15g
huo ma ren (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 ........................................... 9g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 ........................................... 9g
mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ........................................... 15g
bie jia* (Carapax Amydæ Sinensis) 贝甲 ........................................... 24g
gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatimum) 龟板 ........................................... 30g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................... 18g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ........................................... 18g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ........................................... 18g
mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ........................................... 12g
bie jia* (Carapax Amydæ Sinensis) 贝甲 ........................................... 12g
gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatimum) 龟板 ........................................... 12g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) ........................................... 12g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 ........................................... 9g
huo ma ren (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 ........................................... 9g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ........................................... 6g
ji ji huang* (egg yolk) 鸡子黄 ........................................... 2
Method: Decoction. The shells are decocted for 30 minutes prior to the other
herbs (xian jiao 先煎), e jiao is melted first and then added with the egg yolks to
the strained decoction (yang hua 生熟). (Source: Shi Yang Zong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

DA DING FENG ZHU 大定风珠

(Major Arrest Wind Pearl)

This formula is selected when the deficiency is prominent. It focuses
primarily on the root of the disorder (the yin deficiency), rather than directly
extinguishing the Wind.

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................... 18g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ........................................... 18g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ........................................... 18g
mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ........................................... 12g
bie jia* (Carapax Amydæ Sinensis) 贝甲 ........................................... 12g
gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatimum) 龟板 ........................................... 12g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) ........................................... 12g
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ........................................... 18g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ........................................... 18g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ........................................... 18g
mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ........................................... 12g
bie jia* (Carapax Amydæ Sinensis) 贝甲 ........................................... 12g
gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatimum) 龟板 ........................................... 12g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) ........................................... 12g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 ........................................... 9g
huo ma ren (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 ........................................... 9g
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ........................................... 6g
ji ji huang* (egg yolk) 鸡子黄 ........................................... 2
Method: Decoction. The shells are decocted for 30 minutes prior to the other
herbs (xian jiao 先煎), e jiao is melted first and then added with the egg yolks to
the strained decoction (yang hua 生熟). (Source: Shi Yang Zong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications (applicable to both prescriptions)
• With qi deficiency, add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 犁参 ........................................... 9g
• With Blood stagnation, add tao ren (Semen Persicace) 机仁 ........................................... 9g and dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 ........................................... 12g
• For spontaneous sweating, add long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 ........................................... 15g, dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 犁参 ........................................... 9g and fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Aestivii Levis) 浮小麦 ........................................... 15g

For palpitations, add fu ling (Sclerotium Poriei Cocos) 茯苓 ........................................... 12g, dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 犁参 ........................................... 9g and fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Aestivii Levis) 浮小麦 ........................................... 15g

With severe Blood deficiency, add dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 柴胡 ........................................... 9g, shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquatae) 熟地 ........................................... 18g and chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chaunxiong) 川芎 ........................................... 6g

Acupuncture
Bl.18 (gan shu +), B.23 (shen yu +), Du.8 (ju jin +), Li.4 (he gu +), PC.6 (nei guan), Li.3 (tail shang), Kid.3 (tail xi +), Li.14 (he gu +), Li.11 (qu chi +)

Patent medicines
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan 知柏八味丸 (Zhi Bai Ba Wei Wan)
- with deficient Heat
Er Long Zuo Ci Wan 耳聋左慈丸 (Er Long Zuo Ci Wan)
- with tinnitus
Ming Ma Di Huang Wan 明目地黄丸 (Ming Ma Di Huang Wan)
- with visual disturbances
Qi Ju Di Huang Wan 茵陈地黄丸 (Lycium-Rehmannia Pills)
- Liver and Kidney yin deficiency

Clinical notes
• This pattern may correspond with disorders such as encephalitis,
meningitis and hypocalcemia.
• This pattern superficially resembles the excess Heat type of spasms or
convulsions, but the formulae given here are inappropriate for that
condition. Clear differentiation from excess Heat stirring up internal
Wind is important.
• This pattern is not as common as perhaps it once was because fevers
nowadays are rarely allowed to persist long enough to seriously
damage yin due to the widespread use of antibiotic and antipyretic
medication.
26.1.3 POST ACUTE PHASE (CHRONIC CHILDHOOD CONVULSIONS DUE TO SPLEEN YANG DEFICIENCY)

Pathophysiology
- This chronic pattern occurs in children, either following a severe febrile disease, which has damaged Spleen yang (possibly also by the antibiotic medications used in the febrile pattern), or a bad episode of vomiting and/or diarrhoea (as in dysentery). The Wind in this pattern is the product of Cold and deficiency, and is generated by the movement of qi as it seeks to fill the vacuum created by the deficiency.
- This pattern can overlap with the Spleen deficiency with Phlegm type of epilepsy (see p.690).

Clinical features
- twitching, writhing or weak jerking of the limbs which is worse when the patient is fatigued or hungry; the movements are more choreitic than convulsive in nature
- increased desire to sleep, possibly 'absences' (see pp.681, 688)
- watery vomiting and diarrhoea
- poor appetite or a very picky eater
- abdominal pains
- cold extremities
- sallow or pale complexion
- pale with a white coat
- deep and slow

Treatment principle
Warm the middle jiao, strengthen the Spleen
Stop convulsions

Prescription
LI ZHONG WAN 理中丸
(Ginseng and Ginger Formula) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan jiang ( rhizoma Zingiberis Officinale) 干姜</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 炙甘草</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs to a fine powder and mix into the child's food or with honey. The dose is 3 grams daily. May also be decocted.

Modifications
- For severe internal Cold, add zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6g cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs
- In severe or resistant cases, add wu gong* (Scolopendra Subspinipes) 娥蜈蚣 1.5g and quan xie* (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 1.5g to the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服), or take separately as a powder.

Acupuncture
Ren.12 (zhong wan △), Ren.6 (qi hai △), St.25 (tian shu △), St.36 (zuo san li △), Bl.20 (pi shu △), Du.14 (da zhai △)

Patent medicines
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)

Clinical notes
- Children respond reasonably well to treatment, depending on how depleted the child is and the other pharmaceutical medications being administered.
- Children with chronic Cold convulsions may be diagnosed as epileptic and treated with anti-convulsant drugs. Anti-convulsants are usually cold in nature, and will aggravate the yang deficiency.

26.2 WIND TOXIN TETANY (MUSCULAR TETANY)

Pathophysiology
- This pattern corresponds primarily to tetanus, and is also known as ‘incised wound tetany’ (jin chuang jing 金创痉). It is due to Wind and Toxins that gain access to the channels and internal organs through an open wound.

Clinical features
- in the early stages there may be headache, fever, chills and malaise
- stiffness and spasm of the jaw
- deviation of the eyes
- muscle spasm, facial rictus
- opisthotonos or convulsions
- wiry and tight T
- often unremarkable and may be difficult to see with the jaw in spasm

Treatment principle
- Dispel Wind and Toxins, relieve spasm, stop pain

Prescription
- YU ZHEN SAN 玉真散
  - (True Jade Powder) modified
  - tian nan xing* (Rhizoma Arisaematis  天南星) 10g
  - fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae  防风) 10g
  - bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae  白芷) 10g
  - tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae  天麻) 10g
  - qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygi) 10g
  - bai fu zi* (Rhizoma Typhonii Gigantei  白附子) 10g
  - jiang can* (Bombix Batryticatus  橘囊) 10g
  - quan xie* (Buthus Martensi  全蝎) 6g
  - wu gong* (Scolopendra Subspinipes 蜈蚣) 6g

Method: Grind all the herbs to a fine powder and take in 6-gram doses 2-3 times daily with warm yellow wine (shao xing jiu 酒黄酒). If the patient is unable to ingest the medicine, the herbs may be decocted and administered as a retention enema. (Source: Shi Yong Fang Ji Xue)

Modifications
- With Heat, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis 黄连) 6g.
- With Phlegm, add tian zhu huang (Concrete Silica Bambusae Textuillis) 10g and chuan bei mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Cirrhosae 川贝母) 10g.

Patent medicines
- Hu Po Bao Long Wan (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
- Du.14 (da zhi -), Du.8 (jin suo -), Du.16 (feng fu -), LI.4 (he gu -), LI.11 (qu chi -), Du.3 (yang guan -), St.7 (xia guan -), St.6 (jia che -), BL.60 (jun lun -), BL.62 (shen mai -), Liv.3 (tai chang -)

Clinical notes
- This pattern may correspond with disorders such as tetanus and botulism.
- Tetanus anti-toxin must be given and the patient should be immediately referred to a hospital for intubation and ventilation (if necessary).
**26.3 EXTERNAL COLD DAMP (DAMP HEAT)**

**Pathophysiology**
- The spasms in this pattern are due to invasion of the tai yang channels by external Wind plus Cold, Damp or Damp Heat. It may appear as the early stage of a Warm disease (wen bing 湿病).

**Clinical features**
- stiffness and spasms of the neck and back
- mild fever and chills
- headache
- no sweating or mild sweating
- aching and heaviness in the limbs
- trismus or spasms and contractures of the limbs
- T unremarkable or with a thin white or greasy white coat
- floating and tight

**Treatment principle**
- Expel Wind, disperse Cold Damp
- Harmonise ying

**Prescription**

**QIANG HUO SHENG SHI TANG (龍衣生石煎)**

*Notepterygium Decoction to Overcome Dampness*

- qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii) 龍衣 ........................................ 15g
- du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescentis) 独活 ........................................ 9g
- gao ben (Rhizoma et Radix Ligustici) 麝木 ........................................ 6g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防風 ..................................... 12g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ..................................... 6g
- man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 蕹果子 ........................................ 6g
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ............. 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**Wind Cold**
- If Cold is severe, with chills or rigors, stiffness and pain of the upper back and neck, no sweating, occipital headache, and spasms in the limbs or generalised myalgia, the correct treatment is to expel Cold, open the pores and relieve the muscles with GE GEN TANG (舒筋湯, p.7).

**Damp Heat**
- An invasion of Damp Heat into the channels causes afternoon fever, generalised muscle aches and spasm, headache, thirst with no desire to drink, scanty concentrated urine, fullness in the chest and abdomen, loss of appetite, nausea, a white tongue coat and a soggy pulse. The correct treatment is to clear Damp Heat and open the channels with SAN REN TANG (三仁湯) modified.

- *yi ren* (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 三仁 ........................................ 18-30g
- hua shi (Talcum) 滑石 ........................................ 15g
- qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 茶芎 ........................................ 15g
- wei ling xian* (Radix Clematidis) 威灵仙 ........................................ 15g
- si gua Luo (Fasciculus Vascularis Luffae) 丝瓜络 .................................... 15g
- xing ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae) 杏仁 ........................................ 12g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ........................................ 9g
- dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 .................................... 9g
- bai dou kou (Fructus Amomi Kravanh) 白豆蔻 ..................................... 6g
- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ........................................ 6g
- tong cao (Medulla Tetrapanacis Papyriferae) 通草 .................................... 6g

Method: Decoction.

**Acupuncture**

Du.20 (bai hui -), GB.20 (feng chi -), Du.16 (feng fu -), SI.10 (tian zhu -), ST.5 (wai guan -), Du.8 (jin suo -), BL.18 (gan shu -), BL.60 (kun lun -)

**Patent medicines**

**Wind Cold**
- Gan Mao Ling 感冒灵 (Gan Mao Ling)
- Gan Mao Qing Ke Chong Ji 感冒清热冲剂 (Colds and Flu Tea)
- Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan 川芎茶调丸 (Chuan Xiong Cha Tiao Wan)
- Yu Feng Xin Xin Wan 愈风宁心丸 (Headache and Dizziness Reliever)

**Wind Damp**
- Huo Xiang Zheng Qi Pian 霍香正气片 (Huo Xiang Cheng Chi Pien)
- Xing Jun San 行军散 (Marching Powder, Five Pagodas Brand)

**Clinical notes**
- This pattern may correspond with disorders such as early stage of meningitis or encephalitis, influenza, dengue fever and fever of unknown origin.
- If the pattern is an early stage wen bing, then the patient may (if untreated or poorly treated) go on to exhibit full febrile convulsions.
26.4 PHLEGM OBSTRUCTION

Pathophysiology
- The spasms or convulsions in this pattern are due to Phlegm obstructing the channels. When the Tendons are poorly nourished by qi and Blood as a result of obstruction, spasms and cramps can occur. This category may overlap with some forms of epilepsy.

Clinical features
- spasms, cramps, stiffness in the limbs, neck and back or convulsions
- diffuse headache, heaviness, woolliness or fullness in the head
- dizziness, vertigo
- visual disturbances, double vision or loss of vision
- fullness and discomfort in the chest and epigastrum
- nausea, vomiting
  T greasy, white coat
  P soft, slippery and/or wiry

Treatment principle
Expel Wind, disperse Phlegm
Move qi and stop spasms

Prescription
QU FENG DAO TAN TANG祛风导痰汤
(Expel Wind and Guide Out the Phlegm Decoction)

- qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygi)羌活......................... 9g
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae)防風..................... 6g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)茯苓.................................... 12g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae)半夏.............................. 9g
- chen pi (Petricarpium Citri Reticulatae)陈皮.............................. 6g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)甘草.............................. 9g
- tian nan xing* (Rhizoma Arisaeematis)天南星.......................... 6g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii)枳实........................... 9g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)白术................... 9g
- zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taenis)竹茹............................... 6g
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis)生姜..................... 4pc

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xu)

Modifications
- If there is Heat, substitute dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaeematis cum Felle Bovis)胆南星 for tian nan xing, and add huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g

and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis)桔梗仁 12g.

Acupuncture
St.40 (feng long -), Sp.3 (tai bai), SI.3 (hou xi -), BL.62 (shen mai -),
GB.20 (feng chui -), Du.14 (da zhai -), Du.16 (feng fu -),
BL.20 (pingshu +), Du.20 (bai huai)

Patent medicines
Hai Zao Wan海藻丸 (Hai Zao Wan)
Nei Xiao Lao Li Wan 内消瘰疬丸 (Nei Xiao Liao Li Wan)

Clinical notes
- This pattern may be due to meningeal irritation from a space occupying cerebral lesion, such as cerebral tumour, cyst or abscess, sarcoidosis, cysticercosis, echinococcosis.
- Once signs of Phlegm begin to clear the frequency of spasms and convulsions should subside. Tumours and other substantial lesions, however, are difficult to resolve with Chinese medicine alone and a combination of Western medicine and TCM should be used.
26.5 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- The spasms or convulsions of this pattern are the result of stagnant Blood obstructing the circulation of qi and Blood through the channels, and consequent malnourishment of the Tendons. It may follow other chronic pathology or head injury. There may be an overlap with some forms of epilepsy.

Clinical features
- stiffness and spasms of the neck, back and occasionally extremities, torticollis, possible convulsions
- severe localised progressive headache
- visual disturbances, double vision or loss of vision
- dark, ashen, sallow or purple complexion, dark or purple lips and conjunctivae, dark rings around the eyes
- spider naevii, emaciation
- purple or with brown or purple stasis spots and little or no coat
- threadily and choppy or wiry

Treatment principle
Invigorate the circulation of qi and Blood
Expel stagnant Blood, nourish the Tendons and stop spasms

Prescription
TONG QIAO HUO XUE TANG (Unblock the Orifices and Invigorate Blood Decoction) modified

chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 桃红 ........................................... 15g
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ...................................... 15g
tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 .................................................. 10g
hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 ........................................... 6g
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .................................. 6g
bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷 ........................................... 6g
wu shao she (Zaocys Dhumnades) 乌梢蛇 ...................................... 6g
quann xie* (Buthus Martensi) 全蝎 .................................................. 3g
cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 柴白 ........................................... 3g
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ........................................... 7pc
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .................................. 9g
she xiang* (Secretio Moschus) 藜香 ........................................... 0.15g

Method: Decocction. She xiang and quan xie are usually powdered and taken separately or added to the strained decoction (chong fu 沸服). (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Ce)

Modifications
- With qi and Blood deficiency, add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 30g, dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 15g, shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquae) 生地 15g.
- With yin and jing deficiency, add sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 20g, shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquae) 生地 20g, gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟板 15g, and gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 15g.

Acupuncture
GB.20 (feng chi -), ah shi (points of pain on the head), Du.16 (feng fu -), Du.8 (jin suo -), Sp.10 (xing jian -), Bl.18 (yan shu -), Liv.14 (qi men -), Bl.17 (ge shu -), Liv.2 (xing jia -), Sl.3 (hou xi -), Bl.62 (shen mai -)

Patent medicines
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消瘰疬丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)

Clinical notes
- This pattern may correspond to cerebral tumour, cyst or abscess, concussion, subdural haematoma, sarcoidosis, cysticercosis or echinococcosis.
- In general, most of these conditions are difficult to treat successfully with TCM alone. TCM treatment is supportive and palliative.
26.6 QI AND BLOOD DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
Spasms due to qi and Blood deficiency may follow significant haemorrhage, sweating or other fluid loss, or some other chronic disease that damages the Spleen and consumes qi and Blood. The main factor is the Blood deficiency which fails to nourish the Tendons. An additional factor is the tendency of Liver qi to stagnate when Blood is deficient.

Clinical features
• stiffness, spasms or cramps of the muscles of the limbs, neck and back
• dizziness, light headedness
• spontaneous sweating
• lethargy, fatigue, weakness
• shortness of breath
• pale
• wiry and thready

Treatment principle
Tonify qi and Blood
Nourish the Tendons and ease spasms

Prescription
BA ZHEN TANG 八珍汤
(Ginseng and Dang Gui Eight Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitate)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou teng (Ramulus Uncariae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Gou teng is added towards the end of cooking (boil first). (Source: Shi Yang Zheng Yi Nai Xu Xin)

Modifications
• With Liver qi stagnation, increase the dose of bai shao to 15g and add xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundi)香附 9g and mei gui hua (Flos Rosea Rugosae)玫瑰花 6g.

Patent medicines
Ba Zhen Wan 八珍丸 (Ba Zhen Wan)
Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- with Liver qi stagnation

Acupuncture
Bl.18 (gan shu +), Bl.17 (ge shu +), Sp.10 (xue hai +), Ren.12 (zhang wan + △), Ren.6 (qi bai + △), St.36 (yu san li + △), BL20 (pi shu + △), Du.20 (bai hai +), ah shi points of the upper back and neck

Clinical notes
• This pattern may correspond to disorders such as anaemia, stress, and chronic tension.
• This is a common pattern in overworked and stressed women who complain of chronic headaches or neck and upper back problems. When massaged, their muscles have a characteristic feel—tight and somewhat ropey at first, with a lack of tone at a deeper level.
• Spasms of this type respond well to acupuncture treatment, but lasting resolution of the condition requires long term tonification of qi and Blood with herbs, sensible diet and sufficient rest and relaxation.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR
CONVULSIONS AND SPASMS

Acute febrile convulsions - Zi Xue Dan 柴香丹
  • in children - Xiao Er Hui Chun Dan 小儿回春丹

Chronic convulsions
  • yin and Blood deficiency - San Jia Fu Mai Tang 三甲复脉汤
  • Spleen yang deficiency - Li Zhong Wan 理中丸

Muscular tetany - Yu Zhen San 玉真散

External Cold Damp - Qiang Huo Sheng Shi Tang 活血胜湿汤
  • with severe Cold - Ge Gen Tang 葛根汤
  • with Damp Heat - San Ren Tang 三仁汤

Phlegm obstruction - Qu Peng Dao Tan Tang 祛风导痰汤

Blood stagnation - Tong Qiao Hua Xue Tang 通窍活血汤

Qi and Blood deficiency - Ba Zhen Tang 八珍汤

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
ASCITES (Drum Like Abdominal Distension)

gu zhōng 腹胀

Gu zhōng is fluid accumulation in the abdominal cavity, with a decrease in urinary output. Gu zhōng is a serious disease, and occurs in such conditions as hepatic cirrhosis, congestive cardiac failure, abdominal and liver cancer, schistosomiasis, chronic malaria and tuberculous peritonitis. The name gu zhōng (literally drum distension) derives from the resemblance of the abdomen to a drum—firm and taut on the outside and empty within—the emptiness here referring to deficiency of the various yang qi involved.

In TCM terms, gu zhōng is associated with severe disruption of fluid metabolism that causes fluids to accumulate in the middle and lower jiao. This fluid buildup may occur either from obstruction of fluid movement by some excess pathogen (qi or Blood stagnation, Cold Damp or Damp Heat), or from weakness and deficiency of the organs governing fluid metabolism (in this case the Spleen and Kidney). In practice, mixtures of deficiency and excess are the rule, with the deficiency generally more significant. What this suggests is that even though the manifestations are of an excess nature (the massive fluid accumulation), simple promotion of diuresis is inappropriate and may be harmful (see treatment), and therefore tonification and fluid drainage (or removal of excess pathogens) are always combined.

The main feature is swelling of the abdomen, in the early stages soft on palpation, gradually becoming harder and more drum like as the disease progresses. In the later stages the patient is very ill—with a sallow or yellow complexion, emaciation, jaundice, obvious blue veins snaking across the abdomen (caput medusae—the medusa's hair), numerous spider naevi, and other signs of severe Blood stagnation.

AETIOLOGY

Qi and Damp stagnation

Prolonged emotional repression, resentment, anger and frustration impair the Liver's ability to spread qi. Prolonged stasis of qi can both damage the Spleen and retard the normal movement of physiological fluids, causing accumulation of Dampness in the middle and lower jiao. Eventually Blood stagnation may complicate the qi stasis leading to the development of masses in the abdomen and Liver.

With moderate underlying qi or yang deficiency, the resulting Damp may accumulate as Cold Damp. Accumulation of Cold Damp is aided by irregular eating, excessive consumption of raw or cold food and beverages. Cold Dampness may also be the result of parasites in a cold or yang deficient individual.

Damp Heat

Chronic alcohol abuse and overconsumption of Damp or heating foods directly cause Damp Heat buildup, or weaken the Spleen sufficiently to cause Damp accumulation. Prolonged Damp Heat stagnation in the Liver and Spleen eventually leads to qi and Blood stasis and impaired fluid transport.

Chronic infection, with a variety of parasites and pathogens, like Filaria worms (schistosomiasis), Plasmodia (malaria) and hepatitis virus, can give rise to Damp Heat patterns. Prolonged stagnation of Damp Heat can eventually cause qi and Blood stagnation, and the development of abdominal masses.

Blood stagnation

Blood stagnation type ascites is the result of prolonged stagnation of qi, Dampness, Damp Heat or parasites. It indicates a fairly severe degree of damage to the Liver and/or the Spleen, and is associated with the development of abdominal masses or hepatosplenomegaly.

Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency

This pattern occurs when obstruction by qi, Damp or Blood has damaged the organs. In addition to the obstruction of fluid movement and metabolism by the excess pathogens, the Spleen and Kidneys become too weak to transform fluids which accumulate in the abdomen, compounding the ascites. Spleen and Kidney yang may also be damaged by overenthusiastic use of bitter cold herbs or drugs used to treat a Damp Heat pattern.

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency can develop if inappropriate or excessive diuretic treatment is used early on. It can also occur when a Heat (or Damp Heat) pattern is prolonged, or incompletely cleared following treatment. It also represents a late development of Blood stagnation as yin is always damaged by long term disease.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Oedema (shui zhong 水肿): Oedema is fluid in interstitial tissues and affects the whole body, particularly the limbs. Ascites is fluid in the abdominal cavity.

Chang tan (肠覃): an ancient term describing a firm and moveable abdominal mass, small at first and gradually increasing in size until the abdomen resembles that during pregnancy. This term most likely refers to abdominal tumours, like fibroids or ovarian cysts.
TREATMENT

Ascites is invariably a chronic and complicated mixture of deficiency and excess, and correct treatment involves tonification at the same time as drainage of fluids. Heat clearing, Blood stasis elimination etc. Drastic catharsis is generally avoided (except under exceptional circumstances) as it has been observed for centuries that although draining fluids alone may dramatically reduce the ascites, it usually returns in a few days worse than before. Similarly, modern commentators stress that moving and draining fluid is only the first stage of ascites treatment. Once fluids are moving, more tonifying prescriptions (depending on the patient's constitution) should be selected and maintained for lengthy periods. This applies particularly to advanced cases that may have the appearance of excess, but in fact are significantly deficient. The nutritional status of the patient is extremely important (and often a major concern), and a nourishing, easily digested and low salt and protein diet is recommended.

27.1 QI AND DAMP STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- Qi and Damp stagnation represents an early stage of ascites, as impeded circulation of qi retards fluid movement allowing accumulation of Dampness. At this stage the excess aspects of the pattern are dominant.

Clinical features

- swollen abdomen with tightly stretched skin that is not particularly firm or hard when palpated
- fullness, distension or pain beneath the ribs
- poor appetite
- epigastric and abdominal distension, worse after eating
- belching, flatulence
- irritability
- scanty urine
- sluggish stools
- greasy white coat
- wiry

Treatment principle

Soothe the Liver and regulate qi
Drain Dampness and reduce accumulation (of fluid)

Prescription

CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN 柴胡疏肝散
(Bupleurum and Cyperus Formula) plus
PING WEI SAN 平胃散
(Magnolia and Ginger Formula) modified

- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................. 9g
- chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ..................... 9g
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 .................. 6g
- xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundi) 香附 ..................... 9g
- cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloidis) 苍术 ...................... 9g
- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 .................. 9g
- zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枝壳 ...................... 6g
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .............. 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With very scanty urine, add che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 12g and ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 12g.
27. ASCITES (DRUM LIKE ABDOMINAL DISTENSION)

Clinical features
• Swollen distended abdomen that feels like a bag of fluid on palpation
• Heaviness in the body and head
• Aversion to cold, the patient feels better with warmth on the abdomen
• Oedema of the extremities, generally non-pitting
• Scanty urine
• Loose stools or diarrhoea

Pathophysiology
Cold Damp type ascites can develop when Cold Damp accumulates in a patient with underlying Spleen yang deficiency. The Cold Damp obstructs the yang of the middle jiao, impairing fluid metabolism and transport. Pathological fluids accumulate, neither ascending or descending for elimination. The deficiency at this stage is a secondary consideration. The treatment principle is to first move fluids and clear the excess. Once the ascites is improving, the next step is to warm and tonify yang.

Patent medicines
Mu Xiang Shun Qi Wan 木香顺气丸 (Aplotaxis Carminative Pills) plus Wu Ling San 五苓散 (Hoelen Five Formula) or Wu Pi Wan 五皮丸 (Wu Pi Wan)

Acupuncture
Ren.11 (jian li -), Ren.17 (shan zhang), Ren.6 (qi hai -), Liv.14 (qi men -), Liv.13 (zhang men -), PC.6 (nei guan -), St.36 (zu san li -), GB.34 (yue ling quan -), Liv.3 (tai chong -), Ren.9 (shen men ▲)

Clinical notes
• The ascite in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as early cirrhosis of the liver, chronic hepatitis and schistosomiasis.
• This pattern can respond well to correct treatment and modification of any contributing lifestyle factors, such as limiting alcohol intake.
• While ascites most often is a mixed excess and deficient condition, in this pattern the illness is at an early stage and the patient may still be relatively robust. Gentle movement of qi is appropriate for those patients with little underlying deficiency. Acupuncture is often the treatment of choice to achieve this. If signs of Dampness persist, herbs should be added.

27.2 COLD DAMP

Pathophysiology
• Cold Damp type ascites can develop when Cold Damp accumulates in a patient with underlying Spleen yang deficiency. The Cold Damp obstructs the yang of the middle jiao, impairing fluid metabolism and transport. Pathological fluids accumulate, neither ascending or descending for elimination. The deficiency at this stage is a secondary consideration. The treatment principle is to first move fluids and clear the excess. Once the ascites is improving, the next step is to warm and tonify yang.

Clinical features
• Swollen distended abdomen that feels like a bag of fluid on palpation
• Heaviness in the body and head
• Aversion to cold, the patient feels better with warmth on the abdomen
• Oedema of the extremities, generally non-pitting
• Scanty urine
• Loose stools or diarrhoea
• Greasy white coat
• Soft and moderate or wiry and slow

Treatment principle
Transform Dampness and drain fluids
Warm yang and disperse Cold

Prescription

SHI PI YIN 实脾饮
(Magnolia and Atractylodes Combination) modified

This formula is excellent for warming yang, promoting diuresis and relieving the accumulation in the abdomen. It usually works quickly to clear accumulated fluids. Once fluids are moving well, a more tonifying prescription should be phased in.

fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 30g
Da fu pi (Pericarpium Arecaceae Catechu) 大腹皮 30g
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae) 白术 15g
mu gua (Fructus Chaenomelis) 木瓜 15g
zh i fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeprata) 制附子 12g
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 黄姜 10g
yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 10g
zh i ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枳壳 10g
hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 10g
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 10g
27.3 DAMP HEAT

Pathophysiology
- The fluid accumulation in this pattern results from obstruction to the movement and distribution of fluids by chronic retention of Dampness and Heat. The Damp Heat here is most frequently the result of chronic infection by parasites or viruses, or excessive alcohol consumption. It primarily affects the Liver, secondly the Spleen and Stomach.

Clinical features
- Swollen, distended, firm abdomen that feels worse for pressure
- Epigastric and/or abdominal pain, the abdomen is firm on the surface and painful when pressed
- Feverishness, flushing
- Bitter taste in the mouth
- Thirst or dry mouth with little desire to drink
- Scanty, concentrated urine
- Constipation and/or diarrhoea
- There may be jaundice in some patients

Patent medicines
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Bl.20 (pi shu +), Ren.9 (shen shu +), Bl.23 (shen shu +),
Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), Bl.39 (wei yang -),
Bl.22 (san jiao shu -)

Clinical notes
- The ascites in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis, intestinal tuberculosis or chronic nephritis.
- This pattern may progress to Spleen or Kidney yang deficiency if unresolved or poorly treated.
- The patient should be advised to eat mild warming food only until Spleen yang recovers.

Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ZHONG MAN FEN XIAO WAN 中满分消丸</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Separate and Reduce Fullness in the Middle Pill) modified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medicine</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yin chen (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sha ren (Fructus Amomi)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii)</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang lien (Rhizoma Coptidis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27.4 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
• This Blood stagnation pattern represents a serious and late stage of Liver and Spleen dysfunction. It usually overlaps with elements of yin deficiency and Spleen deficiency.

Clinical features
• Swollen, distended, hard abdomen with obvious dilated blue green veins radiating out from the umbilicus (caput medusae)
• Hypochondriac and abdominal pain
• Dark, ashen, sallow or purplish complexion, dark or purplish lips and conjunctiva, dark rings under the eyes
• Multiple vascular spiders on the face, neck, chest and trunk
• Palmar erythema
• Easy bruising, purpura
• Black, tarry stools
• Dry, scaly skin

Treatment principle
Invigorate Blood and eliminate Blood stagnation
Move qi and drain fluids

Prescription
HUA YU TANG 化瘀汤
(Transform Blood Stasis Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu li (Concha Ostreae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuan shan jia (Squama Manitis Pentadactylae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tao ren (Semen Persicae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radics)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qing pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae Viridae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
• With black stools, add san qi fen (powdered Radix Notoginseng) 三七粉 3g and ce bai ye (Cacumen Biotae Orientalis) 侧柏叶 12g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
• When the distension is severe, urination very scanty, the pulse strong and wiry and the patient's constitution strong enough, a dose of ZHOU CHE WAN (Vessel and Vehicle Pill 舟车丸 p.736) or, of the following formula, SHI ZAO TANG (Ten Jujube Decoction 十枣汤), may be given until the bowels open and urination increases, usually no more than 1-2 doses:
  - GAN SUI* (Radix Euphorbiae Kansui) 甘遂
  - DA JI* (Radix Euphorbiae seu Knoxiae) 大戟
  - YUAN HUA* (Flos Daphnes Genkwa) 花粉

Method: Grind equal amounts of each herb into powder. The dose is 0.5-1 gram (in a gelatin capsule or wrapped in a date) on an empty stomach. Wash the capsule down with a decoction made from 10 pieces of Da zao (Fructus Ziziphi Jujube) 代枣. This should produce abdominal discomfort and increased intestinal activity, followed by watery diarrhoea. Generally only one or two doses are taken. If watery diarrhoea persists it can be treated with cold rice porridge. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Patent medicines
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan) plus Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan 内消瘰疬丸 (Nei Xiao Luo Li Wan)

Acupuncture
Sp.10 (sae hai -), BL.17 (ge shu -), Liv.2 (xing jian -), Ren.3 (zhong jie -), Liv.13 (zhang men △), Liv.14 (qi men △), BL.18 (gan shu -), PI gen (M. BW-16), BL.20 (pi shu -), BL.21 (wei shu -)

Clinical notes
• The ascite in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as severe hepatic cirrhosis, chronic malaria or liver cancer.
• This is obviously a severe condition and management options are limited, however there has been some reported benefit gained from prolonged treatment.
• Strong (smashing) Blood movers are not appropriate in this condition as they may exacerbate the patients weakness. Gradual transformation of stagnant Blood while strengthening the Spleen and supporting qi is the correct approach. Harsh treatments (other than those required for very short periods of time to manage particular features like anuria) are avoided. When fluids are moving and signs of Blood stasis are subsiding, a more qi and Blood tonifying approach should be adopted.
27.5 SPLEEN AND KIDNEY YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency reflects a late stage of ascites where the predominantly early stage excess patterns (qi and Cold Damp stagnation) have given way to significant deficiency. Instead of obstruction of fluids, weakness of fluid metabolism now predominates. The treatment principle is now more focused on warming yang to move fluids.

Clinical features
- Swollen, distended abdomen, worse at the end of the day
- Epigastric fullness and discomfort
- Poor appetite
- Sallow or waxy pale complexion
- Aversion to cold, cold extremities
- Lethargy and fatigue
- Generalised oedema
- Scanty urine

T: Pale or bluish and swollen with toothmarks
P: Deep and thready or wiry, big and forceless

Treatment principle
Warm Spleen and Kidney yang
Aid transformation of qi and drain fluids

Prescription

FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN 附子理中丸
(Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger Formula) plus
WU LING SAN 五苓散
(Hoelen Five Formula) modified

This prescription is selected if deficiency of Spleen yang is prominent, characterised by severe oedema in the lower body and lower backache.

- Shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquise) 熟地 .... 15g
- Shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ... 30g
- Shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposites) 山药 .... 30g
- Ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .... 30g
- Fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .... 30g
- Mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 ...... 30g
- Rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 ....... 15g
- Zhi fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ... 15g
- Chuan niu xi (Radix Cynathae Officinalis) 川牛膝 ...... 15g
- Che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 .......... 30g

Method: Grind the herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with an appropriate reduction in dosage. When decocted Zhi fu zi is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xi an jian 丸) and Che qian zi is decocted in a muslin bag (hui jian 包煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nue Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
- Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills) - Spleen yang deficiency
- Jin Gui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotonic Pills) - Kidney yang deficiency

Acupuncture
- BL23 (shen shu + △), BL20 (pi shu + △), BL21 (wei shu + △), Sp6 (san jin jiao), Sp9 (jin ling quan), St36 (ze san li + △), Ren4 (quan yuan + △), Ren6 (qi hui + △), Ren9 (shui fen △)

Clinical notes
- The ascite in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis, intestinal tuberculosis and chronic nephritis.
- Prolonged treatment and a warming, bland diet is advised.
27.6 LIVER AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Liver and Kidney yin deficiency corresponds to a late stage of ascites, particularly following patterns involving Damp Heat. At this stage there will usually also be a degree of Blood stasis. This pattern can also develop as a result of excessive or inappropriate use of diuretics or drugs (which can damage yin) in early stage ascites.

Clinical features
- Swollen, distended, hard abdomen with obvious distended blue green veins radiating out from the umbilicus (caput medusae)
- Emaciation
- Dark complexion, red purple lips
- Dry mouth
- Restlessness, irritability
- Sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- Scanty concentrated urine
- May be various types of bleeding
- T scarlet or crimson and dry with little or no coat
- P wiry, thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Nourish and tonify Liver and Kidney yin
Cool the Blood, transform stagnation, drain fluids

Prescription

YI GUAN JIAN 一煎
( Linking Decoction) plus
XIAO YU TANG 消瘀汤
( Eliminate Blood Stasis Decoction) modified

- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .............. 18-45g
- gou zi (Fructus Lycii 枸杞子) .............. 9-18g
- bie jia (Carapa Amygae Sinensis) 甦甲 .............. 12g
- mu li (Concha Ostreae 母蛎) .............. 12g
- dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 当参 .............. 12g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .............. 12g
- chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 .............. 12g
- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri 柴胡) .............. 9g
- sha shen (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 .............. 9g
- mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 .............. 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .............. 9g

- chuan lian zi (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 .............. 6g
- qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viridae) 青皮 .............. 6g
- zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 柿壳 .............. 6g
- c zhu (Rhizoma Curcumae Ezhu) 藤术 .............. 6g
- san leng (Rhizoma Sparganii Stolonifer) 三棱 .............. 6g
- ji nei jin (Endothelium Cornue Gigeriae Galli) 鸡内金 .............. 6g

Method: Grind herbs to a fine powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted, in which case ji nei jin is powdered and added to the strained decoction (zheng fu 冲服). (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With afternoon fever, add yin chai hu (Radix Stellariae Dichotomae) 银柴胡 9g and di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Radicis) 地骨皮 12g.
- If urine is very scanty, add zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 猪苓 9g, bai mao gen (Rhizoma Imperatae Cylindrica) 白茅根 18g and tong cao (Medulla Tetrapanaceae Papyriferi) 通草 6g.
- With bleeding, add qian cao tan (charred Radix Rubiae Cordifoliae) 膈草炭 12g, mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g and xian he cao (Herba Agrimoniae Pilosae) 仙鹤草 12g.

Clinical notes
- The ascite in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as chronic liver cirrhosis and late stage of liver cancer.
- The long term prognosis is probably not very good, although reports from China suggest that even at this advanced stage there may be benefit from vigorous treatment. Stopping alcohol consumption (if appropriate) may help with quality of life.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR ASCITES

**Excess patterns (always with a degree of deficiency)**

*Qi* and *Damp* stagnation
- *Chai Hu Shu Gan San* 柴胡疏肝散 plus *Ping Wei San* 平胃散

*Cold Damp* - *Shi Pi Yin* 实脾饮

*Damp Heat* - *Zhong Man Fen Xiao Wan* 脈溼分消丸
  • with anuria + *Zhou Che Wan* 车车丸
  • with bleeding + *Xi Jiao San* 犀角散

*Blood stagnation* - *Hua Yu Tang* 化瘀汤

**Deficient patterns**

*Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency*
- *Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan* 附子理中丸 plus *Wu Ling San* 五苓散

*Liver and Kidney yin deficiency*
- *Yi Guan Jian* 一贯煎 plus *Xiao Yu Tang* 消瘀汤

---

**Disorders of the Heart**

28. *Chest Pain*

Heat scorching and knotting the chest
- *Phlegm* obstruction
  - *Qi* stagnation
- Cold congealing Heart Blood
- *Heart yang* deficiency
- *Blood stagnation*
- *Heart (Lung and Spleen) qi* deficiency
- *Heart (and Kidney) yin* deficiency

---

**Endnote**

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle○ or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
CHEST PAIN

Chest pain is pain, discomfort, fullness or a feeling of oppression affecting the area bounded by the lower costal margin below and the clavicles above. Chest pain is a common presentation of heart disease but not all chest pain involves the heart. The types that do involve the heart, however, often reflect serious underlying disease. In addition to pain of cardiac origin, chest pain frequently reflects disease of the lungs, musculoskeletal system or gastrointestinal system. The patterns described in this chapter correspond to numerous different biomedical conditions, including various cardiovascular and infectious diseases and emotional disorders. To clarify what can be a complex topic, some possible biomedical correlations are summarised in Figure 28.8.

In TCM terms, chest pain has numerous causes, although the basic mechanism that gives rise to pain is common to them all—obstruction to the circulation of qi and Blood (hu tong zhe tang 不通則痛, where there is obstruction, there is pain). The Chinese name xiong bi literally translates as chest obstruction, the character for bi 病 the same as is used in bi zheng (病證)—Painful Obstruction Syndrome.

The mechanism of chest pain may be one of deficiency or excess. In the deficient patterns, the problem is weak propulsion of Blood with consequent pooling, or yin deficiency causing increased viscosity and stickiness of Blood. In excess patterns, a pathogenic substance blocks the circulation of qi and Blood.

The nature of the pain described in this chapter varies depending on the cause and clear identification of the pain quality can give valuable clues as to the origin of the pain. (See Key Diagnostic Points, Box 28.1)

In the Western world (as indeed in China) heart disease is a major cause of death, and for many sufferers the first symptom of a heart attack is pain. With improving education and more sophisticated diagnostic techniques, heart disease can be picked up at earlier stages and it is at these early stages that TCM is particularly useful. Because heart disease is so prevalent and a major cause of death, all practitioners should be familiar with emergency procedures. These are summarised in Box 28.2. It should be noted that while a man having a heart attack typically presents with the characteristic symptom of crushing retrosternal pain, women are just as likely to feel nausea or vague discomfort in the upper abdomen and back. Older women often get lots of little infarcts that may be symptomless but gradually cause more and more fatigue and reduced exercise tolerance.

All practitioners should be able to recognise pain or symptoms of cardiac origin, and differentiate them from symptoms arising from other structures. Clear identification of the pain origin and an understanding of the biomedical physiology involved not only aids prognosis and the correct lifestyle advice, but determines the necessity to bring in other forms of medical intervention. When in doubt, referral is strongly advised. The following descriptions will aid in distinguishing the origin of the chest pain.

DISTINGUISHING THE (BIOMEDICAL) ORIGIN OF THE CHEST PAIN

Pain of cardiac origin has some key characteristics that help distinguish it from other causes of chest pain:

- **Location**—cardiac pain is typically retrosternal or sometimes upper abdominal upper thoracic (Fig. 28.1, 28.2).
- **Radiation**—pain from cardiac ischaemia, especially if it is severe, may radiate to the throat, jaw, teeth and arms (particularly the left, Fig. 28.2).
- **Aggravation**—ischaemic cardiac pain is initiated by exertion and relieved by rest. Pain associated with a specific movement (twisting, bending, stretching) is likely to be myofacial in origin.
- **Character of the pain**—pain of cardiac origin is often described as squeezing, crushing, aching or heavy, however it may be experienced as indigestion or vague chest discomfort.
- **Associated symptoms**—shortness of breath, palpitations, cyanosis, pallor, sweating, syncope, some patients report experiencing a 'sense of doom'.
- **Objective signs**—people with a predisposition to heart disease may develop a vertical or tangential crease on the ear lobes and a horizontal crease across the bridge of the nose; there will often be a deep narrow central crack on the tongue extending to
the tip.

- **Other** – there may be a history of recurrent pain or medication for heart disease.

**Pain of non cardiac origin can be distinguished by the following characteristics:**

**Gastro-intestinal pain**
- Oesophageal (Fig 28.3) – burning or constricting retrosternal pain that may radiate to the jaw. It is aggravated or precipitated by eating, lying flat or bending over (especially after eating) and is relieved by antacids. Oesophageal spasm may also be initiated by stress.
- Gall bladder disease (Fig 28.4) – colicky or deep aching right hypochondriac pain. The pain may radiate to the scapula or right shoulder and is generally (but not always) related to fatty foods, and associated with flatulence and dyspepsia.
- Peptic ulcer – gnawing retrosternal pain, worse thirty minutes to three hours after eating, relieved by antacids.
- Hiatus hernia – retro-sternal pain which may be burning, associated with lying flat and eating.

**Lung disease**
- Pleurisy – a pleural rub which varies with breathing, associated with fever and cough and focal pain that is worse with coughing and inspiration.
- Bronchitis – fever, cough, pain worse with coughing.
- Pneumonia – fever, cough and coloured sputum, pain worse with coughing.
- Pneumothorax (Fig 28.5) – sudden onset, asymmetric air entry, worse with inspiration.
- Pulmonary embolus or infarct – sudden onset with haemoptysis and shortness of breath.

**Vascular**
- Dissecting aortic aneurysm – sudden, severe midline pain radiating to the abdomen and legs.

**Pain of costal or spinal origin**
- Vertebral dysfunction of the lower cervical or more commonly thoracic spine, typically T4-7 (usually costovertebral or facet joint dysfunction) – dull or aching pain, which is aggravated by exertion, certain body movements or deep breathing. Patients may be able to trace the pain along the affected segment. Pressure pain will be found at one or more spinal segments.
- Costochondritis – inflammation and focal pain associated with strain (or vital infection) at the costochondral or sternocostal junction.
- Rib fracture – following trauma or intense cough.

**Myofacial pain**
- Spasm or strain of muscles of the chest wall – chest pain with a predictable distribution. It tends to vary with posture or movement, can be brought on by exertion but is not quickly relieved by rest. Trigger points or points of tenderness (ah shiu) over a rib or costal cartilage will be evident. Spasm of intercostal muscles can be severe and episodic, mimicking symptoms of myocardial infarction.

**Other**
- Shingles – ‘nervy’ pain along a neural pathway.

**TCM AETIOLOGY**

In TCM terms, the aetiology and manifestation of chronic or recurrent chest pain is invariably complex. In most cases there will be a mix of deficiency and excess—the root being deficient, the manifestation excess. Patterns frequently mingle, overlap or transform into one another. Care in diagnosis and flexibility in prescription are required for satisfactory results.

Some patterns, notably the exterior Heat pattern and some forms of the Liver qi stagnation pattern, are acute and reasonably straightforward to diagnose and treat. Keep in mind, however, that these patterns can overlap with other more chronic patterns as well.
Yang deficiency and Cold

Yang deficiency is at the root of much presenting chest pain, particularly that involving the Heart, and is the underlying condition for the severe excess conditions of Cold and Phlegm obstruction. Heart yang deficiency generally has its basis in Kidney or Spleen yang deficiency. When Heart (and Spleen or Kidney) yang is weakened it can give rise to chest pain in several ways:

1. From accumulation of Cold (which 'freezes and constricts' coronary vessels).
2. Due to weakness of the Heart's pumping action and subsequent pooling of Blood and development of Blood stasis.
3. From failure to mobilise and metabolise fluids which accumulate and congeal into Phlegm, which can then obstruct the coronary vessels.

Weakness of yang may be an inherited condition or may develop as a result of age, chronic illness, overexertion, too much exposure to cold environmental conditions or excessive lifting or standing. Kidney yang or qi may also be damaged by excessive ejaculation or, in women, by many pregnancies.

The acute pattern of Cold congealing Heart Blood always has its root in yang deficiency - at a certain point enough Cold accumulates to cause the severe pain characteristic of constriction by Cold. Cold type chest pain can also be set off by external Cold, for example from invasion of pathogenic Cold, breathing cold air, or ingesting cold substances. This is usually only able to occur when there is an underlying yang deficiency.

Heat

The Heat that gives rise to chest pain is usually external. The Heart and Lungs are easily affected by Heat and other pathogens (see Acute Exterior Disorders pp.30, 48). The initial pathogen may be Hot, Cold or Damp, the latter two becoming Hot once lodged internally. The presence of pre-existing internal Heat from stagnant qi, yin deficiency or overconsumption of heating substances (including tobacco) can predispose patients to increased damage by external Heat. Once affected by Heat, Lung fluids and yin can be dried out and damaged. This can cause thickening of fluids into Phlegm, or increase the viscosity of Blood leading to stagnation of Blood.

BOX 28.1 KEY TCM DIAGNOSTIC POINTS

Stuffy sensation, fullness and pain

- Stiffness, generalised mild discomfort or fullness, which is aggravated by stress and emotional upset, and relieved by relaxation or sighing – qi stagnation.
- Watery sputum or rattles in the chest, chest stuffiness or discomfort, which is worse on overcast or rainy days, and a greasy coat on the tongue – accumulation of Phlegm.
- Mild pain and stuffiness, brought on by activity and accompanied by shortness of breath, palpitations or flutters – Heart qi deficiency.

Burning Pain

- Mostly due to some Hot pathogen. If accompanied by irritability, restlessness, a red tongue with a yellow coat and a rapid pulse without obvious signs of deficiency – pathogenic Heat or Fire penetrating into the Heart.
- Stiffness in the chest, paroxysmal burning pain, expectoration of thick sputum and a greasy yellow tongue coat – Phlegm Heat or Fire.
- Burning pain with palpitations, dizziness and a red, dry tongue with little or no coat – deficient Fire from yin deficiency.

Sharp pain

- A sharp or stabbing pain, which is fixed in location, accompanied by a purple tongue indicates stagnant Blood.
- Sharp pain may also be due to focal disorders of the chest wall, in which case it is usually aggravated by deep breathing or coughing.

Crushing, squeezing, twisting pain

- Feels like the Heart is being squeezed and crushed in a vice, or a weight is squashing the chest. Often accompanied by cold limbs, aversion to cold, and signs of yang deficiency. Mostly due to accumulation of yin Cold as a result of yang deficiency or invasion by external Cold.

Phlegm

Phlegm is a frequently implicated pathogen in chest pain. It can be the result of several factors. In the West, diet is a common cause of Phlegm accumulation. Overeating generally, which stresses the digestive system leading to inefficient digestion and a buildup of Dampness and Phlegm, is common. With its emphasis on dairy foods, sugar, fats and meat, the Western diet predisposes strongly to accumulation of Phlegm. Cold, raw foods can deplete Spleen yang. When the Spleen is weak, it produces Dampness which can congeal into Phlegm over time. Yang deficiency in general (affecting either or all of the Heart, Kidneys and Spleen) causes impaired fluid metabolism, with consequent accumulation and congealing of fluids into Phlegm.

Prolonged Liver qi stagnation may damage the Spleen and retard the movement of fluids, which then congeal into Phlegm. Phlegm and Liver qi...
stagnation are commonly seen together. Phlegm may also be congenital.

**Liver qi stagnation**

Emotional imbalance can affect the movement of qi in different organ systems and if these organ systems exert influence on the chest area then chest pain may result. The Liver system, including the Liver channel that traverses the chest, is the one most notably affected by emotional upsets, especially stress, frustration and anger. Obstruction of qi in other organs, such as the Heart or Lungs, can also cause chest pain, oppression, tightness, stiffness, and difficulty getting a deep breath. Such pain may be precipitated by grief (a broken heart?), anxiety or overexcitement. Frequently, the pain associated with Liver qi stagnation is of a muscular type, that is, the muscles of the chest wall, oesophagus or diaphragm are in a state of chronic tension. This chronic tension can be exacerbated into tightness, discomfort and pain by increased stress.

Several complications of qi stagnation can also lead to chest pain. Prolonged qi stagnation can lead to Blood stagnation and the development of obstructive heart disease. Qi stagnation can generate Heat that ascends into the chest, or travels via the reverse controlling (ke 火, p.70) cycle to injure the Lungs or through the generative (sheng 生, p.70) cycle to the Heart. Liver qi stagnation may also damage the Spleen and retard fluid movement, causing accumulation of Dampness and congealing of fluids into Phlegm. The common feature of all types related to Liver qi stagnation is provocation or aggravation by emotional turmoil and stress.

**Blood stagnation**

Blood stagnation is often the end result of other prolonged disorders affecting the chest. Any pathology, excess or deficient, if long lasting enough, may lead to Blood stasis or involve elements of Blood stasis. Cold pathologies (Cold and yang deficiency) can cause stagnation by constricting the vessels and slowing circulation. Hot pathologies (Heat, Phlegm, Heat and yin deficiency) can cause stagnation by 'evaporating' Blood and increasing the viscosity and stickiness of Blood. Blood stagnation frequently complicates yang deficiency, yin deficiency, Phlegm obstruction and prolonged Liver qi stagnation.

**Heart and Kidney yin deficiency**

Kidney yin becomes damaged through overwork (especially while under stress), late nights, shift work, insufficient sleep, and use of recreational drugs. Kidney yin may also be damaged by febrile illnesses, ageing and excessive sexual activity, or, in women, by many pregnancies. Heart yin may be damaged by emotional trauma, shock or ongoing anxiety and worry. Heat affecting the chest and febrile illnesses also easily damage Heart jin. If Kidney yin is weak then Heart yin won't be supported—Kidney Water fails to balance Heart Fire. Once Heart jin has been damaged, circulation of Blood is impaired by increased Blood viscosity and by deficient Heat which smoulders in the chest. The Heat can also congeal fluids into Phlegm and the increased Blood viscosity can contribute to Blood stagnation. As well as complication by Phlegm and Blood stagnation, Heart yin deficiency is frequently complicated by other deficiencies, such as qi and Blood deficiency.

**Qi (and Blood) deficiency**

Overwork, excessive worry or mental activity, irregular dietary habits, excessive consumption of cold, raw foods or prolonged illness can weaken Spleen qi. As the Lungs and Spleen are the source of the qi and Blood of the body, weakness in these organs will inevitably lead to a decrease in production of qi and Blood. Other causes are acute or chronic haemorrhage and malnutrition. Qi and Blood are so closely related that deficiency of one often leads to deficiency of the other. Qi deficiency is often complicated by qi stagnation, Blood stagnation or Phlegm and fluid accumulation.

**GENERAL APPROACH TO TREATMENT**

There are several approaches to treatment depending on the severity of the symptoms and the mixture of excess and deficiency. The manifestations of chest pain are usually excess (Phlegm, Cold, Heat, qi or Blood stasis), while the underlying cause, the root, is deficient (qi, yin, yang or a mixture). What this implies is that in almost every case treatment must be twofold—both reducing (excess) and supplementing (deficiency).

During acute episodes with severe pain, TCM treatment addresses the manifestations and attempts to eliminate the responsible pathogen. In severe cases, emergency management may be necessary (Box 28.2). Treatment of an acute episode usually involves strong dispersing drugs with the potential to damage sheng qi, therefore, once the pain is under control, root treatments should be phased in.

In non acute cases, both the manifestation and the root can be treated together, although in general it is better to focus first on resolving the excess, and then when the patient's condition is improving, phase in the root tonifying treatment. This is primarily the case with herbal treatment, as excess removing herbs can aggravate deficiency and visa versa. The initial herbal approach is therefore weighted towards resolving Phlegm or Blood stasis, clearing Heat or warming and expelling Cold. Acupuncture treatment is slightly different, in that it is possible to tonify deficiency and remove excess effectively at the same time without causing any problems.
BOX 28.2 ACUTE CARDIAC EPISODE

Sudden severe chest pain, especially when accompanied by shortness of breath, sweating and arm or jaw pain, is cardiac in origin and must be treated as potentially fatal. Paramedic attention should be sought immediately.

Emergency management
- During an acute episode, emergency management may be necessary until paramedic assistance is available. If a pulse cannot be detected, CPR should be started immediately. The principle of treatment is to improve circulation of yang qi in the chest.

TCM MANAGEMENT

Main acupuncture points
- PC.6 (nei guan), PC.4 (xi men), BL.15 (xin shu)
- Huatuo Jiaji points around T4-T5, Ren.17 (shan zhong)

All points are treated with strong reducing stimulation, with the needle sensation radiating up the arm or to the chest. The points can be needled or pressed with strong finger pressure or other appropriate instrument.

Secondary points
Select from
- HT.5 (tong li) - if palpitations are severe
- PC.5 (jian shi) - stuffiness in the chest, sense of impending doom
- ST.36 (zu san li) - severe sweating, collapse

Patent medicines
Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan 冠心舒心香丸 (Guan Xin Su Ho)

Many patients with pain of cardiac origin will be taking various conventional medications. The drug regime usually includes vasodilators like nitroglycerine, which act by dispersing accumulated qi, as well as adrenaline blocking beta-blockers. Beta-blockers are thought to be Cold in nature, with an adverse long term effect on various organ systems. Cold drugs will damage yang and ultimately aggravate underlying yang deficiency. As treatment progresses, patients may wish to decrease their reliance on conventional medication. Any reduction of medication must be done slowly and under supervision over a period of months, as sudden withdrawal can precipitate an acute cardiac episode. Of course, this is only attempted as the patient's condition improves.

BOX 28.2 ACUTE CARDIAC EPISODE

Sudden severe chest pain, especially when accompanied by shortness of breath, sweating and arm or jaw pain, is cardiac in origin and must be treated as potentially fatal. Paramedic attention should be sought immediately.

Emergency management
- During an acute episode, emergency management may be necessary until paramedic assistance is available. If a pulse cannot be detected CPR should be started immediately. The principle of treatment is to improve circulation of yang qi in the chest.

TCM MANAGEMENT

Main acupuncture points
- PC 6 (nei guan), PC.4 (xi men), BL.15 (xin shu)
- Huatuo Jiaji points around T4-T5, Ren.17 (shan zhong)
All points are treated with strong reducing stimulation, with the needle sensation radiating up the arm or to the chest. The points can be needled (tong II)
- Ht.5 (jian shi)
- PC.5 (zu san II)
- St.36 (xi men)
- Bl.15 (nei guan)

Secondary points
Select from
- Ht.5 (tong II) - if palpitations are severe
- PC.5 (jian shi) - stuffiness in the chest, sense of impending doom
- St.36 (zu san II) - severe sweating, collapse

Patent medicines
Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan (Guan Xin Su Ho)

Many patients with pain of cardiac origin will be taking various conventional medications. The drug regime usually includes vasodilators like nitroglycerine, which act by dispersing accumulated qi, as well as adrenaline blocking beta-blockers. Beta-blockers are thought to be Cold in nature, with an adverse long term effect on various organ systems. Cold drugs will damage yang and ultimately aggravate underlying yang deficiency. As treatment progresses, patients may wish to decrease their reliance on conventional medication. Any reduction of medication must be done slowly and under supervision over a period of months, as sudden withdrawal can precipitate an acute cardiac episode. Of course, this is only attempted as the patient's condition improves.

Dorking, Surrey
Figure 28.8 TCM patterns and possible biomedical correlations

Figure 28.9 Summary of deficient chest pain patterns and complications
28. CHEST PAIN  761

28.1 HEAT SCORCHING AND KNOTTING THE CHEST

Pathophysiology

- If external Heat penetrates through the Four Levels (see pp.30, 33) and settles in the Heart or Pericardium, the local qi is 'scorched and knotted' causing sharp burning pain in the chest. This pattern can also be associated with external Heat affecting the Lungs or be the result of internally generated Heat from qi stagnation or Heart or Liver Fire. External patterns tend to be acute (and associated with some sort of infection), while internally generated Heat tends to be a more chronic condition.

Clinical features

- burning, sharp, focal or retrosternal chest pain aggravated by cough, deep breathing, movement, exertion and swallowing
- fever
- irritability
- dry mouth and thirst
- rough laboured breathing
- cough with thick yellow mucus
- constipation
- T red, with a yellow, rough coat
- P rapid, or slippery and rapid

Treatment principle

Clear Heat, purge Fire
Invigorate Blood, disperse accumulation

Prescription

XIAO XIAN XIONG TANG 小陷胸汤
(Minor Sinking Into the Chest Decoction)

- Huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 .............................. 6g
- Ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ...................... 9-12g
- Gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 桔梗 ............................ 24-30g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- If Heat or Fire affects the Heart causing insomnia, dream disturbed sleep, anxiety and tongue ulcers, add sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 15g, dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 9g, gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 6g and mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 6g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g.
**zhi shi** (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 积实 9g and **hou po** (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 9g.

- When cough is severe, see also pp.77, 84, 90.
- If the Heat has damaged fluids producing symptoms of dryness, add **xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 12g, **mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 夏冬 12g and **sheng di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 15g.

  - With signs of Blood stasis (stabbing, burning pain, fixed pain), add herbs to invigorate Blood, remove Blood stasis and move qi like **mu dan pi** (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 肉丹皮 9g, **chi shao** (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 桂枝 12g, **pu huang** (pollen Typhae) 芦荟 9g, **yu jin** (Tuber Curcuma) 蒲黄 12g and **zhi shi** (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 9g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**Heat affecting the Pericardium**

- If the Heat sinks into the Pericardium, with fever, disorientation, delirium or impaired consciousness, the correct treatment is to clear Heat and Toxicity, and resuscitate with **ZHI BAO DAN** (Greatest Treasure Special Pill 至宝丹, p.660).

**Other prescriptions for Heat in the chest**

- See also pp.709-711 for other formulae designed to treat external Heat in the chest.

**Stagnant Heat from Liver qi stagnation**

- If the Heat is internally generated (most commonly by prolonged Liver qi stagnation), see also Liver qi stagnation, pp.770-771. With Liver Fire, the treatment is to clear Liver Fire with **LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG** (Centiana Combination 龙胆泻肝汤, p.553) or **SANG DAN XIE BAI TANG** (Mulberry Leaf and Moutan Decoction to Drain the White 桑丹泻白汤, p.94).

**Patent medicines**

- **Huang Lian Jie Du Wan** 黄连解毒丸 (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan) - general Heat clearing formula for Heat affecting the Heart or Lungs
- **Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan** 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan) - severe Heat with constipation
- **Chuan Xin Lian Kang Yan Pian** 穿心连抗炎片 (Chuan Xin Lian Antiphlogistic Tablets) - general Heat
- **Qing Fei Yi Huo Pian** 清肺抑火片 (Ching Fei Yi Huo Pien) - Lung Heat

**Clinical notes**

- The chest pain in this pattern may correspond to disorders such as acute pericarditis, bronchitis, pneumonia, pleurisy, hiatus hernia, gastric reflux, peptic ulcer disease, psychogenic chest pain, costochondritis, stress related chest pain and smoke inhalation.
- In most cases, Heat type chest pain can respond reasonably well to correct treatment. Both external and internal Heat patterns occur in those who are overworked, often with a pre-existing Heart or Lung imbalance. Relapses occur at times of stress or overwork.
- Acute infections may need antibiotic therapy if the patient is elderly or frail or does not respond rapidly to herbal treatment.
- Costochondritis and hiatus hernia are treated very effectively with acupuncture (particularly applied to ah shi points), as is the pain associated with pericarditis and other inflammatory disorders.

**Acupuncture**

- for external Heat use LI.11 (qu chi -), BL.13 (fei shu -), LI.5 (chi ze -), PC.8 (iao yong -), BL.15 (xin shu -), DU.14 (da zhu -), PC.3 (pu ze I), Ren.17 (shan zhong -)
- for Liver Heat use PC.5 (qian shi), PC.6 (niu gan), BL.18 (gan shu -), Liv.2 (xing yuan -), Liv.5 (li gou -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), Liv.14 (qi men -),
- for hiatus hernia use St.36 (yu san il), St.44 (ti ting -), Ren.13 (shang wan), Ren.17 (shan zhong -), PC.6 (niu gan), Bl.21 (wei shu)
- for structural or focal pain use ah shi points and the metal and water points on the relevant channels
28.2 PHLEGM OBSTRUCTION

Pathophysiology
• Phlegm obstruction can develop in those with *yang* or *qi* deficiency, *qi* stagnation, *Heat* in the chest and accumulation of Dampness and Phlegm. The symptom picture varies depending on the aetiology, and the relative mixture of underlying deficiency and Phlegm excess. Phlegm (and its variations) is a common cause of chest pain, and frequently complicates (or is complicated by) other patterns. The general rule of treatment, however, is to resolve Phlegm before dealing with other complicating patterns.

• Chest pain occurs when Phlegm obstructs the airways causing congestion and an oppressive feeling of discomfort and tightness. Alternatively, Phlegm obstructs the vessels of the Heart impeding Blood flow, creating a sense of pressure and pain.

• There are four subgroups of this pattern—Phlegm Fluids, Turbid Phlegm (which is somewhat thicker and stickier than Phlegm Fluids), Phlegm Fire and Wind Phlegm. They represent progressions from the initial condition of Phlegm Fluids.

Clinical features

**Phlegm Fluids**
This type frequently co-exists with Heart and Kidney *yang* deficiency. Following resolution of the Phlegm Fluids, tonifying treatments should be applied (see p.777).

- mild stuffiness, discomfort or tightness in the chest which is aggravated during wet or cold weather
- cough with thin watery sputum
- nausea and poor appetite
- lethargy
- loose stools
T pale with a greasy white coat
P slippery

**Turbid Phlegm**
This term describes Phlegm Fluids that have thickened and become more sticky and viscous.

- suffocating, tight or oppressive sensation in the chest, or chest pain radiating to the shoulders or upper back, aggravated during cloudy or rainy weather
- tendency to obesity
- feeling of heaviness in the body
- dizziness

T greasy white coat
P slippery

**Phlegm Heat (Fire)**
If Phlegm stagnation generates Heat it is generally known as 'Phlegm Heat'. If pre-existing stagnant Heat, *Fire* or *jin* deficient Heat combines with Phlegm this is termed 'Phlegm Fire'. The greater the Heat signs the more 'Fire'.

- suffocating, tight, oppressive burning sensation or pain in the chest
- thick yellow sputum
- bitter taste in the mouth
- thirst
- irritability and restlessness, possible clouding of consciousness
- dry stools or constipation

T greasy yellow coat
P slippery rapid

**Wind Phlegm**
This is a combination of excess *yang* (usually rising Liver *yang*) and Phlegm, and is described in more detail in Wind Stroke, pp.658 and 672. See also Tremors, p.642.

- suffocating, tight sensation in the chest with occasional pain
- stiffness or retraction of the tongue
- speech impairment
- hemiplegia
- dizziness
- numbness and spasm in the limbs

T greasy coat
P wiry and slippery

Treatment principle
Open and unblock chest *yang* + warm and transform Phlegm Fluids + transform Turbid Phlegm + transform Phlegm and clear Heat (Fire) + extinguish Wind and transform Phlegm
Prescriptions

28.2.1 Phlegm Fluids

GUA LUO XIE BAI BAN XIA TANG 瓜楼薤白半夏汤
(Modified Trichosanthes, Bakers and Pinellia Combination)

- gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 桔梗 .......................... 30g
- xie bai (Bulbus Allii) 薏白 ..................................... 12g
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ...................... 10g
- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 ...................... 10g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 .................. 10g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 12g
- gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 茅术 .................. 6g
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 茭已 ..................... 6g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomum Cassiae) 香桂 ................ 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

28.2.2 Turbid Phlegm

WEN DAN TANG 温胆汤
(Modified Bamboo and Hoelen Combination)

- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ...................... 9g
- chen pi (Petricarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 15g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 .................. 9g
- zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹 .................... 9g
- dan nan xing* (pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 铁粉 ....... 9g
- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 莎草 ................ 10g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

28.2.3 Phlegm Heat (Fire)

HUANG LIAN WEN DAN TANG 黄连温胆汤
(Coptis Decoction to Warm the Gall Bladder, Modified)

- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ...................... 9g
- chen pi (Petricarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 15g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 .................. 9g
- zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹 .................... 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .................. 3g
- yu jin (Tuber Curcuma e) 余粮 ............................ 9g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With severe Phlegm Fire, or focal pain and distension, add fu hai shi (Pumice) 胆石 9g and hai ge ke* (Conchae Cyclinae Sinensis) 海蛤壳 9g.
- With irritability and insomnia, combine with ZHU SHA AN SHEN WAN (Cinnabar Pill to Calm the Spirit) 朱砂安神丸, p.807.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 牛黄 6-9g or combine with GUN TAN WAN (Vaporize Phlegm Pill) 蒸痰丸, p.694.

28.2.4 Wind Phlegm

DI TAN TANG 活痰汤
(Scour Phlegm Decoction)

- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 ...................... 9g
- chen pi (Petricarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .................. 9g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 15g
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实 .................. 9g
- zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹 .................... 9g
- dan nan xing* (pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 铁粉 ....... 9g
- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 莎草 ................ 10g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications

- With severe Phlegm Fire, or focal pain and distension, add fu hai shi (Pumice) 胆石 9g and hai ge ke* (Conchae Cyclinae Sinensis) 海蛤壳 9g.
- With irritability and insomnia, combine with ZHU SHA AN SHEN WAN (Cinnabar Pill to Calm the Spirit) 朱砂安神丸, p.807.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 牛黄 6-9g or combine with GUN TAN WAN (Vaporize Phlegm Pill) 蒸痰丸, p.694.
ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ................................. 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ......................... 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- To increase the Heat clearing, Phlegm transforming, Wind suppressing strength of the formula, other herbs, such as tian zhu huang (Concretio Silicea Bambusae Textillae) 天竺黄 6g, zhu li (Succus Bambusae) 竹沥 12g, sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 9g, jiang can (Bombyx Batryticatus) 胶卷 9g, di long (Lumbricus) 地龙 9g and tian ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻 9g, may be added as appropriate.

Patent medicines
Phlegm Fluids
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)

Turbid Phlegm
Er Chen Wan 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan)
Ping Wei San 平胃散 (Ping Wei San)
Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan)
- Spleen deficiency with Phlegm

Phlegm Heat
Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸 (Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan)

Wind Phlegm
Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan 阳阴降压丸 (Yang Yin Jiang Ya Wan)
Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan 天麻钩藤丸 (Tian Ma Gou Teng Wan)

Acupuncture
St.40 (jeng long -), Ren.17 (shan zhong -), PC.6 (nei guan), PC.5 (jian shi), PC.4 (xi men -), BL.13 (fei shu), BL.15 (xin shu), BL.14 (jue yin shu)
- with Phlegm Fluids add Lu.7 (lie que) and moxa to points on the trunk
- with Turbid Phlegm add Sp.3 (tai bei)
- with Phlegm Heat add PC.8 (lao gong -), Lu.6 (kong zai -) and Liv.2 (xing jian -)
- for Wind Phlegm see pp.657 and 673

Clinical notes
- Phlegm Fluids: cor pulmonale, angina, myocardial infarction, chronic bronchitis.
- Turbid Phlegm: atherosclerosis, coronary heart disease, myocardial infarction.
- Phlegm Heat: acute and chronic bronchitis, pneumonia, myocarditis, pericarditis.
- Wind Phlegm: CVA, hypertension.
- The Phlegm obstruction in this pattern often has its origin in the high fat diet popular in Western nations. While cholesterol status is still a controversial predictor of heart disease, it has been shown that diets rich in animal fats (low density lipoproteins) predispose to the development of atherosclerotic plaques in the coronary vessels. Atherosclerotic disease is often silent until it reaches the point where the obstruction causes ischaemia of cardiac muscle, resulting in the characteristic chest stuffiness or pain.
- Phlegm disorders require persistent treatment; herbs and their Phlegm dissolving properties being the treatment of choice. Phlegm dissolving herbs often have significant anti-cholesterol and anti-atherosclerotic action and their long term use (in conjunction with appropriate diet and lifestyle changes, especially stopping smoking) can begin to remove the atherosclerotic plaques from the artery walls. Acupuncture works well with herbs in these patterns, its qi moving abilities helping to dissolve Phlegm and relieve pain. Where there is serious organ damage, other forms of medical support will be necessary, and for bacterial infections in patients with weak constitutions, antibiotics may need to be taken in addition to or before treatment with herbs and acupuncture.
28.3 LIVER QI STAGNATION

Pathophysiology

- The Liver channel passes through the chest and thus influences the Heart and Lungs. Emotional stress constricts the qi in the Liver channel, and obstructs the free movement of qi, which accumulates in the chest. This pattern is frequently complicated by Phlegm, qi deficiency and/or Heat.

Clinical features

- mild, recurrent fullness, stuffiness, tightness or pain in the chest that is not localised, is provoked by emotional turmoil and relieved by sighing, belching and relaxation
- frequent sighing
- the patient may appear uptight, anxious, nervous or depressed
- dizziness, hyperventilation
- there may be epigastric distension and belching, after which the discomfort is relieved
- irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- if Heat has been generated by the stagnation, there may be a dry mouth, irritability, quick temper, facial flushing and acid reflux
- T unremarkable or dark (qing 青), or with red edges if there is Heat, or pale edges with Blood deficiency

Treatment principle

Move and regulate Liver qi
Strengthen the Spleen and harmonise Blood

Prescription

CHAI HU SHU GAN SAN (Bupleurum and Cyperus Formula)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhe Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions

With Spleen qi and Blood deficiency

- With significant digestive symptoms, or qi and Blood deficiency, XIAO YAO SAN (Bupleurum and Paeonia Formula) may be used instead to soothe the Liver, move qi, regulate the Spleen and harmonise Blood, with any of the above modifications.

With stagnant Heat

- If chronic qi stagnation generates Heat, the correct treatment is to soothe qi and clear stagnant Heat with DAN ZHI XIAO YAO SAN (Bupleurum and Paeonia Formula) may be used instead to soothe the Liver, move qi, regulate the Spleen and harmonise Blood, with any of the above modifications.

With constipation

- With constipation due to stagnant Heat, combine with DANG GUI LONG HUI WAN (Dang Gui, Gentiana Longdancao and Aloe Pill)
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ........................................ 30g
long dan cao (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 .................................. 30g
shan zhi z (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 .................................. 30g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 ........................................ 30g
huang lien (Rhizoma Coptidis ) 黄连 .................................................. 30g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri ) 黄柏 .................................................. 30g
da huang (Radix et Rhiza Rhei) 大黄 .................................................. 30g
lu hui (Herba Aloes ) 芦荟 ............................................................... 15g
qing dai (Indigo Pulverata Levis ) 青黛 ................................................. 15g
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香 ........................................ 6g
she xiang (Secretio Moschus) 肉香 ...................................................... 1.5g
Method: Grind the herbs to powder and form into 6-gram pills with honey. The dose is 1 pill twice daily, with ginger tea.

With prominent distension and fullness

- If distension and fullness in the lower chest and hypochondrium are prominent, with a continuous stuffy sensation which improves for pressure on the chest and warm drinks, XUAN FU HUA TANG (Flower Decoction) modified may be used.

  xuan fu hua (Flos Inulae) 旋复花 .................................................. 12g
  yu jin (Tuber Curcumaee) 郁金 .................................................. 9g
  xie bai (Bulbus Allii) 娇白 ...................................................... 9g
  tao ren (Semem Persicace) 桃仁 .................................................. 9g
  cong bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulos) 落白 ......................................... 6pce
  dang gui wei (tail of Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归尾 ........................ 6g
  hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 ...................................... 6g
  gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .................................. 6g
  qian cao gen (Radix Rubiae Cordifolia) 苦草根 ................................ 3g
  gua lou (Fructus Trichosanthis) 桂楼 ........................................... 15g
Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Jie Ke Lin Chiang Shan C)

Patent medicines

Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan 柴胡舒肝丸 (Chai Hu Shu Gan Wan)
Shu Gan Wan 舒肝丸 (Shu Gan Wan)
Xiao Yao Wan 小柴胡丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
- with qi and Blood deficiency
Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan 加味逍遥丸 (Jia Wei Xiao Yao Wan)
- with stagnant Heat
Mu Xiang Shen Qi Wan 木香顺气丸 (Apltaxis Carminative Pills)
Dan Shen Pian 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)
- with mild Blood stasis

Acupuncture
Liv.14 (qi men), Liv.3 (tai chong), PC.6 (wei guan), PC.5 (jian shi),
Bl.18 (gan shu), Ren.17 (shan zong), Lu.7 (lie que), yin tang (M-HN-3)
- with Heat add Liv.2 (xing jian -) and
- with deficiency add St.36 (zu san li +), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +) and
  Bl.20 (pi shu +)

Clinical notes

- The chest pain in this pattern may correspond to disorders such as pleurisy, globus hystericus, psychogenic chest pain, angina pectoris, costochondritis, hiatus hernia, oesophagitis, oesophageal spasm or gastric reflux.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment and appropriate stress management strategies. Liver qi stagnation probably only represents coronary heart disease when associated with Phlegm or if it leads to Blood stagnation. That stagnation of qi itself can precipitate a heart attack (where there already exists heart disease that may be associated with Phlegm and/or Blood stasis) was shown in a study conducted by the Mayo clinic. They found that the strongest predictor of a second heart attack was psychological stress. Similarly, the fact that Liver qi stagnation leading to Fire was dangerous in the presence of heart disease was shown by studies from Harvard University. They found the risk of having a second heart attack doubles after anger outbursts.
28.4 COLD CONGEALING HEART BLOOD CIRCULATION

Pathophysiology
- Chest pain caused by obstruction of qi and Blood due to an accumulation of Cold is acute and intense and reflects a serious (and critical) heart condition. The priority of treatment must be to rapidly expel Cold and promote the circulation of qi and Blood. The Cold in this pattern usually develops from an underlying yang deficiency and there will usually be evidence of systemic Cold. Once the acute episode or emergency is stabilised, the yang deficiency should be addressed (see Heart yang deficiency, p.777).

Clinical features
- severe crushing or constricting retrosternal chest pain, which may be initiated or aggravated by cold weather or cold foods; the pain may radiate to the neck, jaw, left arm or through to the back
- shortness of breath, dyspnoea or orthopnoea
- palpitations
- aversion to cold, cold extremities
- in severe cases there may be cyanosis, pallor, sweating and vomiting
- T normal, or pale with a thin white coat, or pale bluish or purple and swollen, with a white or greasy coat (depending on the degree of underlying yang deficiency)
- P deep, slow, tight and maybe knotted or intermittent, or thready, slow and knotted or intermittent

Treatment principle
Warm and disperse Cold, invigorate Blood
Remove obstruction and promote circulation of Heart yang

Prescription
DANG GUI SI NI TANG 当归四逆汤
(Dang Gui Decoction for Frigid Extremities)

This prescription is suitable for relatively mild cases.
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ........................................... 9g
gui zhi (Ramuulus Cinamomoni Cassiae) 桂枝 ........................................... 9g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 ........................................... 9g
xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 ........................................... 6g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 ........................................... 6g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ........................................... 6g
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ........................................... 4pce

WU TOU CHI SHI ZHI WAN 乌头赤石脂丸
(Aconite and Halloysia Pills) modified

This prescription is used in more severe cases, where pain is persistent and severe, radiating through to the back.
wu tou* (Radix Aconiti) 乌头 ........................................... 3g
zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ........................................... 6-9g
chuan jiao (Pericarpium Zanthoxyli Bungeanii) 川椒 ........................................... 6g
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 ........................................... 9g
chi shi zhi (Halloysium Rubrum) 赤石脂 ........................................... 15g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions
Collapse of Heart yang
- In severe cases the patient is cold and clammy, has cyanosis, extreme pallor, icy extremities and an imperceptible pulse indicating imminent collapse of Heart yang. The correct approach is to administer an emergency medicine such as GUAN XIN SU HE XIANG WAN (Liquor Styrax Pills for Coronary Heart Disease 冠心苏合香丸 - see below), and institute the emergency acupuncture techniques outlined in Box.28.2, p.756 until paramedic assistance arrives. An alternative approach used in hospitals in China is SHEN FU TANG (Ginseng and Prepared Aconite Decoction 参附汤, p.665) plus long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15-30g and mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15-30g administered intravenously.

Modifications
- With stagnant Blood (purple patches on the tongue, sharp pain, irregular pulse), add dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 30g, chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 10g and yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 10g.
- If there is significant wheezing and dyspnoea with thin sputum, add sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 15g, chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 10g, fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae cocos) 茯苓 15g, xing ren* (Semen Prunus Armeniaca) 杏仁 10g and bai dou kou (Fructus Amomi Kravanhi) 白豆蔻 6g.
28.5 HEART YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Heart yang deficiency is usually a complication of either or both Spleen or Kidney yang deficiency and there will often be symptoms of deficiency affecting all three organs. When Heart yang (zong qi 真气) is affected, the pumping power of the Heart is impaired and Blood begins to pool in the coronary vessels. Heart yang deficiency is at the root of several other pathologies, notably Phlegm (through weakened fluid metabolism), acute severe pain from Cold accumulation (see p.774), and Blood stagnation (from inadequate propulsion of Blood).

Clinical features
- a suffocating, tight or dull chest pain, or stuffiness in the chest, which is provoked or aggravated by exertion and exposure to cold
- shortness of breath with exertion, in severe cases (with pulmonary oedema) wheezing or orthopnoea
- cold intolerance and cold extremities
- palpitations
- listlessness and fatigue
- spontaneous sweating
- waxy pale complexion, with dark rings under the eyes and purple lips
- lower back soreness
- pitting oedema, worse in the lower limbs, with scanty urine
T pale bluish or purple and swollen, with a white or greasy coat
P deficient, thready, weak, slow or looped and intermittent

Treatment principle
Warm and tonify yang
Warm and invigorate Heart yang

Prescription
LI ZHONG WAN 理中丸 (Ginseng and Ginger Formula) modified

This prescription is suitable for mild cases with signs of Heart and Spleen yang deficiency.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan jiang</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui zhi</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For patients in a high risk group (previous transitory angina with yang deficiency), the patent medicine mentioned previously (Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan 冠心苏合香丸) should be carried at all times.
HEART

28. CHEST PAIN 779

bai (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 葱白 5pce, chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae) 沉香 3g, tan xiang (Lignum Santali Albi) 檀香 9g, xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Rotundu) 香附 9g, ji xue teng (Radix et Caulis Jixuueteng) 鸡血藤 15g, ze lan (Herba Lycopii Lucidi) 活血 9g, chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g, tao ren（Semem Persicace）桃仁 9g, hong hua (Flos Carthami Tricolorii) 红花 9g, yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g, ru xiang (Gummi Olibanum) 乳香 9g or mo yao (Myrrha) 没药 9g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

In severe cases, see Box 28.2, p.756. The patient is cold and clammy, cyanotic, extremely pale with icy extremities and an imperceptible pulse indicating imminent collapse of Heart yang. The correct approach is to administer an emergency medicine such as GUAN XIN SU HE XUAN WAN (Liquid Syrups Pills for Coronary Heart Disease) and institute the emergency acupuncture techniques until paramedic assistance arrives. An alternative approach used in hospitals in China is SHEN FU TANG ( Ginsing and Prepared Aconite Decoction 参附汤, p.665) plus long gu （Os Draconis) 龙骨 15-30g and mu li* （Concha Ostreae）牡蛎 15-30g administered intravenously.

Patent medicines

Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexetom Pills)

- used inbetween episodes of pain to strengthen the constitution

Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chang Yuen Medical Pills)

Xiao Hua Luo Dan 小活络丹

- a small dose of this very hot medicine may be useful in severe cases.

Guan Xin Su He Xiang Won 冠心苏合香丸 (Guanyin Su He)

- for acute or severe pain during an episode

Acupuncture

Bl.15 (zhe shu ▲), Bl.14 (jue yin shu ▲), Bl.23 (shen shu ▲), Ren.6 (qi hai ▲), Ren.4 (quanyuan ▲)Ht.7 (shen men), PC.6 (wei guan), Ren.9 (shen fen ▲), St.36 (zuo sina), Sp.6 (zao yin jiao)

- in severe cases see Box 28.2, p.756

Clinical notes

- The chest pain in this pattern may correspond to disorders such as congestive cardiac failure, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction and coronary artery disease.

- In general, Heart yang deficiency is the predisposing pathology for more serious (and possibly fatal) cardiac episodes, but may respond

ZHEN WU TANG 真武汤

(True Water Decoction) modified

This prescription is selected when Heart and Kidney yang deficiency is causing generalised and pulmonary oedema (as in congestive cardiac failure), with dyspnoea, orthopnoea and frothy sputum. The correct treatment is to warm the yang and promote urination.

zhì fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaelii Praeparata 制附子 ...... 9g
chá o bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Astragali Macrocephalae) 炒白术 .............................. 9g
shèng jìang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .......................... 9g
bái shào (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 .......................... 12g
fu líng (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 12g
ché qian zì (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子 .......................... 12g
zhè xìe (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 .......................... 12g

Method: Decocotion. Zhì fu zì should be decocted for 30 minutes before the other herbs (zhou jian 先煎), che qian zì is usually cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian 包煎). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue) When fluids are moving, LI ZHONG WAN or the following prescription JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN should be selected, depending on the underlying pattern.

JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN 金匮肾气丸, p.874

(Rehmannia Eight Formula)

This is the representative Kidney yang strengthening formula, and is excellent as a general yang tonic. In cases of chest pain, it is used in between acute episodes of pain to strengthen both Heart and Kidney yang. It is particularly useful following resolution of the acute phase of pulmonary or generalised oedema.

Modifications (apply to all three prescriptions)

- If the Cold and chest pain are relatively severe, add two or three of the following herbs (where not already included): li róng pían* (sliced Cori Cervi Parvum) 猪耳片 3g, chuan jiao (Pericarpium Zanthoxyl Bungean) 川椒 6g, wú zhǔ yú (Fructus Evodiae Rutaecarpaceae) 吴茱萸 6g, bì bā (Fructus Piperis Longi) 草胡椒 3g, gào liáng jiāng (Rhizoma Alpini Alpiniae Officinalis) 草豆蔻 9g, xì xīn* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 6g, zhì fū zì* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaelii Praeparata) 制附子 6g or chì shì zhī (Halloysitum Rubrum) 赤石脂 15g.

- With qi and Blood stasis, add two or three of the following herbs: cong...
28.6 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- Blood stagnation is most frequently encountered as a complication of another pathology. Elements of Blood stasis are found in most chronic cases of chest pain (and in some relatively acute types, see below). Blood stasis usually becomes prominent late in the course of a disease, and represents a serious and perhaps life threatening development. Blood stasis is a common feature of chronic chest pain patterns, and may involve some pathology of the coronary circulation or malignancy.
- Blood stagnation may also follow an acute external invasion of Wind Cold Damp to the Heart (as in rheumatic fever), or a trauma to the chest wall.

Clinical features
- relatively chronic and severe chest pain, which is stabbing or crushing, fixed in location and usually worse at night or with sudden excitement, anger, emotion or exertion
- palpitations, or sensations of the heart skipping beats during an attack
- stuffiness or fullness in the chest
- irritability, restlessness, easy anger or depression
- spider naevi on the chest and face
- purplish lips, nails, sclera, conjunctiva
- may be accompanying symptoms of Liver qi stagnation
- T dark or red purple with brown or purple stasis spots and a thin white coat. Sublingual veins are distended and dark.

P deep and choppy or wiry, or intermittent

Treatment principle
Invigorate Blood and eliminate Blood stasis
Open the Heart vessels and stop pain

Prescription

XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐瘀汤 (Adalryzanthes and Persica Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semen Persicae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PT - prothrombin time
Variations and additional prescriptions
For mild cases

- In relatively mild cases, DAN SHEN YIN (Salvia Decoction 丹参饮) may be sufficient.
  - dan shen (Salvia Miltiorrhiza) 丹参 .................................................. 30g
  - tan xiang (Lignum Santali Albi) 桃香 ............................................. 5g
  - sha ren (Frutus Amomi) 沙仁 .......................................................... 5g
  Method: Decoction.

Pain following trauma

- When associated with trauma (for example following a motor vehicle accident or broken rib), the formula of choice is FU YUAN HUO XUE TANG (Revive Health by Invigorating the Blood Decoction 复元活血汤, p.578). This formula is usually only used for a couple of weeks, depending on how serious the trauma is. Initially, the patient should experience loose stools or diarrhoea as the bruising and pain resolve. All the modifications noted above apply to this formula also.

In the post acute phase when qi stagnation signs become obvious

- Because qi and Blood stagnation occur so frequently together, after the main signs of Blood stasis have eased, qi stasis often becomes prominent. In this case (once the pain has been eased) use XIAO YAO SAN (Bupleurum and Angelica Formula 还虚散 p.139) plus dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhiza) 丹参 30g, zhi xiang fu (prepared Rhizoma Cypere Rotundi) 制香附 6g and yu jin (Tuber Curculiei) 郁金 10g.

Patent medicines

Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Dan Shen Pian 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)
Jian Kang Wan 健康丸 (Sunho Multi Ginseng Tablets)
Sheng Tian Qi Pian 生田七片 (Raw Tian Qi Ginseng Tablets)
Jin Gu Die Sheng Wan 筋骨跌伤丸 (Chin Koo Tiek Shang Wan)
Guan Xin An Kou Fu Ye 冠心安口服液 (Guan Xin An Kou Fu Ye)
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 如呼乌金丸 (Woo Garm Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture

BL15 (xin shu), BL14 (yer yin shu), BL17 (gu shu), biau tuo jia ji (M-BW-35) - from T3-T7 depending on tenderness,
PC6 (nei guan), PC4 (xi men), Ren17 (shen zang), Du12 (shan zhu),
Du10 (feng tai), Sp10 (xue bei)
  - with yang deficiency add moxa
  - with qi stagnation add Liv3 (tai zhuang)
  - with Phlegm add St40 (jing long)
Clinical notes
- The chest pain in this pattern may correspond to disorders such as angina pectoris, myocardial infarction, coronary artery disease, cor pulmonale, trauma including contusions and rib or sternum fractures.
- Keep in mind that in most cases of chest pain, even though the manifestation is excess, the root is deficient (except in trauma). Most Blood invigorating herbs, especially those that 'smash stagnant Blood' (破血) are quite dispersing and prolonged use will damage zheng qi. Strong Blood movers should be used cautiously and reserved for short term use in severe cases.

Pathophysiology
- The primary mechanism in this pattern is weak Heart qi (心气), which is unable to propel Blood adequately, leading to pooling of Blood. Weakness of Lung qi contributes by allowing qi to accumulate in the chest instead of descending as it should.

Clinical features
- mild, dull, intermittent chest pain
- stuffiness in the chest
- shortness of breath or dyspnoea with exertion
- palpitations with anxiety
- fatigue and weakness
- easily flustered and panicky
- low voice or reluctance to speak
- pale or sallow complexion
- spontaneous sweating
- all symptoms initiated or aggravated by exertion
- when the Spleen is involved there will be digestive symptoms, like poor appetite, abdominal distension and loose stools
- T pale and swollen with toothmarks and a thin coat
- P weak, thread, moderate or intermittent

Treatment principle
Tonify Heart qi, invigorate yang qi in the chest

Prescription
BAO YUAN TANG 保元汤
(Protect the Basal Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Aestivi Levis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae)</td>
<td>4pce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nei Ku Xue)
28.8 HEART (AND KIDNEY) YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

This pattern causes chest pain in two ways:
- First, deficient Heat can evaporate and concentrate body fluids making the Blood viscous and impeding its smooth circulation. This causes a feeling of fullness and pain, although at this stage the stagnation has usually not caused the degree of obstruction necessary to make the pain severe. Acute febrile disease (usually where Heat enters the Blood) can produce the same result, depending on the intensity of the fever.
- Second, deficient Heat may directly ‘scorch and burn’ the Heart and chest. This gives rise to a distinctive burning sensation in the chest.
- Heart jin anchors the shen. The anxiety that is characteristic of this pattern may be aggravated by fear of the disease itself, which intensifies the anxiety and tightness in the chest and so on, creating a self-perpetuating cycle.

Clinical features
- intermittent, relatively mild chest pain, which may be burning or suffocating
- fullness and discomfort in the chest
- palpitations with anxiety
- restlessness, irritability and insomnia
- night sweats
- facial or malar flushing
- dry mouth and throat
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- dizziness and tinnitus
- tendency to constipation
- weak or sore lower back and knees

T red, dry and thin with little or no coat or peeled patches in the coat; in severe or chronic cases there may be a deep narrow central crack that extends to the tip of the tongue

P rapid and thready or intermittent

Treatment principle

Nourish Heart jin and calm the shen
Regulate Blood, clear heat

Prescription

TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN 天王补心丹
(Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula)

This formula is selected when the shen signs (anxiety, insomnia, panic at-
tacks) are strong. This is the main representative formula for Heart and Kidney yin deficiency.

**SHENG DI TANG (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地**
- **Sheng di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .......... 120 (24) g
- **Tian dong** (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchinensis) 天冬 .......... 30 (12) g
- **Mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 桂冬 .......... 30 (12) g
- **Suan zao ren** (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 .......... 30 (12) g
- **Xuan shen** (Radix Scrophulariae) 元参 .......... 15 (12) g
- **Dan shen** (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 .......... 15 (12) g
- **Fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......... 15 (12) g
- **Dang gui wei** (Extremitas Radicis Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 30 (9) g
- **Wu wei zi** (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .......... 30 (9) g
- **Bai zhi ren** (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 白术 .......... 30 (9) g
- **Ren shen** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......... 15 (9) g
- **Jie geng** (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗 .......... 15 (9) g
- **Yuan zhi** (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 元参 .......... 15 (6) g
- **Zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......... 6 (6) g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2 to 3 times daily. May also be decocted, with the dosage in brackets. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**HUANG LIAN E JIAO TANG (Coptis and Ass-Hide Gelatin Decoction)**

This formula is selected when the chest pain and yin deficiency follow a febrile disease (a kind of shao yin syndrome, with pain or a sensation of Heat in the chest, insomnia and irritability, palpitations, anxiety, sores in the mouth and on the tongue, a red tongue with a dry yellow coat and a thready rapid pulse). The correct treatment is to clear Fire, nourish yin, stop irritability and calm the shen.

**Huang lian** (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 .......... 12 g
- **Huang qin** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 .......... 6 g
- **E jiao** (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 .......... 9 g
- **Bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .......... 6 g
- **Ji zi huang** (egg yolk) 蛋黄 .......... 2 yolks

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted in the hot strained decoction (yang hila). The egg yolks are stirred into the strained decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**REN SHEN YANG YING TANG (Ginseng Nutritive Combination)**

These formulae are combined when qi and yin are both deficient. The resulting pattern has characteristics of both deficiencies—increased Blood viscosity, weak propulsion of Blood and shallow breathing. The features are mild stuffiness and pain, shortness of breath, fatigue, palpitations, irritability, dry mouth, a swollen red or pink tongue with surface cracks and no cost, weak, thready and possibly slightly rapid pulse. The correct treatment is to tonify qi and nourish yin.

**SHENG MAI SAN (Generate the Pulse Powder)**

- **Shu di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 生地 .......... 12 g
- **Huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 .......... 12 g
- **Ren shen** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......... 12 g
- **Dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 .......... 9 g
- **Bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 .......... 9 g
- **Bai zhu** (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 .......... 9 g
- **Fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......... 9 g
- **Mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 .......... 9 g
- **Wu wei zi** (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .......... 6 g
- **Yuan zhi** (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 .......... 6 g
- **Chen pi** (pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 .......... 6 g
- **Zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......... 6 g
- **Rou gui** (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 .......... 3 g
- **Sheng jiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 .......... 4 pce
- **Da zao** (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .......... 4 pce

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**ZHI GAN CAO TANG (Baked Licorice Combination)**

This formula, also specific for qi and yin deficiency, is selected when palpitations and an intermittent or irregular pulse are prominent.

- **Sheng di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .......... 24 g
- **Zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 .......... 12 g
- **Ren shen** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......... 6 g
- **Gui zhi** (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .......... 9 g
- **Mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 .......... 9 g
- **E jiao** (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 .......... 6 g
- **Huo ma ren** (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 .......... 9 g
A possible alternative to *huo ma ren* (if it is unavailable) is *da hu ma* (Senem Linum Uitatussimum) 大胡麻. (Source: Shi Yang Zheng Yi Nie Ke Xue)

**SHENG MAI SAN 生脉散** *(Generate the Pulse Powder)*

- *sheng di* (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 ..... 18-45g
- *gou qi zi* (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 ..... 9-18g
- *shou di* (Radix Rehmanniae Conquinate) 熟地 ..... 24g
- *fu ling* (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 猪苓 ..... 12g
- *shan yao* (Radix Dioscoreae Opposite) 山药 ..... 9g
- *gou qi zi* 枸杞子 ..... 9g
- *shan zhu yu* (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ..... 9g
- *zhi gan cao* (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ..... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Ying Zheng Yi Nie Ke Xue)

**SHENG MAI SAN 生脉散** *(Generate the Pulse Powder)*

This combination is selected when *jin* and Blood are both deficient, with chest pain, palpitations, shortness of breath, fatigue and weakness, postural dizziness, dry mouth and throat, insomnia, restlessness, forgetfulness, night sweats, a pale or pink dry tongue with a red dry tip and thready rapid pulse.

- *dan shen* (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 ..... 30g
- *mai dong* (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 大参 ..... 15g
- *gua lou* (Fructus Trichosanthis) 杜ユ ..... 15g
- *yu jin* (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 ..... 10g
- *chi shao* (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ..... 10g
- *ren shen* (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ..... 9g
- *wu wei zi* (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ..... 6g
- *sha ren* (Fructus Amomi) 砂仁 ..... 6g
- *shu chang pu* (Rhizoma Acorn Graninici) 石菖蒲 ..... 6g
- *tan xiang* (Lignum Santali Albi) 檀香 ..... 4g

Method: Decoction. *Sha ren* is added towards the end of cooking (hou xia 后下).

(Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Liu Chuan Shou Ci)

### The following modifications apply to all the preceding prescriptions, (where herbs mentioned below are not already included)

- With Blood stagnation, add two or three of the following herbs: *dang gui* (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g, *dan shen* (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15g, *chuang xiong* (Radix Liguistici Chamutsin) 川芎 6g, *mu dan pi* (Cornu Oryctolagi) 牡丹皮 9g, *chi shao* (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 9g, *yu jin* (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g.

- With *yang* rising or deficient *Heat* (dizziness, blurring vision, facial flushing and numbness in the limbs), add two or three of the following herbs: *he shou wu* (Radix Pulsatilis Multiflor) 何首乌 12g, *nu zhen zi* (Fructus Lycii) 女贞子 12g, *gou teng* (Ramulus Uncariae) 老鹳草 12g, *shi jie pi* (Concha Halotidis) 石决明 15g, *hu pi* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, *gui ban* (Plastri Testudinis) 龟板 12g, *bie jiao* (Carapax Testudinis Sinensis) 鳖甲 12g, *zhen zhu mu* (Concha Murex) 珍珠母 15g, *long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15g.

- With stagnant *qi*, herbs that gently regulate *qi* without warming or drying are selected. Add two or three of the following herbs: *gua lou* (Fructus Trichosanthis) 杜ユ 24g, *yu jin* (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 3g, *zhi shi* (Fructus Immaturus Cistii Auranti) 枳实 6g, *mei gui hua* (Flos Roseae Rugosae) 玫瑰花 6g, *he huan pi* (Cortex Albiziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 12g, *chuang xiong* (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川芎 6g or *yan hu suo* (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g.

**Patent medicines**

- *Sheng Mai Wan 生脉丸* (Sheng Mai Wan) for Heart *jin* deficiency with *shen* disturbance
- *Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸* (Zuo Gui Wan) for Heart *jin* deficiency with *shen* disturbance
**SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR CHEST PAIN**

### Excess patterns

**Heat scorching and knotting qi in the chest - Xiao Xian Xiong Tang**

- Phlegm Fluids - *Gua Lou Xie Bai Ban Xia Tang* 瓜楼薤白半夏汤
- Turbid Phlegm - *Wen Dan Tang* 温胆汤
- Phlegm Fire - *Huang Lian Wen Dan Tang* 黄连温胆汤
- Wind Phlegm - *Di Tan Tang* 滋痰汤

### Cold congealing Heart Blood circulation

- mild cases - *Dang Gui Si Ni Tang* 当归四逆汤
- severe cases - *Wu Tou Chi Shi Zhi Wan* 乌头赤石脂丸
- with warm yang + *Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan* 冠心苏合香丸

### Blood stagnation - *Xue Fu Zhong Yu Tang* 血府逐瘀汤

- after trauma - *Fu Yuan Huo Xue Tang* 复元活血汤

### Deficient patterns

**Heart yang deficiency - Li Zhong Wan** 理中丸

- Heart and Kidney yang deficiency with pulmonary oedema - *Zhen Wu Tang* 真武汤
- in convalescent stage, with Kidney deficiency - *Jin Gui Shen Qi Wan* 金匮肾气丸
- with collapse of yang + *Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan* 冠心苏合香丸

**Heart (Lung and Spleen) qi deficiency - Bao Yuan Tang** 保元汤

**Heart and Kidney yin deficiency - Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan** 天王补心丹

- with qi and yin deficiency, with severe palpitations - *Zhi Gan Cao Tang* 炙甘草汤
- with Liver yin deficiency and qi stagnation - *Yi Guan Jian* 一贯煎
- predominant Kidney yin deficiency - *Zuo Gui Wan* 左归丸

### Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle○ or a hat↑, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Heart

29. Palpitations

Heart qi deficiency
Heart yang deficiency
Heart yin deficiency
Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency
Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency
Phlegm Heat
Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
Blood stagnation
Palpitations are an unpleasant and sometimes alarming awareness of the beating of the heart. The term palpitations includes not only an awareness of the heart racing (tachycardia), but also any sensation in the chest, such as 'pounding', 'flip-flops', 'thumping', 'skipping', or 'fluttering'.

Chinese medicine describes two types of palpitations, with and without organic dysfunction. The first type (zheng chong 心悸) is due to organic dysfunction of the heart or other organ system. Zheng chong palpitations are generally chronic, and brought on by even mild exertion, stress and fatigue. The other type (jing ji 惊悸) is primarily a disorder of the shen and is provoked by anxiety, fright or some other emotion. The patient suffering jing ji is generally in otherwise good health and the heart pathology is relatively benign.

The mechanisms of these two broad types of palpitations are quite different, although in practice there is often considerable overlap due to the intimate relationship between the Heart and shen. Zheng chong involves an actual weakness of the heart muscle or disordered signalling to the heart. The palpitations associated with this type may include irregularities in heart rate, tachycardia, bradycardia, fibrillation, missed beats and signs of circulatory disturbance. Jing ji on the other hand, is frequently a subjective palpitation, that is, the heart is perceived by the patient to be racing or skipping beats but objective examination may detect no abnormality. The most common sensation associated with jing ji is an awareness of accelerated heart rate, provoked by some emotion or fright. In jing ji, the shen is destabilised and becomes vulnerable and hypersensitive in the absence of a sound residence, namely the Heart.

Of the commonly recognised patterns associated with palpitations, Heart qi and yang deficiency, Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency and Blood stagnation are most often associated with organic heart disease—zheng chong. Heart yin deficiency, Heart Blood and Spleen deficiency, Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency and Phlegm Heat tend to give rise to palpitations through disturbance of the shen—jing ji. However, as noted above, because the Heart and shen are so closely related, disturbance of one can easily lead to disturbance of the other and the distinctions between the two types may be clinically blurred.

**AETIOLOGY**

**Heart yang and qi deficiency**

Kidney yang deficiency is often at the root of Heart yang deficiency, and Spleen qi deficiency is often at the root of Heart qi deficiency. In addition, Heart qi is easily dispersed by prolonged, excessive or unexpressed grief, sadness, anxiety or depression. Excessive coffee (bitter in taste) consumption appears to disperse Heart qi, especially when consumed in unusually large or uncustomed quantities. Excessive sweating can also damage Heart yang and qi.

**Heart yin deficiency (with Heat)**

Heart yin, like Heart Blood, is depleted by ongoing emotional distress of any kind, but especially shock, anxiety or worry. Any factors that damage Kidney or Liver yin may also lead to depletion of Heart yin, due to lack of support through the generative (sheng 生, p.70) cycle. Heart yin can also be damaged by excessive sweating and by febrile diseases.

**Heart Blood (and Spleen qi) deficiency**

Heart Blood is most commonly depleted by prolonged worry or anxiety. The condition may also develop or be exacerbated if the Spleen is weak. In addition, if too much fluid is lost through haemorrhage or excessive sweating, then Heart Blood can be damaged. Finally, any factors that deplete Liver Blood will eventually also deplete Heart Blood.

---

**Fig. 29.1 TCM classification of palpitations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Palpitations</th>
<th>Zheng Chong</th>
<th>Jing Ji</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Functional or emotional disorder, precipitated by emotional stress or fright</td>
<td></td>
<td>benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With organic dysfunction of the heart, initiated by even mild exertion, stress or fatigue</td>
<td>Zheng Chong</td>
<td>potentially serious</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Box 29.1 Some biomedical causes of palpitations**

- Anxiety/stress
- Fever
- Anaemia
- Hyperthyroidism
- Neurosis
- Myocarditis
- Myocardial infarction
- Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia
- Mitral stenosis
- Coronary ischaemia
- Heart failure
- Hypovolaemia
- Acute incompetence
- Atrial fibrillation
- Pulmonary embolism
- Pericarditis
- Sick sinus syndrome
- Rheumatic fever
- Hypokalaemia
- Menopause
- Hypercapnoea

**Drugs**

- Caffeine
- Alcohol
- Amphetamines
- Salbutamol
- Tricyclic antidepressants
- Adrenaline
- Atropine

**Heart yang and qi deficiency**

Kidney yang deficiency is often at the root of Heart yang deficiency, and Spleen qi deficiency is often at the root of Heart qi deficiency. In addition, Heart qi is easily dispersed by prolonged, excessive or unexpressed grief, sadness, anxiety or depression. Excessive coffee (bitter in taste) consumption appears to disperse Heart qi, especially when consumed in unusually large or uncustomed quantities. Excessive sweating can also damage Heart yang and qi.

**Heart yin deficiency (with Heat)**

Heart yin, like Heart Blood, is depleted by ongoing emotional distress of any kind, but especially shock, anxiety or worry. Any factors that damage Kidney or Liver yin may also lead to depletion of Heart yin, due to lack of support through the generative (sheng 生, p.70) cycle. Heart yin can also be damaged by excessive sweating and by febrile diseases.

**Heart Blood (and Spleen qi) deficiency**

Heart Blood is most commonly depleted by prolonged worry or anxiety. The condition may also develop or be exacerbated if the Spleen is weak. In addition, if too much fluid is lost through haemorrhage or excessive sweating, then Heart Blood can be damaged. Finally, any factors that deplete Liver Blood will eventually also deplete Heart Blood.
Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency
This pattern describes a personality type that may be congenital or acquired. When congenital, it may be due to a significant shock that damaged the foetal shen during the mother's pregnancy. When acquired it is the result of some sudden and violent or extreme shock or fright, especially during childhood, as the shen is more unstable in the young. Often it is the combination of a congenital Heart and Gall Bladder weakness and some critical event that most effectively drain Heart and Gall Bladder qi. This pattern can occasionally be more acute, following a debilitating illness that drains qi.

Because the shen is so destabilised, it cannot cope easily with change and can be easily disturbed by trivial events. Palpitations may occur spontaneously and gradually worsen over time until they are constant. These patients are prone to anxiety, and worry about their health can set up a self-perpetuating cycle—anxiety about their heart condition causes palpitations which in turn causes more anxiety and so on.

The involvement of the Gall Bladder here refers to the anxiety, timidity and 'lack of gall' (that is, fearfulness) to which these patients are prone. In the Chinese language (as in English) there is an implicit understanding of the relationship between the Gall Bladder and courage, indeed to be bold or courageous is to have a 'big Gall Bladder' (da dan 大胆).

Phlegm Heat
Phlegm Heat can be generated in several ways. First, the presence of Phlegm or Dampness due to Spleen weakness or overconsumption of Phlegm producing foods causes stagnation and Heat. Second, overconsumption of Phlegm Heat foods (rich, greasy, spicy food and alcohol) and tobacco can cause an accumulation of Phlegm Heat directly. Third, any pre-existing Heat in the body, due to Liver qi stagnation, yin deficiency or external invasion can congeal fluids into Phlegm, and subsequently Phlegm Heat. Phlegm Heat patterns are also observed in the convalescent stage of a febrile illness.

Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
Failure of Spleen and Kidney yang's fluid transforming and metabolising action may lead to an accumulation of pathogenic fluids above the diaphragm. These accumulated fluids can disrupt Heart function. Spleen yang is weakened by excessive consumption of cold raw food and irregular eating habits, or by too many cold natured herbs (or antibiotics) in the treatment of a febrile disease. Excessive mental strain or prolonged concentration may deplete Spleen qi. The damage is aggravated when an irregular diet is combined with excessive mental activity (frequently seen in students and overworked executives).

Kidney yang deficiency may be an inherited condition, or may develop as a result of age, chronic illness, overexertion, overexposure to cold conditions, excessive lifting or standing, or in men by excessive ejaculation and in women by having many pregnancies.

Blood stagnation
Blood stagnation is usually a complication of some other Heart pathology, and typically occurs late in the course of an illness. The Heart 'rules the Blood', that is, it is responsible for physically moving Blood around the body. If it malfunctions, it is common to see symptoms of circulatory dysfunction and stagnation of Blood. Specifically, pooling of Blood in the vessels occurs if the pumping action of the Heart is weak (from Heart qi or yang deficiency), and congealing of the Blood due to increased viscosity can occur if there is a lack of fluids (Heart Blood or yin deficiency). In addition, circulation may be compromised by Cold (yang deficiency) or obstructed by Phlegm.

TREATMENT
The treatment of palpitations involves two approaches. In the cases of zhen chong, the disorder is likely to be chronic and the functional strength of the Heart is weakened. Zhen chong disorders are primarily deficiency patterns and treatment requires tonification of yang, yin or Blood. These patterns generally take longer to treat satisfactorily than the milder jing ji patterns.

Jing ji disorders, on the other hand, are primarily disorders of the shen. Treatment requires methods that settle, sedate and calm the shen. Acupuncture is particularly effective in calming the shen. In general, jing ji patterns respond quickly (with the exception of congenital Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency). Bear in mind when deciding upon treatment that zhen chong and jing ji patterns often overlap and a mixture of approaches including tonifying, Blood activating and shen calming may be required.
29.1 HEART QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Heart qi powers the regular and rhythmic contraction of the Heart. Weakened Heart qi leads to a disruption of the regularity and strength of contraction. This can give rise to missed beats, tachycardia, bradycardia or irregularity of rhythm.

Clinical features
- palpitations initiated or aggravated by exertion and relieved with rest
- fitful sleep, insomnia
- shortness of breath
- dizziness
- physical and mental fatigue
- pale complexion
- spontaneous sweating
- T pale with a thin white coat
- P thready and weak, possibly irregular

Treatment principle
Tonify and nourish Heart qi

Prescription
WU WEI ZI TANG 五味子汤
(Schizandra Decoction) modified

- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 ............ 6g
- mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 ................ 9g
- huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 .................. 12g
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ......................... 9g
- suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 灸枣仁 ............... 12g
- bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 ................ 9g
- he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 ........... 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ................. 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Nai Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With severe qi deficiency, add huang jing (Rhizoma Polygonati) 黄精 12g, and increase the dose of huang qi to 24g.
- With copious sweating, add mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 18g, ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 12g, fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Aestivi Levis) 浮小麦 12g.
- With severe insomnia, add ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori)


29.2 HEART YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Heart yang deficiency is a more serious pathology than Heart qi deficiency, and is more likely to develop if there is constitutional or pre-existing Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency. The palpitations are generally more severe and the Heart is relatively weaker. In addition to the contractile weakness of the Heart, signs of Cold and fluid accumulation may appear. Heart yang deficiency is associated with zheng chong.

Clinical features
- palpitations initiated or aggravated by exertion and relieved with rest
- shortness of breath with exertion, in severe cases dyspnoea or orthopnoea
- stuffiness or discomfort in the chest
- listlessness and fatigue
- cold extremities, aversion to cold
- spontaneous sweating
- waxy pale complexion, dark rings under the eyes, purple lips, cyanosis
- pinching oedema, in which cases urine is scanty, or nocturia or frequent urination
- pale bluish or pale purple and swollen, with a white or greasy coat
- Heart yang deficient, thready, weak, slow or knotted and intermittent

Treatment principle
Warm, tonify and strengthen Heart yang

Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbal Name</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long gu (Os Draconis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu li (Concha Ostreae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhi fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carmichaelii Preparata)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zi should be cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added (xian jian 先煎). (Source: Zheng Yi Nei Ke Liu Chung Shou Ci)
HEART: Palpitations

ZHEN WU TANG 真武汤
(True Warrior Decoction) modified

This formula is selected if there is Heart and Kidney yang deficiency with generalised and pulmonary oedema, scantly urine, dyspnoea, orthopnoea and frothy sputum. The correct treatment is to warm the yang and promote urination until the fluid balance is controlled. When fluids are moving the original prescription or another suitable tonifying prescription should be selected.

- **Zhi fu zi** (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 祛附子 9g
- **Chao bai zhu** (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 炒白术 9g
- **Sheng jiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 9g
- **Bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 12g
- **Fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 12g
- **Che qian zi** (Semem Plantaginis) 车前子 12g
- **Zhi xie** (Rhzizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 12g

*Method: Decoction. Zhi fu zi should be cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs are added (xian jia), che qian zi is usually cooked in a muslin bag (bao jian). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)*

**Modifications**

- With Cold, add two or three of the following herbs: **Lu rong pian** (sliced Cornu Cervi Parvum) 鹿茸片 3g, **Chuan jiao** (Pericarpium Zanthoxyli Bungeanae) 川椒 6g, **Wu zhu yu** (Fructus Evodiae Rutacearum) 吴茱萸 6g, **Bi ba** (Fructus Piperis Longi) 茴香 3g, **Gao liang jiang** (Rhizoma Alpiniae Officinarum) 高良姜 9g, **Xi xin** (Herba cum Radice Asari) 细辛 6g or **Chi shi zhi** (Halloysitum Rubrum) 赤石脂 15g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**With Kidney yang deficiency**

- If Kidney yang is deficient, consider **Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan** 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotox Pill), **Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan** 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills) - good for warming yang generally, including Heart yang

**Patent medicines**

- **Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan** 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotox Pill)
- **Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan** 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)

**Acupuncture**

- BL15 (xin shu + ▲), BL14 (jue yin shu + ▲), PC6 (nui guan +)
- HT5 (tong li), HT7 (shen men +), Ren4 (guan yu + ▲), ST36 (zu san li + ▲)

**Clinical notes**

- The palpitations in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as congestive cardiac failure, atrial fibrillation or coronary artery disease.
- Symptoms of mild Heart yang deficiency may respond well to correct TCM treatment, fluid metabolism especially improves fairly quickly. Long term therapy is necessary to maintain the result. In severe cases it can be difficult to treat, especially patients presenting with Heart and Kidney yang deficiency. These patients are usually on the maximum dose of conventional medicine.
- In general, Heart yang deficiency is the predisposing pathology for more serious (and possibly fatal) cardiac episodes.

(Liquid Styrax Pills for Coronary Heart Disease 冠心苏合香丸), and institute the emergency acupuncture techniques outlined in Box 28.2 until paramedic assistance arrives. An alternative approach used in hospitals in China is **Shen Fu Tang** (Ginseng and Prepared Aconite Decoction 参附汤, p.665) plus **long gu** (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15-30g and **mu li** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15-30g administered intravenously.
29.3 HEART YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- Heart yin deficiency can cause palpitations in two ways—by creating deficient Heat and by not stabilising and anchoring the shen. When there is yin deficiency, the false Heat that arises agitates the shen and Heart. When the shen is not anchored by yin (or Blood), the resulting instability causes the shen to be more vulnerable to sudden fright or shock, and palpitations easily ensue.

Clinical features

- palpitations, easily brought on by a start or fright
- insomnia, waking with palpitations or panic attacks and anxiety
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles (‘five hearts hot’)
- night sweats
- dry mouth and throat
- dizziness and tinnitus
- restlessness and fatigue
- poor concentration and memory, forgetfulness
- lower back ache
- dry stools or constipation
- possibly mouth or tongue ulcers
- T red and dry with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

Treatment principle

Nourish Heart yin, calm the shen
Clear Heat

Prescription

TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN 天王补心丹
(Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula)

This is the basic Heart (and Kidney) yin deficiency formula, and is selected when the shen symptoms (anxiety, insomnia, panic attacks) are prominent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>120 (24)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian dong (Tuber Asparagus Cechinensis) 天冬</td>
<td>30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
<td>30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinoseae) 窃枣仁</td>
<td>30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参</td>
<td>15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan shen (Radix Salviae Miliorrhizae) 丹参</td>
<td>15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参</td>
<td>15 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 桔梗</td>
<td>15 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志</td>
<td>15 (6)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu sha* (Cinnabar) 朱砂 (optional)</td>
<td>6 (0.5)g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs (except zhu sha) to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. If used, coat the outside of the pills with the zhu sha. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with the dosage in brackets. When decocted the zhu sha is taken as powder with the strained decoction. This is an excellent formula for long term use in treating yin deficiency with shen disturbance, in which case the zhu sha is deleted. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

SHENG MAI SAN 生脉散
(Generate the Pulse Powder) modified

This formula is selected if the palpitations occur following a febrile illness which has consumed Heart qi and yin. The signs and symptoms are a stifling sensation in the chest, shortness of breath, sweating, dry mouth and thirst, poor sleep, a pale red and dry tongue and a knotted or irregular pulse. This may occur following profuse sweating (as in heat stroke).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参</td>
<td>9-15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
<td>9-12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子</td>
<td>3-g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝</td>
<td>6-g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu li” (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

ZHU SHA AN SHEN WAN 朱砂安神丸
(Cinnabar Pill to Calm the Spirit)

This formula is selected when severe or continuous palpitations are accompanied by insomnia, anxiety and Heat. It is more sedative than the primary formula and designed to treat and control the symptoms quickly. Because it contains zhu sha, it is not suitable for prolonged use and once the condition is under control other more tonifying formulae should be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连</td>
<td>45g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu sha* (Cinnabar) 朱砂</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinoseae) 窃枣仁</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
zhì gān cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 15g

Method: Grind herbs (except zhù sha) to a powder and form into 3 gram pills with honey. Coat the outside of the pills with the zhù sha. The dose is 1-2 pills daily. May also be decocted with a 60% reduction in dosage. Huang lián is reduced by 90%. If decocted the zhù sha (0.5g) is taken with the strained decoction (zhàng fu 冲服). (Source: Shì Yong Zhōng Yì Xīn Xué) 1170

**HUANG LIAN E JIAO TANG** 黄连阿胶汤 (Coptis and Ass-Hide Gelatin Decoction) modified

This formula is selected when Heart yin deficiency follows a febrile disease (a type of shān yīn syndrome, with palpitations and anxiety, a sensation of heat in the chest, insomnia and irritability, sores in the mouth and tongue, a red tongue with a dry yellow coat and a thready rapid pulse). The correct treatment is to clear Fire, nourish yin, stop irritability and calm the shān. **huáng lián** (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 12g

**e jiao** (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 9g

**huáng qín** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 6g

**bái shāo** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 6g

**lóng chí** (Dens Draconis) 龙齿 9-15g

**mù lì** (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15-30g

**jí zǐ huáng** (egg yolk) 蛋黄 2 yolks

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted in the hot strained decoction (yáng huā 洋花). The egg yolks are stirred into the strained decoction. (Source: Shì Yong Zhōng Yì Xīn Xué) 1170

**YI GUAN JIAN** 一贯煎 (Linking Decoction) plus

**SUAN ZAO REN TANG** 酸枣仁汤 (Zizyphus Combination) modified

This formula is used when signs of Liver and Kidney yin deficiency are prominent. The Heat resulting from the deficiency can accelerate the Heart. Because Liver yīn is weak, it is often complicated by qì stagnation. The main features are palpitations, insomnia, 'five hearts hot', night sweats, dizziness, tinnitus, irritability, lower back pain, dry eyes, blurred vision, photophobia, headaches, epigastric and abdominal distension, acid reflux and a thready or wiry and rapid pulse. **shèng dì** (Radix Rehmanniae glutinosae) 生地 18-45g

**gòu qí zǐ** (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 9-18g

**shā shēn** (Radix Adenophorae seu Glehniae) 沙参 9g

**mài dōng** (Tuber Ophiopogonis japonicus) 麦冬 9g

**dāng guí** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g

**chún lán zhì** (Fructus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子 4.5g

**suan zào rén** (Semen Zizyphi Spinose) 酸枣仁 15g

**zhì mú** (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母 9g

**fù líng** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 15g

**chún xiàng** (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 6g

**gán cáo** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shì Yong Zhōng Yì Xīn Xué) 1170

**Patent medicines**

**Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan** 天王补心丹 (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan)

- excellent for Heart yīn deficiency with shān disturbance

**Zuo Gui Wan** 左归丸 (Zuo Gui Wan)

**Shèng Mài Wan** 生脉丸 (Shèng Mài Wan)

Lin Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Lin Wei Di Huang Wan)

- a general Kidney yīn tonic formula

**Suàn Zào Rén Tang** 酸枣仁汤片 (Tabellae Suánzaoren)

**Cì Zī Wu** 麻仁丸 (Cì Zhu Wan)

- this pill is usually combined with one of the other formulae above

**Acupuncture**

Bl.23 (shēn shū +), Bl.15 (xīn shū -), Kid.3 (tài xī +), Ht.5 (tóng shī), Kid.6 (zhào hūi +), Ht.7 (shēn men), PC.6 (nèi guān), PC.7 (da liúng), Liv.3 (tài chōng +), Bl.18 (gān shū -), Ren.17 (shān zhōng)

- with Fire add Ht.8 (shān fù)

**Clinical notes**

- The palpitations in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as menopausal syndrome, neurasthenia, mitral stenosis, hyperthyroidism, anxiety neurosis, fever of unknown origin, convalescence following a febrile disorder or coronary artery disease.

- The palpitations in this pattern often respond well to treatment although long term resolution may depend on the biomedical syndrome with which they are associated. For example, hyperthyroid conditions can be difficult to cure with TCM and may need to be controlled by drugs or surgery if TCM treatment is ineffective, before lasting results can be achieved.
29.4 HEART BLOOD AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency has elements of both zheng chong and jing ji, with qi deficiency contributing to weakness of Heart function, and Heart Blood deficiency failing to anchor and stabilise the shen. It occurs most commonly when Heart Blood is depleted by emotional distress and the Spleen is weak and unable to support the Heart. Prolonged overwork and worry in combination with irregular diet (commonplace in our modern society) easily deplete the Heart and Spleen. Sometimes this type of palpitations is seen as an acute episode following haemorrhage, especially postpartum.

Clinical features
- Palpitations with or without anxiety, generally worse at night
- Insomnia, with particular difficulty falling asleep (and switching off the mind) and dream disturbed sleep
- Anxiety, phobias, panic attacks
- Forgetfulness, poor memory, poor concentration
- Postural dizziness
- Blurring vision, spots in the visual field
- Fatigue and weakness
- Poor appetite, abdominal distension after eating
- Sallow complexion

Treatment principle
Strengthen and nourish the Heart and Spleen
Tonify qi and Blood, calm the shen

Prescription
GU PI TANG (Ginseng and Langan Combination)

This formula is selected when there is obvious digestive weakness and signs of shen disturbance.

zhì huáng qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacei) 炒黄芪 .......................... 15g
 suàn zāo rén (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 .......................... 12g
 fù líng (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 12g

ZHI GAN CAO TANG (Baked Licorice Combination)

This is an important formula for qi and Blood (or yin) deficiency type palpitations (or arrhythmias) that are brought on by activity and are accompanied by a knotted, intermittent or irregular pulse, the latter being an important indicator for the use of this formula. This pattern has elements of both zheng chong and jing ji.

shèng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 .......................... 24g
zhì gàn cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 .......................... 12g
rén shèn (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......................... 6g
guǐ zhī (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 .......................... 9g
mài dōng (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 .......................... 9g
ejiao (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 .......................... 6g
huó má rén (Semen Cannabis Sativae) 火麻仁 .......................... 9g
shèng jiāng (Rhizoma Zingiberis Oflicinalis) 生姜 .......................... 9g
da zào (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 .......................... 5pc

Alternatives
- With severe palpitations, add hu po (Succinum) 虻珀 2g and zhù shā (Cinnabaris) 朱砂 1g.
- If Heart Blood is very deficient, add shū di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquita) 熟地 30-50g, bái shāo (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 15g and e jiao (Gelatum Corii Asini) 阿胶 15g.
- With Liver Heat, add shān zhī zǐ (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 9g and chái hu (Radix Bupleuri) 芍药 6g.
- With severe insomni, add one or two of the following herbs: wù wèi zǐ (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g, bái zǐ rén (Semen Biotae) 白子仁 10g.

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)
29.5 HEART AND GALL BLADDER QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- In Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency palpitations, the shen is congenitally unstable, or disrupted by a major shock or fright. The instability causes the patient to experience palpitations and anxiety with seemingly trivial events. In congenital cases there will usually be a long, often lifelong history of emotional timidity.

Clinical features
- palpitations, which may be initiated by anxiety or a fright
- apprehension, easily frightened and startled, timidity, anxiety
- insomnia, dream disturbed sleep, waking feeling anxious
- spontaneous sweating
- shortness of breath
- lethargy and fatigue
T normal or with a pale body and a thin white coat; in congenital or long standing cases there may be a deep narrow crack to the tip
P slightly weak, thready and rapid or thready and wiry

Treatment principle
Settle the mind, calm the shen
Nourish and tranquillise the Heart

Clinical notes
- The palpitations in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as neurosis, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, neurasthenia, chronic fatigue syndrome, post partum haemorrhage, sinus tachycardia, premature ectopic beats, sick sinus syndrome and arrhythmia.
- Heart and Spleen deficiency palpitations are generally very responsive to treatment, which should continue until it is clear the Spleen is strong enough to make sufficient Blood. Careful diet and eating patterns will enhance the result. A strictly regular bedtime routine should be adhered to.
- Acupuncture can be very effective at tonifying Spleen qi but if the patient is already very Blood deficient, herbs will probably be necessary as well.
- In women who lose blood (and thus Heart Blood) through heavy periods, Blood tonics and Blood replenishing and iron-rich foods should be taken after each period. Iron supplements are also useful.

Prescription

DING ZHI WAN 定志丸 for insomnia
(Settle the Emotions Pill) modified

This prescription is useful for palpitations and congenital shen instability in a frail and timid person. It is suited to long term use.

rens hen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......................... 90g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 90g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ................... 60g
yuans zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 .................. 60g
long gu* (Os Draconis) 龙骨 .............................. 60g
hu po (Succinum) 纯珀 ................................. 30g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 1 pill twice daily. May also be decocted with an 90% reduction in dosage.
(Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Modifications
- With Blood deficiency, add dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 60g and bai shao (Radix Paeoniae lactiflora) 白芍 60g
29.6 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
- Phlegm Heat has both the cluying nature of Phlegm and the shen agitating quality of Heat. The Phlegm in this pattern (usually the insubstantial type), can 'obstruct' (or mist) the orifices of the Heart. This can lead to a disturbance of cardiac function or clouding of the shen and an exaggerated awareness of the Heart. The Heat component also agitates the shen. This pattern sometimes co-exists with Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency (p.813), and can follow a febrile illness that has concealed Fluids into Phlegm.

Clinical features
- palpitations with anxiety and nervousness
- dizziness and vertigo
- insomnia, with waking in the early hours, perhaps around 4am, unable to fall back to sleep
- irritability and restlessness
- nausea, vomiting or indeterminate gnawing hunger
- poor appetite
- belching
- acid reflux
- bitter taste in the mouth
- abdominal distension
- red tip or body and a greasy yellow coat
- rapid and slippery or wiry

Treatment principle
Clear Heat, transform Phlegm
Harmonize the Stomach, calm the shen

Prescription

WEN DAN TANG 温胆汤
(Bamboo and Hoe/en Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredients</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhui ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantium) 枳实</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 防风</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)
**Modifications**

- If Heat is severe, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.
- With severe Phlegm Heat (thick yellow greasy coat, woolly headedness, dizziness), add tian zhu huang (Concretio Silicea Bambusae Textillis) 天竺黄 9g, zhu li (Succus Bambusae) 竹沥 10g and dan nan xing (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 厚南星 6g. See also Variations and Additional Prescriptions, below.
- With severe palpitations, panic attacks, or if the patient is easily startled, add zhen zhu mu (Concha Margaritiferae) 珍珠母 30g, long chi (Dens Draconis) 龙齿 15g and mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g.
- With food stagnation and obvious digestive disharmony, add two or three of the following herbs: jiao shen qu (baked Massa Fermentata) 焦神曲 10g, jiao shan zha (baked Fructus Cretacei) 焦山楂 10g, chao mai ya (dry fried l. Fructus Hordei Germinantis) 炒麦芽 10g or chao lai fu zi (dry fried Semen Raphani Sativa) 炒莱菔子 15g.
- With constipation, add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g and gua lou ren (Semen Trichosanthis) 格棱仁 15g.

**Variations and additional prescriptions**

**Severe Phlegm Heat**

- In very severe cases, with continuous palpitations, vertigo, tinnitus, a very thick yellow tongue coat and constipation, the correct treatment is to drain Fire and drive out Phlegm with GUN TAN WAN (Vaporize Phlegm Pill 蒸痰丸)．

  - **duan meng shi** (calcined Lapis Micae seu Chloritii)
  - **jiu da huang** (wine fried Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 酒大黄 240g
  - **huang qin** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 240g
  - **chen xiang** (Linum Aquilariae) 沉香 15g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into small pills with water. The dose is 6-9 grams once or twice daily, with ginger tea. (Source: Shi Yong Zheng Yi Nei Ke Xue)

**Phlegm Heat with Heart and Liver Fire**

- Palpitations that occur at rest and that are accompanied by fullness in the chest and irritability, with constipation, heaviness in the body, difficulty twisting at the waist, a red tongue and wiry rapid pulse are due to Phlegm Heat and qi stagnation with Heart and Liver Fire. The correct treatment is to clear Phlegm Heat and Fire, move qi and calm the shen with CHAI HU JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG (Bupleurum and Dragon Bone Combination)．

  - **chai hu** (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 9g
  - **dang shen** (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 9g

**Patent medicines**

- Er Chen Wan 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan) plus Huang Lian Jie Du Wan 黄连解毒丸
- Hu Po Bao Long Wan 瀛珀保龙丸 (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills)
- Niu Huang Qing Huo Wan 牛黄清火丸

Method: Decoction. This is an extremely useful formula for shen disturbance in robust patients with Heat. It is widely used for disorders due to fright, shock or drug withdrawal, where palpitations, fullness in the chest, irritability and agitation are prominent. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

**Acupuncture**

- Ht.5 (tong li), PC.4 (xi men -), Bl.13 (fei shu -), Lu.5 (shi ze -), St.40 (feng long -), GB.34 (yang lingquan -), PC.5 (jian shi -)
  - with insomnia add St.45 (li dai -)
  - with constipation add St.25 (tian shu -)
  - with anxiety add Du.19 (hou ding) and Du.24 (shen ting)

**Clinical notes**

- The palpitations in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as anxiety neurosis, convalescence following a fever or early schizophrenia.
- The Phlegm Heat symptoms associated with this pattern generally respond well to correct treatment. When associated with schizophrenia the prognosis is much less reliable.
- This is a common pattern during the convalescent phase of a febrile disease.
29.7 SPLEEN AND KIDNEY YANG DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- In this pattern Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency is the root of weakened Fluid metabolism and distribution. Phlegm Fluids (tan yin) accumulate in the lower and middle jiao causing oedema in the lower body. Eventually the Phlegm Fluids back up from below and collect in the upper jiao, disrupting the Heart and Lungs, causing upper body oedema. Heart yang may be intact. The difference between this pattern and Heart yang deficiency is that here, the Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency is fundamental and reflected in the middle and lower jiao symptoms. Yang deficiency patterns are associated with zheng chong type palpitations.

Clinical features

- palpitations and shortness of breath, which are worse for exertion
- dizziness or vertigo
- chest and epigastric fullness and discomfort
- wheezing and coughing with thin watery sputum
- low voice, reluctance to speak
- nausea or vomiting
- poor appetite, abdominal distension, loose stools
- lower back cold and aching, cold extremities
- facial or eyelid oedema, or pitting leg and ankle oedema, with scanty or difficult urination, or nocturia and frequent urination
- pale and swollen, with a greasy white coat
- slippery and wiry or soggy, or deep, slow and possibly knotted or intermittent (if Heart yang is involved)

Treatment principle

Warm and Transform Phlegm Fluids
Strengthen the Spleen and resolve Damp

Prescription

LING GUI ZHU GAN TANG 真桂术甘汤
(Atractylodes and Flosen Combination)

This formula is suitable for relatively mild cases.
- fu ling (Sclerotium Portiae Cocos) 芳苓 .................. 30g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 .............. 15g
- gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamoni Cassiae) 桂枝 ..................... 9g
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ...................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhang Yi Wei Ke Lue Chuang Shou Co)

Modifications

- With nausea and vomiting, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 10g.
- With epigastric and abdominal distension, and loss of appetite, add hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 10g, shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 10g, dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 15g.
- With obvious Kidney yang deficiency and Cold (cold extremities, cold intolerance, bluish lips), add two or three of the following herbs: hu luo (Semen Trigonellae Foeni-gracii) 蒜芦巴 10g, ba ji tan (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 10g, rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 6g or xian ling pi (Herba Epimedii) 仙灵脾 10g.

Follow up treatment

- Once the palpitations have subsided and fluid metabolism is improving, a basic Spleen and/or Kidney yang strengthening formula may be phased in. Consider JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN (Rehmannia Light Formula) 金匮肾气丸, p.874, YOU GUI WAN (Eustomia and Rehmannia Formula) 右归丸, p.559, FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN (Arnica, Ginseng and Ginger Formula) 附子理中丸, p.873) depending on the combination of Spleen and Kidney deficiency.

Patent medicines

Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotonin Pills) plus
Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills) or
Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)
29.8 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
- Blood stagnation type palpitations are chronic and usually follow some other long term pathology that affects the Heart or chest, typically yang deficiency, Phlegm or qi stagnation. Palpitations from Blood stagnation may also follow an external invasion of Wind Cold Damp to the Heart (as occurs in rheumatic fever). Stagnant Blood obstructs the channels of the Heart disrupting the smooth flow of qi and Blood and consequently Heart function, so irregular beats and pain may occur. This pattern is clearly associated with zheng chong.

Clinical features
- palpitations and occasional chest pain that are worse at night
- stuffiness or fullness in the chest
- irritability, restlessness, easy anger or depression
- purplish lips, nails, sclera, conjunctiva
- spider naevi on the chest and face
- possibly signs of stagnant Liver qi
- T dark or red purple with brown or purple stasis spots and a thin white coat; sublingual veins are distended and dark
- P deep and choppy or wiry, or intermittent

Treatment principle
Invigorate the circulation of Blood, expel stagnant Blood
Regulate qi and open the channels

Prescription
XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐淤汤
(Acryranthes and Persica Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctori) 红花</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan niu xi (Radix Cyathulae Officinalis) 川牛膝</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii 枝壳)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) 祖栓</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chai hu (Radix Bupleuri 旋胡)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)
Modifications
• With Heat, add **dan shen** (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 12g and **huang qin** (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g.
• With Heat in the Liver, add **yu jin** (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g.
• With chest pain, add **yan hu su o** (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g, **mo yao** (Myrrha) 没药 6g, **ru xiang** (Gummi Olibanum) 乳香 6g.
• With insomnia or depression, add **he huan pi** (Cortex Albiziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 12g.
• With headache, add **man jing zi** (Frutus Viticis) 眼子串 9g and **bai ji li** (Fructus 1axibuli 1tetrestris) 白芥子 9g.
• With Heart qi deficiency, delete **chai hu**, **jie geng** and **zhi ke**, and add **dang shen** (Rhizoma Codonopsis Pilosulae) 黄精 30g, **huang jing** (Rhizoma Polygonati) 黄精 12g, and **huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranaceous) 黄芪 30g.
• With yang deficiency, delete **chai hu** and **jie geng**, and add **zhi fu zi** (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 附子 6g, **rou gui** (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g, **xian ling pi** (Herba Epimedi) 炎灵脾 12g and **ba ji tian** (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 巴戟天 9g.
• With blood deficiency, delete **chai hu**, **jie geng**, **chuan xiong** and **zhi ke**, and add **mai dong** (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 10g, **yu zhu** (Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati) 马竹 10g, **nu zhen zi** (Fructus Liguistri Lucidi) 女贞子 10g and **han lian cao** (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 旱莲草 10g.
• With Blood deficiency, add **shu di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitaе) 熟地 15g, **gou qi zi** (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 15g and **he shou wu** (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 何首乌 15g.

Patent medicines
- **Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan** 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
- **Dan Shen Pian** 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)
- **Jian Kang Wan** 健康丸 (Sunbo Multi Ginseng Tablets)
- **Sheng Tian Qi Pian** 生田七片 (Raw Tian Qi Ginseng Tablets)
- **Jin Gu Die Shang Wan** 针骨跌伤丸 (Chin Koo Tiek Shang Wan)
- **Guan Xin An Kou Lu Ye** 冠心安口服液 (Guan Xin An Kou Fu Ye)
- **Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan** 妇科乌金丸 (Woo Garim Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
- BL15 (xin shu -), BL17 (ge shu -), BL14 (jue yin shu -), PC.4 (xi men -), PC.5 (jian shu -), PC.6 (nei guan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), LI.4 (he gu -), Ht.5 (tong li -), Sp.10 (xue hui -)

Clinical notes
• The palpitations in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as rheumatic heart disease, angina pectoris, coronary artery disease or mitral stenosis.
• The diagnosis of Blood stagnation may occasionally be one of exclusion; if in a case of chronic palpitations all other treatments have failed, then a provisional diagnosis of stagnant Blood may be made, even in the absence of other objective signs.
• Blood stagnation symptoms can respond reasonably well to correct and prolonged treatment and the palpitations should improve (although if the underlying pathology is too deep, that is, there is excessive tissue damage already, then the results are much less certain).
• Long term use of Blood stagnation removing formulae alone is not advisable in frail or elderly patients. An appropriate tonic formula may need to be added to prevent excessive dispersal of qi and Blood.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR PALPITATIONS

Heart qi deficiency - Wu Wei Zi Tang

Heart yang deficiency - Gui Zhi Gan Cao Long Gu Mu Li Tang

Heart and Kidney yang deficiency with pulmonary oedema - Zhen Wu Tang

Kidney yang predominant - Jin Gui Shen Qi Wan

Heart yin deficiency - Tian Wang Bu Xiu Dan

following a febrile disease - Huang Lian E Jiao Tang

with anxiety and insomnia - Zhu Sha An Shen Wan

Liver and Kidney yin deficiency predominant - Yi Guan Jian

Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency - Gui Pi Tang

with qi and yin deficiency, with severe palpitations and an irregular pulse - Zhi Gan Cao Tang

Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency - Ding Zhi Wan

as a result of shock - Gui Zhi Jia Long Gu Mu Li Tang

Phlegm Heat - Wen Dan Tang

Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency - Long Gui Zhu Gan Tang

with severe fluid accumulation - Zhen Wu Tang

Blood stagnation - Xue Fu Zhu Yu Tang

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Insomnia describes a variety of different symptoms associated with sleep disturbance, including inability to sleep, difficulty falling asleep, frequent waking, restlessness at night, disordered sleep cycle and dream disturbed sleep.

Approximately one third of all adults experience occasional or persistent sleep disturbances. Sleep deprivation or disruption of circadian rhythm can lead to serious impairment of daytime functioning. Most adults sleep 7 to 8 hours per night, although the timing, duration and internal structure of sleep vary considerably among apparently healthy individuals and as a function of age.

When assessing a patient complaining of insomnia, it is important to distinguish true insomnia from transitory insomnia due to external or temporary changes. Outside noise, sudden weather changes, inappropriate bedroom temperatures, consumption of coffee or other stimulants prior to bedtime, eating late, recent emotional upsets, vigorous exercise and the disordered circadian rhythms of shiftworkers may all cause a person to sleep poorly. Once these factors are removed, sleep usually returns to normal and the sleep disturbance cannot be considered true insomnia. Similarly, sleep disturbance due to pain, itching, asthma and breathing disorders should not be diagnosed as insomnia.

In TCM, insomnia is associated with instability or agitation of the shen. This can occur because:

- the shen is not adequately anchored and secured due to deficiency of Blood or yin
- overstimulation and agitation by Heat prevent the shen from settling quietly when the time comes for sleep
- the shen is ‘locked in’ and agitated by constraint from qi and/or Blood stagnation

Shen

The shen is at the most rarefied end of the spectrum of the densities of qi. The most condensed is jing, in between are the various functional types of qi (zang qi, wei qi, zang jue qi etc.) These three aspects of qi are termed the ‘three treasures’ (Fig 30.2) and are the subject of considerable philosophical debate and the focus of daoist meditation techniques. Indeed, it is the transformation of jing into shen that preoccupies some of the daoist and other esoteric schools of Chinese philosophical thought and practice. Blood and yin are more condensed (and therefore material) than qi, but less dense than jing.

The shen plays a key role in higher mental functions, including many of the intellectual and spiritual aspects of consciousness. In practical terms, the shen is most closely associated with our conscious awareness, and is essentially our ability to perceive, interact and communicate with our world clearly. In addition, the shen and the Heart share an intimate and interdependent relationship (TCM describes the Heart as the residence of the shen). Shen pathology is therefore associated with disturbances of consciousness and perception, and some aspects of Heart function.

Consciousness is the province of shen, however shen can be divided into a number of subgroups, each with its own particular facet of consciousness and association with an organ system. That aspect of shen especially disturbed by the rising qi of anger or repression of emotion is termed the hun 忌, and is linked to the Liver. The hun is implicated in some forms of sleep disturbance, particularly that involving sleepwalking. Other facets of shen are the yi (意, associated with the Spleen), po (魄, Lungs), and zhi (志, Kidneys).

Because shen is so refined and subtle it must be anchored by the more material jing (or Blood and yin), otherwise it has a tendency to float away. The interaction of
jing and shen produces the ‘light’ of consciousness. It is this interaction that is observed in the twinkle of a clear eye—in Chinese the jing shen (精神). Observation of an individual's jing shen is the first indication of the state of their consciousness and ultimately their health or capacity to recover from illness. This lightness and subtleness, however, means that shen is the least stable form of qi, and thus easily unsettled.

There are two broad categories of shen disturbance, deficiency and excess. The deficiency patterns are mostly due to the shen not being anchored by Heart yin or Blood, so it simply ‘floats away’, or is dissipated instead of resting in the Heart. These patterns usually manifest with symptoms like insomnia, dream disturbed sleep, anxiety with palpitations, phobias and disorientation.

Excess patterns are mostly associated with Heat and Phlegm. The Heat can directly affect the Heart (as in Heart Fire) or be more systemic (as in Heat in the Blood). Either way, the shen is continually agitated by the presence of the Heat, and restlessness, agitation, and delusional or manic behaviour result.

Due to the Heart’s central position as the ‘emperor’ of the zang organs, it (and the resident shen) are affected by all emotional patterns. Some are more damaging than others, particularly prolonged worry and anxiety, or severe shock or terror. Ultimately, however, any emotional imbalance will involve the Heart and shen.

Insomnia may accompany many syndromes and disorders, and can be a major obstacle to recovery if it is severe. Insomnia may be a symptom of such conditions as neurological and psychiatric disorders, neurosis, hypertension, cerebral arteriosclerosis, hyperthyroidism, various fevers, hepatitis, menopausal and premenstrual syndrome and anaemia.

AETIOLOGY
Liver qi stagnation, stagnant Heat, Liver Fire
Frustration, anger, resentment, prolonged emotional turmoil, repressed emotions and stress disrupt the circulation of Liver qi. When Liver qi stagnates it can disrupt the generative cycle (sheng  生, p.70) of the five phases (wu xing  五行) resulting in a poor supply (of qi and Blood) to the Heart. Liver qi stagnation constrains the huo and shen causing tension and insomnia. Long term qi stagnation can also lead to Blood stagnation with the same, albeit more severe, result.

When qi stagnates for any length of time, the resulting pressure can generate Heat, which at a certain intensity may be redefined as Fire. Here the Heat takes over as the primary agitator of the shen. Liver Fire is more likely in those with a yang or hot constitution, and in those with a diet rich in heating substances.

Heart Fire
Prolonged worry, anxiety and depression, or a sudden shock can retard the movement of Heart qi. The resulting accumulation of qi creates a focus of pressure in the chest, which then generates Heat, further affecting the Heart. This type of qi accumulation is slightly different to Liver qi stagnation in that the focus of Liver qi stagnation is usually below the diaphragm (although its effects may be systemic). Heart Fire may also develop if Fire is transmitted from the Liver to the Heart. Heart Fire (like Liver Fire) is more likely to occur in those with some pre-existing Heat, whether from diet or congenital factors.

A different type of Heart Fire may occur during severe febrile diseases. This occurs when external Heat penetrates deep into the body, lodging at the ying or Blood level (of the Four Levels, pp.38-43). In this situation, high fever is accompanied by delirium and disordered consciousness as the Fire severely disturbs the shen.

Heart yin deficiency, especially if prolonged, is often associated with Heart Fire. Mixtures of Fire and yin deficiency are clinically more common than pure Heart Fire. If the insomnia is very chronic, it may develop into the Heart and Kidney yin deficient pattern.

Stomach disharmony
This syndrome is usually due to overindulgence or irregular dietary habits (eating late at night, midnight snacks, eating while upset, eating too quickly etc.) that weaken the Spleen and Stomach so that digestion is impaired. It is essentially a type of food stagnation. If bad dietary habits persist, it can become more severe and overlap with the next pattern, Phlegm Heat.

Phlegm Heat
Phlegm Heat can be generated in several ways. Dampness and Phlegm can be the result of Spleen weakness or overconsumption of Phlegm producing foods (rich, greasy, sweet, spicy foods and alcohol), which then causes stagnation and the generation of Heat. Any pre-existing Heat in the body, whether from Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat or Fire, yin deficiency or external pathogen, can congeal fluids into Phlegm, and subsequently Phlegm Heat. This pattern often occurs in the convalescent stage of a febrile illness, after external Heat has concentrated fluids into Phlegm.

Failure of fluid metabolism as a result of qi or yang deficiency (affecting Kidney, Spleen or Heart) can lead to accumulation of fluids, which over time congeal into Phlegm. Once Phlegm is present, Heat can be generated by the resulting obstruction.
Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency

Overwork, physical and mental exhaustion, worry, irregular diet and too much cold, raw or sweet food can damage the Spleen, which then fails to generate sufficient qi and Blood. Similarly, any situation that overwhelsms the Spleen’s ability to replace qi and Blood, like a prolonged or severe illness can lead to qi and Blood deficiency. The primary weakness in this pattern is in the Spleen, which is unable to generate enough Blood to nourish the Heart and anchor the shen.

Heart Blood and Spleen qi weakness can be more acute, following a post partum haemorrhage or difficult pregnancy and labour. This pattern is common in women who return to work too soon following pregnancy, without fully recovering their investment of qi and Blood. It also occurs in those who breast-feed for lengthy periods of time while expending energy working or looking after demanding children (and husbands). The elderly are another group who frequently suffer from insufficient qi and Blood.

Heart and Kidney yin deficiency

In Chinese medicine the relationship between the Heart and Kidney is one of the fundamental relationships of the body and mind. This relationship functions on both a physical and a mental level. On the physical level Kidney Water (yin) keeps Heart Fire in check, preventing a runaway blaze and overheating, and Heart Fire catalyses Kidney Water, preventing stagnation and accumulation of fluids. On the mental level, the Fire of the shen arises from a stable base of Kidney jing (summed up in the sparkle of jing shen in the eyes), and jing and shen rely on each other for clear expression of mental consciousness.

If Kidney yin is damaged (by overwork, excess sexual activity, insufficient rest and sleep, ageing etc.) there may be a breakdown in the relationship between the Heart and Kidney (via the controlling cycle), whereby Kidney Water no longer keeps Heart Fire in check. The uncontrolled blazing of Heart Fire causes agitation of the shen and the resulting insomnia can be severe. If Heart Fire remains unchecked Heart yin will be damaged. The shen then has no ‘anchor’ and insomnia can become chronic. Heart yin may also be damaged by stimulant and recreational drugs (including coffee) or excessive mental stress. This is a very common cause of insomnia and one characterised by quite severe mental restlessness, anxiety and occasionally total inability to sleep.

At a more superficial level, the communication between the Heart (shen) and Kidneys (zhi) can be severed by major shock or trauma. This can occur in otherwise robust individuals, in which case the insomnia (and usually anxiety or panic attacks) is accompanied by fewer systemic symptoms since the yin of the organs is not damaged. It may also occur in someone with pre-existing yin damage, in which case their condition is suddenly greatly exacerbated.

Liver yin and Blood deficiency

As well as the various activities and events that can damage Heart and Kidney yin (see above), Liver yin and Blood can also be weakened by prolonged qi stagnation and the generation of stagnant Heat or Fire, overuse of the eyes and chronic Liver disease.

Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency

Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency describes a personality type that may be congenital or acquired. When congenital, it may be due to a significant shock that damaged the developing foetal shen during the mother’s pregnancy. The pattern may be acquired easily in children (the shen is unstable when young) who are brought up in an abusive or fearful environment, or in adults or children who experience a violent or extreme shock or fright. It may also

Fig 30.3 Summary of insomnia patterns
BOX 30.1 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS

These are general guides only:
• difficulty falling asleep, but once asleep stays asleep - Blood deficiency
• waking frequently during the night, often feeling hot - yin deficiency
• repeated waking around 2-4am, worse when stressed - Liver qi stagnation, stagnant Heat or Fire
• lots of wild dreaming - possible involvement of the hun
• talking during sleep, sleepwalking - possible involvement of the hun
• recurrent frightening dreams that cause waking - Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency
• waking with palpitations and panic attacks - Heart and Kidney yin deficiency
• chronic insomnia with feverishness at night but no sweating - Blood stagnation

sometimes follow other debilitating illnesses that plunder qi.

Because the shen is so destabilised it cannot cope easily with change and can be easily disturbed by trivial events, so even a minor change in routine may be enough to trigger episodes of sleeplessness.

The involvement of the Gall Bladder here refers to the timidity and 'lack of gall' (that is, fearfulness) which characterize patients with this pattern. In the Chinese language (as in English) there is an implicit understanding of the relationship between the Gall Bladder and courage, indeed to be bold and courageous is to have a 'big Gall Bladder' (da dan 大胆).

Blood stagnation
Blood stagnation insomnia usually follows some external trauma, extreme emotional shock or head injury. It can also be the result of other chronic disorders that eventually cause Blood stagnation, especially extreme or prolonged emotional turmoil and qi stagnation. When associated with trauma the insomnia is usually acute, otherwise there is usually a long history of persistent insomnia. Blood stagnation frequently co-exists with other patterns, such as qi, yin or yang deficiency, etc.

TREATMENT
Treatment with acupuncture and herbs usually produces a reliable result in most types of insomnia. Many patients with chronic insomnia will be taking sedative medication of some sort (often benzodiazepines, see anxiety p.868), and they should be slowly weaned off the drugs over a period of weeks or months as the TCM treatment takes effect. Adjuvant therapy is useful in most types of insomnia, particularly relaxation or meditation to calm the mind.

The most important distinction is between excess and deficient types of insomnia. The excess varieties tend to be more difficult to treat than the deficient varieties, as in excess patterns there are often complicating lifestyle features—like unhappiness or stress at home or at work and habitual mental emotional responses that have to be dealt with for a satisfactory result. The deficiency patterns generally respond quite well to treatment, although herbal and/or acupuncture treatment may need to be combined with an appropriate nourishing diet. Obvious and easily modifiable aggravating factors, such as coffee, excessive visual stimulation at night (like staying up late watching television), heavy exercise at night and excessive alcohol should be avoided.
30.1 LIVER Qi STAGNATION, STAGNANT HEAT, FIRE

Pathophysiology
- Liver qi stagnation, qi stagnation with stagnant Heat and Liver Fire are a continuum of conditions with similar aetiology and escalating severity. Typically, Liver qi stagnation precedes the development of Heat, which at a certain intensity is redefined as Fire. All patterns have emotional turmoil, especially anger, resentment and frustration as common aetiological features, with Liver Fire exacerbated by a Hot constitution and/or a diet rich in alcohol and heating foods. Liver qi stagnation without Heat is less likely to cause insomnia than with Heat, and Liver Fire is the more likely cause.
- Qi stagnation alone causes insomnia by disrupting the smooth flow of qi in the chest, restricting the unhindered movement of the shen. When there is Heat, the shen is continually being agitated and disturbed.

Clinical features
- difficulty falling asleep, insomnia, dream disturbed sleep, waking in the early hours of the morning (typically between 2 and 4 am), worse when stressed
- depression, irritability, moodiness
- frontal or temporal headaches, shoulder and neck tension, teeth grinding at night
- hypochondriac tension or discomfort
- frequent sighing
- dizziness
- sensation of something lodged in the throat (‘plum stone qi’)
- irregular menstruation, premenstrual syndrome and breast tenderness
- poor appetite
- alternating constipation and diarrhoea
- T unremarkable or dark (qing 深) with a thin white or yellow coat, or with red edges and a thick yellow coat with Heat or Fire
- wiry

Treatment principle
Soothe Liver qi, Calm the shen

Prescription

XIAO YAO SAN 逍遥散
(Bupleurum and Angelica Sinensis Formula) modified

This prescription is selected when there is qi stagnation without Heat.

- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................................. 9g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ................................. 9g
- ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 叶叉藤 .............................. 9g
- ren dong teng (Ramulus Lonicerae Japonicae) 忍冬藤 ....................... 9g
- shan zhi zi (Fruites Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ......................... 9g
- suan zao ren (Semem Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 ............................. 15g
- zheng mu dan pi (Cortex Poriae Cocon) 丹皮 ................................ 9g
- fu mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g
- he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 .............................. 12g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 ......................... 9g
- suan zao ren (Semem Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 ............................. 15g
- luo xing zhi shou (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ..................... 15g
- shan zhi zi (Fruites Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ......................... 15g
- fu mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g

Method: Decoction or as powder. When the formula is decocted, bo he should be added at the end of cooking (hou xia 后下).

DAN ZHI XIAO YAO SAN 丹栀逍遥散
(Bupleurum and Angelica Sinensis Formula) modified

This formula is selected when qi stagnation has generated some Heat. The clinical features are the same as for Liver qi stagnation, with the additional features of red, sore eyes, facial flushing, irritability, anger, bitter taste in the mouth, red edges on the tongue and a wiry, rapid pulse.

- chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 ................................................. 12g
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ................................. 9g
- cu bai shao (vinegar fried Radix Paeonieae Lactiflora) 酸白芍 ................................. 9g
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 ......................... 9g
- suan zao ren (Semem Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 ............................. 15g
- luo xing zhi shou (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ..................... 15g
- luo xing zhi shou (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ..................... 15g
- shan zhi zi (Fruites Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ......................... 15g
- fu mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 ................................ 6g
- ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 叶叉藤 .............................. 12g
- zheng mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g
- suan zao ren (Semem Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 ............................. 15g
- luo xing zhi shou (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ..................... 15g
- fu mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 ................................ 6g
- ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 叶叉藤 .............................. 12g
- zheng mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g
- suan zao ren (Semem Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 ............................. 15g
- luo xing zhi shou (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 旋复花 ..................... 15g
- fu mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g
- bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷 ................................ 6g
- ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 叶叉藤 .............................. 12g
- zheng mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 地骨皮 ................................. 9g

Method: Decoction or as powder. When the formula is decocted, zheng mu dan pi should be decocted for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (zheng mu dan pi, bo he should be added at the end of cooking (hou xia 后下). (Source: Shi Yong Zhang Yi Xin Ke Xue)

LONG DAN XIE GAN TANG 龙胆泻肝汤
(Gentiana Combination) modified

This formula is selected for Liver Fire. At this stage the Heat is severe. The clinical features include insomnia, extreme restlessness and frequent waking, all worse with emotional stress, irritability, short temper, thirst with desire to drink, bitter taste in the mouth, red, sore eyes, severe temporal headaches, concentrated or painful urination, constipation, a red tongue with a thick yellow coat and a wiry, forceful and rapid pulse.

- long dan (Radix Gentianae Longdancao) 龙胆草 .............................. 9g
Clinical notes

- The insomnia of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as stress induced insomnia, hypertension, menopausal syndrome, bipolar mood disorder, depression and premenstrual syndrome.
- Liver qi stagnation type insomnia has an excellent prognosis particularly if the source of external stress can be resolved. Acupuncture is often the treatment of choice for moving stagnant qi and if the insomnia is relatively recent, one course (or less) of acupuncture should effect a cure. Longer term insomnia or insomnia that is associated with more complex patterns may need several courses of acupuncture combined with herbs.
- Relaxation and stress management techniques are useful in people with ongoing sources of stress.
30.2 HEART FIRE

Pathophysiology

- Any Heat pattern that affects the Heart will quickly unsettle the shen and cause relatively severe insomnia, nightmares and restlessness. Clinically, pure excess Heart Fire is not as common as the mixed excess (Fire) and deficiency (of yin) pattern, although it may be seen in certain acute states of anxiety or psychosis and some febrile conditions. If Fire persists then Heart yin will be damaged, eventually leading to the very common Heart and Kidney yin deficiency pattern (p.852).

Clinical features

- insomnia, frequent waking with nightmares
- restlessness, agitation or anxiety
- palpitations
- thirst with a desire for cold fluids
- bitter taste in the mouth
- mouth and tongue ulcers
- red complexion
- concentrated or painful urination
- T red with a redder tip and yellow coat
- P full and rapid

Treatment principle

Clear Heart Fire, calm the shen

Prescription

HUANG LIAN JIE DU TANG 黄连解毒汤

(Coptis and Scute Combination modified)

This formula is suitable for uncomplicated Heart Fire.

huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 9g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 6g
huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏 6g
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 9g
dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 9g
lian zi xin (Plumula Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子心 6g
deng xin cao (Medulla Junci Effusii) 菖蒲草 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

DAO CHI SAN 导赤散

(Rehmannia and Akebia Formula)

This formula is selected if there are minor signs of underlying yin deficiency.

dysuria, or if the condition has persisted for some time.

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 15-30g
mu tong (Caulis Mutong) 木通 3-6g
dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 3-6g
gan cao shao (tips of Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草梢 3-6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

HUANG LIAN E JIAO TANG 黄连阿胶汤

(Coptis and Ass-Hide Gelatin Decoction)

This formula is selected when Heart yin deficiency follows a febrile disease - a type of shao yin syndrome. The correct treatment is to clear Fire, nourish yin, stop irritability and calm the shen.

huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 12g
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 6g
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 9g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 6g
ji zi huang* (egg yolk) 2 yolks

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted in the hot strained decoction (yang bia). The egg yolks are stirred into the strained decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Ke Xue)

ZHU YE SHI GAO TANG 竹叶石膏汤

(Lophatherus and Gypsum Decoction)

This formula is used to treat lingering fever with restlessness, irritability and insomnia in the aftermath of a Summer Heat or febrile illness. Residual Heat remains lodged in the chest and diaphragm (the qi level). The insomnia is characterised by extreme restlessness before sleep and fitful broken sleep thereafter. The patient also experiences dryness of the throat, lips and mouth and a stifling sensation in the chest. This sometimes occurs following incorrect use of antibiotics for a viral illness. The antibiotics are cooling, but do not disperse the Heat pathogen.

dan zhu ye (Herba Lophatheri Gracilis) 淡竹叶 15g
shi gao (Gypsum) 石膏 30g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 天冬 9g
dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilose) 党参 15-30g
geng mi (Semen Oryzae) 芽米 15g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 3g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Xue)
### 30.3 STOMACH DISHARMONY

**Pathophysiology**
- Stomach disharmony describes a type of food stagnation that causes insomnia by obstructing the natural descent of Stomach qi or by generating Heat, both of which can rise and affect the Heart. It is most common in those who eat late at night, eat too much or who attempt to sleep on a full Stomach. If bad dietary habits persist, it can become more severe and overlap with the next pattern, Phlegm Heat.

**Clinical features**
- Insomnia with fullness, discomfort, gurgling, bloating or a blocked feeling in the epigastric region, relieved by belching or vomiting
- Acid reflux
- Nausea
- Indeterminate gnawing hunger
- Bad breath, belching
- Loose, foul-smelling stools or constipation
- Abdominal distension and pain
- Thick white or yellow greasy coat
- Wiry and slippery or slippery and rapid

**Treatment principle**
Relieve food stagnation and harmonise the Stomach
Calm the shen

**Prescription**
**BAO HE WAN** 保和丸
*(Citrus and Crataegus Formula)* modified

- **shan zha** (Fructus Crataegi) 山楂 ................................................. 10g
- **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 ......................................... 15g
- **shen qu** (Massa Fermentata) 神曲 ................................................. 10g
- **ban xia** (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 法夏 ..................................... 10g
- **chen pi** (Piperis Fructus Reticulatae) 陈皮 ..................................... 10g
- **mai ya** (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germnanus) 麦芽 ................................ 12g
- **lian qiao** (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘 ................................. 30g
- **lai fu zi** (Semen Raphani Sativae) 莱菔子 ........................................ 20g
- **ye jiao teng** (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 ................................ 30g
- **suan zao ren** (Semen Zizyphi Spinosa) 酸枣仁 ................................ 15g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with water. The dose is 1 pill twice daily. May also be decocted. (Source: *Zhang Yi Nei Ke Lin Chuang Shou Cao*)
Modifications
• If excessive meat was consumed, double the dose of shan zha.
• If starchy foods, like noodles and grains, double the dose of lai fu zi.
• If vomiting is severe, double the dose of ban xia*, and add sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 甘 姜 10g.
• With constipation, double the dose of lai fu zi, or add da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 6-9g.
• With Heat (irritability, red tongue tip and sides), add shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山枝子 10g and huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连 6g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
• In severe cases, a few doses of a mild purge, like TIAO WEI CHENG QI TANG (Regulate the Stomach and Order the qi Decoction 调胃承气汤) may be useful first, to clear the Stomach and Intestines and promote the correct downward movement of Stomach qi.
  da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄 ........................................... 12g
  gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草 ............................... 6g
  mang xiao (Murraya Paniculata) 芒硝 ........................................... 9-12g
Method: Decoction. Cook da huang and gan cao together for 20 minutes and dissolve mang xiao in the strained decoction (chong fu 冲服). (Source: Formulae and Strategies)

Patent medicines
Bao He Wan 保和丸 (Bao He Wan)
Jian Pi Wan 煎脾丸 (Jian Pi Wan)
  - with qi deficiency
Mu Xiang Shen Qi Wan 木香顺气丸 (Aplotaxis Carminative Pills)
  - with qi stagnation
Lin He Bao He Wan 六合保和丸 (Bo Wo Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Ren.12 (zhong wan - ), St.25 (tian shu - ), St.40 (feng long - ), PC.6 (nei guan), St.43 (xi men - ), St.44 (nei mei - ), St.45 (li mac - ), Sp.1 (sui bai - ), St.34 (tian zhu - ), GB.34 (yang ling guan - )

Clinical notes
• This is a disorder of overindulgence and/or inappropriate timing of eating. In isolation it needs no treatment other than adopting a sensible approach to eating, however if bad habits persist it can become a more entrenched problem.

30.4 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Phlegm Heat has both the cloying nature of Phlegm and the shen agitating quality of Heat. The Phlegm in this pattern (usually the insubstantial type), can 'obstruct (or mist) the orifices of the Heart', weighing down the more rarefied shen causing clouding of consciousness, vagueness and woolly headedness. This pattern may develop from the previous one, appear as a complication of Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency (p.856), or follow a febrile illness that has congealed Fluids into Phlegm. Typically, there will be accompanying symptoms of Stomach qi disturbance.

Clinical features
• insomnia or fitful sleep with much dreaming, or waking in the early hours of the morning (typically around 4am), unable to fall back to sleep
• palpitations with anxiety and nervousness
• irritability and restlessness
• dizziness and vertigo
• heavy or woolly headedness
• fullness and discomfort in the chest
• poor appetite, belching, acid reflux, bitter taste in the mouth
• nausea, vomiting or indeterminate gnawing hunger
T red body or tip and a greasy yellow coast
P wiry or slippery and rapid

Treatment principle
Clear Heat and transform Phlegm
Harmonise the Stomach and calm the shen

Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternateae) 半夏</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taenias) 竹茹</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山枝子</td>
<td>10g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhong Yi Nei Ke Lin Chiang Shou Ce)
Modifications

- With palpitations, panic attacks, or if the patient is easily startled, add "zhīn zhū mù" (Concha Margaritiferae) 30g, "duān lóng gu" (calcined Os Draconis) 15g, and "duān mù lì" (calcined Concha Ostreae) 15g.

- With severe Phlegm Heat (thick yellow greasy coat, woolly headingness, dizziness), add "tiān zhū huáng" (Concretio Silicea Bambusae Textillae) 30g, "duān lóng gu" (calcined Os Draco nis) 15g, and "duān mù lì" (calcined Concha Ostreae) 15g.

- With severe Phlegm Heat (thick yellow greasy coat, woolly headingness, dizziness), add "jiao shān zhā" (baked Fructus Crataegi) 10g, "chāo mài yá" (dry fried Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinantis) 15g, and "chāo lái fú zǐ" (dry fried Semen Raphani Sativ) 6g.

- With food stagnation or obvious digestive disharmony, add two or three of the following herbs: "jiāo shèn qū" (baked Massa Ferrentina ta) 10g, "jiāo shān zhā" (baked Fructus Crataegi) 10g, "chāo mài yá" (dry fried Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinantis) 15g, and "chāo lái fú zǐ" (dry fried Semen Raphani Sativ) 6g.

- With constipation, add "dá huáng" (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 6-9g and "guā lóu rén" (Semen Trichosanthis) 15g.

Variations and additional prescriptions

- In resistant cases a stronger prescription that may be useful is QING HUO DI TAN TANG (Clear Fire, Wash Away Phlegm Decoction).

  - "dān shēn" (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhziae) 12g
  - "fù shēn" (Sclerotoma Portae Cocos Paradacis) 12g
  - "jù huā" (Flores Chrysanthemi Montifoli) 9g
  - "chén pí" (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 9g
  - "mái dōng" (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 9g
  - "bài zǐ rén" (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 9g
  - "zhè bēi mù" (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) 6g
  - "dān nán xīng"* (Pulvis Arisaemae cum Felle Bovis) 6g

  * with constipation, add "dá huáng" (Radix Rhizoma Rhei) 15g and "guā lóu rén" (Semen Trichosanthis) 15g.

Acupuncture

- Du.20 (bài hùn), Ren.12 (zhōng wán-), St.25 (tiān shū-), Sp.1 (jiù bāi), St.40 (fēng zhòng-), St.36 (zà suǒ lì-), PC.6 (nèi guǎn), St.43 (xiān gu-), St.45 (li dìu)

  * with Stomach discomfort, add St.34 (jiāng qín-)
  * with dizziness, add GB.43 (xiā xi-)
  * with anxiety, add Du.19 (bài dìng) and Du.24 (shēn tíng)

Clinical notes

- The insomnia of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as chronic gastritis, peptic ulcer disease, post-febrile disease or neurosis.

- Phlegm Heat type insomnia can also appear in the convalescent stage of a febrile illness.

- This type of insomnia responds well to treatment although treatment needs to continue until all signs of Phlegm are cleared. In particular, until the tongue coat becomes normal. Herbs may be more efficient at clearing entrenched Phlegm although acupuncture itself often starts to improve sleep patterns quickly, especially on the day of treatment.

- The use of sleeping pills is not uncommon for this type of insomnia and significantly complicates and exacerbates a Phlegm Heat pattern. Their withdrawal is strongly recommended, although this must be done gradually and with close supervision.
30.5 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
• Blood stagnation type insomnia can be acute or chronic. When acute it often follows some trauma (either physical or emotional) or head injury, or may follow overenthusiastic use of styptic herbs to quell bleeding. When chronic there will usually be a long history of insomnia or some other problem, that over time caused Blood stasis. Blood stagnation frequently co-exists with other patterns such as Liver qi stagnation, various deficiencies and Phlegm.
• Stagnant Blood causes insomnia because the shen is agitated either by being constrained and prevented from free movement, or from the Heat that may be generated by the stagnation, or both.

Clinical features
• persistent insomnia with much dreaming and restlessness
• irritability, short temper, depression, mood swings
• low grade fever at night
• fixed sharp pains, particularly in the head and upper body
• dry scaly skin
• broken vessels or spider naevi on the face, trunk, inner knee and ankle
• purplish lips, sclera, conjunctiva and nail beds
• dark rings around the eyes
T in acute cases the tongue body may be unremarkable; in chronic cases dark or red purple with brown or purple stasis spots and a thin white coat; sublingual veins are distended and dark
P deep and choppy or wry, or intermittent

Treatment principle
Invigorate the circulation of Blood, regulate qi
Eliminate stagnant Blood, calm the shen

Prescription

XUE FU ZHU YU TANG 血府逐淤汤 (Abhyanthes and Perisia Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tao ren (Semen Persicae) 枸仁</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niu xi (Radix Achyanthhis Bidentatae) 牛膝</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枸杞</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifications
• For severe insomnia, add he huan pi (Cortex Albiziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 12g
• With headache, add man jing zi (Fructus Viticis) 女贞子 9g and bai jiao (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris) 白茞 9g
• With Heat in the Liver, add yu jin (Tuber Curcumae) 郁金 9g
• With pain, add yan hu suo (Rhizoma Curcumae) 延胡索 9g, mo yao (Myrrha) 没药 6g, ru xiang (Gummi Olibanum) 乳香 6g
• With Heat qi deficiency, delete chai hu, jie geng and zhi ke, and add dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 30g, huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 30g
• With yang deficiency or Cold, delete chai hu and jie geng, and add zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Camschiae Praeparata) 柴胡 6g, rou gui (Cortex Cinnaomi Cassiae) 肉桂 3g, xian ling pi (Herba Epimedii) 仙灵脾 12g and ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis) 乌药 9g
• With yin deficiency, delete chai hu, jie geng, chuan xiong and zhi ke, and add mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 天冬 10g, yu zhu (Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati) 玉竹 10g, nu zhen zi (Fructus Ligustici Lucidi) 女贞子 10g and han lian cai (Herba Ecliptae Prostratae) 防风草 10g
• With Blood deficiency, add shou di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conqueatae) 熟地 15g, gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子 15g and he shou wu (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) 何首乌 15g

Patent medicines

Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐淤丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)
Dan Shen Pian 丹参片 (Dan Shen Pills)
Guan Xin An Kou Fu Ye 冠心安口服液 (Guan Xin An Kou Fu Ye)
Jian Kang Wan 健康丸 (Sunho Multi Ginseng Tablets)
Sheng Tian Qi Pian 生天七片 (Raw Tian Qi Ginseng Tablets)
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 古科五金丸 (Woo Garm Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture

BL.17 (ge shu -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao -), LI.4 (he gu -), an mian (N-HN.54),
30.6 HEART BLOOD AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
• This very common type of insomnia occurs because the shen is not anchored by Heart Blood and remains active when it should be settling down into its yin phase. In contrast to the yin deficiency with Heat pattern, the major difficulty here is falling asleep. However, once asleep the patient may stay asleep as there is no Heat to continue disturbing the shen.

Clinical features
• insomnia, with particular difficulty falling asleep (and switching off the mind) and dream disturbed sleep
• palpitations, with or without anxiety
• anxiety, phobias, panic attacks
• forgetfulness, poor memory, poor concentration
• postural dizziness, light-headedness, blurred vision
• fatigue and lethargy
• poor appetite, abdominal distension after eating
• pale, sallow complexion
• easy bruising, or heavy or prolonged menstrual periods
T: pale with a thin white coat
P: thready and weak

Treatment principle
Strengthen and nourish the Heart and Spleen
Tonify qi and Blood, calm the shen

Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhi huang qi (honey fried Radix Astragali Membranacea)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinossae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poria Cocos)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chao bai zhu (dry fried Rhizoma Atractylodes Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long yan rou (Arillus Euphorbiae Longanae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
.......

850

HE ART

30. INSO MN IA

zhi gan c ao (ho ney fried Radix Glycyrr hizae Uralensis)
3( it

s.

Clinical notes
6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Sb, YOllg Zhollg Yi j\,',i K, X lle)

Modifications
• Wit h sever e ins omnia, add two or three o f the following h erbs : wu wei
zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) Ji,."* T 6g, bai zi ren (Sem en
Biotae Orientalis) ;fE! T1:::. 9g, ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori)
-R 3tAl 30g, h e huan pi (Cor tex Albizziae Ju librissin) ~ '¢..It 9g, long
chi ' (De ns D raconis) k. ~ 109, mu li' (Concha Ostreae) 4±'~ 30g to
settle the sben, and mai ya (Fr uctus H ordei Vulgaris Germinantus) ~ ~
l 5g to protect the Stomach from dam age by th e mineral drugs.
• With Liver Heat, add s h an zhi z i (Fructus Garde niae Jasmin oidis)
J-i ~ T 9g and chai hu (Radix Bup leuri) ~~}] 6g.
• When H eart Blood deficiency is prominent (palpitations, anxiety, and
forgetfulness), add shu eli (Radix Rehmanni ae G lutinosae Co nquitae)
M.J~ 30-50g, bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora)
1l5g and e [iao'
JJi(
l5g
to
nourish
Bloo
d,
and
sha ren
(Gelatinum Corii Asini)
(Fructus Amo rni) $;Y 1-=- 6g to aid the digesti on of th e sh u eli.
• With abdomina l and epigastric fullness, po or appetite and a greasy or
109
glossy tongue coat, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Tern atae)
and chen pi (pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) M:, It 109.

"'1

e

+ .I

Patent medicines
Gui Pi Wan 1):1 *,:JL (Gui Pi Wan)
Eai Zi Yang X in Wan ;fEJ T ~ .\.,':JL (Bai Z i Yang Xin Wan)
DangGui Ji Jing ;M 1):1 J~ ;f~' (Tang Ku ei Esse nce of Chicken)
Eu Nao Wan ~+ J1t:JL (Cerebral To nic Pills)
Yang X iII N ing 5 hen IPan ~ ,(; 'T # :JL
(Ning San Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture

I'I'
,

...........

I I

'1 11

{,
I

851

Sp.6 (sanyinJiao +), H t.7 (shen men +), St.36 (zu san Ii +),
Bl.15 (xin sb» +), PC.6 (nei guan +), Bl.17 (ge shu +), Bl.20 (pi shu +) ,
D u.19 (hou dill/) , an mian (N- HN- 54),y in tang (M-H]\; -3)
• with forgetfulness, add D u.20 (bai huz) and Bl.52 (Zhi sin)
e with muc h dreaming, add Bl.42 (po hI{)
• with bruising or heavy period s add Sp.l 0 (xltehat) and
Sp.l (yin bai ...)
• with palpitations add Ht.5 (tong It)
• with dizziness add D u.20 (bai hui A )

• T he inso mnia of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as
neurosis, anaemia, tluombocytop oenia, neur esth enia, chr onic fatigue
syndrome , post partum insomnia, insomnia with menstrual periods
and eating disorders.
• Hear t an d Spleen deficiency pa ttern s resp ond well to tre atment, whic h
should continue until it is clear the Spleen is stro ng eno ugh to make
sufficient Blood. Carefu l diet and eating pa tterns will enhance th e
result. A strictly regular be dtime routine should be adhe red to.
Avoidance of all caffeinated drin ks and stim ulan t drugs is stro ngly
recommend ed.
• Ac up uncture can be ver y effective at to nifying Spleen qi bu t if the
patient is alrea dy very Blood deficien t, herbs will pro bably be
necessary as well. T he rec ommended unmodified prescription includes
on ly two bloo d tonic herbs so as not to tax the weak Spleen. If the
herb s are well tolerated, more Blood tonic herbs can be added
cautiously.
• In wo me n who lose blood (and thus H eart Blood) th rou gh heavy
period s, Blood tonics and Blood re plenishing and iron rich foods
should be taken after each peri od. Iron supp lements are also useful.


30.7 HEART AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- At night and during sleep the dynamic yang aspect of body function subsides while the quiescent yin aspect becomes more prominent. This deep and internal yin houses and grounds the shen at night so the mind can rest. When the yin is damaged, not only is it no longer able to secure the shen, but the accompanying yin deficient Heat agitates it, causing restlessness and frequent waking.
- In contrast to the Blood deficiency patterns, the Heat here keeps disturbing the shen, so frequent waking feeling hot and restless is common. This pattern may follow prolonged or untreated Heart Fire (p.838).

Clinical features

- insomnia, with frequent waking, or waking feeling hot or sweaty
- restlessness, agitation, panic attacks
- palpitations
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- night sweats
- dry mouth and throat
- dizziness, tinnitus
- forgetfulness
- lower back ache

T red with little or no coat
P thready and rapid

Treatment principle

Nourish Heart and Kidney yin
Clear Heat, calm the shen

Prescription

TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN 天王补心丹
(Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula)

This is the representative formula for Heart and Kidney yin deficiency and is excellent for yin deficiency patterns characterised by shen disturbance.

sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 120 (24)g
Tian dong (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchenensis) 天冬 30 (12)g
Mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 30 (12)g
Suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 熟地 30 (12)g
Xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15 (12)g
Dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15 (12)g
Fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 15 (12)g

Variations and additional prescriptions

Following a febrile illness

- If symptoms of yin deficient Fire are severe or the disorder occurs following a febrile disease, the correct treatment is to nourish yin and clear Fire with HUANG LIAN E JIAO TANG (Coptis and Asian Goldenseal Gelatin Decoction) modified.

GU ZHI JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG 桂枝加龙骨牡蛎汤
(Cinnamon and Dragon Bone Combination) modified

This formula is selected following a major shock or trauma that causes insomnia or dream or nightmare disturbed sleep, palpitations with anxiety, hair loss, loss of appetite, dizziness, depression, lack of motivation and a weak, hollow, slow pulse. This is typical of severe communication between the Heart and Kidneys due to shock. Here the physiological symptoms are mild and the mental emotional symptoms are prominent.

gu zhi (Ramuulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 9g
long gu (Os Draconis) 龙骨 15-30g
mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15-30g
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 9g
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 4pce
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 甘草 6g
he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 12g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulae and Strategies)

In severe cases

- Insomnia accompanied by severe palpitations and anxiety may require a
more sedative formula to quickly bring the symptoms under control. **ZHU SHA AN SHEN WAN** (Cinnabar Pill to Calm the Spirit, p.840) is suitable. Because it contains *zhu sha* it is not suitable for prolonged use, and once the condition is under control other formulae should be used.

**Patent medicines**

- **Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan** 天王补心丸 (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan) - excellent for Heart *yin* deficiency with *shen* disturbance
- **Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸** (7:00 Gui Wan)
- **Sheng Mai Wan 生脉丸** (Sheng Mai Wan)
- **Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸** (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan) - a general Kidney *yin* tonic formula
- **Suan Zao Ren Tang Pian 萨枣仁汤片** (Tabellae Suanzaoren)

**Acupuncture**

- PC.8 (*tiao gong*), PC.7 (*da ling*), Kid.3 (*tai xi* +), Ht.7 (*shen men* +), Liv.3 (*tai chong*), Bl.15 (*xin shu* +), Bl.14 (*jue yin shu* +), Bl.23 (*shen shu* +), an mian (N-IIN-54), yin tang (M-HN-3), Sp.6 (*jian yin jiao* +)
  - with dizziness, add Du.20 (*bai hui*)
  - with tinnitus, add SI.19 (*ting gong*) and SJ.3 (*zhong zhu*)
  - with arrhythmias, add Lt.5 (*tong li*)

**Clinical notes**

- The insomnia of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as menopausal syndrome, neurasthenia, hyperthyroidism, anxiety neurosis, fever of unknown origin, convalescence following a febrile disorder and post traumatic shock syndrome.
- This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment, however for it to be long lasting the *yin* will have to be replenished and this takes time. TCM treatment for at least several months will be necessary, although signs of improvement can usually be expected within a few weeks. Long term resolution may depend on the biomedical syndrome the patient presents with. For example, hyperthyroid conditions can be difficult to cure with TCM and may need to be controlled by drugs or surgery if TCM treatment is ineffective, before lasting results can be achieved.
- Acupuncture can be very useful in settling the mind sufficiently to allow sleep and if the insomnia is severe, then daily acupuncture may be desirable.
- Avoidance of all caffeinated drinks and stimulant drugs is strongly recommended. A strictly regular bedtime routine should be adhered to.

Care with other aggravating factors like sex, excessive lifting and standing and dehydration.

- Active pursuit of relaxation should be encouraged. This means that a gentle and positive relaxation routine should be built into the day. Activities such as *tai qi* or yoga nidra are a good way to calm the mind.
30.8 HEART AND GALL BLADDER QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
• In Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency the shen is congenitally unstable or severely disrupted by shock or fright and consequently unable to settle to sleep at night. During the day this manifests in excessive anxiety and worry, easy fright and fear, suspicion and timidity. In many patients with this pattern there will be a lifelong history of timidity, anxiety and fearfulness.

Clinical features
• insomnia or frequent waking, often early in the morning, unable to fall back to sleep; the patient is easily frightened and startled, and easily unsettled by seemingly trivial events
• anxiety and palpitations
• shortness of breath
• lethargy, fatigue, depression
• spontaneous sweating
T normal or with a pale body and a thin white coat; in congenital or long standing cases there may be a deep narrow crack to the tip
P wiry and thready

Treatment principle
Strengthen qi and alleviate fearfulness
Calm the shen and mind

Prescription
AN SHEN DING ZHI WAN 安神定志丸
(Calm the shen, Settle the Emotions Pill) modified

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ................................................................. 9g
fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadicis) 茯苓 ........................................ 15g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)茯苓 ......................................................... 15g
yuan zhi (Radix Polygonae Temuifolae)远志 ........................................... 15g
long chi* (Dens Draconis)龙齿 ................................................................. 15g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 ........................................ 15g
chao suan zao ren (dry fried Semen Zizyphi Spinoseae) 炒酸枣仁 .................. 15g
ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 ......................................... 15g
mu li* (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 ................................................................. 20g
zhu sha* (Cinnabaris)朱砂 (optional) ...................................................... 5g

Method: Decoction. Grind herbs (except zhu sha) to a powder and form into 9 gram pills with honey. If used, coat the outside of the pills with the zhu sha. The dose is 1 pill twice daily. May also be decocted. If decocted, the zhu sha (0.5g) is taken with the strained decoction (zhong fu 冲服). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Patent medicines
Bu Nao Wan 补脑丸 (Cerebral Tonic Pills)
Ding Xin Wan 定心丸 (Ding Xin Wan)
Yang Xin Ning Shen Wan 奇心宁神丸 (Ning San Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Du.20 (bai hui), PC.7 (da ling), Ht.7 (shen men), GB.40 (qiu xiu),
Bl.7 (tong tian), St.36 (zhu san li), Bl.23 (shen shu), Bl.52 (zhi sha),
Bl.47 (hun men), an miao (N-HN-54), yin tang (M-HN-3)

Clinical notes
• The insomnia of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as anxiety neurosis, neurasthenia, involitional psychosis, premenstrual syndrome, sinus tachycardia, depression and panic attacks.
• This pattern often overlaps with Phlegm Heat. See also p.843.
• In congenital cases, prolonged acupuncture and herbal treatment, in conjunction with appropriate psychotherapy or other confidence building treatment, may help stabilise the shen to some degree.
30.9 LIVER YIN (BLOOD) DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- The "hun" (the aspect of conscious awareness related to the Liver) is contained at night by Liver yin and Blood. Weak yin and Blood cannot anchor the "hun" to the Liver adequately, and at night it wanders restlessly. At the same time, when the structural components (yin and Blood) of the Liver are deficient, the functional aspect (Liver qi) will be in relative excess (and therefore prone to stagnation), and can agitate the "hun." Liver deficiency will also affect the Heart (and shen) via the generative cycle.

Clinical features
- insomnia with difficulty falling asleep or frequent waking, much dreaming and fitful sleep; there may be talking during sleep or, in severe cases, sleep walking
- irritability, quick temper
- forgetfulness
- waking with a dry throat or thirst
- sore, gritty, dry eyes, or visual disturbances
- dizziness
- palpitations
- T red and dry
- P wiry or thready and rapid

Treatment principle
Soothe the Liver and nourish yin Blood
Calm the "hun" (and shen) and clear Heat

Prescription
SUAN ZAO REN TANG 酸枣仁汤
(Zizyphus Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhcae Asphodeloidis) 知母</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Variations and additional prescriptions
With Liver qi stagnation
- If Liver yin deficiency is complicated by qi stagnation, with the above symptoms plus hypochondria and chest pain, acid reflux and teeth grinding, the correct treatment is to nourish Liver yin and spread Liver qi with YI GUAN JIAN (Linking Decoction - 贯关, p.790).

Patent medicines
Xiao Yao Wan 逍遥丸 (Xiao Yao Wan)
SUAN ZAO REN TANG Pian 酸枣仁汤片 (Tabellae Suanzaoren)

Acupuncture
Liv.3 (tai chong +), Bl.18 (gan shu +), Bl.15 (xin shu +), Bl.17 (ge shu), Bl.23 (shen shu +), PC.6 (nei guan), GB.20 (feng chi), Ht.7 (shen men +), au man (N-HN-54), jin tang (M-HN-3)
- with Liver Heat add Liv.2 (xing jian +)

Clinical notes
- The insomnia of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as stress response, menopausal syndrome, premenstrual syndrome, somnambulism, hyperthyroidism, hypertension and chronic hepatitis.
- Responds reasonably well to correct treatment.
- It is important to avoid stimulants, including alcohol and spicy foods, generally and especially close to bedtime. As much as possible stressful situations should be avoided and stress management practices instituted.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR INSOMNIA

Excess patterns
Liver qi stagnation - *Xiao Yao Wan* 逍遥丸
• with stagnant Heat - *Dan Zhi Xiao Yao San* 丹栀逍遥散
• Liver Fire - *Long Dan Xin Gan Tang* 龙胆泻肝汤

Heart Fire - *Huang Lian Jiu Du Tang* 黄连解毒汤
• with underlying deficiency - *Dao Chi San* 导赤散
• following a febrile disease - *Huang Lian E Jiao Tang* 黄连阿胶汤
• severe insomnia with anxiety and palpitations - *Zhu Sha An Shen Wan* 朱砂安神丸

Stomach disharmony - *Bao He Wan* 保和丸
• with constipation - *Tiao Wei Cheng Qi Tang* 调胃承气汤

Phlegm Heat - *Wen Dan Tang* 温胆汤
• in resistant cases - *Qing Hua Di Tan Tang* 清火涤痰汤

Stagnant Blood - *Xin Fu Zhu Yu Tang* 血府逐瘀汤

Deficient patterns
Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency - *Gui Pi Tang* 归脾汤

Heart and Kidney yin deficiency - *Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan* 天王补心丹
• following a febrile disease - *Huang Lian E Jiao Tang* 黄连阿胶汤
• severe insomnia with anxiety and palpitations - *Zhu Sha An Shen Wan* 朱砂安神丸

Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency - *An Shen Ding Zhi Wan* 安神定志丸

Liver yin (Blood) deficiency - *Swan Zao Ren Tang* 酸枣仁汤
• with qi stagnation - *Yi Guan Jian* 一贯煎

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle° or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
SOMNOLENCE
duo mei 多寐

The term duo mei (literally too much sleep) refers to a particular type of tiredness, specifically mental fatigue and an inability to stay alert during the day. By convention, this chapter is usually added to insomnia in the Heart section of the text, however there is little or no Heart pathology associated with duo mei. As we have seen in the previous chapter, inability to sleep is largely due to disturbance of the shen, that aspect of conscious awareness associated with the Heart. The mechanism of its corollary, however, has little to do with the shen or the Heart directly (although of course the final outcome does reflect some lack of expression of the shen). Rather, somnolence may be said to be a direct repercussion of the failure of clear yang to reach the head. The pathological patterns responsible tend to involve the Spleen more than the Heart.

Duo mei may cover some aspects of the fatigue our patients so often complain about when they say they are chronically tired or have low energy. It should be remembered though that duo mei refers specifically to mental fatigue and inability to think clearly, not just low physical energy. Low physical energy is often related to qi and/or Blood deficiency and does not involve a specific failure of yang qi to reach the head.

AETIOLOGY
Phlegm Damp
External Damp may affect people who have prolonged exposure to a damp climate or environmental damp (for example living in damp-affected houses). Alternatively, factors that weaken the Spleen (see below), enable the generation of internal Dampness, which eventually congeals into Phlegm. Such yin pathogens can obstruct the flow of qi and the ascent of clear yang.

Spleen qi deficiency
Excessive mental activity, irregular dietary habits (particularly excessive consumption of cold or raw food), or prolonged illness can drain Spleen qi. When the Spleen is not functioning properly, there will be inadequate generation of qi and Blood with consequent underfunctioning of all organ systems. In this case, inadequate qi means inadequate nourishment of the brain and senses.

Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
Prolonged exposure to cold, excessive sexual activity, overwork and excessive consumption of cold raw foods drain Spleen and Kidney yang. The elderly, chronically ill, and those with a constitutional tendency to Kidney weakness often exhibit a lack of yang. Yang is the dynamic and motivating aspect of normal physiology, and a lack of yang energy will manifest in its opposite—a relative excess of yin.

Blood stagnation
Head injury is the most common cause of drowsiness due to Blood stagnation. However, Blood stagnation from other causes, for example severe shock, chronic stagnation of qi, Phlegm or Damp, long term illness or old age can cause drowsiness and dulled mental activity

DIAGNOSIS
In broad terms, somnolence is due to a failure of yang qi invigorating the senses. This lack may be local or systemic. It may be due to systemic deficiency of yang or qi (a deficient pattern) or an obstruction to the flow of yang by Phlegm, Dampness or stagnant Blood (an excess pattern). In most cases there will be a mixture of deficiency and excess, for example, Spleen deficiency underlying Dampness or Phlegm.

---

**BOX 31.1 SOME BIOMEDICAL CAUSES OF SOMNOLENCE**

- narcolepsy
- sleep apnoea
- hypoglycaemia
- food allergies
- chronic fatigue syndrome
- hypothyroidism
- psychological defense after shock or a physical reaction to trauma or injury (including surgery)
- bereavement
dr. d BI d • bereavementca use 0 . ows mess ue t o 00 • alcohol excess
- Blood stagnation or a physical reaction to trauma or Head injury is the most common injury (including surgery)

**BOX 31.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS**

**Fatigue and sleepiness**
- better for exercise - excess pattern
- worse for exertion - deficient pattern
- following trauma or shock - Blood stagnation

**Tongue**
- thick tongue coat - Dampness or Phlegm
- purple tongue or with brown or purple spots - Blood stagnation
- swollen and pale with a thin coat - Spleen qi deficiency
- swollen, pale or bluish with a moist coat - Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency
31.1 DAMPNESS WRAPPING THE SPLEEN

Pathophysiology
- The presence of Dampness impedes the normal circulation of yang qi, in this case to the head and extremities. Without adequate yang to invigorate the brain and brighten the eyes, the patient experiences mental dullness, difficulty thinking clearly and the eyes wanting to close.

Clinical features
- Sleepiness and drowsiness, particularly after eating and more so after lunch. Depending on the degree of deficiency, however, there may also be difficulty sleeping at night (p.870).
- Variable fatigue—may feel better for activity and exertion
- Woolly headedness (like having the head wrapped in a damp towel), difficulty concentrating
- Dizziness
- Heavy tired limbs
- Fullness and discomfort, or a feeling of blockage in the chest and epigastrium, abdominal distension
- Poor appetite, loss of taste
- Nausea, acid reflux
- Loose stools
- Tongue swollen with a thick, white greasy coat
- P soft and soggy or slippery

Treatment principle
Dry Dampness, strengthen the Spleen

Prescription
PING WEI SAN (Ping Wei San) modified
(Magnolia and Ginger Formula) 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cang zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huo xiang (Herba Agastaches seu Pogostemi)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis)</td>
<td>3pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae)</td>
<td>1pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind the herbs into powder and take 9-grams as a draft on an empty stomach. May also be decocted. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Niu Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With woolly headedness and poor concentration, add yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 6g.
- With nausea, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 9g.
- With Cold, add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 6g and rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassia) 3g.
- Prolonged stagnation of Dampness can generate Heat giving rise to a greasy yellow tongue coat, bitter taste in the mouth, yellow urine, irritability and a rapid pulse. Delete huo xiang and add Huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 9g, shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 9g, tong cao (Medulla Tetrapanacis Papryriferi) 6g and yi ren (Semem Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 15g.
- With Spleen deficiency (loss of appetite, pale tongue, weak pulse), add huang qi (Radix Astragalii Membranacei) 12g, bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 9g, and shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Opposae) 12g. See also p.870.

Patent medicines
PING WEI SAN (Ping Wei San)
ER CHEN WAN (Er Chen Wan)
XIANG SHA LILU JUN ZI WAN (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan)
XING JUN SAN (Marching Powder, Five Pagodas Brand)
- A powerful Damp dispersing agent, useful in small doses for difficult or resistant cases

Acupuncture
St.40 (jeng long -), Sp.3 (tai bai), Du.20 (bai hui), Bl.62 (shen mai), Kid.6 (zhaohai), Sp.9 (yin ling quan), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), Ren.12 (zhong wan), St.36 (zu san li + ), GB.20 (feng chi)

Clinical notes
- The somnolence in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as narcolepsy, food allergies, hypoglycaemia, chronic fatigue syndrome and intestinal infection by candida albicans.
- This pattern can respond well to correct and prolonged treatment. Graded exercises are useful in some cases. Care with diet and avoidance of certain foods, if there is intolerance or allergy, is important.
31.2 PHLEGM OBSTRUCTION

Pathophysiology
- This pattern is similar to the previous one, except it occurs in people who exhibit a strong constitutional tendency to Phlegm accumulation. Consequently it tends to become a more chronic and stubborn condition. The Phlegm obstructs the rise of yang to the head causing sleepiness and unclear thinking.

Clinical features
- chronic and continuous somnolence, heavy sleep, difficult to rouse
- tendency to obesity
- glossy or greasy skin
- woolly headedness (like having the head wrapped in a damp towel)
- poor concentration
- dizziness
- heavy tired limbs
- fullness and discomfort, or a feeling of blockage in the chest and epigastrium
T flabby, with a thick greasy coat
P slippery

Treatment principle
Transform Phlegm, open channels to the head

Prescription
DI TAN TANG 淖痰湯
(Source Phlegm Decoction) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 忍冬藤</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis) 竹茹</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan nan xing* (Pulvis Arisaemia cum Felle Bosis) 天南星</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜</td>
<td>3pce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣</td>
<td>4pce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xu)

Modifications
- With no Heat, delete zhu ru, and substitute tian nan xing* (Rhizoma Arisaematis 天南星 6g) for dan nan xing.
- With Heat, add huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis 黄连 6g), qing dai (Pulv. Indigo 青黛 3g) and huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis 黄芩 9g).

Patent medicines
- Er Chen Wan (Er Chen Wan) 二陈丸
- Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸

Acupuncture
St.40 (feng long -), Sp.3 (tai bai -), Du.20 (bai hui), Sp.9 (yin ling quan -), Sp.6 (san yin jiao), St.25 (tian shu), Ren.12 (zhong wan), Bl.20 (pi shu), St.36 (zu san li +), Liv.3 (tai chong), GB.20 (feng chi), Bl.62 (chen mai), Kid.6 (zhao hai)

Clinical notes
- The somnolence in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as narcolepsy, chronic fatigue syndrome, systemic candidiasis or morbid obesity
- Because of the continual tendency to Phlegm in this pattern, treatment generally takes a long time. Appropriate dietary and lifestyle changes (such as weight loss and exercise) are necessary for satisfactory results.

Figure 31.1 Patterns and relationships of somnolence
31.3 BLOOD STAGNATION

Pathophysiology
• Blood stagnation type somnolence usually follows a head injury or other trauma. In acute cases the history is the key feature, as classical Blood stagnation signs and symptoms may not be apparent. Blood stagnation may also follow other chronic pathologies, especially prolonged qi stagnation, in which case there will usually be objective signs of stagnant Blood.

Clinical features
• persistent daytime drowsiness, mental confusion and unclear thinking
• recurrent fixed headache
• chronic tinnitus
• dizziness
• low grade fever at night
• broken vessels or spider naevi on the face, trunk, inner knee and ankle
• darkish complexion
• dark rings around the eyes, purplish lips, sclera, conjunctiva and nail beds
• depression, mood swings

T in acute cases may be unremarkable; in chronic cases dark or purplish with brown or purple stagnation spots
P choppy or wiry and thready

Treatment principle
Invigorate the circulation of Blood
Open the channels and collaterals

Prescription
TONG QIAO HUO XUE TANG 通窍活血汤
(Unblock the Orifices and Invigorate the Blood Decoction) modified

This formula is quite specific for stagnant Blood affecting the head and in particular the senses.

\[ \text{tao ren} \] (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 ........................................ 9g
\[ \text{hong hua} \] (Flos Carthami Tinctorii) 红花 ........................................ 9g
\[ \text{chi shao} \] (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍 ........................................ 6g
\[ \text{chuan xiong} \] (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎 ........................................ 6g
\[ \text{cong bai} \] (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) 蒜白 ........................................ 3g
\[ \text{da zao} \] (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ........................................ 7pce
\[ \text{shengjiang} \] (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 ........................................ 9g
\[ \text{xue xiang} \] (Secretto Moschus) 熏香 ........................................ 0.15g

Method: Decoction. She xiang is usually taken separately or added to the strained decoction. (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications (apply to both prescriptions, where not already included)
• With qi stagnation, add qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride) 青皮 9g, chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g, xiang fu (Rhizoma Cyperi Ronund) 香附 9g and zhi ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枳壳 9g.
• With qi deficiency, add huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae) 黄芪 12g and dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae) 党参 12g.
• With yin deficiency, add sheng di (Radix Rehmannia Glutinosae) 生地 12g, dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 12g and mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮 9g.
• With Cold or yang deficiency, add gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝 9g and zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 6g.
• With Heat, add huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩 9g and shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子 9g.
• With Phlegm, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 9g, chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 6g and bai jie zi (Semen Sinapis Albae) 白芥子 6g.

Patent medicines
Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸 (Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan)

Acupuncture
Local points of pain on the head plus BL15 (xin shu -), LI4 (he gu -), BL17 (ge shu -), SP6 (san xin jiao -), SP10 (xue hai -), GB20 (feng chi -), BL62 (shen mai), SI3 (hou xi), Kid.6 (zhao bai), Liv 3 (tao yang), si shen cong (M-HN-1)
• with shock, add Du.26 (ren zhang)

Clinical notes
• The somnolence in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as concussion, post concussion syndrome, cerebral tumours, post stroke, post shock or post trauma of any sort including surgery.
• This pattern can be difficult to treat when chronic; acute cases generally respond better to treatment.
31.4 SPLEEN QI (AND BLOOD) DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
• In Spleen deficiency somnolence, it is deficiency rather than obstruction that prevents the brain and senses from receiving sufficient qi so there is sleepiness and a lack of alertness accompanied by physical fatigue.

Clinical features
• daytime drowsiness and desire for sleep which is worse for exertion and eating
• paradoxically, if the Blood has become significantly depleted, Blood deficient insomnia may develop at night (see p.849)
• mental and physical fatigue
• weakness and tiredness in the limbs
• sallow, pale complexion
• poor appetite, nausea
• abdominal distension
• loose stools
T pale and swollen with tooth marks and a thin white coat
P deficient and weak

Treatment principle
Strengthen the Spleen and tonify qi
Dry Dampness (if necessary)

Prescription
XIAN G SH A LIU JUN ZI TA NG 香砂六君子汤 (Saussurea and Cardamom Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephala) 白术</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotum Portae Cocos) 茯苓</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chen pi (Percarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha ren (Fructus Amomi) 砂仁</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. Sha ren is added towards the end of cooking time (hao xia 后下). (Source: Shi Yang Zhong Yi Nü Ke Xu)

Variations and additional prescriptions
• With food stagnation, add two or three of the following herbs: jiao shen qu (baked Massa Fermentata) 焦神曲 10g, jiao shan zha (baked Fructus Crataegi) 焦山楂 10g, chao mai ya (dry fried Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinantus) 炒麦芽 10g or chao lai fu zi (dry fried Semen Raphani Sativ) 炒莱菔子 15g.
• With cold extremities, add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 6g.
• With thin watery mucus, add gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜 6g and hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴 6g.
• With spontaneous sweating, add mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 15g, ma huang gen (Radix Ephedrae) 麻黄根 9g, fu xiao mai (Semen Tribici Aestivii) 浮小麦 12g.

Patent medicines
Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Wan 香砂六君子丸 (Xiang Sha Liu Jun Wan) Ping Wei San 平胃散 (Ping Wei San)
- combine with the above patent medicine with significant Dampness Er Chen Wan 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan)
- combine with the above patent medicine with significant Phlegm

Acupuncture
Du.20 (bai hu), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), Ren.12 (zhong wai +), Bl.62 (shen mai), Kid.6 (zhao bai), St.40 (feng long -), Sp.3 (tai bai +), St.36 (zu san li +), Bl.20 (pi shu +), ai shen cong (M-HN-1)

Clinical notes
• The somnolence in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as narcolepsy, hypoglycaemia, chronic fatigue syndrome, food allergies or systemic candidiasis.
• The mental fatigue of this pattern responds well to correct treatment, although chronic fatigue syndrome itself can take a long time to treat successfully.
Pathophysiology

- Yang is the dynamic and motivating aspect of normal physiology, thus lack of yang will manifest in its opposite—an excess of yin—in this case dulled sensorium and drowsiness. Yang deficiency is especially pronounced in the daytime, the time when the body should be at its most yang.

Clinical features

- constant drowsiness and desire to sleep, the patient sleeps curled up
- mental and physical exhaustion
- apathy and depression
- soft voice, reluctance to speak
- forgetfulness
- lower back ache
- low libido, impotence
- digestive weakness
- cold intolerance and extremities
T pale or bluish and swollen with a thin moist coat
P deep, thready and weak

Treatment principle

Benefit qi, warm yang
Strengthen the Spleen and Kidney

Prescription

**FU ZI LI ZHONG WAN** 附子理中丸
*(Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger formula)*

This formula is selected when the primary deficiency affects the Spleen. The main features are somnolence with digestive weakness and loss of appetite and diarrhoea.

**zhì fù zì** (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ... 9g
**gàn jiāng** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 千姜 ....................... 9g
**rèn shēn** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ..................................... 9g
**bāi zhù** (Rhizoma Atractyloids Macrocephalae) 白术 .............. 9g
**zhì gàn cáo** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
炙甘草 ................................................................. 9g

Method: Grind herbs into powder and form into 3-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill 2-3 times daily on an empty stomach. May also be prepared as a decoction, in which case **zhì fù zì** is cooked for 30 minutes prior to the other herbs (xián juàn 先煎).
JIN KUI SHEN QI WAN 金匮肾气丸
(Rehmannia Eight Formula)

This formula is selected when Kidney yang deficiency is prominent. The main features are somnolence with urinary dysfunction, lower back ache and oedema of the lower extremities.

- shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquiae) 熟地 ... 240g
- shan yao (Radix Dioscorae Opposita) 山药 ... 120g
- shan zhu yu (Prunus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸 ... 120g
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poza Cocos) 茯苓 ... 90g
- ze xie (Rhzoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻 ... 90g
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 熟地 ... 90g
- zhi fu zi* (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子 ... 60g
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 ... 45g

Method: Grind the herbs into powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. May be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage. When decocted zhi fu zi is cooked for 30 minutes before the other herbs (xiao juan 先煎). (Source: Shi Yang Zheng Yi Nai Ke Xun)

Variations and additional prescriptions

- In severe cases with evidence of both yang and yin deficiency, use prescriptions that have a stronger jing nourishing effect, like YOU GUI WAN (Eucommia and Rehmannia formula 右归丸, p.559) or GUI LU ER XIAN JIAO (Tortoise Shell and Deer Antler Syrup 龟鹿二仙胶, p.920).

Patent medicines

Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸 (Li Chung Yuen Medical Pills)
Li Zhong Wan 理中丸 (Li Zhong Wan)
Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (Sexotonic Pills)

Acupuncture

Bl.23 (shen shu +▲), Bl.20 (pi shu +▲), Du.4 (ming men ▲), Kid.3 (tai xi +▲), Bl.52 (zhi shu), Ren.6 (qi hai +▲), Du.20 (bai hui), Bl.62 (shen men), Kid.6 (zhu hao), St.36 (zhu san li +▲)

Clinical notes

- The somnolence in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as narcolepsy, chronic fatigue syndrome, old age, post illness recovery or hypothyroidism.
- Symptoms of yang deficiency generally respond well to correct treatment, although profound or long term deficiency always needs long term therapy.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR SOMNOLENCE

Excess patterns

Dampness wrapping the Spleen - Ping Wei San 平胃散
Turbid Phlegm obstruction - Di Tan Tang 涤痰汤
Stagnant Blood - Tong Qiao Hua Xue Tang 通窍活血汤

Deficient patterns

Spleen qi deficiency - Xiang Sha Lin Jun Zi Tang 香砂六君子汤
Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency

- with primary Spleen deficiency - Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan 附子理中丸
- with primary Kidney deficiency - Jin Kui Shen Qi Wan 金匮肾气丸
- with yang and yin deficiency - You Gui Wan 右归丸

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle* or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Disorders of the Heart

32. Forgetfulness

Heart and Spleen deficiency
Heart and Kidney not communicating
Kidney jing deficiency
Phlegm and Blood stagnation
FORGETFULNESS
fian wang 健忘

According to TCM theory, memory depends on the balanced interaction of various aspects of the Heart, Spleen and Kidney. Those aspects of healthy mental functioning which operate to allow clear and enduring memory are the yi 意, zhi 智, shen 神 and jing 精。

Shen (Heart) is responsible for clarity of thought and perception in general. The yi (Spleen) controls the ability to focus and concentrate. Understanding or analysis of factual material or ideas is the domain of the shen and the zhi (Kidneys), while the laying down of memories in the grey matter (Marrow) depends on jing.

TCM THEORY OF MEMORY

Processing of perceptions into memory happens every waking moment of life through the effort of yi and the awareness of shen, thus very many layers of memory are laid down in the body's store of jing. As new memories are processed, they are stored (like holographic images) in the substrata of jing, the earliest memories at the deepest levels. Long term memory and indeed our collective ancestral memory is related to the quality and quantity of jing. It is the transfer of jing from one generation to the next that maintains the continuous link to our primordial roots.

Loss of short term memory, such as that following a shock or trauma, is usually related to severe destabilisation of the shen or a severing of the communication between the shen and zhi, while loss of long term memory reflects a more deep seated disorder affecting the jing and Marrow. The loss of short term memory typical of advancing age, however, is related to the amount of jing remaining. As ageing inexorably consumes jing, converting it into shen in the process, the most deeply buried memories are uncovered. Thus the very elderly often have very clear memories of their childhood or events of the distant past but very little capacity for short term memory. At this stage of life the amount of jing remaining is small, and therefore the amount that can be converted to shen is small—clarity of shen is reduced and short term memory lost.

This chapter covers memory disorders ranging from the vagueness and poor concentration seen in some neurological diseases and during convalescence, to the amnesia associated with trauma or concussion and full blown dementia with loss of short and long term memory.

AETIOLOGY

Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency
Excessive mental activity and/or irregular dietary habits can drain Spleen qi. This can lead to inadequate generation of qi and Blood and consequent underfunction of all organ systems. Spleen weakness leads to instability of the yi and therefore to an inability to focus and concentrate, causing short attention span and poor capacity to memorise. Heart weakness, usually as the result of mental stress or shock, or in this case Blood deficiency, causes a shen imbalance and a tendency to unclear thinking, poor short term memory and inarticulate speech. Heart and Spleen deficiency often follows inadequate recovery following childbirth or a severe post partum (or other) haemorrhage.

Heart and Kidney not communicating
The relationship between the Heart and Kidney, one of the fundamental relationships of the body and mind, can be disturbed in a number of ways. At a deep level it involves a breakdown of the controlling (ke 克, p.70) cycle, where Kidney water prevents a runaway blaze of Heart Fire. Heart and Kidney jin are damaged by overworking (especially while under stress), insufficient sleep, febrile diseases, ageing, excessive ejaculation, many pregnancies and abuse of recreational drugs. Prolonged or excessive use of these drugs is quite a common and important cause of forgetfulness and memory loss. The most commonly abused substances in the West are alcohol, cannabis, amphetamine and cocaine. Most likely to consume Heart and Kidney jin are cannabis, amphetamines and cocaine. Alcohol tends to clog the brain with Damp Heat. Other drugs that damage jin are the anxiolytic benzodiazepines, withdrawal from which can cause memory loss.

At a more superficial level, disconnection of Heart and Kidney may occur as the result of a major shock or trauma, severing the communication between the zhi and the shen. Clinically, this situation presents primarily with mental symptoms and few, if any, physical symptoms.

Decline of jing
The elderly are prone to forgetfulness due to the decline of jing. jing is responsible for the maintenance of the Marrow and brain, and for the storage of memory. As the basis of the body's jin and yang, jing is consumed as part of the natural process of ageing. A weakness of jing may also be inherited. jing deficiency patterns are not restricted to the elderly or those who inherit poor quality jing. Excessive ejaculation, many pregnancies, miscarriages or terminations, severe illness and drug abuse can also consume jing.
Blood and Phlegm stagnation

Stagnant Blood and/or Phlegm will obstruct the passage of 'clear yang' to the head, affecting the clarity of many mental functions. It may occur as a result of an acute trauma, whether this be injury to the head or a sudden shock, or as a result of chronic or long term qi stagnation or accumulation of Phlegm or Damp. Blood and Phlegm stagnation may appear as a complication of any long term illness or simply because of old age.

32.1 HEART BLOOD AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

- When Heart Blood is weak, the shen is unanchored and becomes unstable.
- When Spleen qi is deficient, the yi will be weak. Depending on whether the Heart or the Spleen is more affected, the patient will exhibit either more forgetfulness or poor attention span and inability to concentrate.

Clinical features

- forgetfulness, poor memory, absent-mindedness, short attention span, inability to concentrate
- insomnia, with particular difficulty falling asleep (and switching off the mind) and dream disturbed sleep
- palpitations with or without anxiety
- anxiety, phobias, panic attacks
- postural dizziness
- blurring vision
- fatigue and weakness
- poor appetite
- abdominal distension after eating
- sallow, pale complexion
- easy bruising
- heavy or prolonged menstrual periods

T pale with a thin white coat
P thready and weak

Treatment principle

Strengthen and nourish the Heart and Spleen
Tonify qi and Blood, calm the shen

Prescription

GUI PI TANG 加脾汤
(Ginseng and Longan Combination) modified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranace)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadicis)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae)</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long yan rou (Arillus Euphoriae Longae)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acon Graminei)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 ................................. 6g
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 ................................. 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Modifications
- With marked Heart Blood deficiency (severe forgetfulness, palpitations and anxiety), add shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquitae) 熟地 30-50g, bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍 15g and e jiao’ (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶 15g. Add sha ren (Fructus Amomi) 沙仁 6g to aid digestion of the rich Blood tonics.
- With marked Spleen qi deficiency, it may be necessary to initially reduce the dose of (or delete) the richer Blood tonics (long yan rou and dang gui) until the Spleen is strong enough to digest them properly.
- With severe insomnia, add two or three of the following herbs: wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis) 五味子 6g, bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 9g, ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 30g, he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 合欢皮 9g, long chi (Dens Dracoris) 五味子 10g or mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 30g, and mai ya (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germanianus) 麦芽 15g to protect the Stomach from damage by the mineral drugs.
- With Liver Heat, add shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoids) 山梔子 9g and chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 川芎 6g.
- With Dampness causing abdominal and epigastric fullness, poor appetite and a greasy or glossy tongue coat, add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 10g and chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 10g.

Patent medicines
- Gui Pi Wan 归脾丸 (Gui Pi Wan)
- Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan 柏子養心丸 (Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan)
- Dang Gui Ji Jing 当归鸡精 (Tang Kuei Essence of Chicken)
- Bu Nao Wan 补脑丸 (Cerebral Tonic Pills)

Acupuncture
- Du.20 (bai hui +), Bl.52 (zhi shi +), Ht.3 (shao hui), Ht.7 (shen men +), Bl.15 (xin shu +), Bl.17 (ge shu +), Bl.20 (pi shu +), yin tang (M-HN-3), Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), St.36 (zuo san li +), Ren.4 (quan yuan +)
- with much dreaming add BL.42 (po hui)

Clinical notes
- The forgetfulness of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as anaemia, neuresthenia, post-concussion syndrome, post-illness convalescence, depression, drug abuse or multiple sclerosis.
- The forgetfulness and other symptoms of Heart and Spleen deficiency generally respond well to correct treatment; when the deficiency is severe or prolonged, however, long term treatment will be necessary.
- In the case of a disease like multiple sclerosis of a Heart and Spleen deficiency type, the prognosis is much less certain.
- Spleen qi needs to be supported with regular eating habits and easily digested mild foods. Good quality and sufficient sleep is essential, so a strictly regular bedtime routine should be adhered to.
- In women who lose blood (and thus Heart Blood) through heavy periods (or post partum haemorrhage), Blood tonics and Blood replenishing and iron rich foods should be taken after each period. Iron supplements are also useful.
- Activities to calm the shen and exercise the yi are useful. For example the gentle exercise of tai qi, yoga or regular walking are excellent to calm the mind and gradually build qi. The yi can be exercised by concentration training, like doing crosswords or meditation.
- Treatment with herbs may be important to build the Blood, but acupuncture treatment, especially with points like Du.20 (bai hui), will often be requested by the patient once they have experienced its effect of lifting qi to the head and stimulating the mind.
### 32.2 HEART AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY

#### Pathophysiology
- Heart and Kidney yin deficiency type forgetfulness (also known as Heart and Kidney not communicating) is due to a breakdown in the relationship between the *shen* and *zhi*, such that the mind loses stability and the capacity to remember clearly. The breakdown of this fundamental relationship can occur because Kidney yin fails to nourish Heart yin and balance Heart Fire, which then blazes out of control. It can also occur following a major trauma or shock.

#### Clinical features
- forgetfulness
- insomnia, with frequent waking, or waking feeling hot or sweaty
- restlessness
- palpitations
- anxiety, panic attacks
- sensation of heat in the palms and soles ('five hearts hot')
- night sweats
- dry mouth and throat
- dizziness and tinnitus
- lower back ache
- T red with little or no coat
- P thready and rapid

#### Treatment principle
- Nourish Heart and Kidney yin
- Clear Heat, calm the *shen*

#### Prescription

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIAN WANG BU XIN DAN 天王补心丹 (Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>sheng di</em> (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 120 (24)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tian dong</em> (Tuber Asparagi Cochinchinensis) 天冬 30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mai dong</em> (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬 30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>suan zao ren</em> (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>xuan shen</em> (Radix Scrophulariae) 玄参 15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>dan shen</em> (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fu ling</em> (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 苦参 15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>dang gui</em> (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>wu wei zi</em> (Fructus Schizandre Chinensis) 五味子 30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>bai zi ren</em> (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Variations and additional prescriptions

##### Severe Heat, or following a febrile illness
- If symptoms of yin deficient Fire are severe, or the disorder occurs following a febrile disease the correct treatment is to nourish yin and clear Fire with HUANG LIAN E JIAO TANG (*Coptis and Ass-Hide Gelatin Decoction*, 黄连阿胶汤, p.839).

#### Following a major shock or trauma
- If forgetfulness (or in severe cases amnesia) follows a major shock or trauma (other than head injury, see p.890) this indicates that communication between the Heart and Kidneys has been severed. Typically, the characteristic symptoms of yin deficiency may be absent and instead the forgetfulness is accompanied by, insomnia and dreams—or nightmare—disturbed sleep, flashbacks, panic attacks, palpitations, hair loss, loss of appetite, dizziness, depression, lack of motivation, a slightly pale tongue and a hollow, slow pulse. A useful formula is GUI ZHI JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG (*Cinnamon and Dragon Bone Combination* 紫石英肉桂龙牡汤, p.814), with the addition of *shi chang pu* (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 6g and *yuan zhi* (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 6g.

**With Kidney yin deficiency**
- If Kidney yin is particularly weak, the main principle is to nourish Kidney yin, calm the *shen*, and promote memory with SHENG HUI TANG (*Promote Wisdom Decoction* 生慧汤).

| shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquiae) 熟地       | 18-30g  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| *suan zao ren* (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁               | 15g    |
| *shan zhu yu* (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸             | 12g    |
| *bai zi ren* (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁                 | 12g    |
| *fu shen* (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadi cis) 伏神         | 12g    |
| *ren shen* (Radix Ginseng) 人参                               | 9g     |
| *yuan zhi* (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志                 | 6g     |
Patent medicines

**REN SHEN YANG YING TANG** (Ginseng Nutritive Combination)

- **Shu di** (Radix Rchmanniae Glutinosae Conquistae) 熟地 .......... 12g
- **Huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪 ............... 12g
- **Ren shen** (Radix Ginseng) 人参 ................. 12g
- **Bai zhu** (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术 .......... 9g
- **Fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 ............... 9g
- **Bai shao** (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白芍 .......... 9g
- **Dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 ............... 9g
- **Wu wei zi** (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 .......... 6g
- **Chen pi** (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 ............... 6g
- **Yuan zhi** (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 ............... 6g
- **Zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草 .......... 6g
- **Rou gui** (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂 ............... 3g
- **Shengjiang** (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜 ............. 3pce
- **Da zao** (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣 ................. 4pce

**Clinical features**

- Poor memory, in severe cases (usually the elderly) loss of recognition of close relatives, forgetting events instantly, dulled sensorium
- Generalised weakness, emaciation
- Greying, falling, lifeless hair, or early balding
- Soreness and weakness of the lower back and lower extremities
- Poor libido, impotence, infertility
- Frequent urination, nocturia
- Tinnitus, loss of hearing
- Loss of visual acuity
- Pale with a thin white coat
- Thready and weak

**Pathophysiology**

- This pattern is most common in the elderly and is due to gradual consumption of jing with ageing. It can also occur in younger people who have inherited insufficient jing, or who have lost it through illness, excessive sex or drug use.

**Treatment principle**

Nourish and tonify the Kidney, qi and Blood

Consolidate jing
### 32.4 BLOOD AND PHLEGM STAGNATION

**Pathophysiology**
- Blood and Phlegm stagnation is a complication of chronic disease, and is common in the elderly. It can also follow a traumatic head injury. Mental functioning will remain impaired unless the stagnation can be removed and the 'clear yang' circulation to the brain re-established.

**Clinical features**
- Forgetfulness, poor memory, absent-mindedness, short attention span, inability to concentrate
- Slow speech, dulled sensorium, blank expression
- Dark or pale purple with brown or purple stasis spots and a greasy white coat; sublingual veins are distended and dark
- P generally slippery or thready and choppy

**Treatment principle**
Invigorate Blood and eliminate stagnant Blood

**Prescription**

**SHOU XING WAN 寿星丸**
*(God of Longevity Pills) modified*

This formula is selected for Blood and Phlegm stagnation from causes other than trauma.

- **huang qi** (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 15g
- **bai zhu** (Rhizoma Atractyloidis Macrocephalae) 12g
- **fu ling** (Sclerotium Poriei Cocos) 12g
- **dang gui** (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 9g
- **sheng di** (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 9g
- **bai shao** (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 9g
- **yuan zhi** (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 6g
- **ren shen** (Radix Ginseng) 6g
- **chen pi** (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 6g
- **tian nan xing** (Rhizoma Arisaematis) 6g
- **wu wei zi** (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 5g
- **rou gui** (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 3g
- **hu po** (Succinum) 3g
- **zhi gan cao** (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 3g

*zhu sha* (Cinnabar) 3g (optional)

**Method:** Grind herbs (except zhu sha) to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with ginger juice. If used, coat the outside of the pills with the zhu sha. The dose...
is one pill 2-3 times daily. May be decocted, in which case the zhusha (0.5g), and bu po are taken with the strained decoction (chao ju 冲煎). (Source: Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xin)

Modifications
- Blood stagnation is usually a complication of other pathological conditions and is frequently found with chronic liver qi stagnation, Cold, yang and yin deficiency etc., and prescription should take these mechanisms into account. Appropriate herbs may be added to the guiding formula, keeping in mind that Blood moving herbs are also dispersing.
- If Cold or yang deficiency is responsible for the slowing down and stasis of Blood, warm Blood invigorating herbs like chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chaumxiong) 川芎 6g, jiang huang (Rhizoma Curcumae Longae) 姜黄 9g, hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctori) 红花 9g, ru xiang (Gummi Olibanum) 龙香 9g and yue ji hua (Flos et Fructus Rosa Chinesis) 月季花 6g should be included.
- When Heat or yin deficiency dry the Blood and increase its viscosity, Blood cooling and regulating herbs are indicated such as chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 9g, dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15g and yu jin (Tubercula Curcumae) 地黄 15g.
- Qi and Blood deficiency should be addressed with Blood nourishing and regulating herbs like ji xue teng (Radix et Caulis Jixu eteng) 血雪藤 15g.
- With prominent Phlegm, add ban xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 首乌 9g, zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 生白芥子 9g and bai jie zi (Semen Sinapis Albae) 白芥子 6g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
Following a head injury or trauma
- If the forgetfulness follows a head injury, the correct treatment is to invigorate qi and Blood in the Head with XUE FU ZHU YU TANG (Achyranthes and Persica Combination 血府逐瘀汤) modified.
  - dan shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae) 丹参 15g
  - sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地 12g
  - tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁 12g
  - dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 9g
  - hong hua (Flos Carthami Tinctori) 红花 9g
  - chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 9g
  - yan hu suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索 9g
  - zhi ke (Fructus Citri Aurantii) 枝壳 6g
  - chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 6g
  - chen xiang (Lignum Aquilariae) 沉香 6g
  - niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝 6g

Patent medicines
- Xue Fu Zhu Yu Wan 血府逐瘀丸
- Sheng Tian Qi Pian 生田七片
- Jin Gu Dit Shang Wan 筋骨跌伤丸
- Nei Xiao Lao Li Wan 内消瘰疬丸
- Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 助血金丸

Acupuncture
- Bl.15 (xin shu-), Bl.23 (shen shu), Bl.17 (ge shu-), PC.4 (jian shi-), Sp.6 (san yin jiao-), LI.4 (hui), DU.20 (hui bai), SI shen cang (M-HN-1), St.40 (feng long), Sp.3 (tai bai)
  - if from trauma add points of pain on the head (ah shi) and GB.20 (feng chi)

Clinical notes
- The forgetfulness of this pattern may be associated with disorders such as Alzheimer's disease, senile dementia and concussion.
- This pattern can be very difficult to treat when associated with senile dementia or Alzheimer's disease. If associated with concussion, it may respond reasonably well to correct TCM treatment.
- Acupuncture should always be considered if there is a history of trauma causing stagnation of qi and Blood in the channels and points of tenderness (ah shi) needed.
SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR FORGETFULNESS

Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency - Gui Pi Tang归脾汤

Heart and Kidney yin deficiency - Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan天王补心丹
  - following a febrile disease - Huang Lian E Jiao Tang黄连阿胶汤
  - with prominent Kidney deficiency - Sheng Hui Tang生慧汤

Kidney jing deficiency - Ren Shen Yang Rong Tang人参养荣汤

Blood and Phlegm stagnation - Shou Xing Wan寿星丸
  - following head injury - Xue Fu Zhu Yu Tang血府逐瘀汤

Endnote

For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle® or a hat^, see the tables on pp.944-952.
ANXIETY

Anxiety is a normal human emotion and most people will experience it to some degree as a normal response to stress. Anxiety becomes pathological when it repeatedly interferes with daily life, is irrational, excessively prolonged or out of proportion with the cause. In TCM, anxiety is the emotion most frequently associated with disorders of the Heart and instability of the Shen. The Shen is easily agitated by Heat and easily destabilised if Heart Qi, Yin or Blood are weak.

AETIOLOGY

Heart Qi deficiency
Heart Qi is most easily damaged by prolonged or excessive sadness, depression or grief. Heart Qi deficiency may also develop over time if the Spleen fails to produce adequate Qi for the body’s needs. In some individuals excessive coffee consumption will damage Heart Qi. This is due to the dispersing action of the bitter flavour. Profuse sweating due to fever, high environmental temperature or excessive diaphoresis can damage Heart Qi (and Yang, Yin and Blood), as sweat is the fluid of the Heart.

Heart Blood deficiency
Heart Blood deficiency may develop in much the same way as Heart Qi deficiency - through prolonged or intense emotions or through inadequate production of Blood by the Spleen. In addition, any deficiency of Liver Blood will eventually lead to Heart Blood deficiency, via the generative (Sheng Xie, p.70) cycle. Significant blood loss can cause Heart Blood deficiency, particularly if the haemorrhage is from the uterus, because the bao mai links the Heart and uterus directly. Similarly, significant loss of fluid as sweat can damage Heart Blood.

Heart and Kidney Yin deficiency
In TCM, the relationship between the Heart and Kidney is one of the fundamental relationships of the body and mind. This relationship functions on both a physical and a mental level. On the physical level, Kidney Water (Yin) keeps Heart Fire in check, preventing a runaway blaze and overheating, and Heart Fire catalyses Kidney Water, preventing stagnation and accumulation of fluids. On the mental level, the Fire of Shen arises from a stable base of Kidney Jing (summed up in the sparkle of jing shen in the eyes), and Jing and Shen rely on each other for clear expression of mental consciousness.

If Kidney Yin is damaged (by overwork, excess sexual activity, insufficient rest and sleep, ageing etc.), there may be a breakdown in relationship between the Heart and Kidney (via the controlling cycle), whereby Kidney Water no longer keeps Heart Fire in check. The uncontrolled blazing of Heart Fire causes agitation of the Shen and the resulting anxiety can be severe. If Heart Fire remains unchecked, Heart Yin will be damaged. The Shen then has no ‘anchor’ and anxiety can become chronic. Heart Yin may also be damaged by stimulant and recreational drugs (including coffee) or excessive mental stress.

At a more superficial level, the communication between the Heart (Shen) and Kidneys (Zhi) can be severed by major shock or trauma. This can occur in otherwise robust individuals, in which case anxiety is accompanied by few systemic symptoms since the Yin of the organs is not damaged. It may also occur in someone with pre-existing Yin damage, in which case, their condition is suddenly greatly exacerbated.

Heart and Gall Bladder deficiency
Heart and Gall Bladder Qi deficiency describes a personality type which may be congenital or acquired. When congenital, it may be due to a significant shock that damaged the developing foetal Shen during the mother’s pregnancy. The pattern may be acquired easily in children (the Shen is unstable when young) who are brought up in an abusive or fearful environment, or in adults or children who experience a violent or extreme shock or fright. It may also sometimes follow other debilitating illnesses that consume Qi.

The involvement of the Gall Bladder here refers to the timidity and ‘lack of gall’ (that is, fearfulness) which characterises people with this pattern. In the Chinese language (as in English) there is an implicit understanding of the relationship between the Gall Bladder and courage, indeed to be bold and courageous is to have a ‘big Gall Bladder’ (Da Dan 大胆).
Phlegm Heat

Phlegm Heat can be generated in several ways. First, the presence of Phlegm or Dampness due to Spleen weakness or overconsumption of Phlegm-producing foods causes stagnation and Heat. Second, overconsumption of Phlegm Heat foods (rich, greasy, sweet, spicy food and alcohol) can directly cause Phlegm Heat buildup. Finally, any pre-existing Heat in the body, due to Liver qi stagnation with stagnant Heat or Fire, yin deficiency or external invasion can congeal fluids into Phlegm, and subsequently Phlegm Heat. This pattern can also occur in the aftermath of a serious disease or febrile illness that has concentrated Fluids into Phlegm Heat.

ANXIOLYTIC DRUGS

The conventional drugs used to treat anxiety disorders deserve a special mention here because they are so widely used (for this and other conditions) and because they create dependence and are a source of the problem they were designed to treat. Anxiety has in recent times too often been deemed pathological and medicated inappropriately by health professionals who do not have the time or skills to address the feeling or emotions behind the anxiety. Women in particular have often been prescribed sedatives for distress following bereavement or resulting from intolerable domestic or work situations. Such overprescribing and abuse of tranquillisers and anxiolytic agents (most commonly benzodiazepines) has brought with it its own problems. Prolonged use of benzodiazepines in particular has many unpleasant side effects and severe withdrawal symptoms. This class of drug acts in a similar fashion to the heavy mineral substances that are used in TCM to suppress rising yang and sedate and anchor the shen. The consequences of prolonged use of a single (and unbalanced substance) such as this are severe; their bitter cool nature damages Heart and Kidney yin, weakens the Spleen, congests the Liver and further destabilises the shen.

Depending on the clinical manifestations in such cases, the relevant acupuncture and herbal treatment from this chapter may be applied to ameliorate the heightened anxiety and other withdrawal symptoms experienced when withdrawing from prescription medication.

1. Benzodiazepines include drugs such as diazepam (Valium), nitrazepam (Mogadon) and chlordiazepoxide (Librium)
2. Withdrawal symptoms from benzodiazepines include anxiety, hallucinations, hypervigilance, seizures, paranoid delusions, tremors, insomnia, palpitations, gastrointestinal upset
3. long gu (Os Dracois) 代赭石, dai zhe shi (Haematitum)等 赭石 etc.

BOX 33.2 KEY DIAGNOSTIC POINTS

Tongue
- pale - qi and/or Blood deficiency
- red - yin deficiency
- thick yellow coat - Phlegm Heat

Pulse
- irregularly irregular - Heart qi and yin deficiency
- thready and rapid - yin deficiency
- rapid and slippery, or wiry - Phlegm Heat
- thready and weak (especially in the distal position) - Heart qi deficiency

Aggravation
- with tiredness - deficiency
- with loud noises, changes of routine - Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency

TREATMENT

For obvious reasons, patients with anxiety need to be treated with special care and gentleness. Many will be phobic and may have a major fear of acupuncture, so the technical and communication skills of the therapist are of utmost importance in reassuring the patient and engaging them in a program of treatment. At the same time, many patients will be medicated. Any anxiolytic medication should be withdrawn gradually, while constitutional treatment to support their yin, qi etc. proceeds. In our experience, acupuncture is especially good for calming the shen and the repeated application of needles on a weekly or twice-weekly basis ensures the momentum of the treatment. At the same time, herbs are particularly good at replenishing yin and Blood and providing the anchor for the shen. Together, acupuncture and herbs are effective at ameliorating the withdrawal effects of conventional medications, and at the same time dealing with the problem that gave rise to the anxiety in the first place.

It is important to remember that other drugs may be responsible for anxiety, and to elicit the full list of medications and other potential aggravating substances the patient is taking. In addition to the benzodiazepines and recreational drug noted above, other drugs like appetite suppressants and caffeine may be implicated. Excessive use of caffeine (in coffee, chocolate and cola drinks) is a reasonably common cause of anxiety and easy to overlook.
33.1 HEART QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- When there is insufficient Heart qi to protect the shen, it becomes easily vulnerable, disoriented, and unstable, and this results in feelings of anxiety, unease, and apprehension.

Clinical features
- anxiety, apprehension, constant worry
- palpitations
- poor concentration
- fitful sleep, insomnia
- shortness of breath
- dizziness
- physical and mental fatigue
- pale complexion
- spontaneous sweating
- pale with a thin white coat
- thready and weak

Treatment principle
Tonify and nourish Heart qi
Calm the shen

Prescription
MIAO XIANG SAN 玲香散
(Marvellously Fragrant Powder)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu shen (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos Pararadices)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhu shao (Cinnabaris)</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae)</td>
<td>75g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she xiang (Secretion Moschus)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Ursinae)</td>
<td>3g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Grind herbs into powder and form into 6-gram pills with honey. The dose is 2-3 pills daily. Zhu shao is not suitable for prolonged use. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)
**Patent medicines**

*Gui Pi Wan* (Gui Pi Wan)
*Sheng Mai Wan* (Sheng Mai Wan)
*Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan* (Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan)
*Ding Xin Wan* (Ding Xin Wan)
*Yang Xin Ning Shen Wan* (Ning San Yuen Medical Pills)
*Bu Nao Wan* (Cerebral Tonic Pills)

**Acupuncture**

B15 (xin shu +), PC5 (jian shi +), Ht7 (shen men +), PC6 (nei guan), Ren.14 (ju que +), St.36 (zu san li +), yin tang (M-HN-3), Du.19 (shou dingshi), Du.24 (shentian)

*Ear points: shen men, Heart, subcortex, sympathetic. Ear seeds may be left in place between treatments.*

• with spontaneous sweating, add Bl.43 (gao huang shu)

**Clinical notes**

• The anxiety in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as anxiety neurosis and anemia.

• This pattern generally responds well to treatment, however there may be elements of constitutional weakness that predispose people to worry. If so, the tongue may have a deep narrow crack up to the tip and successful treatment is more difficult.

• Avoidance of mental stress is important. This includes violent or otherwise disturbing images from television or movies. In addition coffee and other stimulants should be avoided.

• Active pursuit of relaxation should be encouraged. This means that a gentle and positive relaxation routine should be built into the day (rather than the ‘just doing nothing’ type or relaxation). Activities such as tai qi, yoga nidra, walking or swimming are a good way to calm the mind and gradually build qi.

**33.2 HEART AND KIDNEY YIN DEFICIENCY**

**Pathophysiology**

• This pattern can cause anxiety in two ways—Heart yin depletion failing to anchor and ground the shen, and the resulting deficient Heat agitating the shen. This pattern often emerges during the withdrawal phase of long term sedative or anxiolytic drug use.

**Clinical features**

• anxiety or panic attacks with palpitations, easily brought on by a start or fright

• insomnia, often waking to anxiety or panic, or sleep with nightmares

• restlessness, irritability

• sensation of heat in the palms and soles (“five hearts hot”)

• night sweats

• dry mouth and throat

• dizziness, light-headedness

• tinnitus

• forgetfulness

• lower back ache

• T red and dry with little or no coat

• P thready and rapid

**Treatment principle**

Nourish Heart yin, calm the shen
Clear Heat

**Prescription**

*Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae)</td>
<td>120 (24)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tian dong (Tuber Asparagi Cochinensis)</td>
<td>30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)</td>
<td>30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae)</td>
<td>30 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuan shen (Radix Scrophulariae)</td>
<td>15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan shen (Radix Salviae Miliozezizae)</td>
<td>15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)</td>
<td>15 (12)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis)</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis)</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng)</td>
<td>30 (9)g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jie geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori)</td>
<td>15 (9)g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志 .......................... 15 (6)g
zhu sha* (Cinnabaris) 朱砂 (optional) .............................. 6 (0.5)g
Method: Grind herbs (except zhu sha) to a powder and form into 9gram pills
with honey. If used, coat the outside of the pills with the zhu sha. The dose is
one pill 2-3 times daily. May also be decocted with the dosage in brackets. When
decocpted the zhu sha is taken as powder with the strained decoction. This is an
excellent formula for long term use in treating yin deficiency with shen disturbance,
in which case the zhu sha is deleted. (Source: Shi Yang Zhang Yi Nei Ke Xue)

Variations and additional prescriptions
Following a febrile illness
* If symptoms of yin deficient Fire are severe, or the disorder occurs
following a febrile disease with lingering Heat use HUANG LIAN E
JIAO TANG (Coptis and Ass-Hide Gelatin Decoction 黄连阿胶汤, p.839).
In severe cases
* With severe or continuous anxiety or panic attacks, accompanied by
palpitations, insomnia and Heat, a more sedative formula is required to
control the symptoms quickly. This is intense Heart Fire on a
background of yin deficiency. The correct treatment is to sedate the
Heart, calm the shen, drain Fire and nourish yin with ZHU SHA AN
SHEN WAN (Cinnabar Pill to Calm the Spirit 朱砂安神丸, p.840).
Because it contains zhu sha it is not suitable for prolonged use, and
once the condition is under control other formulae should be used.

After a major shock or trauma
* Occasionally following a major shock or trauma there is anxiety,
insomnia and dream or nightmare disturbed sleep, palpitations, hair loss,
loss of appetite, dizziness, depression, lack of motivation, a slightly pale
tongue and a hollow, slow pulse. This is typical of severe
communication between the Heart and Kidneys due to shock. The
correct formula is GUI ZHI JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG
(Cinnamon and Dragon Bone Combination 桂枝加龙骨牡蛎汤, p.814).

Patent medicines
Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan 天王补心丹 (Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan)
- excellent for Heart yin deficiency with shen disturbance
Zuo Gui Wan 左归丸 (Zuo Gui Wan)
Sheng Mai Wan 生脉丸 (Sheng Mai Wan)
Liu Wei Di Huang Wan 六味地黄丸 (Liu Wei Di Huang Wan)
- a general Kidney yin tonic formula
Swan Zuo Ren Tang Pian 酸枣仁汤片 (Tabellae Suanzaoren)
Ci Zhu Wan 磁朱丸 (Ci Zhu Wan)
- this pill is usually combined with one of the other formulae above

Acupuncture
BL.23 (shen shu +), Kid.3 (tai xi +), Bl.15 (xin shu -), Du.19 (hou ding),
Ht.7 (shen men -), PC.7 (da ling -), Ren.14 (juque), yin tang (M.HN-3),
Du.24 (shen yin)
Ear points: shen men, Kidney, Heart, subcortex, sympathetic.

Clinical notes
- The anxiety in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as
hyperthyroidism, menopausal syndrome, post traumatic shock
syndrome, anxiety neurosis, post febrile disease
- The anxiety in this pattern generally responds well to correct
treatment, however for it to be long lasting the yin will have to be
replenished and this takes time. TCM treatment for at least several
months will be necessary, although signs of improvement can usually
be expected within a few weeks. Long term resolution may depend on
the biomedical syndrome with which the anxiety is associated. For
example, hyperthyroid conditions can be difficult to cure with TCM
and may need to be controlled by drugs or surgery if TCM treatment
is ineffective, before lasting results can be achieved.
- Acupuncture at times of anxiety or acute panic attacks is very useful at
allievating symptoms and calming the mind. In severe cases
acupuncture can be given once or twice per day.
- Avoidance of disturbing images from the television or movies, and
stimulants like coffee and other drugs, and chillies, is important. A
strictly regular bedtime routine should be adhered to, even in patients
unable to sleep well. The training of the internal clock to a regular
sleep routine may take a while but is worth the effort as it contributes
greatly to recovery.
- Care with other aggravating factors like sex, excessive lifting and
standing and dehydration.
- Active pursuit of relaxation should be encouraged. This means that a
gentle and positive relaxation routine should be built into the day
(rather than the ‘just doing nothing’ type or relaxation). Activities such
as tai qi, yoga nidra, walking and swimming are a good way to calm the
mind and gradually build qi.
33.3 HEART BLOOD AND SPLEEN QI DEFICIENCY

Pathophysiology
- Heart Blood (and xin) anchor and ground the shen. Spleen qi supports and manufactures Heart Blood. When the Heart and Spleen become deficient, the shen is unanchored and becomes unstable. Clinically, the mixture of deficiency can be equally shared, or tend towards either the Heart or Spleen. In all cases supporting Spleen function in addition to tonifying Blood is essential so the Spleen can continue to manufacture Blood.

Clinical features
- anxiety, phobias, panic attacks
- palpitations
- insomnia, with difficulty falling asleep or dream disturbed sleep
- forgetfulness, poor memory, poor concentration
- postural dizziness
- blurring vision, spots in the visual field
- fatigue and weakness
- poor appetite
- abdominal distension after eating
- sallow complexion
- easy bruising, or heavy or prolonged menstrual periods
T pale with a thin white coat
P thready and weak

Treatment principle
Strengthen and nourish the Heart and Spleen
Tonify qi and Blood, calm the shen

Prescription
GUI PI TANG 归脾汤
(Ginseng and Longan Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbal Medicine</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huang Qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bai Zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fu Shen (Sclerotium Portiae Cocos Pararadicis)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Yan Rou (Arillus Euphorbiae Longanae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suo Zao Ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae)</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan Shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)</td>
<td>15g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu Xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan Gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuan Zhi (Radix Polygonae Tenufoliae)</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 将甘草.......................... 6g

Method: Decoction. (Source: Zhang Yi Ni Ke Lin Lian Shou Guo Ji)

Modifications
- If Heart Blood deficiency is more prominent, add shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquise) 熟地 30-50g, bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 15g and c jiao (Gelatinum Corni Asini) 阿胶 15g (dissolved in the strained decocction), and sha ren (Fructus Amomi) 砂仁 6g to aid the digestion of the shu di.
- With severe Spleen qi deficiency, it may be necessary to initially reduce the dose of (or delete) the richer Blood tonics (long yan rou and dang gui) until the Spleen is strong enough to digest them properly.
- With Heat, add shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) 山栀子 9g and chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡 6g.
- With severe insomnia, add two or three of the following herbs: wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 6g, bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 柏子仁 9g, ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygongi Multiflori) 夜交藤 30g, he huan pi (Cortex Albizias Julibrissin) 合欢皮 9g, long chi (Dens Draconis) 龙齿 10g, mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 30g, and mai ya (Fructus Hordei Vulgaris Germinatus) 麦芽 15g to protect the Stomach from damage by the mineral drugs.
- If there is abdominal and epigastric fullness, poor appetite, a greasy or glossy tongue coat add ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏 10g and chen pi (Perciparium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮 10g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
- If qi and Blood deficiency is systemic then a more general tonic may be useful. Consider REN SHEN YANG RONG TANG (Ginseng Nutritive Combination 人参养营汤, p.887) or SHI QUAN DA BU TANG (Ginseng and Dang Gui Ten Combination 十全大补汤, p.529).

Patent medicines
Gui Pi Wan 归脾丸 (Gui Pi Wan)
Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan 柏子养心丸 (Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan)
Dang Gui Ji Jing 当归鸡精 (Tang Kuei Essence of Chicken)
Bu Nan Wan 补脑丸 (Cerebral Tonic Pills)
Yang Xin Shou Shen Wan 养心寿神丸 (Ning San Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Sp.6 (san yin jiao +), St.36 (zhi san li +), Ht.7 (shen men +),
Ren.12 (xiang wan +), Bl.15 (xin shu +), Bl.17 (ge shu +),
Bl.20 (pi shu +), jin tang (M-HN-3), Du.19 (hou ding), Du.24 (shen ting)
Ear points: shen, Spleen, Heart, subcortex, sympathetic. Ear seeds may be left in place between treatments.

Clinical notes
- The anxiety in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as anxiety neurosis, thrombocytopenia and anemia.
- This pattern responds well to correct treatment; to make it last Spleen qi needs to be supported with regular eating habits and easily digested mild foods.
- As in all anxiety patterns, avoidance of disturbing images from the television or movies, as well as stimulants like coffee, is important. A strictly regular bedtime routine should be adhered to.
- In women who lose blood (and thus Heart Blood) through heavy periods, Blood tonics and Blood replenishing and iron rich foods should be taken after each period. Iron supplements are also useful.

Clinical features
- anxiety accompanied by palpitations
- insomnia
- irritability
- shortness of breath
- dry stools or constipation
- dry mouth and throat
- depending on the balance of qi or yin deficiency, pale pink or red and swollen, with surface cracks and little or no coat
- knotted, intermittent or irregular pulse, particularly if qi deficiency is prominent

Pathophysiology
- The cause of the anxiety in this pattern is a combination of the two previous patterns—qi deficiency and yin (Blood) deficiency. The shen is both vulnerable and ungrounded, and may in addition be agitated by deficient Fire. The most distinctive feature of this pattern is in the pulse—typically irregularly irregular.

Treatment principle
Nourish yin and Blood
Tonify qi, calm the shen

Prescription
ZHIGAN CAOTANG 炙甘草汤
(Baked Licorice Combination)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地</td>
<td>24g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) 炙甘草</td>
<td>12g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e jiao (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 阿胶</td>
<td>6g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huo ma ren (Semen Cannabis Saivae) 木贼</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜</td>
<td>9g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣</td>
<td>5pce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method: Decoction. E jiao is melted in the hot strained decoction (yang hua 炙化). (Source: Formulas and Strategies)
Patent medicines

Gui Pi Wan (Gui Pi Wan)
Sheng Mai Wan (Sheng Mai Wan)
Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan (Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan)
Yang Xin Ning Shen Wan (Yang Xin Ning Shen Wan)
Bu Nao Wan (Bu Nao Wan)

Acupuncture

BL.15 (sin shen +), HT.5 (tong li), HT.6 (xin xi -), HT.7 (shen men +), PC.5 (jian shi +),
PC.6 (wei guan +), Ren.14 (zu que +), ST.36 (zu san li +), yin tang (M.HN-3),
Du.19 (hou ding), Du.24 (shen ting)

Ear points: shen men, Spleen, Heart, sub cortex, sympathetic. Ear seeds may be left in place between treatments.

Clinical notes

- The anxiety in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as neurasthenia, hyperthyroidism, cardiac arrhythmia and sick sinus syndrome.
- The anxiety in this pattern responds well to correct treatment, although good constitutional results generally take some months.
- As in all anxiety patterns avoidance of disturbing images from the television or movies, as well as stimulants like coffee, is important. A strictly regular bedtime routine should be adhered to.
- Active pursuit of relaxation should be encouraged. This means that a gentle and positive relaxation routine should be built into the day (rather than the ‘just doing nothing’ type of relaxation). Activities such as tai qi, yoga nidra, walking and swimming are a good way to calm the mind and gradually build qi.

Clinical features

- frequent severe anxiety, panic attacks, apprehension, fearfulness, inappropriate worry, easily frightened, timidity and phobias
- palpitations
- insomnia, nightmares, waking terrified
- restlessness, forgetfulness

Treatment principle

Calm the shen, nourish and tranquilise the Heart

Prescription

DING ZHI WAN 定志丸
(Settle the Emotions Pill) modified

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参 .......................... 90g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓 .......................... 90g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲 .......................... 60g
yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 鸢尾 .......................... 60g
long gu (Os Draconis) 龙骨 .......................... 60g
hu po (Succinum) 琥珀 .......................... 30g

Method: Grind herbs to a powder and form into 9-gram pills with honey. The dose is one pill twice daily. May also be decocted with a 90% reduction in dosage, in which case hu po is taken with the strained decoction (chong jiu 冲酒).

Modifications

- With Blood deficiency, add dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归 60g and bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍 60g.
- With significant insomnia and palpitations, add one or two of the following herbs: wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子 60g, bai zi ren (Semen Biotae Orientalis) 白子仁 90g, ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori) 夜交藤 60g, he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin) 何欢皮 60g, mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎 60g to settle the shen, and mai ya
If the patient is depressed add he huan pi (Cortex Albizziae Julibrissin)合欢皮 60g.
• With severe qi deficiency, add one or two of the following herbs: dang shen (Radix Codonopsis Pilosulae)党参 60g, huang jing (Rhizoma Polygonati)黄精 60g, and huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)黄芪 60g.
• With spontaneous sweating, add mu li (Concha Ostreae)牡蛎 60g, huang gen (Radix Ephedrae)麻黄根 40g, fu xiao mai (Semen Tritici Aestivi Levis)浮小麦 40g.

Variations and additional prescriptions
• Sometimes following a major shock or trauma (such as a car accident), anxiety, insomnia and dream—nightmare—disturbed sleep, palpitations, hair loss, loss of appetite, dizziness, depression, lack of motivation, a slightly pale tongue and a hollow, slow pulse may occur. These symptoms are typical of severe communication between the Heart and Kidneys. This pattern can also be considered an acquired form of Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency. The correct formula is GUI ZHI JIA LONG GU MU LI TANG (Cinnamon and Dragon Bone Combination方, p.814).

Patent medicines
Bu Nao Wan 补脑丸 (Cerebral Tonic Pills)
Ding Xin Wan 定心丸 (Ding Xin Wan)
Yang Xin Ning Shen Wan 桂心宁神丸 (Ning San Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
GB.39 (xuan zhong), SJ.5 (wai guan), BL.15 (xun shang), PC.6 (shen men), Hu.7 (shen men), Ren.14 (fu que), Hu.9 (shao chang), Du.19 (zhou li), Du.24 (shen men).
Ear points: shen men, Liver, Gall Bladder Heart, subcortex, sympathetic
Ear seeds may be left in place between treatments.

Clinical notes
• The anxiety in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as anxiety neurosis, mental disorders or postnatal depression.
• This pattern can be quite difficult to treat and if any result is to be achieved, prolonged therapy is usually necessary. If the pattern is congenital, a combination of TCM treatment with psychotherapy of some sort may be beneficial.

33.6 PHLEGM HEAT

Pathophysiology
• Phlegm has a particular affinity with the Heart, indeed the Heart is subject to 'mists' of insubstantial Phlegm that obscure reason and consciousness. The Heat associated with this pattern can agitate the shen causing anxiety.
• Phlegm Heat type anxiety can be a chronic response to Phlegm Heat in the body (usually from diet), but can also be more acute, occurring in the convalescent stage of a febrile disease that has congealed fluids into Phlegm.

Clinical features
• anxiety and nervousness
• palpitations
• dizziness and vertigo
• insomnia, with waking in the early hours of the morning (typically around 4am) unable to fall back to sleep
• irritability and restlessness
• nausea, vomiting or indeterminate gnawing hunger
• poor appetite
• belching, acid reflux
• bitter taste in the mouth
• abdominal distension
T greasy yellow coat
P rapid and slippery or wiry

Treatment principle
Clear Heat, transform Phlegm
Harmonize the Stomach, calm the shen

Prescription
SHI YI WEI WEN DAN TANG 十一味温胆汤
(Eleven Ingredient Decoction to Warm the Gall Bladder)

ye jiao teng (Caulis Polygoni Multiflori)夜交藤 ......... 30g
zhu ru (Caulis Bambusae in Taeniis)竹茹 .......... 30g
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)茯苓 ............. 15g
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei)石菖蒲 .......... 9g
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae)半夏 .......... 9g
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)陈皮 .......... 9g
zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii)枳实 .......... 6g
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis)黄连 ............. 6g
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)甘草 .......... 6g
yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae)远志 .......... 6g
Method: Decoction. (Source: Formulas and Strategies)

Modifications
• If the anxiety is severe, add hu po (Succinum) 琥珀 1-3g and suan zao ren (Semen Zizyphi Spinosae) 酸枣仁 12g.

Patent medicines
Er Chen Wan 二陈丸 (Er Chen Wan) plus Huang Lian Jie Du Wan
胡连解毒丸 (Huang Lian Jie Du Wan)
Hu Po Bao Long Wan 琥珀抱龙丸 (Po Lung Yuen Medical Pills)

Acupuncture
Ht.6 (yin xi), St.40 (feng long -), GB.34 (yang ling quan -), St.41 (jie xi -),
yin tang (M-HN-3), Bl.15 (xue sha), Liv.3 (tai chong), Du.19 (hou ding),
Du. 24 (shen ting)
Ear points: shen men, Spleen, Heart, subcortex, sympathetic. Ear seeds may be left in place between treatments.

Clinical notes
• The anxiety in this pattern may be associated with disorders such as convalescence following fever, anxiety neurosis or post viral syndrome.
• This pattern generally responds well to correct treatment. Once the Phlegm has cleared the anxiety and associated symptoms will abate. However, the source of the Phlegm will determine how rapidly that can be achieved. Post febrile Phlegm Heat responds quickly.
• Avoidance of Phlegm Heat producing foods (dairy products, alcohol and fatty foods) is essential.

SUMMARY OF GUIDING FORMULAE FOR ANXIETY
Heart qi deficiency - Miao Xiang San 妙香散
Heart and Kidney yin deficiency - Tian Wang Bu Xin Dan 天王补心丹
Heart qi and yin deficiency - Zhi Gan Cao Tang 炙甘草汤
Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency - Gui Pi Tang 归脾汤
Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency - Ding Zhi Wan 定志丸

Phlegm Heat - Shi Yi Wei Wen Dan Tang 十一味温胆汤

Endnote
For more information regarding herbs marked with an asterisk*, an open circle○ or a hat*, see the tables on pp.944-952.
Appendix A: Original Unmodified Formulae

AN GONG NIU HUANG WAN 安宫牛黄丸
(Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone)

niu huang* (Calcus Bovis) 牛黄
xi jiao* (Cornu Rhinoceri) 角
she xiang* (Secretio Moschus) 香麝
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis) 黄连
huang qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae jasminoides) 山梔子
xiong huang (Realgar) 雄黄
b ing pian (Borneol) 冰片
yu jin (Tuber Curcurnae) 郁金
zhu sha* (Cinnabaris) 砥砂
zhen zhu* (Margarita) 针珠

BAO HE WAN 保和丸 (Citrus and Crategus Formula)

chao shan zha (dry fried Fructus Crategi) 炒山楂
shen qu (Massa Fermentata) 神曲
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮
lai fu zi (Semen Raphani Sativi) 萊菔子
lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘

BAO YUAN TANG 保元汤 (Preserve the Basal Decoction)

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参
huang qi (Radix Atragali Membranaceae) 黄芪
rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草

BAO ZHEN TANG 保真汤 (Preserve the True Decoction)

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参
huang qi (Radix Atragali Membranaceae) 黄芪
bai zhui (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术
fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣
tian dong (Tuber Asparagi Cochinichensis) 天冬
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地
shu di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Contrae) 熟地
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归
bai shao (Radix Paeonae Lactiflora) 白芍
lian xu (Stamen Nelumbinis Nucifera) 莲须

di gu pi (Cortex Lycii Chinensis) 地骨皮
yin chai hu (Radix Stellariae Dichotomae) 银柴胡
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜
huang bai (Corpus Phellodendri) 黄柏
zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) 知母
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草

BEI XIE FEN QING YIN 薄解分清饮 (Tokoro Combination)

bei xie (Rhizoma Dioscoreae Hypoglaucae) 薄解
yi zh i ren (Fructus Alpini Alpini) 益智仁
wu yao (Radix Linderae Styxchnifoliae) 乌药
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲

BIE JIA JIAN WAN 碧甲煎丸 (Turtoise Shell Decoction Pills)

bie jia* (Carapax Amydri Sinensis) 碧甲
huang qi (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 黄芩
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜
da huang (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄
shao yao (Radix Paeonae) 红药
gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝
ting li zi (Semen Descuetariae seu Lepidii) 络石子
shi wei (Folium Pyrosteae) 石苇
hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radici) 牡丹皮
qu mai (Herba Dianchi) 昆布
han xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏
ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参
e jiao* (Gelatinum Corii Asini) 血胶
tao ren (Semen Persicae) 桃仁
she gan (Rhizoma Belamcandae) 沙参
feng fang (Nidus Vespae) 蜂房
huo xiao (Niter) 火硝
qiang lang (Dung Beetle) 娄房
di bie chong* (Lupolyphaga seu Opiosthioptia) 地鳖虫

CANG ER ZI SAN 苍耳子散 (Xanthium Formula)
cang er zi* (Fructus Xanthii Sibirici) 苍耳子
xin yin hua (Filos Magnoliae) 辛夷花
bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) 白芷
bo he (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis) 薄荷
CHAI HU QING GAN TANG 柴胡清肝汤
(Bupleurum Liver Clearing Decoction)
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 川芎
chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎
lian qiao (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensa) 连翘
niu bang zi (Fructus Arctii Lappace) 牛蒡子
huang qin (Radix Scutellaremis Balcalenis) 黄芩
shen di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conqui-tae) 生地
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归
shen zuo (Fructus Corni Officinalis) 山茱萸
gou qin zi (Fructus Lycii) 枸杞子
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草

CHAI LING TANG 柴苓汤 (Bupleurum and Hoelen Combination)
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏
huang qin (Radix Scutellaremis Balcalenis) 黄芩
ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻
fu ling (Sclerotium Portiae Cocos) 茯苓
zhu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茺草
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术
gui zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草

CHEN XIANG SAN 沉香散 (Aquillaria Powder)
chen xiang (Lignum Aquillariae) 沉香
shi wei (Folium Pyrrosiae) 石韦
hua shi (Talcum) 蛤石
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Albae) 白芍
dong kui zi (Semen Abutili seu Malvae) 冬葵子
wang bu liu xing (Se men Vaccariae Setigerae) 汪布六星
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草

CONG BAI QI WEI YIN 葛白七味饮 (Shallot and Seven Herb Drink)
cong bai (Bulbus Alii Fistulosi) 葛白
ge gen (Radix Puerariae) 葛根
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地
mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 大黄
dan dou chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum) 豆蔻
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜
DANG GUI SHAO YAO SAN 当归芍药散  
(Dang Gui and Peonia Formula)  
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归  
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍  
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓  
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术  
- ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻  
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎  
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地  
- bai shao (Radix Paoniae Lactiflora) 白芍  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- zhong huo (Semen Angelicae Japonicae) 川芎  
- su shen (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  
- hao tan (Radix Bupleuri) 防风  
- jiu hua (Herba Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术  
- ju hong (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮  
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓  
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 茜草  
- xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculorum) 小茴香  
- wu zhu yu (Fruktus Evodiae Rutaceae) 五加皮  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- roу gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂  
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地  
- bai shao (Radix Paoniae Lactiflora) 白芍  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- zhong huo (Semen Angelicae Japonicae) 川芎  
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  

DAO QI TANG 导气汤 (Conduct the Qi Decoction)  
- chuan lian zi* (Fruktus Meliae Toosendan) 川楝子  
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 茜草  
- xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculorum) 小茴香  
- wu zhu yu (Fruktus Evodiae Rutaceae) 五加皮  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- zhong huo (Semen Angelicae Japonicae) 川芎  
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 茜草  
- xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculorum) 小茴香  
- wu zhu yu (Fruktus Evodiae Rutaceae) 五加皮  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- zhong huo (Semen Angelicae Japonicae) 川芎  
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  
- mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 茜草  
- xiao hui xiang (Fructus Foeniculorum) 小茴香  
- wu zhu yu (Fruktus Evodiae Rutaceae) 五加皮  

DAO TAN TANG 导痰汤 (Guide Out Phlegm Decoction)  
- ju hong (Pericarpium Citri Erythrocarpae) 稔红  
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓  
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏  
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草  
- zhi shi (Fruktus Immaturus Citri Auranti) 柿子  
- tian nan xing* (Rhizoma Arisematis) 天南星  

NING ZHI WAN 定志丸 (Settle the Emotions Pill)  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓  
- shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲  
- yuan zhi (Radix Polygalae Tenuifoliae) 远志  

DUHUO JI SHENG TANG 独活寄生汤  
(Du Huo and Atractylodes Combination)  
- du huo (Radix Angelicae Pubescens) 独活  
- sang jing (Ramulus Sangsheng) 桑寄生  
- xi xin* (Herba cum Radice Asari) 独辛  
- fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae) 防风  
- qin jiao (Radix Gentianae Qinjiao) 秦艽  
- du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis) 杜仲  
- niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae) 牛膝  
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂  
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归  
- chuan xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong) 川芎  
- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地  
- bai shao (Radix Paoniae Lactiflora) 白芍  
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参  
- zhong huo (Semen Angelicae Japonicae) 川芎  

GUAN XI SU HE XIANG WAN 冠心苏合香丸  
(Liquid Styrax Pills for Coronary Heart Disease)  
- su be xiang (Styrax Liquidis) 苏合香
Appendix A: Original Unmodified Formulae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Alternative Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HUA YU TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HUANG LIAN JIE DU TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIE GENG TANG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
JIE YU DAN 解语丹 (Relax the Tongue Special Pill)

bai fu zi* (Rhizoma Typhonii Gigantei) 白附子
shi chang pu (Rhizoma Acori Graminei) 石菖蒲
yuan zhi (Radix Polygonae Tenuifoliae) 圆志
ma (Radix Gastrodiae Elatae) 天麻
quan xie* (Buthus Martensi) 仝蝎
qiang huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygi) 全蝎
mu xiang (Radix Aucklandiae Lappae) 木香
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草

JIN FEI CAO SAN 金沸草散 (Inula Powder)

jin fei cao (Herba Inulae) 金沸草
qian hu (Radix Peucedani) 前胡
jing jie (Herba seu Flos Schizonepetae Tenuifolia) 菊芥
xi xin* (Herba cum Radicis Assari) 麻辛
fu ling (Sclerotium Porta Cocos) 茯苓
ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草
sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜
da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣

LI ZHONG WAN 理中丸 (Ginseng and Ginger Formula)

ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参
gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 生姜
bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae) 白术
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草

LING YANG JIAO TANG 竽羊角汤 (Antelope Horn Decoction)

ling yao jiao* (Cornu Antelopis) 羚羊角
gui ban* (Platia Testudinis Gelatinum) 龟板
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地
mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae) 白芍
chai hu (Radix Bupleuri) 柴胡
chuan tui* (Periostracum Cicadae) 剔透
ju hua (Flos Morifoli Chrysanthemi) 菊花
xia ku cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris) 夏枯草
shi jue ming* (Concha Haliotidis) 石决明

LIU SHEN WAN 六神丸 (Six Spirit Pills)

niu huang* (Calcis Bovis) 牛黄
zhen zhui* (Margarita) 珍珠
she xiang* (Secretum Moschus) 神香
xiong huang (Realgar) 雄黄
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formula Name</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Ingredients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QING JIN HUA TAN TANG</td>
<td>Clear Metal, Transform Phlegm Decoction</td>
<td>Huang Qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shan Zhi Zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) Gardenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jie Geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) Birch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mai Dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonic)  Coptis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sang Bai Pi (Cortex Mori Albcae Radicis)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhe Bei Mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) Thunberg's Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhi Mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) Anemarrhena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gua Lou Ren (Semem Trichosanthes)  Trichosanthe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chen Pi (papercapium Cirri Reticulatae) Reticulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fu Ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)  Whiteума</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gan Cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) Glycyrrhiza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QING YAN NING FEI TANG</td>
<td>Clear the Throat and Calm the Lungs Decoction</td>
<td>Sang Bai Pi (Cortex Mori Albcae Radicis)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Huang Qin (Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shan Zhi Zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) Gardenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhi Mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloides) Anemarrhena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gua Lou Ren (Semem Trichosanthes)  Trichosanthe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhe Bei Mu (Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii) Thunberg's Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Qian Hu (Radix Peucedani)  Peucedan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jie Geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) Birch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gan Cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) Glycyrrhiza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN ZI YANG QIN TANG</td>
<td>Three Seed Deoction to Nourish One's Parent(s)</td>
<td>Su Zi (Fructus Perillae Frutescens)  White mustard leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bai Jie Zi (Semen Sinapis Albcae)  White mustard flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lai Fu Zi (Semen Raphani Sativii)  Raphan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANG JU YIN</td>
<td>Morus and Chrysanthemum Formula</td>
<td>Sang Ye (Folium Mori Albcae)  White leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ju Hua (Fls Chrysanthemum Monfolia)  Flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lian Qiao (Fructus Forsythia Suspensa)  Forsythia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bo He (Herba Mentha Haplocalycis)  Mentha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jie Geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) Birch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Xing Ren* (Semen Pruni Armeniacae)  Prunus Armenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lu Ren (Rhizoma Phragmites Communis)  Phragmites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gan Cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) Glycyrrhiza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANG XING TANG</td>
<td>Morus and Apricot Seed Combination</td>
<td>Sang Ye (Folium Mori Albcae)  White leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shan Zhi Zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis) Gardenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dan Dou Chi (Semen Sojae Preparatum)  Soybean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHEN FU ZAI ZAO WAN</td>
<td>Ginseng and Aconite Pills for a New Lease on Life</td>
<td>Ren Shen (Radix Ginseng)  Ginseng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhi Fu* (Radix Aconiti Carrachaeri Praeparata)  Aconite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gu Zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae)  Cassie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Huang Qi (Radix Astragali Membranaceae)  Yellow Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Xi Xin* (Herba cum Radicis Asari)  Asari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Qiang Huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii)  Yellow Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chuan Xiong (Radix Ligustici Chuanxiong)  Chinese Galang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fang Feng (Radix Ledebouriae Divinacae)  Chinese Galang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bai Shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gan Cao (Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis) Glycyrrhiza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHEN LING BAI ZHU SAN</td>
<td>Ginseng and Atractylodes Formula</td>
<td>Ren Shen (Radix Ginseng)  Ginseng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bai Zhu (Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fu Ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos)  Whiteuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhi Gan Cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhiza Uralensis)  Honey fried Glycyrrhiza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shao Yao (Radix Dioscoreae Oppositae)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bai Bian Dou (Semen Dolichos Lablab)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lian Zi (Semen Nelumbinis Nuciferae)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yi Ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jie Geng (Radix Platycodi Grandiflori) Birch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sha Ren (Fructus Anomoli)  White Lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHI WEI SAN</td>
<td>Pyrrsia Powder</td>
<td>Shi Wei (Folium Pyrrsiae)  White leaf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Denotes honey-fried or processed ingredients.
**SHOU XING WAN 寿星丸 (God of Longevity Pills)**

- [dōng kūi zi (Semen Abutilis seu Malvae)](chinese)
- [chē qìan zi (Semen Plantaginis)](chinese)
- [qū mái (Herba Dianthi)](chinese)
- [huā shī (Talcum)](chinese)

**SI WU TANG 四物汤 (Dang Gui Four Combination)**

- [shū dì (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae Conquites)](chinese)
- [bái shào (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora)](chinese)
- [dāng guī (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)](chinese)
- [chuān xióng (Radix Ligustici Chaumitong)](chinese)

**TAO HE CHENG QI TANG 桃核承气汤**

(Persica and Rhubarb Combination)

- [tāo rén (Semen Persicae)](chinese)
- [dà huáng (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei)](chinese)
- [guì zhī (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae)](chinese)
- [máng xiāo (Mirabilis)](chinese)
- [zhī gàn cāo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)](chinese)
shan zhu yu (Fructus Corni Officinalis)
fu ling (Sclerotium Portii Cocos)
tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis)
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis)
chi shi zi (Halloysium Rubrum)
ba ji tian (Radix Morindae Officinalis)
ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis)
du zhong (Cortex Eucommiae Ulmoidis)
niu xi (Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae)

wu lin san (Gardenia and Hadam Formulas)
chi fu ling (Sclerotium Portii Cocos Rubrae)
shan zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)

wu wei zi tang (Schizandra Decoction)
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis)
mui dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici)
huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei)
ren shen (Radix Ginseng)
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)

wu zhi yanzong wan (Five Seed Ancestral Qig Amplifying Pill)
gou qi zi (Fructus Lycii)
tu si zi (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis)
fu pen zi (Fructus Rubi Chingii)
wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandraceae Chinensis)
che qian zi (Semen Plantaginis)

xi jiao san (Rhinoceros Horn Powder)
xi jiao* (Cornu Rhinoceri)
huang lian (Rhizoma Coptidis)
sheng ma (Rhizoma Cimicifugae)
yin chen (Herba Arternusiae Yinch enthusiastic)
shen zhi zi (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoidis)

xian fang huo ming yin (Sublime Formulas for Sustaining Life)
jin yin hua (Flos Lonicerae Japonici)
tian hua fen (Radix Trichosanthis Kirilowii)
dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis)
chi shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae)

zhe bei mu (Builibus Frutillae Thunbergii)
bai zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae)
zao jiao ci (Spira Gleditsiae Sinensis)
ru xiang (Gummi Olibanum)
mo yao (Myrrha)
chuan shan jia* (Squama Reticulae)
fang feng (Radix Ledebouriellae Divaricatae)
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)

xiao huo luo dan (Minor Invigorate the Collaterals Special Pill)
zhao cao wu* (Radix Aconiti Kusnezoffii)
zhao jia jing* (Tuberculum)
lian nan xing* (Rhizoma Arisaematis)
rui xiang (Gummi Olibanum)
di long* (Lumbricus)

xiao ji yin zi (Minor Oxaloploes Decoction)
sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae glutinosae)
xiao ji (Herba Cephalanoplos)
hua shi (Talcum)

xiaoyu tang (Eliminate Blood Stasis Decoction)
bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflorae)
zhi su ye (Fruutis Perillae Frutescentis)
wu yao (Radix Linderiae Strychnifoliae)
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae)
gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)
da zao (Fructus Zisypfi Jujubae)
zheng yu tang (Eliminate Blood Stasis Decoction)
chie jia* (Carapax Ambydae Sinensis)
mui li* (Concha Ostreae)
ten shen (Radix Ginseng)
chui hu (Radix Bupleuri)
qing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viridae) 青皮
zhì ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枳壳
e zhú (Rhi zoma Curcumae Ezhu) 川芎
san lèng (Rhi zoma Sparganii Stoloniferi) 三棱
ji néi jìn (Endothelium Cor neum Gigernae Galli) 鸡内金
fu lìng (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓
zhì shào (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 桑白皮
chi hào (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍

xing pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viridae) 青皮
zhì ke (Fructus Citri Auranti) 枳壳
e zhú (Rhi zoma Curcumae Ezhu) 川芎
san lèng (Rhi zoma Sparganii Stoloniferi) 三棱
ji néi jìn (Endothelium Cor neum Gigernae Galli) 鸡内金
fu lìng (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓
zhì shào (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 桑白皮
chi hào (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) 赤芍

XIE BAI SAN 薄荷散 (Morus and Lycium Formula)
chao sang bai pi (dry fried Cortex Mori Albae Radicis) 炒桑白皮
dì gu pi (Cortex Lycii Radicis) 地骨皮
gēng mì (Semen Oryzae) 糯米
zhì gān cáo (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草

XIN JIA XIANG RU YIN 新加香薷饮
(Newly Augmented Elsholtzia Combination)
xìng ru (Herba Elsholtzia seu Moslae) 香薷
jìn yín huā (Flos Lonicerae Japonicae) 桑叶
bài biān dōu (Semen Doli chos Lablab) 白扁豆
lián qiáo (Fructus Forsythiae Suspensae) 连翘
hòu pò (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 桂枝

YIN CHEN HAO TANG 茵陈蒿汤 (Capillaris Combination)
yīn chén (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈
shān zhí zǐ (Fructus Gardeniae Jasminoides) 山栀子
da huáng (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) 大黄

YIN CHEN WU LING SAN 茵陈五苓散
(Capillaris and Hoelen Fire Formula)
yīn chén (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈
fú líng (Sclerotium Poria Cocos) 茯苓
zhū líng (Sclerotium Polypon Umbellati) 猪苓
zé xīe (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻
bài zhú (Rhizoma Atractyloidis Macrocephalae) 白术
guǐ zhī (Ramulus Cinnamomi Cassiae) 桂枝

YIN CHEN ZHU FU TANG 茵陈术附汤
(Capillaris, Atractyloides and Aconite Combination)
yīn chén (Herba Artemisiae Yinchenhao) 茵陈
bài zhú (Rhizoma Atractyloidis Macrocephalae) 白术
gān jiāng (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜
zhī fù zhī (Radix Aconiti Carmichaeli Praeparata) 制附子
róu guì (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂
gān cáo (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草
ZHENG YANG LI LAO TANG 治阳理劳倦
(Rescue yang, Manage Exhaustion Decoction)

- huang qi (Radix Astragali Membranacei) 黄芪
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术
- ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂
- gan cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 甘草
- sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣

ZHENG YIN LI LAO TANG 治阴理劳倦
(Rescue yin, Manage Exhaustion Decoction)

- sheng di (Radix Rehmanniae Glutinosae) 生地
- mu dan pi (Cortex Moutan Radicis) 牡丹皮
- dang gui (Radix Angelicae Sinensis) 当归
- mai dong (Tuber Ophiopogonis Japonici) 麦冬
- chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮
- yi ren (Semen Coicis Lachryma-jobi) 椒仁
- lian zi (Semen Nelumbinis Nuciferae) 莲子
- wu wei zi (Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis) 五味子
- ren shen (Panax Ginseng) 人参
- bai shao (Radix Paeoniae Lactiflora) 白芍
- zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草
- da zao (Fructus Zizyphi Jujubae) 大枣

ZHONG MAN FEN XIAO WAN 逐分消丸
(Separate and Reduce Fullness in the Middle Pill)

- hou po (Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis) 厚朴
- zhi shi (Fructus Immaturus Citri Aurantii) 枳实
- jiang huang (Rhizoma Curcumae Longae) 姜黄
- chao huang qin (dry fried Radix Scutellariae Baicalensis) 炒黄芩
- chao huang lian (dry fried Rhizoma Coptidis) 炒黄连
- gan jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis) 干姜
- ban xia* (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏
- zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母
- ze xie (Rhizoma Alismatis Orientalis) 泽泻
- zhu ling (Sclerotium Polypori Umbellati) 茯苓
- fu ling (Sclerotium Poriae Cocos) 茯苓
- bai zhu (Rhizoma Atractyloides Macrocephalae) 白术
- ren shen (Radix Ginseng) 人参

sheng jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis Officinalis Recens) 生姜
chen pi (Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae) 陈皮
zhi gan cao (honey fried Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis) 炙甘草

ZI SHEN TONG GUAN WAN 治肾通关丸
(Nourish Kidney, Open the Gate Pill)

- zhi mu (Rhizoma Anemarrhenae Asphodeloidis) 知母
- huang bai (Cortex Phellodendri) 黄柏
- rou gui (Cortex Cinnamomi Cassiae) 肉桂
Appendix B: Processing methods for herbs and modifications to prescription

PROCESSING METHODS
Many herbs are processed before use in order to modify their nature. These changes may be carried out by the dispensing herbalist or wholesaler or are specified by the prescribing physician when writing the prescription.

1. ZHI (frying with liquids)
Mixing the herb with a liquid and stir frying:
- Frying with honey (mi zhi 炙蜜) increases the tonifying, Lung moistening and cough stopping effects. Usually, if no particular medium is specified, writing zhi alone will result in honey frying.
- Frying with vinegar (cu zhi 舂炙) increases the effects on the Liver, and enhances the analgesic, astringent and Blood invigorating qualities; it also modifies unpleasant odours and tastes.
- Frying with wine (jiu zhi 酒炙) increases Blood invigorating, channel clearing action, and leads the herb to the upper body.
- Frying with salt water (yan zhi 鹽炙) leads the herb to the Kidney, and can improve the Kidney Fire clearing nature.
- Frying with ginger juice (jiang zhi 姜炙) reduces the tendency of bitter and cold herbs to injure Stomach qi, can enhance the action of stopping nausea and vomiting and can modify the toxic nature of herbs such as ban xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae Ternatae) 半夏, and tian nan xing (Rhizoma Arisaema) 天南星.

2. CHAO (dry frying)
Browning and drying the herb in a wok. There are several degrees of dry frying:
- Mild dry frying, the most common method, is denoted by the character chao before the herb. The herb is dry fried until a light yellow brown. This method increases the warmth and digestibility of a herb, and improves the Stomach strengthening effect. Commonly used with Spleen tonics.
- Frying over high heat until dark brown or black on the outside. This method is usually used with food stagnation herbs, as it strongly improves digestion. Denoted by the character jiao (焦) before the herb.
- Frying over high heat until blackened and charred on the outside. This increases the astringent nature, and is used to improve the haemostatic effect of various herbs. Denoted by the character tan (炭) after the herb.

3. DUAN (calcining)
- Calcining involves placing the substance, usually a mineral or shell in a fire until it is heated red hot. It becomes brittle and is easily broken up. The substance’s active ingredients are then made more available when decocted.

4. WEI (roasting in ashes)
- The herb is wrapped in a coating of wet paper, mud or flour paste and roasted in hot coals until the coating is blackened and cracked; the substance inside has been cooked at a high temperature without burning. Usually used to modify the irritant or toxic natures of certain herbs.

MODIFICATIONS TO PRESCRIPTION
Different terms need to be added to a prescription depending on the specialised treatment some herbs require. The characters denoting these requirements are usually placed in brackets below the herb characters when written from top to bottom in the traditional script format.

1. HOU XIA (added towards the end)
- This instruction is used for herbs and substances that are added at the end of cooking or a few minutes before the end of cooking. These herbs usually contain volatile oils and the short cooking prevents the oils from evaporating off. The herbs are wrapped separately by the dispenser. This group includes light and aromatic herbs and herbs that change in action with different cooking times, like da huang (Radix Rhei) 大黃, which causes a much stronger purge the less it is cooked.

2. XIAN JIAN (cooked first)
- This instruction applies to herbs and substances that require pre-cooking. This group includes toxic herbs like fu zi (Radix Aconiti Carminabeli) 附子 that are rendered safer by long cooking (usually at least one hour), and minerals and shells like mu li (Concha Ostreae) 牡蛎, long gu (Os Draconis) 龙骨 and ci shi (Magnetum) 磁石. The herbs are wrapped separately by the dispenser and usually cooked for about 30 minutes before the rest of the prescription is added.

3. CHONG FU (added to [or followed by] the strained decoction)
- This instruction applies to herbs and substances that are not cooked at all. They are wrapped separately by the dispensing herbalist, and dissolved in the hot liquid after straining or taken powdered and chased by the decoction. It is used for substances like mang xiao (Mirabilium) 旱釀, san qi (Radix Notoginseng) 三七 and zhu sha (Cinnabaris) 珠砂.

4. BAO JIAN 包煎 (cooked in a cloth bag)
- Due to the presence of hairs or other irritants and the small size of certain seeds, some herbs should be cooked in a cloth or muslin bag. Often the whole formula will be placed in the bag by the dispenser.
Appendix C: Delivery methods for herbal medicine

There are numerous methods of getting herbs into a patient, each with its own advantages and disadvantages. Matching the delivery method to the patient and the type of disorder is an important aspect of correct practice and must be carefully considered when prescribing.

DECOCTION

Decoction involves boiling various ingredients in water or a mixture of water and wine for a specific period of time. Decoctions can be taken by mouth or delivered as an enema.

Uses
Most appropriate in acute or severe cases.

Advantages
Swift alteration of prescription, rapid absorption, strong and direct effect, best for acute or severe cases.

Disadvantages
Complexity, different cooking times for different ingredients, time consuming, bad smell and taste, poor patient compliance, cost.

Traditional method
The pot used should be preferably ceramic, although stainless steel is also acceptable. Aluminium, iron and copper pots should not be used. A tight fitting lid is necessary to prevent the escape of volatile oils. Plant materials should be soaked in cold water for at least 20-30 minutes before cooking. This allows the plant cells to expand and to release their contents when boiled. If the herbs are boiled before they are soaked, the boiling water can seal in the active components by toughening the cell walls.

One packet of herbs is usually decocted twice, although tonic herbs may be decocted three times. The amount of water required will vary depending on the type of herbs used and the purpose of the formula, but in general, enough water to cover the herbs by about one centimetre is correct (usually about 3-4 cups) with the aim of providing two cups of decoction per day. Keep in mind that some dry ingredients are very absorbent and will soak up a considerable amount of the water, while others, like minerals and shells, will absorb none. For the first boil the decoction is reduced to about two cups. The decoction is strained and taken one hour either side of a meal. For the second boil, 2½ – 3 cups of water are added to the same herbs and reduced to two cups. The results of the two boilings can be combined to maintain consistency of strength. The dose is two cups daily.
emergency situations, the dose can be doubled and a cup can be taken every two hours. For patients unable to ingest the medicine, the herbs may be given via a nasogastric tube or retention enema. Diaphoretic and purgative formulae are generally discontinued once sweating or purgation occurs.

**Practical considerations**

For busy people, the traditional decoction method can be time consuming and inconvenient. To increase patient compliance, variations to the traditional decoction regime can be made. Several packets of herbs can be decocted at one time and the second boiling avoided by beginning with more water and boiling for longer (other than for those exceptions listed below). For example, two packets of herbs can be cooked with 9-10 cups of water and reduced to around 8 cups, yielding four days doses (at two cups daily). The strained decoction can be stored in a covered plastic container in the refrigerator and warmed by the addition of boiling water before ingestion. Stored in this way, the herbs will keep for up to a week.

**Cooking time**

Most general formulae can be cooked for 20-30 minutes. Formulae for dispersing external Wind, clearing Heat or those containing ingredients with volatile oils should be simmered in a lidded pot for a relatively short time, 10-15 minutes. Tonics, minerals and shells can stand long slow simmering (one hour +) to extract all their goodness. Certain groups of herbs (very hard or very delicate herbs) will require different treatment than the bulk of the ingredients and can be packaged separately for convenience (see Appendix B).

**PILLS**

Pills are finely ground up herbs that are bound with honey, water or some other sticky medium. Depending on the binding medium and the size of the pill, their ingredients are released and absorbed slowly and at a constant rate.

**Uses**

Pills are best for chronic problems that require lengthy therapy and are particularly good at long term tonification of Jing and Blood. Pills are also useful for emergency or first aid situations, for example Su He Xiang Wan for chest pain, An Gong Niu Liang Wan for fever and delirium and Zi Xue Dan for febrile convulsions. They are also the preferred method when a formula requires herbs that should not be decocted.

**Advantages**

Pills are easier to store and take than decoctions. They are generally cheaper and more convenient for travelling or when decocting is impractical. A wide variety of pills are available as prepared patents.

**Disadvantages**

The ingredients of pills are fixed, so modifications to the prescription are not possible. The amount of pills required in order to achieve a therapeutic result is often large (8-16 pills three times per day for some varieties).

**POWDRERS**

Pills are finely ground herbs sifted through a uniform mesh. They can be taken directly chased with a liquid or boiled and the resulting liquid taken.

**Uses**

Pills are useful for long term administration in the treatment of chronic disorders. They can be applied externally for skin diseases. They can be blown into the nose or throat for local disorders, or to resuscitate patients from unconsciousness.

**Advantages**

Pills are easier to store and take than decoctions, can be stored for long periods and can be formulated specifically for individual patients. They can provide a cheaper alternative to traditional decoction, as much less herb is required (due to the greatly increased surface area) to provide a dose. For patients unable to take the powder directly, it can be packed in to gelatin capsules.

**Disadvantages**

Once powdered, ingredients can not be deleted. If taken directly the possible enhancements to the formula gained by boiling are absent. Raw powders can irritate the gut in some patients.

**CONCENTRATED GRANULES/POWDRERS**

Concentrated granules (chong ji 及 制) are a relatively recent and very popular method of herb preparation that was developed in Japan in the 1950s. It has since become a major method of providing herbs in Japan, Taiwan and the West. Concentrated granules are produced by making large batches of herb formulae as decoctions and then draining the liquid from the dregs. The liquid is then evaporated and concentrated by gentle heating and exposure to a vacuum. The concentrate is added to a corn starch filler or the dregs of the decoction to form a paste. The paste is then spray dried and the remaining water evaporated, leaving a dry powder.

The concentration factor varies from one herb to another and from one formula to another, but on average is around a 6:1 concentration of the ingredients of the crude herbs. What this means is that about 600 grams of
raw herbs go into 100 grams of concentrated powder. The typical dose for these granules is from 6-12 grams per day, which is equivalent to about 40-80 grams of raw herb.

**Advantages**
Because the herbs are concentrated, the daily dose is relatively small and easily tolerated. The production process for the major manufacturers (located in China, Japan, Taiwan and the United States) is regulated by Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP), which ensures quality control, consistency and the presence of active ingredients across batches. Concentrated powders can be packed into gelatin capsules.

Patient compliance is high, and as the powders are often quite bland they are excellent for children. The extraction technology is improving all the time and the quality of these products is usually very high. In Chinese hospitals, concentrated granules are gradually replacing decoctions.

**Disadvantages**
The formulas are fixed and ingredients cannot be deleted. Generally not as good as decoctions for acute or severe disorders (but improving all the time). Products originating from Japan, while of the highest quality may vary significantly from the original prescription. Dosage regimes specified in Japan are often at odds with those preferred in China. The Japanese are fond of smaller doses and frequently change the dose of individual herbs, possibly altering the hierarchy of the formula.

**SYRUPS**
Syrups are composed of herbs that have been decocted, then concentrated by further cooking or thickened with the addition of honey or malt sugar. Syrups are good for children and most commonly used for coughs and moistening the Lungs.

### Appendix D: Herbs that are contraindicated or to be used cautiously during pregnancy

#### Herbs contraindicated during pregnancy
- **ba dou** (Semen Croton Tiglii) 巴豆
- **ban mao** (Mylabris) 班蝥
- **chan su** (Secretio Bufonis) 蟾酥
- **che qian zi** (Semen Plantaginis) 车前子
- **chuan niu xi** (Radix Cyanthulae) 川牛膝
- **da ji** (Radix Euphorbiae seu Knoxie) 大戟
- **di bie chong** (Eupolyphagea seu Opisthoplatiae) 地鳖虫
- **e wei** (Asafoetida) 阿魏
- **e zhu** (Rhizoma Curcumae Zedoariae) 艾术
- **fan xie ye** (Folium Sennae) 番泻叶
- **fu zi** (Radix Aconiti) 附子
- **gan sui** (Radix Euphorbiae Kansui) 甘遂
- **guan zhong** (Rhizoma Guanzhong) 贵众
- **hai long** (Hiallong) 海龙
- **hai ma** (Hippocampus) 海马
- **hong hua** (Flos Carmthi Trinctorii) 红花
- **liu huang** (Sulphur) 鲁黄
- **ma chi xian** (Herba Portulaca Oleracea) 马齿苋
- **ma qian zi** (Semen Strychnos) 马钱子
- **mang xiao** (Mabilibrium) 苫稍
- **meng chong** (Tabanus Bvittatus) 蚧虫
- **niu huang** (Calcis Bowis) 牛黄
- **qian nui zi** (Semen Pharbitidis) 钳子
- **qing fen** (Calomelas) 轻粉
- **qu mai** (Herba Dianthi) 青葵
- **san leng** (Rhizoma Sparganii) 三棱
- **shang lu** (Radix Phytolaccaae) 商陆
- **she gan** (Rhizoma Belamacandae) 射干
- **she xiang** (Secretio Moschus Moschiferi) 肥香
- **shui zhi** (Hirudo seu Whitmanae) 水蛭
- **tao ren** (Semen Persicae) 桃仁
- **tian hua fen** (Radix Trichosanthis) 天花粉
- **wu gong** (Scolopendra Subspinipes) 蜈蚣
- **wu tou** (Radix Aconiti) 乌头
- **xiong huang** (Realgar) 雄黄
- **xuan ming fen** (Natrit Sulphas Exsiccatus) 玄明粉
- **yan hu suo** (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo) 延胡索
Appendix E: Incompatible and Antagonistic Herbs

Eighteen incompatible herbs
These are herbs which, if used together, may cause toxic or strong unwanted effects.

- **gan cao** (Radix Glycyrrhizae Uralensis)甘草 is incompatible with
  - **gan sui** (Radix Euphorbiae Kansui)甘遂
  - **da ji** (Radix Euphorbiae seu Knoxiae)大戟
  - **yuan hua** (Flores Daphnes Genkwa)芫花
  - **hai zao** (Herba Sargassii)海藻
  - **wu tou** (Radix Aconiti)乌头 is incompatible with
    - **ban xia** (Radiz Pinelliae Ternatae)半夏
    - **gua lou** (Fructus Trichosanthis)栝楼
    - **bei mu** (Bulbus Fritillariae)贝母
    - **bai lian** (Radix Ampelopsis)白敛
    - **bai ji** (Radix Bortillariae)白附

Nineteen antagonistic herbs
These are herbs which, if used together, may counteract or neutralize each other's positive effects. The symbol — means antagonises.

- **liu huang** (Sulphur) — po xiao (Mirabilium Depuratorum)朴硝
- **shui yin** (Hydragyrum)水银 — **pi shuang** (Arsenicum Sublimatum)砒霜
- **yan hai** (Radix Euphorbiae Fischianae)延胡 — **mi tuo seng** (Lithargyrum)密陀僧
- **ba dou** (Semen Croton Tiglii) — **qian niu zi** (Semen Pharaonis)千斤子
- **xi jiao** (Cornu Rhinceri) — **ren shen** (Radix Ginseng)人参
- **ding xiang** (Flos Caryophilli)丁香 — **yu jin** (Radix Curcumae)郁金
- **ya xiao** (Nitrums)牙硝 — **san leng** (Rhiomna Spargani)三棱
- **chuan wu** (Radix Aconiti) 川乌 and **cao wu** (Radix Aconiti Kusnezoffi)草乌 — **xi jiao** (Corum Rhinceri)犀角
- **ren shen** (Radix Ginseng)人参 — **wu ling zhi** (Excrementum Trogopterum)五灵脂
- **rou gui** (Cortex Cinnamoni Cassiae)肉桂 — **chi shi zhi** (Halloysium Rubrum)赤石脂
### Appendix F. Herbs with potential toxic effects\(^1,2\), noted in the text with an asterisk *

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Safe Dosage Range (g)</th>
<th>Toxic effects of overdose</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Antidote, Treatment(^3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fu Zi</strong> (Paeonia Rubra, Radix)</td>
<td>3 ·12</td>
<td>hypersalivation, numbness of the mouth and extremities, dizziness, headache, blurred vision, difficulty speaking, tremors, abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea, cardiac arrhythmia, hypotension, incontinence and in severe cases respiratory depression, cardiogenic shock and death</td>
<td>Very toxic in the raw state. Generally cooked for at least one hour to reduce toxicity. Always supplied in the prepared form, but to be on the safe side when using, it is a processing method that renders the root black, or processed and thinly sliced, should be specified in the prescription. Contraindicated during pregnancy.</td>
<td>— activated charcoal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ban Xia</strong> (Piper Matrimoni, Rhizoma)</td>
<td>3 ·12</td>
<td>burning, swelling, numbness and stiffness in the tongue, throat and lips, hypersalivation, difficulty speaking, nausea, pressure in the chest</td>
<td>Very toxic in the raw state. The herb dispersed by pharmacies is processed with vinegar, alum or ginger and generally safe. Caution during pregnancy.</td>
<td>— ginger juice or strong ginger decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tian Nan Xing</strong> (Murraya Paniculata, Rhizoma)</td>
<td>3 ·10</td>
<td>initially gastrointestinal irritation, burning, numbness and stiffness of the tongue, hypersalivation, oral erosion, then neurological symptoms including dizziness, arrhythmia, numbness in the limbs, delirium, respiratory distress</td>
<td>Very toxic in the raw state. The herb that is dispensed by pharmacies has been processed to alleviate its toxicity. Caution during pregnancy.</td>
<td>— strong black tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ma Huang</strong> (Ephedra, Radix)</td>
<td>2.9 grams</td>
<td>hypertension, tachycardia, vasoconstriction, sweating, headache, dizziness, tremors, restlessness, nausea, abdominal pain, urinary retention; in severe cases and susceptible patients ventricular fibrillation and death</td>
<td>The raw herb is most likely to cause side effects; cooking with honey alleviates the diaphoretic effect somewhat.</td>
<td>— atropine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. From Shi Ying Zhang Yi Nai Ke Xue and Zhang Yi Nai Ke 1 (in Chuang Shou Co).
2. Most of these herbs are quite safe when used correctly.
3. In severe cases of poisoning, treatment requires hospitalisation, and depending on the herb, gastric lavage, mechanical ventilation, electrolyte and fluid replacement etc. Suggestions given in the antidote/treatment section are not complete measures and may be useful only in non critical cases.
### Appendix F: Herbs with potential toxic effects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Safe Dosage Range (g)</th>
<th>Toxic effects of overdose</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Antidote, Treatment³</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Ma Dou Ling** *(Fructus Aristolochiae)* | 3-9                   | abdominal pain, diarrhoea, rectal bleeding, tenesmus, weakness, somnolence, anuria, haematuria, dyspnoea | Qing Mu Xiang is the root of the same plant. Ma Dou Ling frequently causes nausea when taken hot although this can be alleviated by frying in honey. | - frequent strong tea  
- neostigmine |
| **Chuan Lian Zi** *(Fructus Meliae Toosendan)* | 5-10                 | nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, dyspnoea, palpitations, dizziness, tremors, spasms, numbness | Also known as Jin Ling Zi | - activated charcoal  
- egg white |
| **Cang Er Zi** *(Fructus Xanthii Sibirica)* | 3-10                 | headache, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, in severe cases weakness and liver damage with hepatomegaly, jaundice and elevated SGPT, oligaemia, extensive bleeding, tonic spasms, respiratory distress, coma | - activated charcoal  
- Vitamin C (with bleeding)  
- decocction of ban lan gen 120g  
- Gan Cao Lu Dou Tang  
- Zhi Bao Dan | |
| **Ai Ye** *(Folium Artemisiae Argyi)* | 3-10                 | acute overdose: dry mouth and throat, epigastric pain, vomiting, abdominal distension, epileptiform seizures, cold clammy skin chronic poisoning; tonic spasms, weakened vision, neuritis | These toxic effects only occur with internal use of ai ye. | - for spasms Zi Xue Dan  
- Wind extinguishing herbs |
| **Wei Ling Xian** *(Radix Clematis)* | 3-10                 | redness and pain of the skin, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, oral erosion, black stools, in severe cases dyspnoea, dilated pupils, stiff tongue, slow pulse | - egg white, gastric lavage  
- atropine  
- decocction of gan cao and brown sugar | |
| **Bai Fu Zi** *(Rhizoma Typhonii Gigantei)* | 3-5                  | numbness of the mouth and tongue, dizziness, generalised numbness, spasms, hypersalivation, vomiting | Contraindicated during pregnancy. | - decocction of gan cao 30 g and ginger 30 g |
| **Bai Bu** *(Radix Stemona)* | 5-10                 | nausea, epigastric opain, diarrhoea; can depress the respiratory centre, in extreme cases causing respiratory paralysis | - fresh ginger juice or a strong ginger decoction  
- rice vinegar | |
Appendix G. Medicinal substances derived from animal species considered potentially or definitely endangered, noted in the text with an open circle.

The issue of endangered species is somewhat confused in regards to some of the animals and plants used in Chinese medicine. Some that are listed by CITES (the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species), are certainly endangered and should be avoided—these include rhinoceros, tiger and musk deer products. The status of other species is less certain and some species considered endangered in the wild are abundantly cultivated (and may have been for centuries; examples include du zhong [Cortex Eucommia] and huang lian [Rhizoma Coptidis]), so genetically they are not endangered. In some cases certain genera have multiple listings (for example Trionyx spp.), but the specific species noted as the source of the particular medicinal substance by authorities such as Bensky and Gamble (1993) are not listed. This absence from the CITES list does not imply that the animal is not endangered, however, it may simply reflect the difficulty in compiling complete lists. In addition, the CITES lists are being updated continually and new species added as the data on their abundance comes to light.

The CITES lists have three main levels of classification, Appendices 1, 2 and 3. Appendix I includes all species threatened with extinction which are or may be affected by trade.

Appendix 2 includes:

i. all species that although not necessarily now threatened with extinction may become so unless trade in specimens of such species is subject to strict regulation in order to avoid utilisation incompatible with their survival; and

ii. other species that must be subject to regulation in order that trade in specimens of certain species referred to in sub-paragraph (i) of this paragraph may be brought under effective control.

Appendix 3 includes all species that any country identifies as being subject to regulation within its jurisdiction for the purpose of preventing or restricting exploitation, and as needing the co-operation of other countries in the control of trade.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Possible Alternative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gui Ban (Piastrum Testudinis)</td>
<td>There are several species or turtle that are marketed as this substance and they are definitely endangered in the wild. Turtles which provide the material for this substance are extensively farmed for food in China, but also collected throughout South East Asia. The species noted by Bensky and Gamble (1993) as the source of this substance (Geoclemys reevesii) is not listed by CITES, however the fresh water turtle family, Testudinidae, is listed in Appendix 2.</td>
<td>No good substitute for gui ban when deeply enriching the yin. Possible alternatives for restraining yang include Mu Li (Concha Ostrea) and Shi Jue Ming (Concha Haliotidis).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bie Jia (Carapax Amydae Sinensis)</td>
<td>Status uncertain, although may be similar to gui ban and possibly farmed as a food item. The species noted by Bensky and Gamble (1993) as the source of this substance (Trionyx sinensis) is not listed by CITES, although other Trionyx species are listed in Appendix 1.</td>
<td>Qing Hao (Herba Artemisiae Annuae) and Di Gu Pi (Cortex Lycii Radicis) for night sweats and bone steaming; Xuan Shen (Radix Scrophulariae Ningpoensis) for swellings and masses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xi Jiao (Corru Rhinoceri)</td>
<td>Seriously endangered, in fact very few rhino remain. All products claiming to contain rhino horn should be avoided. All species of Rhinocerotidae listed by CITES (Appendix 1).</td>
<td>Shui Niu Jiao (Corru Bubali).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ling Yang Jiao (Corru Antelopis)</td>
<td>The antelope noted by Bensky and Gamble (1993) (Saiga tatarica) that provides this substance is listed by CITES (Appendix 2).</td>
<td>Shan Yang Jiao (Corru Naemorhedis) goat horn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuan Shan Jia (Squama Manitidis)</td>
<td>Pangolins are endangered in the wild, but are farmed for their scales. Manis species are listed by CITES (Appendix 2).</td>
<td>Zao Jiao Ci (Spina Gleditsiae Sinensis).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She Xiang (Secretio Moschus)</td>
<td>Definitely endangered in the wild, but the musk deer is farmed and musk allegedly extracted humanely. Film evidence suggests this is not the case. Synthetic substitutes exist. All species (Moschus spp.) listed by CITES (Appendix 1).</td>
<td>Synthetic musc orones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hu Gu (Os Tigris)</td>
<td>Seriously endangered in the wild, possibly extinct in China. All subspecies (Panthera tigris) listed by CITES (Appendix 1).</td>
<td>Pig or dog bone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix H. Non toxic medicinal substances that are derived from animals, noted in the text with a hat.

Any substitutes suggested in these tables should be viewed with caution. In many cases, animal products are unique in action and no adequate vegetable substitute exists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E Jiao (Gelatinum Asini) Equis asinus</td>
<td>a hard gelatin derived from boiling down donkey skins; a strong blood tonic, moistening agent and haemostatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di Long (Lumbricus) Pheretima aspergillum Allobophora caliginosa</td>
<td>earthworm; clears heat and extinguishes Wind to stop convulsions, also for wheezing from Lung Heat, opens the channels for bei syndrome and hemiplegia, for painful urination and hypertension from Liver yang rising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yu Nao Shi (Pseudosclerocerae Otolithum) Pseudosclera crocea</td>
<td>otolith (ear bones) from the yellow croaker fish; for sinus congestion, otitis and urinary tract stones; alternatives include Bai Zhi (Radix Angelicae Dauricae) and Gang Er Zi (Fructus Xanthhi Sibirici) for nasal congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ji Nei Jin (Endothelium Corneum Gigeriae Galli Gallus gallus domesticus)</td>
<td>endothelium of chickens gizzard; for food stagnation and dissolving urinary tract and gall bladder stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wu Ling Zhi (Excrementum Trogopteri seu Pteromoli) Trogopterus xanthipes</td>
<td>flying squirrel excrement (one source suggests that Wu Ling Zhi was originally the resinus excretion retrieved from the squirrels nest, apparently some sort of glandular secretion); for dispersing blood stagnation and stopping pain; possible alternatives include Yan Hu Suo (Rhizoma Corydalis Yanhusuo), Yi Mu Cao (Herba Leonuri Heterophylli) and Pu Huang (Pollin Typhae) for menstrual pain from stagnant Blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hou Zhao (Calcium Macacae Mulattae) Macaca mulatta</td>
<td>macaque gallstone; clears hot phlegm for childhood febrile convulsions; products containing this substance can usually be substituted with one of the following common patent medicines - BAO YING DAN or HUI CHUN DAN (although depending on the manufacturer, both contain insect drugs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiang Can (Bombyx Batryticatus) Bombyx mori</td>
<td>dried silkworm larva that died due to infection with the fungus Beauveria bassiana Bals.; extinguishes internal Wind to treat convulsions, spasms and facial paralysis; also phlegm nodules and itching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chan Tui (Periostracum Cicadae) Cryptotympana pastulata</td>
<td>cicada shell; disperses external Wind for itchy skin lesions and throat disorders, extinguishes internal Wind for febrile convulsions and spasms; possible substitutes for itchy skin disorders include Niu Bang Zi (Fructus Arctii Lappae) and Bai Ji Li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Substance | Characteristics |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wa Leng Zi (Concha Arcaei) Arca subcrenata, A. granosa, A. inflata</td>
<td>ark shell; for eliminating Blood stasis and Phlegm in the treatment of nodules and tumours; possible substitutes include Fu Hai Shi (Pumice) for Phlegm nodules; San Leng (Rhizoma Sparganii S Gomez) and E Zhu (Rhizoma Curcumae Ezhu) for abdominal and gynaecological masses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi Jue Ming (Concha Haliotidis) Haliotis spp.</td>
<td>abalone shell; for extinguishing internal Wind and reducing excessive Liver yang and improving vision; possible substitutes for calming yang and benefiting the eyes include Xiu Ku Cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris), Jue Ming Zi (Semen Cassiae) and Bai Ji Li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhen Zhu Mu (Concha Margaritiferae) Pteria martensii, P. margaritifera, Hyciopsis cumingii, Cristaria plicata</td>
<td>mother of pearl shell; for calming the Shen, sedating yang and improving vision; possible substitutes for calming yang and benefiting the eyes include Xia Ku Cao (Spica Prunellae Vulgaris), Jue Ming Zi (Semen Cassiae) and Bai Ji Li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu Li (Concha Ostreae) Ostrea rivularis, O. gigas, O. taliwanhensis</td>
<td>oyster shell; an astringent and sedative for Shen disturbance and rising Liver yang, also softens hardness for various types of masses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hai Ke Ge (Concha Cyclineae Sinensis) Cyclineae sinensis</td>
<td>clam shell; clears stubborn Phlegm Heat; can be substituted with Fu Hai Shi (Pumice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hai Piao Xiao (Os Sepiae seu Sepiellae) Sepiella cumingii, Cristaria plicata</td>
<td>cuttlefish bone; an astringent for various types of bleeding as well as vaginal discharge, chronic diarrhea and premature ejaculation; possible substitutes include Bai Ji (Rhizoma Bletillae Straiae) for bleeding from the lungs or stomach, and Bai Zhi (Radix Angelicae Dauricae) for vaginal discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sang Piao Xiao (Ootheca Mantidis) Paratenodera sinensis, Statillia maculata, Hierodula saussurei</td>
<td>praying mantis egg case; an astringent for excessive or frequent urination patterns; possible substitutes for frequent urination, enuresis or nocturia include Sha Yuan Ji Li (Semen Astragali Complanati), Fu Pen Zi (Fructus Rubi Chingii), Tu Si ZI (Semen Cuscutae Chinensis), Yi Zhi Ren (Fructus Alpiniae Oxyphyllae) and Bu Gu Zhi (Fructus Psoraleae Corlyfoliae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Gu (Os Draconis)</td>
<td>fossilised bone; an astringent, sedative and tranquilliser; a possible substitute for Shen disturbance or yang rising is Zi Shi Ying (Fluoritum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Chi (Dens Draconis)</td>
<td>fossilised teeth; sedative and tranquilliser; possible substitute is Zi Shi Ying (Fluoritum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ge Jie (Gecko) Gecko gecko</td>
<td>gecko; for Lung and Kidney yang deficiency wheezing; a possible substitute is walnut - Hu Tao Ren (Semen Juglandis Regiae)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Index

#### Acute Exterior Disorders 2
- Damp Heat 14
- Summer Heat and Dampness 12
- Wind Cold 6
- Wind Damp 7
- Wind Dryness 16
- Wind Heat 10
- with Blood deficiency 25
- with qi deficiency 20
- with stiff neck 6, 7
- with viral hepatitis 599
- with wheezing 7
- with sore throat 10, 18
- with myalgia 6, 18, 23
- with headache 6, 7, 8, 10, 25
- with blocked nose 6, 10, 18, 20
- with yin deficiency 23
- with yin deficiency 27

#### Adenophora and Ophiopogon Combination 114, 925 see also Shen Shen Mai Men Dong Tang

#### Agastache and Pig Bile Pills 243, 245 see also Hua Dou Wan

#### Agastache Formula 13 see also Hua Xiang Zhe Zhi Tang

#### AIDS related illness 205

#### albuminuria 389, 401, 405
- alcohol toxicity 517
- alcoholism 173, 176
- Alzheimer's disease 888, 891
- amenorrhea 316
- anemia 885
- anorexia 387, 403, 405, 407, 410
- An Gong Niu Huang Wan 39, 171, 198, 303, 605, 739, 914
- An Shen Ding Zhi Wan 691
- epilepsy 691
- insomnia 856
- anemia 494, 541, 556, 727, 802, 805, 809, 812, 814, 817, 820, 823, 828, 851, 882, 886, 888, 891, 900
- haemolytic 608, 610
- Anemarrhena and Gypsum Combination 32, 173, 709 see also Bai Hua Tang
- Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia Formula 177, 375, 384, 406, 452, 473, 501, 546 see also Zhi

#### Lu Rong (Cornu Cervi Parvum) Cervus nippon, C. elaphus
- deer velvet and horn; essential for powerfully tonifying jing, especially for congenital jing deficiency patterns.

#### Shui Niu Jiao (Cornu Bubali) Bubalus bubalis
- water buffalo horn; to reduce severe fever, used as a substitute for rhino horn

#### Dong Chong Xia Cao (Cordyceps Sinensis) Cordyceps sinensis
- fungus growing in dead silkworm; a popular general tonic for the Lungs and Kidneys

#### Zi He Che (Placenta Hominis) Homo sapien
- human placenta; general tonic for the treatment of consumptive diseases, especially of the Lungs

#### Xue Yu Tan (Crinus Carbonisatus) Homo sapien
- charred human hair; haemostatic

#### Niu Huang (Calculus Bovis) Bos taurus domesticus
- cow gallstone; clears Heat, opens the orifices and extinguishes Wind—an important substance for patterns associated with high fever and disturbances of consciousness; usually already prepared in pills

#### Wu Shao She (Zoacyς Dhumnades) Zoacyς dhumnades
- black-tailed snake; for Wind Damp patterns with pain and numbness, stubborn skin diseases and spasms; possible substitutes include Bai Ji Li (Fructus Tribuli Terrestris), Chi Shao (Radix Paeoniae Rubrae) and He Shou Wu (Radix Polygoni Multiflori) for chronic Wind rash; for spasms and jue syndrome Tian Ma (Rhizoma Gastrodiae Elatae)

#### Bai Hua She (Agkistrodon seu Bungarus) Agkistrodon acutus Bungarus multicinctus
- multibanded krait; same indications as for Wu Shao She

#### She Tui (Exuviae Serpentis) Elaphe taeniurus, E. carinata, Zoacyς dhumnades
- snake skin; dispels external Wind for itchy skin lesions and extinguishes internal Wind for spasms and convulsions; possible substitutes as for Wu Shao She

#### Di Bie Chong (Eupolyphaga seu Opiophilatia) Eupolyphaga sinensis Opiophilatia orientalis Steleophaga plancyi
- field cockroach; powerful Blood stagnation remover for severe Blood stasis; closest vegetable substitutes probably San Leng (Rhizoma Sparganii Stoloniferi) and E Zhi (Rhizoma Curcumae Ezhu)

#### Shui Zhi (Hirudo seu Whitmania) Hirudo nipponica Whitmania pigra
- leech; powerful Blood stagnation remover for severe Blood stasis; closest vegetable substitutes probably San Leng (Rhizoma Sparganii Stoloniferi) and E Zhi (Rhizoma Curcumae Ezhu)

---

### Characteristics

- Lu Rong (Cornu Cervi Parvum) Cervus nippon, C. elaphus
- Shui Niu Jiao (Cornu Bubali) Bubalus bubalis
- Dong Chong Xia Cao (Cordyceps Sinensis) Cordyceps sinensis
- Zi He Che (Placenta Hominis) Homo sapien
- Xue Yu Tan (Crinus Carbonisatus) Homo sapien
- Niu Huang (Calculus Bovis) Bos taurus domesticus
- Wu Shao She (Zoacyς Dhumnades) Zoacyς dhumnades
- Bial Hua She (Agkistrodon seu Bungarus) Agkistrodon acutus Bungarus multicinctus
- She Tui (Exuviae Serpentis) Elaphe taeniurus, E. carinata, Zoacyς dhumnades
- Di Bie Chong (Eupolyphaga seu Opiophilatia) Eupolyphaga sinensis Opiophilatia orientalis Steleophaga plancyi
- Shui Zhi (Hirudo seu Whitmania) Hirudo nipponica Whitmania pigra

---

### Conditions described in Volume 2 and 3 may have limited entries in this index and then only subsidiary to the primary diseases of this volume

### A
- abdomen see Vol.2 for full discussion
diathesis
- food stagnation and insomnia 841
- in Liver qi stagnation 567-568
- in Spleen qi def. 870
- in Spleen yin def. 56
- in tai yin syndrome 56
- fullness and pain 376
- lower, coldness and pain 619
- masses 428
- pain 34, 42, 716, 737, 740, 841
- better with warmth and pressure 56

### Abscess
- cerebral 723, 725
- dermatitis 291
- retropharyngeal 291
- absences (epileptic) 680, 681, 688, 716
- absences (epileptic) 680, 681, 688, 716
- absent-mindedness see Forgetfulness

### Achyranthes and Persica Combination 105, 522, 552, 576, 698, 781, 821, 846, 890 see also Xiu Fu Zhu Yu Tang

### Achyranthes and Rehmannia Formula 277, 347, 357 see also Zhou Gui Wan
- acid reflux 573, 815, 841, 843, 864
- Aconite and Halloysium Pills 775 see also Wu Tao Chi Shi Zhi Wan
- Aconite, Ginseng and Ginger Formula 56, 434, 476, 527, 555, 742, 819, 873
- see also Fu Zi Li Zhong Wan

---
Bai Ba Wei Wan
aneurism
burst 646
angina pectoris 768, 769, 773, 776, 779, 820, 823
Antelope Horn and Uncaria Decoction
661, 709 see also Ling Jiao Gou Tang
Antelope Horn Decoction 543, 922 see also Ling Yang Jiao Tang
antibiotics
nature of 131
Anxiety 894
chronic, lifetime 909
following febrile illness 902, 911
Heart and Kidney yin def. 901
Heart Blood and Spleen qi def. 904
Heart qi and yin def. 907
Heart qi def. 899
Phlegm Heat 911
post traumatic 902
with digestive symptoms 904, 911
with irregular pulse 907
anxiety neurosis 60, 141, 809, 814, 840, 854, 886, 900, 903, 912
aortic incompetence 797
appendicitis
acute 35
appendix, poor see Vol.2 for full discussion
Damp Heat in Liver/Gall Bladder 571
in shao yang syndrome 54
in tai yin syndrome 56
Liver qi stagnation 566
Spleen and Kidney yang def. 818
Apricot Kernel and Perilla Leaf Powder 82 see also Xing Su San
aphthous ulcers see ulcers
Aquilaria Powder 376, 426, 916 see also Chen Xiang San
Azose yam, Please the Heart Special Pill 495 see also Qi Yang Yu Xin Dan
Arrest Seizures Pill 685, 688 see also Ding Xian Wan
arteriosclerosis
cerebral 828
arthritis 324, 334, 652 see also Bi Syndrome (Vol.3)
ascessation 603
Ascites 730
Blood stagnation 740
Cold Damp 735
Damp Heat 737
Liver and Kidney yin def. 744
qi and Damp stagnation 733
Spleen and Kidney yang def. 742
Ass-Hide Gelatin and Mugwort Decoction
178, 181, 205 see also Jiao Ai Tang
Aster Decoction 320 see also Zi Wan Tang
asthma 118, 155 see also wheezing/cough acute 7, 48, 74, 122, 123, 124, 126, 128
cardiac 153
chronic, in kids and the elderly 106, 143
Kidney and Spleen def. 103
Kidney yang def. 103, 150
Liver qi stagnation 138
Liver and Spleen def. 147
Liver and Spleen def. 144
Liver qi and yin def. 142
paediatric 157
Phlegm Damp 131, 132, 133
qi stagnation with Heat 139, 140
Wind Cold 7, 48, 51, 122, 124
with internal Heat 126
Astragalus Combination 609 see also Huang Qi Jian Zhong Tang
ataxia 655
atherosclerosis 646
Atractylodes and Hoelen Combination
125, 551, 818 see also Ling Gui Zhou Gan Tang
Atractylodes Combination 422 see also Yue Bi Jiu Zuo Tang
Augmented Two Marvel Powder 333 see also Jia Wei Er Miao San
aura in epilepsy 685
B
Ba Zhen Tang 555, 639, 726
dizziness 555
spasms and convulsions 726
tremors 639
Ba Zhong San 359, 418, 444
painful urination 359
urinary difficulty or retention 418
urinary frequency or incontinence 444
bad breath 289, 841
Bai He Gu Jin Tang 96, 147, 201, 226, 312
cough 96
haemoptysis 201
loss of voice, hoarseness 226
wheeze 147
tuberculosis 312
Bai Hu Tang 32, 173, 709
convulsions 709
epistaxis 173
Heat in yang ming channels 32
Bai Ton Weng Tang
spasms, from Hot dysenteric disorder 711
Baked Licorice Combination 789, 811, 907 see also Zhi Gan Cao Tang
Bamboo and Hoelen Combination 518, 549, 766, 815, 843 see also Win Dan Tang
Ban Xia Bai Zhu Tian Ma Tang
dizziness 549
tinnitus 520
Ban Xia Hou Po Tang
wheeze 132
Bao He Wan 137, 841, 914
insomnia 841
wheeze 137
Bao Ying Dan
as preventative for glue ear 520
paediatric asthma 161
Bao Yuan Tang 785, 914
chest pain 785
Bao Zhen Tang 314, 914
tuberculosis 314
Behcet's syndrome 364, 467, 469
Becloforte, effect of according to TCM 155
Becticide, effect of according to TCM 155
Bei Xin lve Qing Yin 386, 915
cloudy painful urination syndrome 386
belching 566, 586, 770, 815, 841, 843
Bell's palsy 652, 654, 657, 659
acupuncture treatment 654
benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH) 435
bi nü 164
bi qiu 262
Bi Yan San
rhinitis 270
Bis Jia Jiao Wan 612, 915
jaundice 612
Bis Jia Wan
hypochondriac pain 577
Bing Lian San 241, 245, 248
Bing Peng San 287
bipolar mood disorder 837, 840
bladder see also urinary disorders
prolapse 395, 430, 455
acupuncture treatment of 455
cancer 383, 385, 472, 474
bleeding see also epistaxis, haemoptysis, haematuria
with ascites 738
with febrile rashes (Hot Blood) 41
blindness
monocular, in Wind Stroke 655
blood
increased viscosity of 646, 755
Blood and Phlegm stagnation
forgetfulness 880
Blood Deficiency
with external Wind 25
Blood and qi def. see also qi and Blood def.
Blood and yin def. see also yin and Blood def.
Blood stagnation
ascites 740
Blood painful urination syndrome 382
chest pain 781
cough 105
difficult urination 428
dizziness 552
epilepsy 698
haematuria 470
hypochondriac pain 576
insomnia 846
jaundice 611
lower back pain 339
palpitations 821
sinusitis, nasal congestion 258
spasms and convulsions 724
... stone painful urination syndrome 367
Blue Cloud Powder 270 see also Bi Yan San
blurring vision see vision, blurring of
Borneol and Borax Powder 287 see also Bing Peng San
Borneol and Copiis Powder 241 see also Bing Lian San
boulimia 704, 719
Brain Tonic Pills 256 see also Bu Nao Wan
Break Into a Smile Powder 771, 782 see also Shi Xiao San
breast tenderness 138, 223, 376, 425, 446, 513, 540, 566, 834
Broken Liver Pills 643 see also Ci Guan Wan
bronchial asthma see asthma
bronchietasis 89, 92, 99, 110, 113, 134, 137, 196, 203, 227
bronchitis acute 11, 19, 51, 53, 79, 86, 92, 95, 110, 113, 125, 127, 137, 169, 188, 190, 196
asthmatic 110, 116, 125
chronic 63, 89, 95, 99, 102, 104, 134, 137, 146, 190, 196, 203, 227, 820
convalescent stage of 116
bruising, easy 180, 475, 554, 611, 740, 810, 849, 881, 904
Bu Fei Jiao Tang cough 98
Bu Fei Tang cough 100
Bu Gu Zhi Wan hearing loss 524
muinnitus 524
bu mei 826
Bu Nao Wan simritis, nasal congestion 256
Bu Tian Da Zao Wan tuberculosis 316
Bu Yang Huan Wu Tang Wind stroke 667
Bu Zhang Yi Qi Tang cloudy urine 404
dizziness 555
exhaustion painful urination syndrome 394
haematuria 475
hearing loss 526
loss of voice, hoarseness 228
lower back pain 343
shen qi 625
simritis, nasal congestion 252
somnia 871
muinnitus 526
urinary difficulty or retention 431
urinary frequency or incontinence 451, 454
wheezing 144
Bupleurum and Cypereus Formula 95, 425, 426, 566, 587, 733, 770 see also Chai Hu Shu Gan San
Bupleurum and Dang Gui Formula 95, 139, 446, 483, 513, 540, 568, 574, 587, 640, 771, 783, 834 see also Xue Yao San
Bupleurum and Dragon Bone Combination 447, 484, 604, 816 see also Chai Hu Jia Long Gu Mu Li Tang
Bupleurum and Hoelen Formula 359, 916 see also Chai Ling Tang
Bupleurum and Paeonia Formula 140, 242, 771, 835 see also Dan Zhi Xiao Yao San
Bupleurum and Zhi Shi Formula 95 see also Si Ni San
Bupleurum Liver Cleansing Decoction 224, 916 see also Chai Hu Qing Gan Tang
Calm the Palace Pill with Cattle Gallstone 39, 41, 171, 198, 303, 605, 661, 707, 739, 914 see also An Cong Niu Huang Wan
Calm the Shen, Settle the Emotions Pill 691, 856 see also An Shen Ding Zhi Wan
prostate 383, 385, 472, 474
testicular 616, 619, 630
candida albicans 865, 867, 871
Cang Er Zi San 240, 268, 915
rhinitis 268
simritis, nasal congestion 240
Canopy Powder 74 see also Hua Gui San
Capillaries and Hoelen Five Formula 597, 930 see also Yin Chen Wu Ling San
Capillaries, Atractylodes and Aconite Combination 607, 930 see also Yin Chen Zhi Pu Tang
Capillaries Combination 572, 594, 604, 930 see also Yin Chen Huo Tang
caput medusae 740, 744
cardiac arrhythmia 792, 908
Cephalanoplos Decoction 380, 462, 466, 929 see also Xiao Yi Yin Zi
cerebral arteriosclerosis 828
embolism 646
haemorrhage 659
thrombosis 659
tumours 522, 723, 725, 869
cerebral arteriosclerosis occlusion of 646
cerebro-vascular accident 646, 657, 659, 666
Chai Hu Jia Long Gu Mu Li Tang 447, 484, 694, 816
cerebrovascular disease 35, 572, 586, 596
cerebral atresia in children 447
epilepsy 694
impotence 484
palpitations 816
Chai Hu Qing Gan Tang 224, 916
loss of voice, hoarseness 224
Chai Hu Shu Gan San 95, 425, 426, 566, 587, 733, 770
acne 733
chest pain 770
gallstones 587
hypochondriac pain 566
urinary difficulty or retention 425, 426
Chai Ling Tang 559, 916
painful urination 359
channel stroke 647, 652
Chen Yang San 376, 426, 916
qi painful urination syndrome 376
urinary difficulty or retention 426
Cheng Shi Bei Xie Yan Qing Yin cloudy urination 402
involuntary seminal emission 498
Cheng Ying-mao 590
Chest Pain 748
Blood stagnation 781
from trauma 783
Cold congealing Heart Blood 774
differential diagnosis of 749, 783
emergency management of 757
Heart and Kidney yin def. 787
following febrile disease 788
with qi def. 789
with irregular pulse 879
with Liver yin def. 790
prominent Kidney def. 790
and Blood def. 790
Heart qi def. 785
Heart yang def. 777
with Kidney yang def. 778
Heat knotting the chest 761
Phlegm Fluids 764
Phlegm Heat 765
psychogenic 763, 773
qi stagnation 770
with digestive symptoms 771
with Heat 771
with Heart and constitution 771
Turbid Phlegm 764
Wind Phlegm 765
Children’s Return of Spring Special Pill 708 see also Xiao Er Huo Chun Dan
carcinoma acute 35, 572, 586, 596
chronic 55, 570, 575, 588
cholelithiasis 572, 581, 596, 603 see also gallstones
chronic fatigue syndrome 22, 294, 295, 298, 494, 812, 851, 863, 865, 867, 871, 874
chronic obstructive airways disease 106, 143, 149
Phlegon Damp 548
with Spleen deficiency 550
with Spleen yang deficiency and thin Fluids 551
with Heat 549
postural 529
pain and Blood def. 554
post haemorrhage 555
double vision 724
Drain the Yellow Powder 364 see also Xue Huan San
Drive Out Blood Stasis Below the Diaphragm Decoction 577, 611 see also Ge Xia Zhu Yu Tang
Drive Out Blood Stasis in the Lower Abdomen Decoction 382, 470 see also Shao Yu Zhu Yu Tang
drug abuse 883, 886
drug withdrawal 635, 895
drum like abdominal distension, see ascites
Du Huo and Vacuim Combination 330, 918 see also Du Huo Ji Sheng Tang
Du Huo Ji Sheng Tang 330, 918
lower back pain 330
duou mei 862
dysentery
amoebic 36, 711
bacillary 36, 711
chronic 63
dysmenorrhoea 428
dysphasial 652, 655, 658, 672
Ears
discharge from 510, 515, 518, 521
glue 520, 528
grommets in 526
withered 696
echymosis 604
echinococcosis 723, 725
eclampsia 544, 711
ectopic pregnancy 43
eczema
atopic 268
Eleven Ingredient Decoction to Warm the Gall Bladder 911 see also Shi Yi Wei Wen Dan Tang
Eliminate Blood Stasis Decoction 744, 929 see also Xiao Yu Tang
ephritis 89, 102, 106, 154, 143, 146
encephalitis 11, 33, 39, 40, 42, 171, 173, 188, 336, 710, 711, 715, 721
endometritis 43
enuresis 63
enuresis, nocturnal 447, 448, 450, 451
Ephedra, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination see Ma Huang, Apricot Seed, Gypsum and Licorice Combination
Ephedra, Asarum and Prepared Aconite Decoction see Ma Huang and Asarum Combination
epididymal cyst 621
epididymo-orchitis 630
epididymitis 31, 288, 291
Epistaxis 164
first aid 166
Liver and Kidney yin deficiency 177
with yang rising 178
with Blood deficiency 178
Liver Fire 174
premenstrual or menstrual 175
Lung Heat 168
Spleen qi def. 180
Spleen and Kidney yang def. 181
Stomach Heat 172
Toxic Heat 170
Wind Heat 168
Li Chen Tang 87, 132, 136, 519, 919
cough 87
tinnitus/deafness 519
wheezing 132, 136
Er Lang Zao Qi Wen
deafness 523
tinnitus 523
Er Xiao San 485, 919
impotence 485
er tong 506
er ming 506
erection dysfunction. see impotence
Eriobotrya and Ophiopogon Combination 81, 129, 189, 219 see Qing Zao Jiu Wei Tang
eyespelas 710
erthema 38
Faint 38
Escape Restraint Pill 95, 567 see also Yu Guo Wan
Evacuation and Rehmannia Formula 181, 256, 347, 449, 503, 559, 804, 819, 874 see also Yu Guo Wan
eustachian tube
congestion of 526
Evdokia Combination 63, 434 see also Wu Zhi Yu Tang
Expel Urinary Stones #1 Decoction 372 see also Niu Li Bai Shi Tang #1
Expel Urinary Stones #2 Decoction 370 see also Niu Li Bai Shi Tang #2
Expel Urinary Stones #3 Decoction 373 see also Niu Li Bai Shi Tang #3
Expel Wind and Guide Out the Phlegm Decoction 722 see also Qi Feng Da Tan Tang
external pathogenic disorders see acute exterior disorders
eyes see also vision
dark rings under 150, 470, 521, 576, 803, 846, 868
deviation of 667, 718
dry and sore 573, 696, 858
itchy, irritated 265
pressure behind 545, 655
red and sore 93, 174, 197, 242, 468, 515, 542
spots before 529
Expel Urinary Stones #3 Decoction 373
Expel Urinary Stones #2 Decoction 370 see also Niu Li Bai Shi Tang #2
Expel Urinary Stones #1 Decoction 372 see also Niu Li Bai Shi Tang #1
Expel Wind and Guide Out the Phlegm Decoction 722 see also Qi Feng Dao Tan Tang
eye see also vision
INDEX

fear and chills, alternating 54, 358, 379, 444, 462, 571, 585, 594, 601
fear of unknown origin 721, 809, 854, 886
flatulence 616, 622
finger clubbing 147
Five Ingredient Decoction to Eliminate Toxic 301, 361, 604, 710 see also Wu Wu Xiao Da Yin
Five Milled Herb Decoction 138 see also Wu Mo Yin Zi
Five Seed Ancestral Qi Amplifying Pill 488, 928 see also Wu Yi Yan Zang Wan
flaccid collapse syndrome 665
fluid retention see oedema
food allergies 229, 863, 865, 871
food poisoning 14
Forgetfulness 878
Blood and Phlegm stagnation 889
following head injury 890
Heart and Kidney yin def. 884
following febrile disease or with severe Heat 885
predominant Kidney def. 885
Heart: Blood and spleen qi def. 881
Kidney yin def. 887
Four Major Herbs Combination 294, 570, 926 see also Si Jin Zi Tang
Frigid Extremities Decoction 61 see also Si Nv Tang
Frigid Extremities Decoction plus Ginseng 152, 926 see also Si Ne Jia Ren Shen Tang
Frigid Extremities Powder 95, 926 see also Si Ni San
Wu Yuan Huo Xiao Tang
hypochondriac pain 578
chest pain 783
Wu Li Zheng Wan 56, 434, 476, 527, 555, 742, 819, 873
ascites 742
somnolence 873
tai yin syndrome 56
urinary retention with vomiting 434
haematuria 476
tinnitus/desfress 527
dizziness 555
palpitations 819
G
gallstones 572, 581, 584, 603
Damp Heat 584
Liver qi stagnation 586
Gan Jiang Ling Zhi Tang
lower back pain 330, 919
Gan Lu Xiao Da Dan 599, 919
jaundice 599
Gan Lu Yin
sore throat 293
Gan Mai Da Zuo Tang
wheezing 139
gan mao 2
Gardneria and Hoelen Formula 360, 928 see also Wu Lin San
Gardneria and Soybean Combination 37 see also Zhi Zi Dang Chi Tang
gastric flu 8, 14
gastric ulcer disease 575
gastritis 34, 173, 570
chronic 57, 229, 845
Gastrodia and Gambir Formula 516, 542, 639, 642, 670 see also Tiau Ma Guo Tang Yin
gastroenteritis
acute 14, 36, 50, 64
chronic 63
Ge Gen Huang Qin Huang Lian Tang
wen bing 36
Ge Gen Tang
acute exterior disorders 7
sapsam/convulsions 720
Ge Jie San
wheezing 148
Ge Xiao Zhu Yu Tang
hypochondriac pain 577
jaundice 611
Gecko Powder 148 see also Ge Jie san
Generate the Pulse Powder 101, 133, 255, 789, 790, 801 see also Sheng Mai San
genitals
eczema 365, 468, 622
herpes 366, 468
ulceration 365, 468
swelling and pain see testicle
Gentiana Combination 139, 174, 244, 365, 447, 468, 466, 500, 515, 543, 569, 571, 595, 621, 693, 762, 835 see also Long Dan Xie Gan Tang
Gentiana Qinjiao and Soybean Powder 319, 923 see also Qiu Jin Bo Jia San
Ginseng and Aconite Pills for a New Lease on Life 23, 925 see also Shen Fu Zai Zuo Wan
Ginseng and Aconausal Combination 144, 228, 252, 343, 394, 404, 431, 451, 454, 471, 475, 526, 555, 625, 627 see also Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang
Ginseng and Atractylodes Formula 253, 273, 296, 925 see also Shen Ling Bai Zhu San
Ginseng and Ding Gui Light Combination 555, 639, 726 see also Bu Zhen San
Ginseng and Ding Gui Ten Combination 145, 304, 529, 555, 871, 905 see also Shen Quan Da Sun
Ginseng and Gecko Powder 151 see also Ren Shen Ge Ji San
Ginseng and Ginger Formula 716, 777, 922 see also Li Zhan Wu
Ginseng and Longan Combination 180, 205, 395, 493, 554, 810, 849, 881, 904 see also Qi Pu Tang
Ginseng and Pertida Combination 21, 76, 123, 250 see also Shen Si Yin
Ginseng and Prepared Aconite Decoction 152, 665, 775, 779, 805 see also Shen Fu Tang
Ginseng and Zizyphus Formula 58, 467, 638, 787, 806, 852, 884, 901 see also Tian Wang Bu Xin San
Ginseng Nutritive Combination 789, 887, 905 see also Ren Shen Yang Ying Tang
glandular fever 283, 288, 295, 298
globus hystericus 225, 773
glomerulonephritis 362, 381, 407, 424
acute 424
chronic 407
post streptococcal 424
glossitis 840
glue ear see ear
God of Longevity Pills 889, 926 see also Shen Xing Wan
gonorrhoeal urethritis 362, 445, 464, 467, 469
Goodpasture's syndrome 381
gout 334
grand mal seizures see epilepsy
Great Tonify the Bassal Decoction 696, 917 see also Da Ba Yan Jia Shen
Great Tonify the Yin Pill 348, 407, 636 see also Da Ba Yin Wan
Greatest Treasure Special Pill 39, 171, 198, 605, 660, 707, 739, 762 see also Zhi Bao Dan
grommets see ear
gu zhang 730
Gu Luo Xin Bai Ban Xiao Tang 766, 919
chest pain 766
Guo ge syndrome 416
Guo Xin Shu Hsing Wan 775, 779, 804, 919
chest pain 775, 779
palpitations 804
Guo Li Er Xiao Jiao 874, 880, 920
Gai Pi Tang 180, 205, 395, 493, 554, 810, 849, 881, 904
anxiety 904
dizziness 554
epistaxis 180
forgetfulness 881
impotence 493
insomnia 849
palpitations 810
Gai Zi Cao Cong Zao Cong Zhi Tang 803, 920
palpitations 803
Gai Zi Jia Huo Pe Xing Ren Tang
wheezing 123
Gai Zi Jia Long Gu Mu Li Tang 814, 853, 885, 902, 910
anxiety 902, 910
insomnia 853
palpitations 814
Gai Zi Tang
acute exterior disorders 49
INDEX 965
Guide Out Phlegm Decoction 642, 918  
see also Dai Tan Tang

Guns
atrophies of 177
bleeding 32, 170, 180, 604
swollen, ulcerated or bleeding 172

Gun Tan Wan 519, 694, 767, 816
chest pain 767
epilepsy 694
palpitations 816

H
haematoceole 621

Haematuria 458
Blood stagnation 470
with qi def. 471
Damp Heat 462
with with Fire 463
Heart 466
with yin def. 467
Kidney yin def. with Fire 473
Liver 468
Spleen and Kidney yang (qi) def. 475

Haemoptysis 184
diagnosis of 186
Liver Fire 197
Lung and Kidney yin def. 201
Lung Dryness 180
Lung Heat 193
Phlegm Heat 195
Spleen qi def. 204
symptomatic treatment of 319
Wind Cold 191

Wind heat 187

haemorrhoids 475, 871

hair
dry 529, 554
greying and lifeless 255, 275
hallucinations 685
hayfever 51, 102, 125, 262, 267
He Che Da Zao Wan 148, 920
wheezing 148

head injury see trauma

headache (migraine) see Vol.3 for full discussion

Blood stagnation 552, 868
external Damp 7, 335
frontal 10, 32, 74, 77, 122, 128, 172, 238, 240, 242, 246, 834
in yang ming syndrome 32

Liver qi stagnation 242, 566
Liver Fire 244
Liver yang rising 542, 545, 655
maxillary 240, 244
occipital 6, 18, 48, 50, 52, 74, 122, 126, 191, 212, 238, 336
Phlegm Damp 548
Stomach Heat 172
temporal 174, 197, 242, 244, 365, 468, 834
vertex 63, 655
Wind Cold 8
Wind Dryness 16
Wind Heat 10
severe 285
with hypertension and visual disturbance 655
with vomiting and cold extremities 63

Hearing Loss 506

Blood stagnation 521
Kidney def. 523
Liver Fire 515
with yin def./yang rising 516
Phlegm Heat 518
residual Phlegm 501
qi and Blood def. 519
Spleen qi def. with Phlegm) 526
Wind Heat 510

Heart (and Kidney) yin deficiency
chest pain 787

Heart (Lung and Spleen) qi deficiency
chest pain 785

Heart and Gall Bladder qi deficiency
anxiety 909
impotence 495
insomnia 856
palpitations 813

Hearing Loss 506

Heart and Kidney qi and yin deficiency
exhaustion painful urination syndrome 396

Heart and Kidney yang deficiency
shang ban 59

Heart and Kidney yin deficiency
anxiety 901
forgetfulness 884
insomnia 852

Heart Blood and Spleen qi deficiency
anxiety 904
forgetfulness 881
impotence 493
insomnia 849
palpitations 810

Heart Fire
haematuria 466
insomnia 838
painful urination syndrome 363

Heart qi and yin deficiency
anxiety 907

Heart qi deficiency
anxiety 899
palpitations 801

Heart yang deficiency
chest pain 777
palpitations 803

Heart yin deficiency
palpitations 806

Heat, external (wet heat)
accumulating in the Stomach and Intestines 32
causing reckless movement of Blood 41
entering the Pericardium 38
in the Blood 41
in the Blood with Blood stasis 42
in the Lungs 30
in the yang ming channels 32
in yang ming with constipation 34
lingering in the chest and diaphragm 37
with Phlegm in the chest and yang ming 33

Heat scorching and knotting the chest
chest pain 761

heat stroke 33

Hou gi 282
Hua Gai San
cough 74
Hua Yu Tang 740, 921
ascites 740

Huang dan 590
Huang Liu Ji Jiao Tang 788, 808, 839, 853, 885, 902
anxiety 902
chest pain 788
forgetfulness 885
insomnia 839, 853
palpitations 808

Huang Liu Ji Du Tang 170, 361, 465, 604, 838, 921
epistaxis 170
haematuria 463
insomnia 838
jaundice 604
painful urination 361

Huang Lian Wen Dan Tang
chest pain 767

urinary difficulty or retention 420
INDEX

968

Huang Qi jian Zhong Tang
jaundice
609

Het Chen Dan 708 see also Xiao Er Hai
Chun Dan
hun 827

hunger see also appetite

indeterminate growing 172, 594, 815,
841, 843, 911

Hua Dan Wan
sinusitis/nasal congestion 243, 245
Huo Lao Xiao Ling Dan 339, 921
lower back pain 323
Hua Xue Zhen Qi Sun
cutaneous disorder 13
hydrocele 616, 621, 622, 626
hyperaldosteronism 560
primary 63
hyperparathyroidism 590
hypertension 64, 165, 176, 179, 199,
245, 407, 514, 525, 544, 547, 551,
560, 643, 646, 655, 657, 669, 828,
837, 857
acupuncture treatment for 657
hyperthyroidism 560, 634, 638, 641,
797, 809, 828, 854, 859, 868, 909
hypocalcaemia 715

Hypochondriac Pain 564
Blood stagnation 576
Damp Heat in the Liver and Gall
Bladder 571
with roundworms 572
Liver qi stagnation 566
with Fire 569
with unresolved Wind Cold 569
with gallstones 569
with Blood stagnation 569
with Spleen def. 570
Liver xue (Blood) deficiency 573
with qi stagnation 574
traumatic 578
hypoglycaemia 863, 865, 871
hypotension 566, 560
hypothyroidism 63, 435, 451, 489, 560,
874
hysteria 141, 225
hysterical amnesia 427

hysterical aphonia 225

I

immune dysfunction
chronic fatigue 22, 294, 295, 298, 494,
812, 851, 863, 865, 867, 871, 874
poor 20, 21, 22, 24, 146, 295, 298

impotence 480
Damp Heat 485
Heart and Gall Bladder qi def. 495
Heart and Spleen def. 493
Kidney yang def. 488
Kidney yin def. 490
Liver qi stagnation 483
Incomparable Dioscorea Pill 391, 395,
475, 927 see also Wu Bi Shan Yao Wan
Increase the Fluids and Order the Qi
Decoction 35 see also Zeng Ye Cheng Qi
Tang
Indigo and Conch Powder 93, 197, 917 see
Dai Ge San
infertility, male 480, 485, 488, 489, 490,
492
influenza 8, 19, 51, 53, 55, 76, 125,
190, 192, 213, 239, 338, 512, 721

Insomnia 826
Blood stagnation 846
Heart and Gall Bladder qi def. 856
Heart and Kidney yin def. 852
after shock or trauma 853
following febrile disease or with
severe Heat 853
with severe palpitations and anxiety
853-854
Heart Blood and Spleen qi def. 849
Heart Fire 838
Liver qi stagnation 834
with Heat 835
Liver Fire 835
Liver yin (Blood) def. 858
with qi stagnation 859
Phlegm Heat 843
resistant cases 844
post partum 851
Stomach disharmony 841
to purge in severe cases 842

intercostal neuralgia 34, 575, 579
internal Wind
mechanisms of 536, 648
intervertebral disc
prolapse of 324
intestinal obstruction 35
intestinal tuberculosis 736, 743
Inula Flower Decoction 772 see also Xuan
Yu Hua Tang
Inula Powder 191, 922 see also Jin Fei Cao
San
involutional psychosis 814, 857
Iron Whistle Pill 287 see also Tie Di Wan

J

Jade Screen Powder 21, 268, 318 see also
Yu Ping Feng San
Jade Woman Decoction 172, 931 see also Yu
Na Jian

Jaundice 590
Blood stagnation 611
Cold Damp 607
Damp Heat
Damp greater than Heat 597
Heat greater than Damp 594
with exterior symptoms 599
Liver and Gall Bladder stagnant Heat
601
with roundworms 602
Spleen qi and Blood def. 609
Toxic Heat 604
with delirium 605
with constipation, spasms or convulsions
606
Ji Sheng Shen Qi Wan
ascites 743
urinary difficulty or retention 433
Jin Jian Wei Lai Tang
acute exterior disorders 27
Jin Wei Er Xiao San
lower back pain 333
jian wang 878
Jiao Ai Tang
epistaxis 178, 181
haemoptysis 205
Jiao Gui Tang
Cold shan qi 618

Jia Gong Tang 111, 921
Lung abscess 111
Jia Yu Dan 672, 922
dysphasia 672
Jin Fei Cao San 191, 922
haemoptysis 191
Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan 60, 104, 125, 150,
181, 276, 295, 392, 409, 476, 477,
804, 819, 874
chest pain 778
cloudy urine 409
cough 104
epistaxis 181
exhaustion painful urination syndrome
392
haematuria 476
pulmonary symptoms 804, 819
rhinitis 276
shang han 56
torment 874
sore throat 295
wheezing 125, 150
Jin Suo Gu jing Wan
tuberculosis 320
cloudy painful urination syndrome 388
jing bing 704
jing ji 796
Jing Fang Bai Du San 6, 286, 336
acute exterior disorders 6
lower back pain 336
sore throat 286
jing shu 828
Ju He Wan
shu jin 912
Jue Yin channel syndrome 63
Jue Yin syndrome 62

K

ke sou 68
ke xue 184
Ke Xue Tang
haemoptysis 198
Kidney, jing def.
forgetfulness 887
sinusitis, nasal congestion 255
Kidney qi def.
cloudy painful urination syndrome 388
laryngitis
acne 209, 213, 216, 222
chronic 209, 222, 227, 295
laryngitis 209
Leach out Dampness Decoction 331 see also Shen Xiu Tang
Lead Special Pill 152, 920 see also Hei Xi Dan
Lead to Symmetry Powder 653, 675, 923 see also Qian Zheng San
leptospirosis 596, 600
leukaemia 40, 179
acute 40, 42
Li Zhong Wan 716, 777, 922
debility 777
convulsions 716
Liao Po Yin
acute exterior disorder 14
Liver Ga Sun
cough 85
libido
loss of 480, 483, 488, 523, 558
Licorice and Jujube Combination 139 see also Gan Mao Da Zao Tang
Licorice, Ginger, Hoelen and Atractylodes Decoction 330, 919 see also Gan Jiang Ling Zhu Tang
Lily Combination 96, 147, 201, 226, 312 see also Bai He Gu Jin Tang
in zheng 352
Ling Gui Zhu Gan Tang 125, 551, 818
dizziness 551
palpitations 818
wheezeing 125
Ling Juan Gui Tang Tang convulsions 709
Wind stroke 661
Ling Yang Juan Tang 543, 922
dizziness 543
Linking Decoction 573, 744, 790, 808, 859 see also Yi Guan Jian
Liquid Styrax Pill 662 see also Su He Xiang Wan
Liquid Styrax Pills for Coronary Heart Disease 775, 790, 805, 919 see also Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan
Lin Jun Zi Tang 88, 101, 125, 132, 145,
253, 272, 520, 527, 550, 690
cough 88, 101
dizziness 550
epilepsy 650
hearing loss 520, 527
rhinitis 272
sinusitis/nasal congestion 253
urination/def. 520, 527
wheezeing 125, 132, 145
Lin Shen Wan 922
Lin Wu Di Huang Wan 255, 293, 388, 342, 391, 436, 490, 636
cloudy painful urination syndrome 388
exhaustion painful urination syndrome 391
impotence 490
lower back pain 342
sinusitis, nasal congestion 255
tinnitus 513
wheezeing 138
Liver qi stagnation with Heat
impotence 834
sinusitis, nasal congestion 242
Liver yang rising
dizziness 542
Liver yang rising with Blood stagnation
sequelae of Wind stroke 669
Liver yin (Blood) def.
hypochondriac pain 573
insomnia 858
lobar pneumonia 31
lung bi 398
Long Dan Xie Gan Tang 139, 174, 244, 365, 447, 468, 486, 500, 515, 543, 569, 571, 595, 621, 693, 762, 835
cough 762
dizziness 543
epilepsy 693
epistaxis 174
haematuria 468
hearing loss 515
hypochondriac pain 569, 571
impotence 486
insomnia 834
involuntary seminal emission 500
jaundice 595
pediatric enuresis 447
painful urination syndrome 365
sinusitis, nasal congestion 244
urination 515
urination 515

nasal discharge 234, 262 see also sinusitis and rhinitis
acute 6, 10, 18, 48, 238, 240, 244, 246, 265, 268
copious yellow or green mucus 240, 241
Kidney def. 255, 275
Liver and Gall Bladder Fire 244
Lung and Spleen def. 272
Lung qi def. 249, 268
Phlegm Heat 246
Spleen qi def. 252
Wind Cold 6, 238, 265
Wind Heat 10, 240

Niu Lao Pai Shi Tang #3
stone painful urination syndrome 373
Niao xue 458
Niao zhuo 400
nocturia 59, 60, 103, 150, 346, 408, 449, 488, 502, 523, 558, 818
Nocturnal Seminal Emission 497
Heat, Damp Heat 498
Kidney yang and yin def. 502
Kidney yang def. 501
Liver Fire 499
sympotomatic treatment of 320
nocturnal enuresis 440, 447, 448, 450, 451
nosebleed see epistaxis
Nourishing Decoction to Overcome Heat and Phlegm 33

Nourishment Decoction 419, 933 see also Zhi Shen Tong Guan Wan
Nourish the Heart Decoction 786 see also Yang Xin Tang
Niu Guan Jian shen qi 619
numbness of one side of the body 667, 669
of the extremities 636, 639, 653, 655, 672, 673, 765
of the lower limbs 673

Obesity 642, 866
oedema see Vol.3 for full discussion
Cold Damp 733
Heart and Kidney yang def. 59, 778, 804
Kidney yang def. 150, 433
Kidney and Spleen yang def. 103, 742, 818
Kidney yin def. 436
Liver qi obstruction 422
Spleen qi def. 256, 343, 344
Spleen yang def. 344, 430
with injury/trauma 105, 576, 578
with Liver abscess 109, 111, 114
with pain in the chest 777, 803
with loin pain and kidney stones 370, 436, 451

Osteoarthritis 98, 150, 227 see also Mai Wei Di Huang Wan

Organic Metastasis 707, 718
Orthopnea 50, 124, 133, 152, 777, 803
Outlet obstruction 766, 507, 512, 517, 520
Oyster Shell Formula 318 see also Mei Li San

INDEX 975
with qi stagnation and Fire 816
Spleen and Kidney yang deficiency 818
with wheezing and oedema 819
pancreatitis 35, 572, 586, 596
panic attacks 58, 493, 806, 810, 814,
840, 849, 852, 857, 881, 904
paralysis 655, 667, 669, 673
parasitic liver disease 565
Parkinson's disease 638, 641
paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia
Patent medicines
African Sea Coconut Cough Syrup
17, 79
An Gong Niu Huang Wan 38, 39,
42, 171, 606, 661, 739
An Shen Bu Qian Wan 812
Ba Ji Yin Yang Wan 257, 277, 410,
451, 476, 489, 503, 559, 626
Ba Xian Cheng Shen Wan 98, 143,
149, 203, 227, 295
Ba Zhu Wan 530, 555, 628, 640, 727
Bai Feng Wan 640
Bai He Gu Jin Wan 98, 115, 143,
149, 203, 227, 295, 311
Bai Zi Yang Xin Wan 494, 496, 786,
802, 812, 850, 882, 900, 905, 908
Ban Lan Gen Cheng Jing 11, 79, 286
Bao He Wan 842
Bao Ji Wan 14
Bao Yong Dan 161
Bi Min Gan Wan 238, 266, 270, 274
Bi Xie Fen Qing Wan 387, 395, 405
Bi Yan Ning 241, 243, 245, 247
Bi Yan Pian 266
Bu Nao Wan 59, 257, 277, 494, 496,
555, 812, 814, 850, 857, 882, 900,
905, 908, 910
Bu Yang Huang Wu Wan 654, 668, 676
Bu Zhong Yi Qi Wan 101, 146, 229,
251, 254, 270, 274, 297, 345, 395,
405, 432, 455, 476, 527, 555, 610,
626, 628
Chai Hu Jia Long Gu Mu Li San 817,
836, 844
Chai Hu Shao Gan Wan 140, 224, 243,
342, 377, 427, 447, 484, 541, 570,
588, 624, 772
Cheng Cao Ji Jing 229, 257, 277,
313, 315, 317
Chuan Bei Pi Pu Gao 79, 81, 82, 98,
149, 190, 219
Chuan Ke Ling 91, 127
Chuan Xing Lan Kang Yuan Pian 36, 85,
95, 110, 112, 130, 194, 247, 286,
290, 311, 313, 315, 317, 361, 364,
366, 380, 387, 403, 420, 445, 463,
467, 469, 486, 499, 500, 516, 520
602, 606, 622, 762
Chuan Xiang Cha Tiao Wan 8, 49,
76, 192, 213, 238, 266, 337, 721
Ch Yuan Wan 809, 902
Cong Rong Bu Shen Wan 489
Da Bai Du Jiao Nang 290, 364, 366
Da Bu Yin Wan 491
Da Chai Hu Wan 602
Dan Shen Pian 106, 429, 700, 772,
822, 847
Dang Cui Ji Jing 555, 610, 640, 812,
850, 882, 905
Dan Chi Pian 33, 361, 364, 366,
387, 403, 420, 445, 463, 467, 840
Die Da Tian Qian Yuan jin 340
Die Da Zhong Tang 331, 340
Ding Chuang Wan 127, 130, 137
Ding Xin Wan 494, 802, 814, 900,
910
Du Hua Ji Sheng Wan 331, 336
Er Chu Wan 89, 133, 551, 768,
817, 844, 865, 867, 871, 912
Er Ling Zuo Qi Wan 524, 546, 558,
574, 715
Fang Feng Tong Sheng Wan 19, 424,
512
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 106, 383, 783,
822, 847, 891
Fu Ke Wu Jin Wan 429
Fu Li Zhong Wan 57, 152, 297,
345, 432, 476, 551, 608, 691,
717, 736, 743, 768, 776, 779,
805, 819, 874
Gan Mao Ling 8, 11, 17, 26, 28, 49,
76, 79, 81, 82, 192, 213, 238, 337,
338, 721
Gan Mao Qing Re Cheng Ji 8, 76,
123, 125, 192, 213, 336, 337, 721
Gan Mao Zhi Ke Cheng Ji 76, 123,
125, 192, 338
Ge Jia Bu Shen Wan 152
Ge Jia Da Bu Wan 205
Guan Xin An Qi Fu Ye 783, 822, 847
Guan Xin Su He Xiang Wan 776, 779
Gui Lu Er Xian Jiao 888
Gui Pi Wan 181, 205, 494, 496, 555,
786, 802, 850, 882, 900, 905, 908
Gui Zhi Fu Ling Wan 578, 612, 630
Hai Zao Wan 621, 630, 723
He Bu Bo Long Wang 520, 544, 643,
686, 689, 694, 719, 817, 844, 912
Hua Qi Shen Ji Jing 315, 317
Hua Ton Zai Wan 654, 668, 676
Huang Lian Jia Dan Wan 36, 171, 173,
247, 334, 520, 606, 762, 840, 912
Huang Lian Su Pian 36, 112
Hui Chou Dang Dan 708
Huo Dan Wan 245, 247
Huo Xiang Zhong Pian 14, 600, 721
Ji Ga Cao Cheng Ji 572, 595, 598, 600
Ji Ga Cao Wan 516, 572, 586, 595,
598, 600, 602
Jiu Wei Xiang Lian Pian 36
Jiu Wei Xiao Yao Wan 140, 243, 377,
447, 514, 541, 772, 836
Jian Bu Qian Sheng Wan 348
Jian Kang Wan 106, 783, 822, 847
Jian Nao Wan 59, 857
Jian Pi Wan 297, 842
Jin Gu Die Shang Pian 106, 340, 472,
783, 822, 891
Jin Kui She Qi Wan 61, 152, 181,
257, 277, 295, 348, 374, 389, 392,
410, 432, 451, 476, 489, 503, 559,
743, 779, 805, 819, 874, 888
Jin Suo Gu Jing Wan 389, 410, 451,
455, 503
Kang Wei Ling 484, 486, 654, 676
Li Dan Pian 572, 586, 595, 598,
600, 602
Li Gan Pian 588
Li Zhong Wan 57, 297, 345, 432, 619,
INDEX

Phleghm obstructing Heart yang
chest pain 764
Phlegm obstruction
somnolence 866
phobias 810, 881, 904
Pill for Deafness that is Kind to the Left 523 see also Er Ling Zao Ci Wan
Pinellia and Gastrodia Combination 520, 549 see also Ban Xia Bai Zhu Tian Ma Tang
Pinellia and Magnolia Combination 140 see also Ban Xia Hou Pe Tong
Peng Wei San 344, 733, 864
ascites 733
lower back pain 344
somnolence 864
pituitary hypofunction 560
Placenta Great Creation Pills 148, 920 see also He Che Du Zao Wan
Platycodon 731
Platycodon Decoction 111, 921 see also Jie Geng Tang
pleurisy 199, 570, 763
plum stone throat 138, 223, 834
pneumonia 19, 31, 53, 66, 92, 95, 110, 113, 127, 130, 137, 169, 171, 188, 190, 196, 199, 711, 763
cranial stage of 116
pe 801
polycystic kidneys 324, 459
Polyporus Combination 360, 436 see also Zhu Ling Tang
polyps
nasal 259, 272
vocal cord 209
post cerebro-vascular accident 663
post concussion syndrome 522, 553, 848, 869, 882
post febrile disease 437, 840
post herpetic neuralgia 579
post illness convalescence 874, 882
post partum
cold 26
convalescence 556
haemorrhage 812
post traumatic shock syndrome 496, 553, 560, 854, 895, 902, 903
post viral syndrome 55, 227, 229, 294, 912
postnasal drip 283
pregnancy
Wind Cold during 26
dysuria during 360
premenstrual syndrome 138, 223, 341, 376, 425, 446, 513, 540, 566, 770, 814, 837, 837, 856
premature ectopic beats 802, 812
premature ejaculation 490, 497
Preserve the Basal Decoction 785, 914 see also Ban Yuanyang Tang
Preserve the True Decoction 314, 914 see also Ban Shen Huang Tang
prolapse
acupuncture treatment of 432, 626
bladder 395, 430, 432, 455
uterine 395, 432, 455
vaginal 395
Promote Wisdom Decoction 885 see also Sheng Hui Tang
prostate cancer see cancer
prostatic hypertrophy 415, 429, 451
prostatitis 362, 366, 381, 387, 403, 420, 464, 467, 469, 487
Protect the Child Special Pill 161, 520 see also Bao Ying Dan
puritis, generalised 609
Psoralene Pills 524 see also Ban Gu Zhi Wan
Pu Ji Xiao Du Yin sore throat 289
Pueraria Combination 7, 720 see also Ge Gen Tang
puerperal fever 43, 544
early stage of 26
Pulsatilla Decoction 711 see also Bai Tou Weng Tang
Purple Snow Special Pill 39, 171, 198, 303, 606, 707 see also Zi Xian Dan
purpura 38, 611, 710, 711, 740
pyelonephritis 324, 362, 364, 366, 387, 420, 445, 464, 467
Pyrosis Powder 368, 925 see also Shi Wei San
Q
qi and Blood deficiency
dizziness 554
spasms and convulsions 726
tinnitus 529
tremors 639
qi and Damp stagnation
ascites 733
qi and yin deficiency
tuberculosis 314
qi, Blood and Phleghm Stagnation
loss of voice, hoarseness 230
qi deficiency
shen qi 625
with external Wind 20
qi deficiency with Blood stagnation
sequelae of Wind stroke 667
Qi Ju Di Huang Wan
dizziness/vertigo 546
hypochondriac pain 574
Qi Yang Yu Xin Dan
impotence 495
Qian Gen San
haematuria 471, 923
Qian Jin Wei Ying Tang
Lung abscess 111
Qian Zheng San 653, 675, 923
facial paralysis 653, 675
Qiang Hua Sheng Shi Tang acute exterior disorder 7
lower back pain 335
spasms 720
Qin Jin Bie Jia San
tuberculosis 319, 923
Qing Dan Xie Hua Tang 583, 601, 923
gallstones 585
jaundice 601
Qing Fei Yin
difficult urination/retention 423
Qing Han San 553, 923
dizziness/vertigo 553
Qing Han Di Tan Tang
insomnia 844
Qing Jin Hua Tan Tang cough 90, 93
INDEX 981
Qing Wen Bai Du Yin
convulsions 710
Qing Xin Liao Zi Yin
exhaustion painful urination 396
Qing Yan Li Ge Tang
loss of voice, hoarseness 215
throat abscess 302
Qing Yan Nong Fei Tang 221, 230, 896
loss of voice, hoarseness 212, 230
Qing Ying Tang 38, 39, 171, 198, 303, 711
convulsions 711
epistaxis 171
haemoptysis 198
throat abscess 303
wen hua 38, 39
Qing Zao Jin Yi Tang 81, 129, 189, 219
cough 81
loss of voice/hoarseness 219
haemoptysis 189
wheezing 129
Qin Feng Dao Tan Tang
convulsions 722
quinsey 304
R
Red Cross Hospital 583
Reed Decoction 91, 111, 195, 927 see also Wei Jing Tang
Regulate the Stomach and Order the Qi Decoction 842 see also Tsao Wei Cheng Qi Tang
Rehmannia and Akebia Formula 363, 396, 466, 838 see also Dao Chi San
Rehmannia Decoction 673 see also Di Huang Yin Zi
Rehmannia Eight Formula 60, 104, 125, 150, 181, 276, 295, 392, 409, 476, 778, 804, 819, 874 see also Jin Kai Shen Qi Wan
Rehmannia Six Formula 255, 293, 342, 388, 391, 436, 490, 636 see also Liu Wei Di Huang Wan
Reiter's syndrome 362, 366, 467, 469
Relax the Tongue Special Pill 672, 922 see also Jie Ya Dan
Ren Shen Ge Jie San
wheezing 151
Tinnitus/Deafness 506
Blood stagnation 521
Kidney def. 523
Liver Fire 515
with yin def. and yang rising 516
Liver qi stagnation 513
Phlegm Heat 518
with residual Phlegm Damp following resolution of Heat 519
with then disturbance and constipation 519
qi and Blood def. 529
Spleen qi def. (with Phlegm) 526
Wind Heat 510
TMJ syndrome 514, 522
Tokoro Formula 386, 915 see also Bei Xie Fen Qing Yin
Tokoro Formula [from the Cheng Clan] 402, 408 see also Cheng Shi Bei Xie Fen Qing Yin
Tong Qiao Hua Xue Tang 521, 699, 724, 868
epilepsy 609
hearing loss 521
somnolence 868
spasms and convulsions 724
Tinnitus 521
tongue
deviation of 673
stiffness of 672, 673, 765
ulcers 806, 838
tonic clonic seizures 681, 685
Tonify Heaven Great Creation Pill 316 see also Bu Tian Da Zao Wan
Tonify the Lungs Decoction 100 see also Bu Fei Tang
Tonify the Lungs Decoction with Ass-Hide Gelatin 98 see also Bu Fei E Jiao Tang
Tonify the Yang to Restore Five [Tenth] Decoction 667 see also Bu Yang Huoan Wu Tang
Throat
tooth grinding 514, 834
toothache 32

Tuberculosis 306
anti Mycobacterium tuberculosis herbs 309
Lung and Kidney yin def. 312

Tuberculosis and Haemoptysis Formula 319 see also Zhi Fei Jie He Ke Tan Xue Fang
tuberculous laryngitis 209
tuberculous pustulosis 730
numours see also cancer
Turbid Phlegm chest pain 766
spasms and convulsions 722
Turtle Shell Pills 577 see also Bi Jia Wan
Two Marvel Powder 485, 919 see also Er Miao San

U
ulcers
aphthous 283
gastric 565, 570, 575, 579
mouth and tongue 58, 85, 98, 283, 286, 287, 290, 316, 363, 364, 466, 806, 838
Unblock the Orifices and Invigorate Blood Decoction 521, 699, 724, 868 see also Tong Qiao Hua Xue Tang
Universal Benefit Decoction to Eliminate the Toxins 289 see also Pu Ji Xiao Die Yin
upper respiratory tract infection 8, 11, 17, 19, 53, 76, 79, 83, 127, 130, 169, 188, 190, 192, 194, 199, 213, 216, 220, 222 see also Acute Exterior Disorder/Cough/Sore Throat
urethral stricture 383, 429
urethritis 362, 364, 366, 387, 403, 420, 445, 464 see also Painful Ulnation Syndrome
urge incontinence 440
Urinary Difficulty or Retention 414
Blood stagnation 428
Damp Heat 418
with Toxic Damp 419
Damp Heat and yin def. 419
Kidney yang def. 433
with exterior pathogens 434
with ‘Water Toxin’ 434
Liver qi stagnation 425
obstruction of Lung qi 422
persistent, with oedema and sweating 423
Spleen yang def. 430
with no Cold (i.e. qi def.) 431

Urinary Frequency/Incontinence 440
Damp Heat 444
Kidney qi (yang) def. 449
Kidney yin def. 452
Liver qi stagnation 446
enuresis in hyperactive children 447
Spleen and Lung qi def. 454
with Wind Cold 455

urinary tract infection 334, 381, 383, 385, 387, 389, 393, 395, 420, 421, 453, 467, 469 see also Painful Urination Syndrome/Haematuria/Cloudy Urination

V

vaginitis
atrophic 453
Vaporize Phlegm Pill 519, 694, 767, 816 see also Guan Tan Wan
varicocoele 616, 621, 626
Ventolin 155
vertebral artery
atherosclerotic occlusion of 646
vertebral disc herniation 340
Vertigo 534 see Dizziness
benign positional 551
Vessel and Vehicle Pill 738, 741 see also Zhou Che Wan
vision see also eyes
blurring of 542, 545, 573, 639, 810, 881, 904
sudden loss of 655

W

Warm Diseases 30

qi level 30
Heat in the Lungs 30
Heat in yang ming channels 32
Heat and Phlegm in the chest and yang ming 33
strong Heat in yang ming 34
Damp Heat in yang ming 35
Heat lingering in the chest and diaphragm 37
Yang ming level 38
Heat entering the Pericardium 38
Heat obstructing the Pericardium 39
Blood level 41
Heat causing reckless movement of Blood 41
Hot Blood and Blood stasis 42

Warm Dryness

cough 80
Warm the Liver Decoction 619 see also Nuon Gan Jian
Warm the Lungs Decoction 250 see also Wen Fei Tang
Warm the Lungs, Stop the Flow Special Pill 249, 276, 927 see also Wen Fei Zhi Liu Dan

Wen Fei Tang 91, 111, 195, 927
cough 91
haemoptysis 195
Lung abscess 111

Wen Liang Tang

urinary difficulty or retention 425
wen bing 30 see Warm Diseases

Wen Dan Tang 518, 549, 766, 815, 843

chest pain 766
dizziness 549
insomnia 843
palpitations 815
tinnitus 518

Wen Fei Tang

siinu~itis/nasal congestion 250
Wen Fei Zhi Liu Dan 249, 276, 927
rhinitis 276
siinu~itis, nasal congestion 249

Wheezeing 118
Kidney yang def. 150
with pulmonary oedema 152
Lung and Kidney yin def. 147
Lung and Spleen qi def. 144
with prominent Spleen def. 145
following haemorrhage or menstruation 145
Lung Heat 129
Lung qi and yin def. 142
Phlegm Damp 131
recurrent, with Kidney def. and Cold invasion 133
with prominent Spleen def. 132
Phlegm wheezing worse with certain foods 137
qi stagnation 138
with Heat or Fire 139
Wind Cold 122
persistent, after sweating 123
Wind Cold with internal Heat 126
Wind Cold with Phlegm Fluids 124
with Spleen and Kidney yang def. 125
with Heat and Kidney yang def. 125
Wind Heat 128
whooping cough 19, 31, 53, 79, 92, 95, 110, 113, 127, 130, 137, 196, 199
in adults 199
Wind Cold

cough 74
exterior syndrome 6
haemoptysis 191
in children 76
in weak patients 75
loss of voice, hoarseness 212
lower back pain 336

Wondershelf Scrophularia Powder 98 see also Xuan Mo San
Wu Bi Shan Yao Wan 391, 395, 475, 927
painful urination syndrome 391, 395

Wind Heat
cough 77
epistaxis 168
exterior syndrome 10
haemoptysis 189
loss of voice, hoarseness 214
lower back pain 337
Lung abscess 109
siinu~itis, nasal congestion 240
sore throat 285
tinnitus 508
tinnitus, deafness 510
wheezing 128
Wind Phlegm 672, 767
chest pain 767

Wind Stroke 646
ancient theories 647
closed syndrome 660
yang closed syndrome 660
yin closed syndrome 662
empiness of the channels with Wind invasion 652
flaccid collapse syndrome 665
Liver and Kidney yin def. with rising Liver 655
Phlegm Heat with Wind Phlegm 658
sequelae of 667
dysphasia 672
facial paralysis 675
hemiplegia 667
Wonderful Scrophularia Powder 98 see also Xuan Mo San
Xu Bi Shan Yao Wan 391, 395, 475, 927

INDEX 989

INDEX 988
INDEX

990

haematuria 475
Wu Lin San 360, 928
painful urination 344
Wu Lang San 50, 549, 620, 742
ascites 742
dizziness/vertigo 540
shen qi 620
lat yang organ syndrome 50
Wu Mei Wan
jun yin syndrome 62
Wu Mei Yin Zi
wheezing 138
Wu Ten Chi Shi Zi Wan
chest pain 775
Wu Wei Xiao Du Yin 301, 361, 604, 710
convulsions 710
jaundice 604
painful urination 361
throat abscess 301
Wu Wei Zi Tang 801, 928
palpitations 801
Wu Zhu Yu Tang
difficult urination 434
jun yin syndrome 63
Wu Zhi Yanzong Wan 470, 928
impotence 488
X

Xanthium Formula 240, 268, 915 see also
Cang Er Zi Tang
Xi Jiao Di Huang Tang 41, 171, 198, 303
epistaxis 171
haemoptysis 198
throat abscess 303
wen bing 41
Xi Jiao San 605, 738, 928
ascites 738
jaundice 605
Xian Fang Hao Ming Yin 302, 928
throat abscess 302
Xiang Sha Lin Jiu Zi Tang
somnolence 870
Xiao Chai Hu Tang 54, 78, 338, 541, 569
cough 78
dizziness 541
hypochondriac pain 569
lower back pain 338
shao yang syndrome 54
xiao chuan 118
Xiao Er Hui Chron Dan
infantile convulsions 708
Xiao Huo Luo Dan 668, 929
severe, chronic hemiplegia 668
Xiao Ji Yi Zi 380, 462, 466, 929
Blood painful urination syndrome 380
haematuria 462, 466
Xiao Jiao Qi Tang 223, 929
loss of voice, hoarseness 223
Xiao Qing Long Tang 51, 75, 124, 265
cough 75
rhinitis 265
shen han 51
wheezing 124
Xiao Xian Xiong Tang
chest pain 761
wen bing 34
Xiao Xu Ming Tang 647, 653
channel stroke 653
Xiao Yao San 95, 139, 446, 483, 513,
540, 568, 574, 587, 640, 771, 783,
834
chest pain 771, 783
dizziness 540
gallstones (post) 587
hypochondriac pain 568, 574
impotence 483
insomnia 834
tinutius 513
tremors 640
urinary frequency or incontinence 446
wheezing 139
Xiao Yu Tang 744, 929
ascites 744
Xie Bai San 197, 930
haemoptysis 197
Xie Huang San
painful urination 364
xie tong 564
Xin Jia Xiang Ru Yin 12, 930
Summer Heat
Xin Yi Qing Fu Yin
rhinitis 269
Xin Yi San
sinusitis, nasal congestion 238
Xing Su San
dry cough 82
Xing Wei Cheng Qi Tang
Wind stroke 658
xiang bi 748
Xuan Fu Huo Tang
chest pain 772
Xuan Miao San
cough 98
xuan yun 516
Xue Fu Zhen Yu Tang 105, 522, 552, 576,
698, 781, 821, 846, 890
chest pain 781
cough 105
dizziness 552
epilepsy 698
forgetfulness after trauma 890
hypochondriac pain 576
insomnia 846
palpitations 821
somnolence 869
tinutius, hearing loss 522

Y

yang deficiency
with external Wind Cold 23
yang ming syndrome 55
yang wei 480
yao tong 324
Yao Xing Tang
chest pain 786
yi 878
yi xiao 440
Yi Guan Jian 573, 744, 790, 808, 859
ascites 744
chest pain 790
hypochondriac pain 573
insomnia 859
palpitations 808
yan and Blood deficiency
spasms and convulsions 713
Yin Chen Hao Tang 572, 594, 604, 930
hypochondriac pain 572
jaundice 594, 604
Yin Chen Wu Ling San 597, 930
jaundice 597
Yin Chen Zhu Fu Tang 607, 930
jaundice 607
jen deficiency
with external Wind 27
Yin Qiao San 10, 109, 187, 510
acute exterior disorder 10
fei ying (Lang abscess) 109
haemoptysis 187
tinutius 510
Yin Qiu Wan 181, 256, 449, 503,
559, 804, 819, 874
dizziness 559
epistaxis 181
lower back pain 347
nocturnal seminal emission 503
palpitations 804, 819
sinusitis, nasal congestion 256
somnolence 874
urinary frequency or incontinence 449
you tu 894
Yu Na Jian 172, 931
episistaxis 172
Yu Ping Feng San 21, 268, 318
acute exterior disorder 21
rhinitis 268
tuberculosis 318
Yu Shen San 718, 931
muscular tetany 718
Yue Bi Jia Zhu Tang
difficult urination/retenion 422
Yue Hua Wan 97, 202, 310, 931
cough 97
haemoptysis 202
tuberculosis 310
Yue Jei Tong 95, 567
hypochondriac pain 567
Yun Nan Bai Yao 112, 115, 188, 190,
191, 194, 196, 198, 203, 205, 319
Z

Zan Yu Dan 488, 931
impotence 488
Zeng Ye Cheng Qi Tang
wen bing 35
Zhang Zhong-jing 2, 46
Zhen Gan Xi Feng Tang 178, 516, 545,
655, 669
dizziness 545
epistaxis 178
hemiplégia 669
tinnitus, deafness 516
Wind stroke 855
Zhen Wu Tang 60, 103, 152, 778, 804, 819
chest pain 778
cough 103
palpitations 804, 819
zheng feng 646

Zhi Zi Dou Chi Tang
wen bing 37
Zhong Man Fen Xiao Wan 737, 932
ascites 757
Zhou Che Wan
ascites 738, 741
Zhu Huang Sun
sore throat 287
Zhu Ling Tang
painful urination 360
urinary difficulty or retention 436
Zhu Sha An Shen Wan 767, 807, 840, 854, 902
chronic cough 767
insomnia 840, 854
palpitations 807
Zhu Yi Shi Gao Tang
insomnia 839
Zi Shen Tong Guan Wan 419, 933
urinary difficulty or retention 419
Zi Wan Tang
tuberculosis 320
Zi Xue Dan 39, 171, 198, 303, 606, 707
epistaxis 171
febrile convulsions 707
haemoptysis 198
jaundice 606
throat abscess 303
wen bing 39
Zizyphus Combination 808, 888 see also Suan Zao Ren Tang
Zuo Gui Wan 277, 347, 557
dizziness 557
lower back pain 347
rhubarbs 277
Zuo Gui Yin
chest pain 790

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Chinese language sources
Ji Zheng Zhen Jiu 急症针灸
(Emergency Acupuncture) 1988
Zhang Ren, Peoples Medical Publishing Company, Beijing
Shi Yong Zhong Yi Nei Ke Xue 实用中医内科学
(Practical Traditional Chinese Internal Medicine) 1984
Huang Wen-Chen (Supervising editor), Shanghai Science and Technology Press
Shi Yong Zhong Yi Wai Ke Xue 实用中医外科科学
(Practical Traditional Chinese External Medicine) 1985
Zhou Feng-Wu (ed.), Shandong Science and Technology Press, Shandong
Shi Yong Zhong Yi Fu Ke Xue 实用中医妇科学研究
(Practical Traditional Chinese Gynaecology) 1985
Gu Bo-Hua (Supervising editor), Shanghai Science and Technology Press
Shi Yong Zhong Yi Xue Yi Bing Xue 实用中医血液病学
(Practical Traditional Chinese Treatment of Blood Diseases) 1992
Wu Han-Xiang (Supervising editor), Shanghai Science and Technology Press
Shi Yong Zhong Yao Xue 实用中药学
(Practical Chinese Herbs) 1985
Zhou Feng-Wu (ed.), Shandong Science and Technology Press, Shandong
Shi Yong Fang Ji Xue 实用方剂学
(Practical Chinese Herbal Formulas) 1989
Zhou Feng-Wu (ed.), Shandong Science and Technology Press, Shandong
Shi Yong Zhong Yi Wai Ke Xue 实用中医外科科学
(Practical Traditional Chinese External Medicine) 1985
Shang De-Jun (ed.), Shandong Science and Technology Press, Shandong
Shi Yong Zhong Yi Er Ke Xue 实用中医儿科学
(Practical Traditional Chinese Paediatrics) 1987
Jin Zu-Peng (ed.), Shandong Science and Technology Press, Shandong
Zhong Yi Nei Ke Ji Zhong Zheng Zhi 中医内科急症证治
(Proven TCM Treatments for Acute Internal Disorders) 1985
Huang Xing-Yuan (ed.), Peoples Medical Publishing Company, Beijing
English sources and references


Clavey S (1995) Fluid Physiology and Pathology in Traditional Chinese Medicine, Churchill Livingstone, Melbourne


Hsu HY (1980) Commonly Used Chinese Herbal Formulas with Illustrations, Oriental Healing Arts Institute, Los Angeles, California


Zhang Zhong-Jing (c. 210AD) Treatise on Febrile Diseases Caused By Cold with 500 Cases (Shang Han Lun). Translated by Luo Xi-Wen (1993) New World Press, Beijing, China